

ENGLISH

BY THE NATURE METHOD

BY

ARTHUR M. JENSEN

Endorsed by the Following Professors of English:

S. R. T. O. D'ARDENNE
University of Liège

FRANZ DE BACKER
University of Ghent

FRANK BEHRE
University of Gothenburg

HELLMUT BOCK
University of Kiel

C. A. BODELSEN
University of Copenhagen

G. BONNARD
University of Lausanne

KARL BRUNNER
University of Innsbruck

W. CLEMEN
University of Munich

L. ECKHOFF
University of Oslo

OTTO FUNKE
University of Berne

P. N. U. HARTING
University of Amsterdam

OTTO JESPERSEN (†)
University of Copenhagen

B. VON LINDHEIM
Free University of Berlin

H. LÜDEKE
University of Basle

FERNAND MOSSÉ (†)
Collège de France

OLE REUTER
University of Helsingfors

K. SCHIBSBYE
University of Copenhagen

F. TH. VISSER
University of Nijmegen

MAX WILDI
Institute of Technology, Zurich

R. W. ZANDVOORT
University of Groningen

THE NATURE METHOD INSTITUTES

AMSTERDAM · BRUSSELS · COPENHAGEN · HELSINGFORS

LONDON · MILAN · MUNICH · OSLO · PARIS

STOCKHOLM · VIENNA · ZURICH

PREFACES

Extract from the Preface by

OTTO JESPERSEN

Ph. D., Litt. D., LL. D., Late Professor of English Language and Literature in the University of Copenhagen

Mr. Arthur M. Jensen has asked me to write a preface to his course: "English by the Nature Method". It is with great pleasure that I comply with his wish, for I heartily agree with his method and think it has been on the whole carried out very skilfully and with real pedagogical insight.

The main idea is that all, or nearly all, sentences should be self-interpreting, the meaning of new words being in each case readily understood without any possible doubt from the context, in the beginning aided here and there by a simple drawing, so that a translation is never necessary.

In accordance with a wise old rule the author has not been afraid of repeating the same thing over and over again, especially in the beginning, so that words and phrases are as it were hammered into the brains of the student so as to be his possessions for ever.

The most necessary grammatical forms are from the very first imparted in a natural way without using any technical terms; later some very elementary grammatical instruction is given with simple theoretical explanations.

It is my conviction that the student who has conscientiously worked his way through the course will with a minimum of effort have acquired a fair knowledge of the English language and will be familiar with the most necessary words and phrases so as to feel at home in the language.

Elsinore, May the 11th, 1942.

OTTO JESPERSEN

PREFACES

Preface by

Dr. FERNAND MOSSÉ

Late Professor of Languages and Literatures of Germanic Origin at the Collège de France

I have pleasure in giving my fullest approval to the course entitled "English by the Nature Method", which I have examined with much interest. It is a genuine "natural" method, most ingeniously presented with great pedagogical acumen. Its user can be assured of the utmost success, provided that he never becomes discouraged if he is working on his own, and that he keeps on perseveringly to the end. It is only by thoroughly assimilating the most judiciously chosen sentences making up each lesson, by learning them by heart after having studied and understood them, that the student will gradually discover that he really knows English. When he reaches the last booklet he should be able to express himself with facility by the help of the words, forms and phrases at his command. Like the man in the Gospels who was cured by a miracle, he can then be told to arise and walk.

Other highly qualified persons have already excellently expressed their opinions of this English course. I shall merely add that, even if similar methods are to be found, I know of none more capable of attaining the desired goal than the one so patiently worked out by Mr. Arthur M. Jensen.

Paris, January 1955.

FERNAND MOSSÉ

Preface by

Dr. J. FOURQUET

Professor of Germanic Philology in the University of Paris

The method worked out by Mr. Arthur M. Jensen corresponds very closely to the ideal conception I had formed as I reflected on the best possible way of devising a rational system of modern language teaching inspired by the "direct method". I had in mind a work in which the principles of this method would be applied down to the smallest detail. It would be necessary to pass from the phonetic transcription of isolated examples to a running transcription; to associate with pictures all

PREFACES

words capable of being so represented, to present the material progressively in such a way that every new element would be explained by a context made up of elements already acquired, and finally systematically to base the acquisition of knowledge on complete sentence forms, passing gradually from the simplest to the most complex types. It should thus be possible to *build up* a language without having recourse either to dictionary or grammar-book, those lifeless collections of forms divorced from their context.

I find all these requirements complied with in Mr. Jensen's work, to which I cannot but give my full approval. Moreover, the working out of every detail, no doubt thanks to much patience and ingenuity, is in every way worthy of the boldness of the plan and, if I may say so, of the purity of the principles inspiring the author.

Provided one enters fully into the spirit of the method, namely never to make a step forward without having consolidated all that went before by the repetition of complete idiomatic sentences, one will be capable, by the end of the book, of immediate and spontaneous expression. It will only be necessary to make different combinations of the elements in the type sentence-patterns firmly imprinted on the nervous system, in order to speak with ease. The vocabulary, built up round centres of interest and always having a context, will be more readily recalled because of the network of associations in which it grew up from the start. This method can be called truly natural because it takes the fullest account of the *organic* nature of language.

Paris, August 1956.

J. FOURQUET

Preface by

Dr GEORGES BONNARD

Professor of English Language and Literature in the University of Lausanne

The author of "English by the Nature Method" has aimed at providing those who wish to learn English and are denied the help of an ordinary teacher, with a text-book that might, in little over a year,

PREFACES

bring them to the point where reading English books and conversation in English may be, or at least begin to be, actually possible. This means that they must be made to acquire an intelligible pronunciation, the essentials of the grammar, a fairly copious vocabulary and plenty of idiomatic phrases.

A careful examination of the sixty chapters — each to be mastered in a week — contained in the sixteen booklets of the whole course has convinced me that Mr. Arthur M. Jensen has really succeeded in doing all he had set out to do. His main concern has been with young people in business, which is quite natural since it is in the world of business that he will mostly find young men and women who feel the need of some knowledge of English and have never had the opportunity of getting it. But he has taken care not to give undue importance to their requirements, so that his course may be used with just as much profit by whoever desires to learn English by himself. On reaching the end of the last booklet, any student with a normal, even if untrained mind, will certainly be capable of reading easy stuff, of understanding something of the spoken language, even of speaking it to some extent.

This result is obtained by the systematic use of the so-called direct method of teaching languages. The basic principle of that method, as every one knows, is to teach a foreign language without the help of the learner's mother-tongue, except for occasional explanations. This can be done firstly by connecting as many words as possible directly with the objects, ideas, and actions they denote, and secondly by introducing new words, idioms, and grammatical facts in such a way that there can be no hesitation whatever in the pupil's mind as to what they mean.

In the class-room the teacher can easily point to many objects the names of which he wants to teach the pupil. He may use pictures representing all sorts of things which are not at hand. A number of verbs can also be taught by means of gestures and movements. In a book meant for people who try to learn a language without a teacher, pictures can of course be used to some advantage, but they must be very clear and simple, so that there will be no risk of wrong associations being formed. The pictures given in the margins of the booklets

PREFACES

answer that condition. But the author has had to rely, far more than any teacher in any class-room, on the second of the means at the disposal of the direct method, that is on the introduction of any new word, idiom or grammatical fact in such a context that its meaning can be grasped at once.

It is in the application of that principle that "English by the Nature Method" is unquestionably superior to any text-book based on the direct method that I have ever seen. The skill with which everything new, be it a word, a phrase or a fact of grammar, is first presented is remarkable, at times even truly amazing. That skill will be best appreciated by those teachers who, intent on never deviating from the direct method, are often at a loss how to get it done. But every sentence seems so natural, in no way perceptibly composed for the purpose it fulfils, that the skill is never obvious.

The new word must be, not only understood, but learned and remembered. It must become familiar. This can only be achieved by dint of repetition. But repetition, unless it be sustained by variety, will soon become wearisome. The new element must therefore be used again and again, each time in a different context. That is a serious difficulty. That difficulty has here been successfully overcome. Mr. Jensen has displayed a resourcefulness in the repeated use of the same element in different contexts which is equal to his skill in introducing it for the first time. And this is all the more creditable because he has done so not in disconnected sentences — that curse of language teaching — but in continuous texts which, simple though they must be, quickly grow in interest.

The course is divided into three distinct series of twenty chapters, each with its own general subject, and serving at the same time as a well-informed approach to various aspects of English civilisation, life and manners. Here again the author must be praised for his making the story he tells something more than a mere pretext for passing from one chapter to the next. The adventures and experiences of the clerk who marries his office manager's daughter are sure to delight those unsophisticated young people who are most likely to use "English by the Nature Method".

PREFACES

One of the most interesting, and to my mind most judicious, features of the course is the importance it gives to the imparting of a decent pronunciation. The learner is expected to master the alphabet of the International Phonetic Association and study the simple descriptions of the sounds of English given in the introductory booklet before starting on the course proper, where, right underneath every word of the text, he will find its full transcription. This may appear a bit clumsy. But I do not see how else the problem of teaching the pronunciation could have been solved satisfactorily. At the cost of a slight initial effort, the student, however left to himself he may be, is sure never to go astray. And he is advised of course to use to the full every opportunity he may have of hearing the new sounds he must use.

The instructions in the student's own language which are sent to him with each booklet, the exercises added to all the chapters, and the paragraphs of grammar to be found in the last twenty chapters, all denote the same meticulous care, the same attention to the necessary details as have gone to the composition of the text itself.

In conclusion I think it can be confidently asserted that those that set themselves to learning English with the help of Mr. Jensen's method will be thoroughly satisfied with it, but on condition they do not imagine any language can be learnt without steady and even hard work. For this is not one of the least satisfactory features of "English by the Nature Method" that it does not pretend that you can learn to read and speak English in a few weeks or in a dozen lessons or so.

May I add that in the hands of a competent teacher devoted to the direct method this course would probably do wonders in the classroom.

Lausanne, February the 26th, 1951.

GEORGES BONNARD

THE FAMILY

Mr. Smith



man

Mrs. Smith



woman

John



boy

Helen



girl



baby

Mr. Smith is a man. Mrs. Smith is a woman. John is
mistə smiþ iz ə mæn. misiz smiþ iz ə wumən. dʒɒn iz

a boy. Helen is a girl. The baby is also a girl. Helen
ə bɔɪ. helin iz ə ɡɜ:l. ðə beibi iz ɔ:lsoʊ ə ɡɜ:l. helin

and the baby are girls. Mr. Smith is the father. Mrs.
ænd ðə beibi a: ɡɜ:lz. mistə smiþ iz ðə fa:ðə. misiz

Smith is the mother. John is a child. Helen is a
smiþ iz ðə mʌðə. dʒɒn iz ə tʃaɪld. helin iz ə

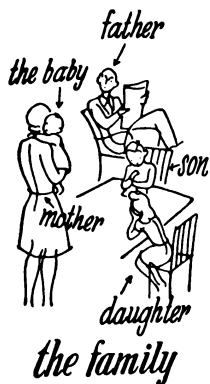
child. The baby is a child. John, Helen, and the baby
tʃaɪld. ðə beibi iz ə tʃaɪld. dʒɒn, helin, ænd ðə beibi

are children.
a: tʃɪldrən.

is
are

**John is a boy.
Helen and the
baby are girls.**
one (1) girl
two (2) girls
one (1) **child**
two (2) **children**
Helen is a **girl**.
Helen and the
baby are **girls**.

Chapter One (1).



a
the

John is a boy.
The boy is John.

Helen and the baby
are girls.

The girls are
Helen and the
baby.

of

The father of the
children.

Mr. Smith is the father of John. Mr. Smith is the
mistə smiþ iz ðə fa:ðə əv dʒɒn. mistə smiþ iz ðə

father of Helen. Mr. Smith is the father of the baby.
fa:ðə əv helin. mistə smiþ iz ðə fa:ðə əv ðə beibi.

Mr. Smith is the father of the children. Mrs. Smith is
mistə smiþ iz ðə fa:ðə əv ðə tʃildrən. misiz smiþ iz

the mother of John, Helen, and the baby. Mr. Smith
ðə mʌðə əv dʒɒn, helin, ənd ðə beibi. mistə smiþ

and Mrs. Smith are the parents of the children. John
ənd misiz smiþ a: ðə peərənts əv ðə tʃildrən. dʒɒn

is the son of Mr. and Mrs. Smith. Mr. and Mrs. Smith
iz ðə sʌn əv mistə ənd misiz smiþ. mistə ənd misiz smiþ

are the parents of John. Helen is the daughter of Mr.
a: ðə peərənts əv dʒɒn. helin iz ðə dɔ:tə əv mistə

and Mrs. Smith. Mr. and Mrs. Smith are the parents
ənd misiz smiþ. mistə ənd misiz smiþ a: ðə peərənts

of Helen. The baby is also the daughter of Mr. and
əv helin. ðə beibi iz ɔ:lsoʊ ðə dɔ:tə əv mistə ənd

Mrs. Smith. Mr. and Mrs. Smith are the parents of the
misiz smiþ. mistə ənd misiz smiþ a: ðə peərənts əv ðə

baby.
beibi.

Mr. Smith, Mrs. Smith, John, Helen, and the baby are
mistə smiþ, misiz smiþ, dʒɒn, helin, ənd ðə beibi a:

a family. There are five (5) persons in the family.
ə fæmili. ðeər a: faiv pə:snz in ðə fæmili.

Mr. Smith is a person. Mrs. Smith is a person. John
mistə smiþ iz ə pə:sn. misiz smiþ iz ə pə:sn. dʒɒn

is a person. Helen is a person, and the baby is also
iz ə pə:sn. helin iz ə pə:sn, and ðə beibi iz ɔ:lsou

a person.
ə pə:sn.

How many persons are there in the family? There are
hau meni pə:snz a: ðeə in ðə fæmili? ðeər a:

five (5) persons in the family. Who are the five (5)
faiv pə:snz in ðə fæmili. hu: a: ðə faiv

persons in the family? They are the father, the mother,
pə:snz in ðə fæmili? ðei a: ðə fa:ðə, ðə mʌðə,

the son, the daughter, and the baby daughter. How
ðə sʌn, ðə dɔ:tə, and ðə beibi dɔ:tə. hau

many children are there in the family? There are
meni tʃɪldrən a: ðeə in ðə fæmili? ðeər a:

three (3) children in the family. Who are the three (3)
pri: tʃɪldrən in ðə fæmili. hu: a: ðə pri:

children in the family? They are the son, the daughter,
tʃɪldrən in ðə fæmili? ðei a: ðə sʌn, ðə dɔ:tə,

and the baby daughter. How many girls are there in
and ðə beibi dɔ:tə. hau meni gə:lz a: ðeə in

the family? There are two (2) girls in the family.
ðə fæmili? ðeər a: tu: gə:lz in ðə fæmili.

Who are the two (2) girls in the family? They are the
hu: a: ðə tu: gə:lz in ðə fæmili? ðei a: ðə

daughter and the baby daughter. How many boys are
dɔ:tə and ðə beibi dɔ:tə. hau meni bɔiz a:

there in the family? There is one (1) boy in the family.
ðeə in ðə fæmili? ðeər iz wʌn bɔi in ðə fæmili.

how many?

How many girls
 are there in the
 family?

there is
 there are

There is one boy
 in the family.

There are two
 girls in the family.

Chapter One (1).

who?

he

she

they

Who is John?

He is the son.

Who is Helen?

She is the daughter.

Who are Helen and the baby?

They are the daughters.

man

woman

boy

girl

baby

} persons

father

mother

} parents

boy

girl

baby

} children

Who is the boy? The boy is John; he is the son of
hu: iz ðə bɔi? ðə bɔi iz dʒɔn; hi: iz ðə sʌn əv

Mr. Smith. The girl is Helen; she is the daughter of
mɪstə smɪθ. ðə ɡə:l iz helɪn; si: iz ðə dɔ:tə əv

Mr. Smith. The man is Mr. Smith; he is the father.
mɪstə smɪθ. ðə mæn iz mɪstə smɪθ; hi: iz ðə fa:ðə.

The woman is Mrs. Smith; she is the mother. The
ðə wʊmən iz mɪsɪz smɪθ; si: iz ðə mʌðə. ðə

man and the woman are Mr. and Mrs. Smith; they are
mæn ənd ðə wʊmən a: mɪstə ənd mɪsɪz smɪθ; ðeɪ a:

the parents.

ðə peərənts.

John is the brother of Helen. Helen is the sister of
dʒɔn iz ðə brʌðə əv helɪn. helɪn iz ðə sɪstə əv

John. The baby is the sister of John and Helen. The
dʒɔn. ðə beɪbi iz ðə sɪstə əv dʒɔn ənd helɪn. ðə

baby and Helen are sisters. John and Helen are
beɪbi ənd helɪn a: sɪstəz. dʒɔn ənd helɪn a:

brother and sister.

brʌðə ənd sɪstə.

Mr. Smith is the husband of Mrs. Smith. Mrs. Smith
mɪstə smɪθ iz ðə hʌzbənd əv mɪsɪz smɪθ. mɪsɪz smɪθ

is the wife of Mr. Smith. Who is Mr. Smith? He is the
iz ðə waɪf əv mɪstə smɪθ. hu: iz mɪstə smɪθ? hi: iz ðə

husband of Mrs. Smith and the father of the three (3)
hʌzbənd əv mɪsɪz smɪθ ənd ðə fa:ðə əv ðə θri:

children. Who is Mrs. Smith? She is the wife of Mr.
tʃɪldrən hu: iz mɪsɪz smɪθ? si: iz ðə waɪf əv mɪstə

Smith and the mother of the three (3) children. The
smiþ and ða maðə əv ða þri: tʃildrən. ða

three (3) children are the son, the daughter, and the
þri: tʃildrən a: ða sʌn, ða dɔ:tə, and ða

baby daughter of Mr. and Mrs. Smith. The father, the
beibi dɔ:tə əv mɪstə and mɪsɪz smiþ. ða fa:ðə, ða

mother, the son, the daughter, and the baby daughter
maðə, ða sʌn, ða dɔ:tə, and ða beibi dɔ:tə

are a family of five (5) persons.

a: ə fæmili əv faɪv pɜ:snz.

EXERCISE A (*eksəsəɪz ei*).

Mr. Smith is a —. Mrs. Smith is a —. John is a —.
 Helen is a —. Helen and the baby are —. John is a —,
 and Helen and the baby are also —. There — one boy
 in the family. There — two girls in the family. There
 — one father in the family. There — three children in
 the family. John — the son. Mrs. Smith — the mother.
 Mr. and Mrs. Smith — the parents. John, Helen, and
 the baby — the children. Mr. Smith is — father of
 John. Helen is the daughter — Mr. Smith. John, Helen,
 and the baby are — children — Mr. Smith.

The man is — Smith; he — the father. The boy is
 John; — is the son. The woman is — Smith; — is the
 mother. The girls are Helen and the baby; — are the
 daughters. John is the — of Helen. Helen is the —
 of John. John and Helen are — and —. Mr. Smith

WORDS (*wə:dz*):

man
 woman
 Mr.
 Mrs.
 boy
 girl
 baby
 person
 child
 children
 father
 mother
 son
 daughter
 sister
 brother

Chapter One (1).

parents
family
wife
husband
one
two
three
a
the
is
are
of
there
he
she
they
and
also
five
in
how many?
who?
exercise
word

is the — of Mrs. Smith. Mrs. Smith is the — of Mr. Smith.

There are five — in the family. The five — in the family are the —, the —, the —, the —, and the —. — boy is John; — — the son. — man is Mr. Smith; he is the —. — woman is Mrs. Smith; she is the —. — girls are Helen and the baby; they are the —. — father and — mother are Mr. and Mrs. Smith; they are — parents of the children.

— is Mr. Smith? He is the father — — children. — many children are there in the family? There are — children in the family. How — boys are there in the family? There is — boy in the family. — — girls are there in the family? There are — girls in the family. — are the three children in the family? The — children are John, Helen, and the baby. — is the son? The — is John. — are the daughters? — daughters — Helen and the baby. — — persons — there in the family? There — five — in the family. — are the — persons in — family? — are — father, — mother, — son, and — two daughters.

EXERCISE B (*eksəsaiz bi:*).

Who is the man? — — — — —. Who is the woman? — — — — —. Who is the boy? — — — — —. Who are the two girls? — — — — — — — —. Who are the parents of John, Helen, and the baby? — — — — —, — — — — — — — —. How many persons are there in

the family? — — — — —. Who are the five
persons? — — — — —, — —, — —, — —, — —.
How many children are there in the family? — — —
— — —. Who are they? — — —, — —, — — —.
How many girls are there in the family? — — — —
— — —. Who are they? — — — — —. How
many boys are there in the family? — — — — —.
Who is Helen? — — — — —. Who is Mrs.
Smith? — — — — —. Who is Mr. Smith?
— — — — —.

THE YEAR

is
are

**February is a
month.**

**There are twelve
months.**

one - first
two - second
three - third
four - fourth
five - fifth
six - sixth
seven - seventh
eight - eighth
nine - ninth
ten - tenth
eleven - eleventh
twelve - twelfth
thirteen - thir-
teenth
fourteen - four-
teenth

January is a month. February is also a month. There
dʒænjuəri iz ə mʌnθ. februəri iz ɔ:lsou ə mʌnθ. ðeər

are twelve (12) months, one (1), two (2), three (3),
a: twelv mʌnθs, wʌn, tu:, ʒri:,

four (4), five (5), six (6), seven (7), eight (8), nine (9),
fɔ:, faiv, siks, sevn, eit, nain,

ten (10), eleven (11), twelve (12).
ten, i'levn, twelv.

January is the first (1st) month. February is the
dʒænjuəri iz ðə fə:st mʌnθ. februəri iz ðə

second (2nd) month. March is the third (3rd) month.
sekənd mʌnθ. mɑ:tʃ iz ðə ʒə:d mʌnθ.

April is the fourth (4th) month. May is the fifth (5th)
eipril iz ðə fɔ:θ mʌnθ. meɪ iz ðə fifθ

month. June is the sixth (6th) month. July is the
mʌnθ. dʒu:n iz ðə siksθ mʌnθ. dʒu'lai iz ðə

seventh (7th) month. August is the eighth (8th) month.
sevnθ mʌnθ. ɔ:gəst iz ði eitθ mʌnθ.

September is the ninth (9th) month. October is the
səp'tembə iz ðə nainθ mʌnθ. ɔk'toubə iz ðə

tenth (10th) month. November is the eleventh (11th)
tenθ mʌnθ. nou'vembə iz ði i'levnθ

month. December is the twelfth (12th) month.
mʌnθ. di'sembə iz ðə twelfθ mʌnθ.

January and February are months. There are twelve
dzənjuəri and februəri a: mənʃs. ðeər a: twelv

months in a year. January is the first month of the
mənʃs in ə jɪə. dzənjuəri iz ðə fə:st mənʃ əv ðə

year. December is the last month of the year. A year
jɪə. di'sembə iz ðə la:st mənʃ əv ðə jɪə. ə jɪə

has twelve months. A month has four weeks. Three
hæz twelv mənʃs. ə mənʃ hæz fɔ: wi:ks. θri:

months have thirteen (13) weeks. A week has seven
mənʃs hæv θɜ:ti:n wi:ks. ə wi:k hæz sevən

days. Two weeks have fourteen (14) days.
deiz. tu: wi:ks hæv fɔ:ti:n deiz.

How many months are there in a year? There are
hau meni mənʃs a: ðeə in ə jɪə? ðeər a:

twelve months in a year. How many weeks are there
twelv mənʃs in ə jɪə. hau meni wi:ks a: ðeə

in a month? There are four weeks in a month. How
in ə mənʃ? ðeər a: fɔ: wi:ks in ə mənʃ. hau

many days are there in a week? There are seven days
meni deiz a: ðeə in ə wi:k? ðeər a: sevən deiz

in a week. What are the seven days of the week?
in ə wi:k. hwɒt a: ðə sevən deiz əv ðə wi:k?

The seven days of the week are: Sunday, Monday,
ðə sevən deiz əv ðə wi:k a: : sʌndi, mʌndi,

Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday.
tʃu:zdi, wenzdi, θɜ:zdi, fraidi, sætədi.

What month is the first month of the year? January is
hwɒt mənʃ iz ðə fə:st mənʃ əv ðə jɪə? dzənjuəri iz

has
have

One week has
seven days.

Two weeks have
fourteen days.

Chapter Two (2).

what?
which of?
What is the first
month of the
year?
Which of the
months of the year
is the first?

the first month of the year. What is the last month of
ðə fə:st mʌnθ əv ðə jɪə. hwɒt ɪz ðə la:st mʌnθ əv

the year? December is the last month of the year.
ðə jɪə? di'sembə ɪz ðə la:st mʌnθ əv ðə jɪə.

What is the first day of the week? Sunday is the
hwɒt ɪz ðə fə:st dei əv ðə wi:k? sʌndi ɪz ðə

first day of the week. What is the last day of the
fə:st dei əv ðə wi:k. hwɒt ɪz ðə la:st dei əv ðə

week? Saturday is the last day of the week.
wi:k? sətədi ɪz ðə la:st dei əv ðə wi:k.

Which of the days of the week is the first? Sunday is
hwɪtʃ əv ðə deɪz əv ðə wi:k ɪz ðə fə:st? sʌndi ɪz

the first day of the week. Which of the days of the
ðə fə:st dei əv ðə wi:k. hwɪtʃ əv ðə deɪz əv ðə

week is the second (2nd)? Monday is the second (2nd) day
wi:k ɪz ðə sekənd? mʌndi ɪz ðə sekənd dei

of the week. Tuesday is the third (3rd) day of the week.
əv ðə wi:k. tju:zdi ɪz ðə þɜ:d dei əv ðə wi:k.

Wednesday is the fourth (4th) day of the week. Thurs-
wenzdi ɪz ðə fɔ:θ dei əv ðə wi:k. þɜ:z-

day is the fifth (5th) day of the week. Friday is the
di ɪz ðə fɪfθ dei əv ðə wi:k. fraɪdi ɪz ðə

sixth (6th) day of the week. Saturday is the seventh (7th)
sɪksθ dei əv ðə wi:k. sətədi ɪz ðə sevənθ

day of the week. Saturday is also the last day of the
dei əv ðə wi:k. sətədi ɪz ɔ:lsoʊ ðə la:st dei əv ðə

week. Which of the months of the year is the
wi:k. hwɪtʃ əv ðə mʌnθs əv ðə jɪə ɪz ðə

twelfth (12th)? December is the twelfth (12th) and
twelfθ? di'sembə iz ðə twelfθ ənd

also the last month of the year. What is the ninth (9th)
ːlsou ðə la:st mʌnθ əv ðə jiə. hwɒt iz ðə naɪnθ

month of the year? September is the ninth (9th) month.
mʌnθ əv ðə jiə? səp'tembə iz ðə naɪnθ mʌnθ.

What day is the eighth (8th) day of the week? There is
hwɒt dei iz ði eitθ dei əv ðə wi:k? ðeər iz

no eighth (8th) day of the week. There are only
nou eitθ dei əv ðə wi:k. ðeər a: ounli

seven (7) days in a week. Which of the months of the
sevn deɪz ɪn ə wi:k. hwɪtʃ əv ðə mʌnθs əv ðə

year is the thirteenth (13th)? There is no thirteenth
jiə iz ðə θə:ti:nθ? ðeər iz nou θə:ti:nθ

month of the year. There are only twelve months in
mʌnθ əv ðə jiə. ðeər a: ounli twelv mʌnθs ɪn

a year.
ə jiə.

EXERCISE A.

January is a —. March and April are —. — is the first month of the year. February is the — month of the year. March is the — month. April is the — month. May is the — month. June is the — month. July is the — month. August is the — month. September is the — month. October is the — month. November is the — month. December is the — and also the — month of the year.

no

There is **no** eighth day of the week.

WORDS:

four
 six
 seven
 eight
 nine
 ten
 eleven
 twelve
 thirteen
 fourteen
 first
 second

Chapter Two (2).

third
fourth
fifth
sixth
seventh
eighth
ninth
tenth
eleventh
twelfth
thirteenth
fourteenth
month
year
week
day
January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December
Sunday
Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday
last

A — has twelve months. A — has seven days. Two — — fourteen days. The seven days of the week are: —, —, —, —, —, —, —. There is — eighth day of the week. There is — thirteenth month; a year has — twelve months. The twelve months of the year are: —, —, —, —, —, —, —, —, —, —, —, —. Sunday is the — day of the week. Saturday is the — — of the week.

How — days are there in a week? There are — days — a week. — many weeks has a month? A month has — weeks. — many weeks — three months? Three months — — weeks. — — months has a year? A year — — months. — is the first month of the year? — is the first month of the year. — is the fourth day of the week? The fourth day of the week is —. — is the last month of the year? The last month of the year is —. — of the months of the year is the thirteenth? There is — thirteenth month; there are — twelve months — a year.

EXERCISE B.

How many months are there in a year? — — — — —
— —. How many days has a week? — — — — —.
How many days have two weeks? — — — — —. How
many weeks are there in a month? — — — — — — —.
Which of the months of the year is the first? — — —
— — — — —. What is the second month? — — —
— —. What is the third month? — — — — —. What
is the fifth day of the week? — — — — — — — — —.

Which of the days of the week is the eighth? — — —
— — — — —. What is the twelfth month of the year?
— — — — —. Which of the days of the week
is the last? — — — — —. What is the thir-
teenth month of the year? — — — — —. How
many weeks have three months? — — — — —.

has
have
what?
which of?
no
only

NAMES

The name of the boy is John. The name of the girl
ðə neim əv ðə bɔi iz dʒɒn. ðə neim əv ðə ɡə:l

is Helen. The name of the father is Mr. Smith.
iz helin. ðə neim əv ðə fa:ðə iz mistə smiθ.

The name of the mother is Mrs. Smith. What is the
ðə neim əv ðə mʌðə iz misiz smiθ. hwɒt iz ðə

what?
 it
 they

**What is the name
 of the boy?**

It is John.

**What are
 the names of the
 girls?**

**They are Helen
 and Alice.**

name of the girl? It is Helen. What is the name
neim əv ðə ɡə:l? it iz helin. hwɒt iz ðə neim

of the baby girl? It is Alice. What is the name
əv ðə beibi ɡə:l? it iz ælis. hwɒt iz ðə neim

of the boy? It is John. What are the names of the
əv ðə bɔi? it iz dʒɒn. hwɒt a: ðə neimz əv ðə

parents? They are Mr. and Mrs. Smith. What is the
peərənts? ðei a: mistə and misiz smiθ. hwɒt iz ðə

name of the family? It is Smith. Mr. Smith has a wife.
neim əv ðə fæmili? it iz smiθ. mistə smiθ hæz ə waif.

Her name is Mrs. Smith. Mr. Smith has a daughter.
hə: neim iz misiz smiθ. mistə smiθ hæz ə dɔ:tə.

Her name is Helen. Mr. Smith has a son. His name
hə: neim iz helin. mistə smiθ hæz ə sɒn. hiz neim

is John.
iz dʒɒn.

Has Mr. Smith a wife? Yes, he has a wife. What
hæz mistə smiθ ə waif? jes, hi: hæz ə waif. hwɒt

is the name of his wife? Her name is Mrs. Smith.
iz ðə neim əv his waif? hæ: neim iz misiz smiþ.

Has Mr. Smith a son? Yes, he has a son. What
hæz mistə smiþ ə sən? jes, hi: hæz ə sən. hwɒt

is the name of his son? His name is John. Mr.
iz ðə neim əv his sən? hiz neim iz dʒɒn. mistə

Smith has a son and two daughters. What are the
smiþ hæz ə sən ənd tu: dɔ:təz. hwɒt a: ðə

names of the three children? Their names are John,
neimz əv ðə þri: tʃildrən? ðeə neimz a: dʒɒn,

Helen, and Alice.
helin, ənd əlis.

John is twelve years old. How old is John? He is
dʒɒn iz twelv jɪəz ould. hau ould iz dʒɒn? hi: iz

twelve years old. Helen is ten years old. How old is
twelv jɪəz ould. helin iz ten jɪəz ould. hau ould iz

Helen? She is ten years old. The baby is six months
helin? ʃi: iz ten jɪəz ould. ðə beibi iz siks mʌnθs

old. How old is the baby? She is six months old.
ould. hau ould iz ðə beibi? ʃi: iz siks mʌnθs ould.

John is twelve years old, and Helen is ten years
dʒɒn iz twelv jɪəz ould, ənd helin iz ten jɪəz

old. John is two years older than Helen. Is John
ould. dʒɒn iz tu: jɪəz ouldə ðæn helin. iz dʒɒn

fourteen (14) years old? No, he is not fourteen
fɔ:ti:n jɪəz ould? nou, hi: iz nɒt fɔ:ti:n

years old; he is only twelve years old. Is Helen
jɪəz ould; hi: iz ɒnli twelv jɪəz ould. iz helin

his
her
their

The name of the husband is Mr. Smith. **His** name is Mr. Smith.

The name of the wife is Mrs. Smith. **Her** name is Mrs. Smith.

The names of the children are John, Helen, and Alice. **Their** names are John, Helen, and Alice.

thirteen (13) years old? No, she is not thirteen
þə:ti:n jɪəz ould? nou, fi: iz nɒt þə:ti:n

years old; she is only ten years old. Is Helen
jɪəz ould; fi: iz ounli ten jɪəz ould. iz helin

older than John? No, she is not older than John;
ouldə ðæn dʒɒn? nou, fi: iz nɒt ouldə ðæn dʒɒn;

John is two years older than she is.
dʒɒn iz tu: jɪəz ouldə ðæn fi: iz.

John is not fourteen, but only twelve years old. Helen
dʒɒn iz nɒt fɔ:ti:n, bʌt ounli twelv jɪəz ould. helin

is not thirteen, but only ten years old. John is not a girl,
iz nɒt þə:ti.n, bʌt ounli ten jɪəz ould. dʒɒn iz nɒt ə ɡə:l,

but Helen is a girl. Helen is not a boy, but John is a
bʌt helin iz ə ɡə:l. helin iz nɒt ə bɔɪ, bʌt dʒɒn iz ə

boy. The baby is not old; she is young. She is only six
bɔɪ. ðə beɪbi iz nɒt ould; fi: iz jʌŋ. fi: iz ounli sɪks

months old. Mr. Smith is a young man; he is thirty-six
mʌnθs ould. mɪstə smɪθ iz ə jʌŋ mæn; hi: iz þə:ti'sɪks

(36) years old. Mrs. Smith is a young woman; she is
jɪəz ould. mɪsɪz smɪθ iz ə jʌŋ wʊmən; fi: iz

thirty-two (32) years old. Mr. Smith has a father. The
þə:ti'tu: jɪəz ould. mɪstə smɪθ hæz ə fa:ðə. ðə

father of Mr. Smith is not young; he is old. He is
fa:ðə əv mɪstə smɪθ iz nɒt jʌŋ; hi: iz ould. hi: iz

sixty-two (62) years old. John, Helen, and the baby
sɪksti'tu: jɪəz ould. dʒɒn, helin, ənd ðə beɪbi

are young; they are children.
ɑ: jʌŋ; ðeɪ ɑ: tʃɪldrən.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith are also young, but they are older
mistə ənd misiz smiþ a: ɔ:lsou jʌŋ, bʌt ðei a: ouldə

than the children. The children are younger than their
ðæn ðə tʃildrən. ðə tʃildrən a: jʌŋgə ðæn ðeə

parents. Is John younger than Helen? No, he is not
pɛərənts. iz dʒɒn jʌŋgə ðæn helin? nou, hi: iz nɒt

younger than Helen; he is two years older than Helen.
jʌŋgə ðæn helin; hi: iz tu: jɪəz ouldə ðæn helin.

Is the baby younger than Helen? Yes, she is the
iz ðə beibi jʌŋgə ðæn helin? jes, ʃi: iz ðə

youngest of the children. Which of the persons in the
jʌŋgist əv ðə tʃildrən. hwɪtʃ əv ðə pɜ:snz in ðə

family is the oldest? The father of Mr. Smith is the
fæmili iz ði ouldist? ðə fa:ðə əv mistə smiþ iz ði

oldest. Which of the three children is the youngest?
ouldist. hwɪtʃ əv ðə pri: tʃildrən iz ðə jʌŋgist?

The baby is the youngest.
ðə beibi iz ðə jʌŋgist.

Has John three sisters? No, he has only two sisters,
hæz dʒɒn pri: sistəz? nou, hi: hæz ounli tu: sistəz,

not three. Have Mr. and Mrs. Smith four children?
nɒt pri:. hæv mistə ənd misiz smiþ fɔ: tʃildrən?

No, they have not four children, but only three. Have
nou, ðei hæv nɒt fɔ: tʃildrən, bʌt ounli pri:. hæv

Mr. and Mrs. Smith two sons? No, they have only one
mistə ənd misiz smiþ tu: sʌnz? nou, ðei hæv ounli wʌn

son, but two daughters.
sʌn, bʌt tu: dɔ:təz.

young
 younger
 youngest

Helen is **young**.

She is **younger**
 than John.

The baby is the
youngest of the
 three children.

old
 older
 oldest

How **old** is John?

John is **older** than
 Helen.

The father of Mr.
 Smith is the **oldest**
 person in the
 family.

has
 have

John has two
 sisters.

Mr. and Mrs.
Smith have three
 children.

What is the name of the family? The name of the
hwɔt iz ðə neim əv ðə fæmili? ðə neim əv ðə

family is Smith. What is Helen? Helen is a girl.
fæmili iz smiθ. hwɔt iz helin? helin iz ə ɡə:l.

Which of the children is the boy? John is the boy.
hwitʃ əv ðə tʃildrən iz ðə bɔi? dʒɒn iz ðə bɔi.

What day is it? It is Sunday. What is the first day
hwɔt dei iz it? it iz sʌndi. hwɔt iz ðə fə:st dei .

of the week? Sunday is the first day of the week.
əv ðə wi:k? sʌndi iz ðə fə:st dei əv ðə wi:k.

What is the name of the first month? The name of
hwɔt iz ðə neim əv ðə fə:st mʌnθ? ðə neim əv

the first month is January. Which of the months is
ðə fə:st mʌnθ iz dʒænjuəri. hwitʃ əv ðə mʌnθs iz

the second? February is the second month.
ðə sekənd? februəri iz ðə sekənd mʌnθ.

EXERCISE A.

The — of the boy is John. The — of the father is —
 Smith. The — — the mother is — Smith. Mr. Smith
 has a wife; — name is Mrs. Smith. Mr. Smith has a
 daughter; — name is Helen. Mr. Smith has a son; —
 name is John. John has a sister; the name of — sister
 is Helen. Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children; —
 names are John, Helen, and Alice. Mr. and Mrs. Smith
 have two daughters; — names are Helen and Alice.
 Helen is ten years —. Mr. Smith is thirty-six years —.
 John is two years — than Helen. Helen is nine years
 and six months — than the baby.

The father of Mr. Smith is the — person in the family. Mr. Smith is older — Mrs. Smith. Helen is older — the baby. John is not fourteen — old; he is only twelve years old. Helen is — thirteen years old; she is — ten years old. Mr. Smith is — old, but young. Mrs. Smith is not a man, — a woman. John is — a girl, — Helen is a girl. John — two sisters. Helen and the baby — one brother. The children — two parents. Mr. and Mrs. Smith — three children. They — only one son, but they — two daughters. Mr. Smith — a wife. Helen — a baby sister. The baby — a brother and a sister.

— is the name of the girl? — is Helen. — is the name of the youngest child? — is Alice. — of the children is the youngest? — — is the youngest. — — the persons in the family is the oldest? The father of Mr. Smith is the —. — are the names of the parents? The names of the parents — Mr. and Mrs. Smith. — of the persons in the family is the youngest? The baby is the — — — the family. — day is it? It is —. — is the last day of the week? — is the last day of the week. — John a girl? —, he is — —. Is Helen — than the baby? Yes, she is — — the baby. Is the baby — — of the children? —, she is — six months —. — Mr. Smith the husband of Mrs. Smith? —, he is — — of Mrs. Smith.

EXERCISE B.

What is the name of the baby girl? — — — — —. Which of the children is the boy? — — — —. What day is it? — — —. What is the first day of the week? — — — — —. What is the name of

WORDS:

name
what?
it

Chapter Three (3).

yes
no
his
her
their
old
young
than
not
but
thirty-two
thirty-six
sixty-two

the family? — — — — —. Which of the persons
in the family is the oldest? — — — — —. Which
of the children is the youngest? — — — — —.
How old is she? — — — — —. How old is Mr. Smith?
— — — — —. How old is Helen? — — — — —. How
many years is John older than Helen? — — — — —.
Is Helen older than the baby? —, — — — —.

Is Mrs. Smith older than Mr. Smith? —, — — — —
— —. Is John old? —, — — — —. Is the father of
Mr. Smith old? —, — — — —. Are the children young?
—, — — — —. Are the parents old? —, — — — —. Has
John three sisters? —, — — — —. Have the parents
three children? —, — — — —. Have the girls a
brother? —, — — — —. Are John and Helen brother
and sister? —, — — — —. Have they a sister? —, —
— — —. Have Mr. and Mrs. Smith two sons? —, —
— — — —. What is his name? — — — —. Which
of the children is ten years old? — — — — —.

COUNTRIES AND CITIES

Mr. and Mrs. Smith and their three children live in
mɪstə and mɪsɪz smɪθ and ðeə ˈpriː tʃɪldrən lɪv ɪn

England. They live in a house. Has their house a
ɪŋɡlənd. ðeɪ lɪv ɪn ə haʊs. hæz ðeə haʊs ə

window? Yes, their house has many windows. How
wɪndəʊ? jɛs, ðeə haʊs hæz mæni wɪndəʊz. haʊ

many windows has their house? It has eight windows.
mæni wɪndəʊz hæz ðeə haʊs? ɪt hæz eɪt wɪndəʊz.

Has their house a door? Yes, it has two doors. It
hæz ðeə haʊs ə dɔː? jɛs, ɪt hæz tuː dɔːz. ɪt

has also a roof. The roof is the top of the house.
hæz əːlsəʊ ə ruːf. ðə ruːf ɪz ðə tɒp əv ðə haʊs.

What is the top of the house? The top of the house
hwɒt ɪz ðə tɒp əv ðə haʊs? ðə tɒp əv ðə haʊs

is the roof. The house has four walls. Has the
ɪz ðə ruːf. ðə haʊs hæz fɔː wɔːlz. hæz ðə

house a fifth wall? No, it has only four walls. The
haʊs ə fɪfθ wɔːl? nəʊ, ɪt hæz ɒnli fɔː wɔːlz. ðə

windows and the doors are in the walls.
wɪndəʊz and ðə dɔːz aː ɪn ðə wɔːlz.

Where is London? London is in England. Where is
hwɛər ɪz lʌndən? lʌndən ɪz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd. hwɛər ɪz

Paris? Paris is in France. Where is Stockholm?
pæɪs? pæɪs ɪz ɪn frɑːns. hwɛər ɪz stɒkhuːm?



Chapter Four (4).



Europe

one girl
two girls

one boy
two boys

one city
two cities

one country
two countries

Baby = the baby

Helen and Baby
are sisters.

Helen and the baby
are sisters.

as - as
(not) so - as

Mr. Smith is
as big as his
father.

Baby is **not** so
big as Helen.

Stockholm is in Sweden. Where is Berlin? Berlin is
stɒkhoum iz in swe:dn. hwɛər iz bæ:'lin? bæ:'lin iz

in Germany. Where is Copenhagen? Copenhagen is
in dʒə:məni. hwɛər iz koupn'heigən? koupn'heigən iz

in Denmark. Where is Oslo? Oslo is in Norway.
in denma:k. hwɛər iz ɔslou? ɔslou iz in nɔ:wei.

Where is Moscow? Moscow is in Russia. Where is
hwɛər iz mɒskou? mɒskou iz in rʌʃə. hwɛər iz

Helsinki (Helsingfors)? Helsinki is in Finland. Eng-
helsɪŋki (helsɪfɔ:s)? helsɪŋki iz in finlænd. iŋ-

land is a country. Russia is a country. England and
glænd iz ə kəntri. rʌʃə iz ə kəntri. iŋglænd ənd

Russia are two countries.

rʌʃə a: tu: kəntris. ,

Mr. and Mrs. Smith and their children live in London.
mɪstə ənd mɪsɪz smɪθ ənd ðeə tʃɪldrən liv in lɒndən.

London is a city. Copenhagen is also a city. London
lɒndən iz ə siti. koupn'heigən iz ɔ:lsou ə siti. lɒndən

and Copenhagen are two cities. There are many
ənd koupn'heigən a: tu: sitɪz. ðeər a: meni

houses in London. London is a big city. There are
haʊzɪz in lɒndən. lɒndən iz ə big siti. ðeər a:

also many houses in Copenhagen. Copenhagen is also
ɔ:lsou meni haʊzɪz in koupn'heigən. koupn'heigən iz ɔ:lsou

a big city, but Copenhagen is not so big a city as London.
ə big siti, bʌt koupn'heigən iz nɒt sou big ə siti æz lɒndən.

Helen is a big girl, but she is not so big as John. Is
helɪn iz ə big gɜ:l, bʌt ʃi: iz nɒt sou big æz dʒɒn. iz

Baby as big as Helen? No, Baby is not so big as Helen;
beibi æz big æz helin? nou, beibi iz nɔt sou big æz helin;

she is only a small girl. Is John as big as his father?
fi: iz ounli ə smɔ:l gə:l. iz dʒɒn æz big æz hiz fa:ðə?

No, John is not so big as his father. Is Helen as big
nou, dʒɒn iz nɔt sou big æz hiz fa:ðə. iz helin æz big

as her mother? No, Helen is not so big as her mother.
æz hæ: mʌðə? nou, helin iz nɔt sou big æz hæ: mʌðə.

John is bigger than Helen, and Mrs. Smith is bigger
dʒɒn iz bigə ðæn helin, ənd misiz smiθ iz bigə

than John. Which is the biggest of the three children?
ðæn dʒɒn. hwɪtʃ iz ðə bigist əv ðə ˈpri: tʃɪldrən?

John is the biggest. Which is the biggest of the cities
dʒɒn iz ðə bigist. hwɪtʃ iz ðə bigist əv ðə sitiz

in Europe? London is the biggest city in Europe.
in juərəp? lʌndən iz ðə bigist siti in juərəp.

England is a country in Europe. London is the biggest
ɪŋɡlənd iz ə kʌntri in juərəp. lʌndən iz ðə bigist

city in England. Sweden is a country in Europe. Stock-
siti in ɪŋɡlənd. swi:dn iz ə kʌntri in juərəp. stɔk-

holm is the biggest city in Sweden.
houm iz ðə bigist siti in swi:dn.

Mr. Smith is English. He lives in England. Mrs. Smith
mɪstə smiθ iz ɪŋɡlɪʃ. hi: livz in ɪŋɡlənd. misiz smiθ

is English. She lives in England. Their children are
iz ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ʃi: livz in ɪŋɡlənd. ðeə tʃɪldrən a:

English. They live in England. The English live in
ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ðei liv in ɪŋɡlənd. ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ liv in

big
bigger
biggest

Helen is a **big** girl.

John is **bigger**
than Helen.

John is the **biggest**
of the children.

which... of?
= which of?

Which is the
biggest of the
three children?
= **Which** of the
three children is
the biggest?

Chapter Four (4).

lives
live

John lives in a house.

John and Helen live in a house.

England. The Danes live in Denmark. The Finlanders
ɪŋɡlənd. ðə deɪnz liv in denma:k. ðə fɪnlændəz

live in Finland. The Russians live in Russia. The
liv in fɪnlənd. ðə rʌʃənz liv in rʌʃə. ðə

Swedes live in Sweden. The Norwegians live in Norway.
swi:dz liv in swi:dn. ðə nɔ:'wi:dʒənz liv in nɔ:'wei.

The Germans live in Germany. The French live in
ðə dʒə:mənz liv in dʒə:məni. ðə frenʃ liv in

France.
fra:ns.

England is bigger than Denmark, but it is not so big as
ɪŋɡlənd ɪz bɪgə ðæn denma:k, bʌt ɪt ɪz nɒt səʊ bɪg əz

France. Norway is bigger than Denmark, but it is not
fra:ns. nɔ:'wei ɪz bɪgə ðæn denma:k, bʌt ɪt ɪz nɒt

so big as Sweden. The house of Mr. and Mrs. Smith
səʊ bɪg əz swi:dn. ðə haʊs əv mɪstə ənd mɪsɪz smɪθ

is not a big house; it is a small house. Baby is not a
ɪz nɒt ə bɪg haʊs; ɪt ɪz ə smɔ:l haʊs. beɪbɪ ɪz nɒt ə

big girl; she is only a small girl. Helen is smaller than
bɪg ɡə:l; ʃi: ɪz ɒnli ə smɔ:l ɡə:l. helɪn ɪz smɔ:lə ðæn

John, and John is smaller than his father. Helen is
dʒɒn, ənd dʒɒn ɪz smɔ:lə ðæn hɪz fa:ðə. helɪn ɪz

smaller than her mother. There are many houses in
smɔ:lə ðæn hə: mʌðə. ðeər a: meni haʊsɪz in

a big city. There are many big cities in a big country.
ə bɪg sɪti. ðeər a: meni bɪg sɪtɪz in ə bɪg kʌntri.

Denmark is not a big country; it is only a small country.
denma:k ɪz nɒt ə bɪg kʌntri; ɪt ɪz ɒnli ə smɔ:l kʌntri.

There are not many big cities in Denmark.

ðeər a: nɒt meni big sitiz in denma:k.

Mr. Smith is a man; his father is also a man. Mr.

mɪstə smɪθ ɪz ə mæn; hɪz fa:ðə ɪz ɔ:lsoʊ ə mæn. mɪstə

Smith and his father are two men. Mrs. Smith is a

smɪθ ænd hɪz fa:ðə a: tu: men. mɪsɪz smɪθ ɪz ə

woman; her sister is also a woman. Mrs. Smith and her

wʊmən; hɜ: sistə ɪz ɔ:lsoʊ ə wʊmən. mɪsɪz smɪθ ænd hɜ:

sister are two women. Boys and girls are children.

sistə a: tu: wɪmɪn. bɔɪz ænd gɜ:lz a: tʃɪldrən.

Men, women, and children are people (persons). There

men, wɪmɪn, ænd tʃɪldrən a: pi:pl (pə:snz). ðeər

are many people in England. How many people are

a: meni pi:pl in ɪŋɡlənd. haʊ meni pi:pl a:

there in England? There are forty-five (45) million people

ðeə in ɪŋɡlənd? ðeər a: fɔ:ti'faɪv mɪljən pi:pl

in England. How many people are there in Finland?

in ɪŋɡlənd. haʊ meni pi:pl a: ðeə in fɪnlənd?

There are more than three million people in Finland.

ðeər a: mɔ: ðæn θri: mɪljən pi:pl in fɪnlənd.

There are more people in England than in Denmark.

ðeər a: mɔ: pi:pl in ɪŋɡlənd ðæn in denma:k.

There are not so many people in Denmark as in Sweden.

ðeər a: nɒt soʊ meni pi:pl in denma:k əz in swi:dn.

There are six million people in Sweden. There are

ðeər a: sɪks mɪljən pi:pl in swi:dn. ðeər a:

more Swedes than Danes.

mɔ: swi:dz ðæn deɪnz.

one **man** [mæn]
two **men** [men]

one **woman**
[wʊmən]
two **women**
[wɪmɪn]

What people live in England? The English live in
hwɔt pi:pl liv in ɪŋɡlænd? ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ liv in

England. What people live in France? The French
ɪŋɡlænd. hwɔt pi:pl liv in fra:ns? ðə. frenʃ

live in France. What people live in Russia? The
liv in fra:ns. hwɔt pi:pl liv in rʌʃə? ðə

Russians live in Russia.

rʌʃənz liv in rʌʃə.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith have a son. Have they more than
mɪstə ænd mɪsɪz smɪθ hæv ə sʌn. hæv ðei mɔ: ðæn

one child? Yes, they have three children. They have
wʌn tʃaɪld? jɛs, ðei hæv θri: tʃɪldrən. ðei hæv

two girls, but only one boy. They have more girls than
tu: ɡɜ:lz, bʌt ʌnli wʌn bɔɪ. ðei hæv mɔ: ɡɜ:lz ðæn

boys. Has John more than two sisters? No, he has
bɔɪz. hæz dʒɒn mɔ: ðæn tu: sɪstəz? nʌu, hi: hæz

only two sisters. Are there more than four persons in
ʌnli tu: sɪstəz. a: ðeə mɔ: ðæn fɔ: pɜ:snz in

the family? Yes, there are five persons in the family.
ðə fæmɪli? jɛs, ðeə a: faɪv pɜ:snz in ðə fæmɪli.

What more persons are there in the family than the
hwɔt mɔ: pɜ:snz a: ðeə in ðə fæmɪli ðæn ðə

father and the mother? There are the three children.
fɑ:ðə ænd ðə maðə? ðeə a: ðə θri: tʃɪldrən.

EXERCISE A.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith and their three children — in Eng-
 land. They — in a house. Mr. Smith — in England.

The — of Mr. and Mrs. Smith has eight windows. The — of the house are in the walls. The — has two doors. The two — of the house are in the —. The house has four —. The windows and the doors are in the —. The — is the top of the house. The — of the house is the roof.

England is a —. Sweden is also a —. London is a —. Stockholm is also a —. London and Stockholm are two —. There are many — in London. London has — houses. Denmark is a country in —. Russia is also a country in —. Mr. Smith and his father are two —. Mrs. Smith and her sister are two —. The mother of Mrs. Smith is also a —. London is a — city. Copenhagen is also a — city, but Copenhagen is not so big a city — London. Helen is a big girl, but she is — — big as John.

Is Baby — big — Helen? No, Baby is — — big as Helen. Is John — big — his father? No, John is — — big — his father. John is bigger — Helen, and Mrs. Smith is bigger — John. Helen is — than John. — is the biggest of the three children? John is the — of the three children. — is the biggest of the cities in Europe? London is the — city in Europe. — is the name of the biggest city in Norway? It is —. Where — London? London is in —. — is Paris? Paris is in —. — is Stockholm? Stockholm is in —. — is Berlin? Berlin is in —. — is Moscow? Moscow is in —.

WORDS:

live
house
window
door
wall
roof
top
where?
France
French
Sweden
Swede
Germany
German
Denmark
Dane
Norway
Norwegian
Europe
England
English
Russia
Russian
Finland
Finlander
country
city
Paris
Stockholm
Berlin
Oslo
Helsinki
Helsingfors
Copenhagen
Moscow

London
big
so
as
small
men
women
people
forty-five
million
more

EXERCISE B.

What people live in England? ... What people live in Russia? ... What people live in Sweden? ... Is England bigger than Denmark? ... Is England bigger than France? ... Is Norway bigger than Sweden? ... What people live in Norway? ... Is Russia bigger than Germany? ... What people live in Germany? ... What people live in France? ... Is the house of Mr. and Mrs. Smith a big house? ... Is Baby a big girl? ... Is Helen smaller than John? ... Is Helen bigger than her mother? ... What are boys and girls? ... What are men, women, and children? ... Are there many people in England? ... How many people are there in Finland? ... Are there more people in Denmark than in Sweden? ... Are there more people in England than in Denmark? ... Are there more Danes than Swedes? ... How many boys and girls have Mr. and Mrs. Smith? ...

THE BODY

A person has four limbs. All persons have four limbs.
a pə:sn hæz fɔ: limz. ɔ:l pə:snz hæv fɔ: limz.

The four limbs are on the body. The four limbs are the
ðə fɔ: limz a: ɔn ðə bɔdi. ðə fɔ: limz a: ðə

two arms and the two legs. How many limbs has John?
tu: a:mz ænd ðə tu: legz. hau meni limz hæz dʒɔn?

John has four limbs. What are the four limbs? The four
dʒɔn hæz fɔ: limz. hwɔt a: ðə fɔ: limz? ðə fɔ:

limbs are the two arms and the two legs. On the arm
limz a: ðə tu: a:mz ænd ðə tu: legz. ɔn ði a:m

is a hand, and the hand has five fingers. Where are the
iz ə hænd, ænd ðə hænd hæz faɪv fɪŋgəz. hwɛər a: ðə

hands? The hands are on the arms. How many fingers
hændz? ðə hændz a: ɔn ði a:mz. hau meni fɪŋgəz

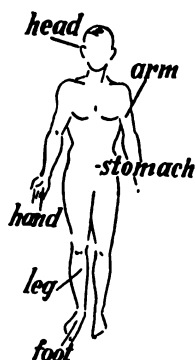
has the hand? The hand has five fingers.
hæz ðə hænd? ðə hænd hæz faɪv fɪŋgəz.

On the leg is a foot, and the foot has five toes. All legs
ɔn ðə leg iz ə fut, ænd ðə fut hæz faɪv touz. ɔ:l legz

have feet, and all feet have five toes. Where are the
hæv fi:t, ænd ɔ:l fi:t hæv faɪv touz. hwɛər a: ðə

feet? The feet are on the legs. How many toes has the
fi:t? ðə fi:t a: ɔn ðə legz. hau meni touz hæz ðə

foot? The foot has five toes. How many fingers has
fut? ðə fut hæz faɪv touz. hau meni fɪŋgəz hæz



one toe
two toes

one foot
two feet

Chapter Five (5).



's

John's hair = the hair of John.

Mrs. Smith's hair = the hair of Mrs. Smith.

Helen? She has ten fingers on her two hands. How many
helin? ʃi: hæz ten ʃɪŋgəz ɔn hə: tu: hændz. hau meni

toes has she? She has ten toes on her two feet. The body
təʊz hæz ʃi: ʃi: hæz ten təʊz ɔn hə: tu: fi:t. ðə bɒdi

has a head. What is the head? The head is the top of
hæz ə hed. hwɒt ɪz ðə hed? ðə hed ɪz ðə tɒp əv

the body. On the head many persons have hair. Not
ðə bɒdi. ɔn ðə hed meni pə:snz hæv heə. nɒt

all persons have hair; many old men have no hair.

ɔ:l pə:snz hæv heə; meni ould men hæv nou heə.

Has Mr. Smith long hair? No, he has short hair. Is Mrs.
hæz mɪstə smɪθ lɔŋ heə? nou, hi: hæz ʃɔ:t heə. ɪz mɪsɪz

Smith's hair long? Yes, she has long hair; she has longer
smɪθs heə lɔŋ? jes, ʃi: hæz lɔŋ heə; ʃi: hæz lɔŋgə

hair than Mr. Smith. Is Helen's hair also long? No, she
heə ðæn mɪstə smɪθ. ɪz helɪnz heə ɔ:lsoʊlɔŋ? nou, ʃi:

has short hair, but John's hair is shorter than Helen's.
hæz ʃɔ:t heə, bʌt dʒɒnz heə ɪz ʃɔ:tə ðæn helɪnz.

Who has most hair, Mrs. Smith or Helen or John? Mrs.
hu: hæz moʊst heə, mɪsɪz smɪθ ɔ: helɪn ɔ: dʒɒn? mɪsɪz

Smith has most hair; her hair is the longest. Has John
smɪθ hæz moʊst heə; hə: heə ɪz ðə lɔŋgɪst. hæz dʒɒn

more hair than Helen? No, Helen has more hair than
mɔ: heə ðæn helɪn? nou, helɪn hæz mɔ: heə ðæn

John, but Mrs. Smith has most hair of all the persons
dʒɒn, bʌt mɪsɪz smɪθ hæz moʊst heə əv ɔ:l ðə pə:snz

in the family. Mrs. Smith has long hair; she has much
ɪn ðə fæmɪli. mɪsɪz smɪθ hæz lɔŋ heə; ʃi: hæz mʌtʃ

hair. She has more hair than Helen. She has most hair
hɛə. ʃi: hæz mɔ: hɛə ðæn helin. ʃi: hæz moust hɛə

of all the persons in the family. Has John much hair?
əv ɔ:l ðə pɜ:snz in ðə fæmili. hæz dʒɒn mʌtʃ hɛə?

No, he has not much hair; his hair is short; but Mrs.
nou, hi: hæz nɒt mʌtʃ hɛə; hiz hɛə iz ʃɔ:t; bʌt misiz

Smith has much hair; she has more hair than Mr. Smith
smiθ hæz mʌtʃ hɛə; ʃi: hæz mɔ: hɛə ðæn mistə smiθ

and the children. Have all men and women hair? No,
ænd ðə tʃɪldrən. hæv ɔ:l men ænd wɪmɪn hɛə? nou,

not all men and women have hair; but most persons
nɒt ɔ:l men ænd wɪmɪn hæv hɛə; bʌt moust pɜ:snz

have hair.
hæv hɛə.

A person has a face. The face has two eyes and two
ə pɜ:sn hæz ə feɪs. ðə feɪs hæz tu: aɪz ænd tu:

ears. All persons have faces, and all faces have two
iəz. ɔ:l pɜ:snz hæv feɪsɪz, ænd ɔ:l feɪsɪz hæv tu:

eyes and two ears. How many eyes has Helen? Helen
aɪz ænd tu: iəz. hau meni aɪz hæz helin? helin

has two eyes; she has also two ears. Helen has also a
hæz tu: aɪz; ʃi: hæz ɔ:lsoʊ tu: iəz. helin hæz ɔ:lsoʊ ə

mouth and a nose in her face. Where are the nose and
maʊθ ænd ə nouz in hɜ: feɪs. hwɛər a: ðə nouz ænd

the mouth? They are in the face. What is the face?
ðə maʊθ? ðeɪ a: in ðə feɪs. hwɒt iz ðə feɪs?

The face is part of the head. What is on the head?
ðə feɪs iz pɑ:t əv ðə hed. hwɒt iz ɒn ðə hed?

much
 more
 most

Mrs. Smith has
much hair.

She has **more** hair
 than Helen.

She has **most** hair
 of all the persons
 in the family.

many
 more
 most

There are **many**
 people in Sweden.

There are **more**
 people in England.

There are **most**
 people in
 Germany.

Chapter Five (5).

There is hair on the head. Is the arm bigger than the
ðeər iz heə ɔn ðə hed. iz ði a:m bigə ðæn ðə

leg? No, the arm is smaller than the leg.

leg? nou, ði a:m iz smɔ:lə ðæn ðə leg.

Are the fingers part of the face? No, the fingers are
a: ðə fiŋgəz pɑ:t əv ðə feis? nou, ðə fiŋgəz a:

part of the hands. What are the hands part of? The
pɑ:t əv ðə hændz. hwɔt a: ðə hændz pɑ:t əv? ðə

hands are part of the arms. What are the ears part of?
hændz a: pɑ:t əv ði a:mz. hwɔt a: ði iəz pɑ:t əv?

The ears are part of the head. Are the feet part of the
ði iəz a: pɑ:t əv ðə hed. a: ðə fi:t pɑ:t əv ði

arms or of the legs? The feet are part of the legs. Is
a:mz ɔ: əv ðə legz? ðə fi:t a: pɑ:t əv ðə legz. iz

the baby a boy or a girl? She is a girl. Is Mr. Smith
ðə beibi ə bɔi ɔ: ə gɜ:l? si: iz ə gɜ:l. iz mistə smiθ

young or old? He is young.

jʌŋ ɔ: ould? hi: iz jʌŋ.



The neck is part of the body. On the neck is the head.
ðə nek iz pɑ:t əv ðə bɔdi. ɔn ðə nek iz ðə hed.

The stomach is also part of the body. The stomach is
ðə stʌmək iz ɔ:lsou pɑ:t əv ðə bɔdi. ðə stʌmək iz

at the front of the body. The back is also part of the
æt ðə frʌnt əv ðə bɔdi. ðə bæk iz ɔ:lsou pɑ:t əv ðə

body. The back is at the back of the body. The arms
bɔdi. ðə bæk iz æt ðə bæk əv ðə bɔdi. ði a:mz

are at the sides of the body. Where is the neck? The
a: æt ðə saɪdz əv ðə bɔdi. hwɛər iz ðə nek? ðə

neck is at the top of the body. Is the back at the top

nek iz æt ðə tɒp əv ðə bɒdi. iz ðə bæk æt ðə tɒp

of the body? No, it is at the back of the body. Where

əv ðə bɒdi? nou, it iz æt ðə bæk əv ðə bɒdi. hwɛər

is the stomach? The stomach is at the front of the body.

iz ðə stʌmək? ðə stʌmək iz æt ðə frʌnt əv ðə bɒdi.

The face is at the front of the head, and the ears are at

ðə feɪs iz æt ðə frʌnt əv ðə hed, and ði iəz a: æt

the sides of the head. Where are the arms? The arms

ðə saɪdz əv ðə hed. hwɛər a: ði a:mz? ði a:mz

are at the sides of the body.

a: æt ðə saɪdz əv ðə bɒdi.

EXERCISE A.

The body has four —. The four limbs of the body are the two — and the two —. On the arm is a —, and the hand has five —. The foot has five —. There are ten toes on the two —. On the — is hair. The head has a —. The face has two —, two —, a —, and a —. Mrs. Smith has — hair; her hair is — than Helen's; she has the — hair of all the persons in the family. John's hair is —; it is — than Helen's hair, but Baby has the — hair of all the children. — Helen much hair? No, she has not — hair, but she has — hair than John. Mrs. Smith has — hair of all the persons in the family.

WORDS:

body
all
limb
arm
leg
on
or
hand
finger
foot
feet
toe
head

part
at
hair
long
short
much
face
eye
ear
mouth
nose
neck
stomach
front
back
side
most

There are not — people in Denmark. There are — people in Sweden — in Denmark, but there are — people in Germany. Mr. — house is in England. Mrs. — hair is long. The windows are in the walls — the house. The roof — — house is at the top. The — is at the top of the body, and on the neck is the —. The arms are at the — of the body. The back is at the — of the —. The stomach is at the — of the body. Are the hands part of the arms — of the legs? — are part of the arms. Is Baby a boy — a girl? She is a —. — are the feet part of? They are part of the —. What are the fingers — of? — are part of the hands. — is the face? The face is — — front of the head. — all persons faces? Yes, — persons have faces, and all faces have two —, two —, a —, and a —. Have — persons hair? No, but — persons have hair.

EXERCISE B.

How many limbs has a person? ... What are the four limbs? ... Where are the fingers? ... What are the hands part of? ... On what part of the body are the toes? ... How many fingers and toes has Helen? ... How many legs has a person? ... What is in the face? ... Where is the stomach? ... Where are the arms? ... Is the neck at the top of the body? ... Where is the head? ... What is on the head? ... Has Helen more hair than Mrs. Smith? ... Has Mrs. Smith much hair? ... Which has most hair of all the persons in the family?

... Which of the children has the shortest hair? ...
Have all people hair? ... What is at the back of the
body? ... Are there many people in Denmark? ... Are
there more people in England than in Germany? ...
Which of the children is the biggest? ... Which is the
smallest of the children? ... Is Helen bigger than
John? ...

THE GARDEN

tree

branch

tall = high

tall
highBig persons are
tall.Big houses are
high.

Mr. Smith's house is in a garden. In the garden there
mistə smiþs haus iz in ə ga:dn. in ðə ga:dn ðeər

are many trees. There are big trees and there are
a: meni tri:z. ðeər a: big tri:z and ðeər a:

small trees in the garden. The big trees are tall. The
smɔ:l tri:z in ðə ga:dn. ðə big tri:z a: tɔ:l. ðə

small trees are low. Where is Mr. Smith's house? It is
smɔ:l tri:z a: lou. hwɛər iz mistə smiþs haus? it iz

in a garden. Are there only tall trees in the garden?
in ə ga:dn. a: ðeə ounli tɔ:l tri:z in ðə ga:dn?

No, there are also low trees. Is Mr. Smith's house a
nou, ðeər a: ɔ:lsou lou tri:z. iz mistə smiþs haus ə

high house? No, it is not high; it is only low, but it
hai haus? nou, it iz nɒt hai; it iz ounli lou, bʌt it

is higher than the low trees. The tall trees are higher
iz haia ðæn ðə lou tri:z. ðə tɔ:l tri:z a: haia

than the house. Are all the trees in the garden tall?
ðæn ðə haus. a: ɔ:l ðə tri:z in ðə ga:dn tɔ:l?

No, some of the trees are tall, and some of the trees
nou, sam əv ðə tri:z a: tɔ:l, and sam əv ðə tri:z

are low. Are all persons big? No, some persons are
a: lou. a: ɔ:l pə:snz big? nou, sam pə:snz a:

big, and some persons are small. Mr. Smith is tall,
big, and sam pə:snz a: smɔ:l. mistə smiþ iz tɔ:l,

but Mrs. Smith is not so tall. She is taller than John
bʌt mɪsɪz smɪθ ɪz nɒt sou tə:l. ʃi: ɪz tə:lə ðæn dʒɒn

and Helen. Are all persons tall? No, some persons
ænd helɪn. a: ɔ:l pə:snz tə:l? nou, sʌm pə:snz

are tall, and some persons are short.

a: tə:l, ænd sʌm pə:snz a: ʃɔ:t.

A tree is a plant; a flower is a plant. Trees are tall
ə tri: ɪz ə plɑ:nt; ə flauə ɪz ə plɑ:nt. tri:z a: tə:l

plants. A bush is also a plant. Flowers and grass are
plɑ:nts. ə buʃ ɪz ɔ:lsou ə plɑ:nt. flauəz ænd grɑ:s a:

low plants. Are trees the only plants in the garden?
lou plɑ:nts. a: tri:z ði ounli plɑ:nts ɪn ðə gɑ:dn?

No, there are also other plants in the garden. Is Helen
nou, ðeər a: ɔ:lsou ʌðə plɑ:nts ɪn ðə gɑ:dn. ɪz helɪn

the only girl in the family? No, there is also another
ðɪ ounli gə:l ɪn ðə fæmɪli? nou, ðeər ɪz ɔ:lsou ə'nʌðə

girl in the family; the baby is the other girl in the
gə:l ɪn ðə fæmɪli; ðə beɪbi ɪz ðɪ ʌðə gə:l ɪn ðə

family. There is only one son in the family; John is
fæmɪli. ðeər ɪz ounli wʌn sʌn ɪn ðə fæmɪli; dʒɒn ɪz

the only son in the family.

ðɪ ounli sʌn ɪn ðə fæmɪli.

Which of the plants in the garden are the biggest? The
hwɪtʃ əv ðə plɑ:nts ɪn ðə gɑ:dn a: ðə bɪgɪst? ðə

trees are the biggest plants. What are the other plants
tri:z a: ðə bɪgɪst plɑ:nts. hwɒt a: ðɪ ʌðə plɑ:nts

in the garden? The other plants are the flowers, the
ɪn ðə gɑ:dn? ðɪ ʌðə plɑ:nts a: ðə flauəz, ðə

low
short

Small trees and
small houses are
low.

Small persons are
short.





one branch
two branches

one bush
two bushes

one leaf
two leaves



bushes, and the grass. The trees and the flowers have
bʊʃɪz, and ðə grɑ:s. ðə tri:z and ðə flauəz hæv

leaves. The colour of a leaf is green. Are the bushes
li:vz. ðə kʌlə əv ə li:f iz gri:n. a: ðə bʊʃɪz

tall plants? No, the bushes are low plants; they have
tɔ:l plɑ:nts? nou, ðə bʊʃɪz a: lou plɑ:nts; ðei hæv

branches and leaves. Have flowers branches? No,
brɑ:nʃɪz and li:vz. hæv flauəz brɑ:nʃɪz? nou,

flowers have no branches, but they have leaves. Have
flauəz hæv nou brɑ:nʃɪz, bʌt ðei hæv li:vz. hæv

trees branches? Yes, trees have branches as well as
tri:z brɑ:nʃɪz? jes, tri:z hæv brɑ:nʃɪz əz wel əz

leaves. What is the colour of grass? The colour of
li:vz. hwɒt iz ðə kʌlə əv grɑ:s? ðə kʌlə əv

grass is green. Have the trees and the bushes leaves?
grɑ:s iz gri:n. hæv ðə tri:z and ðə bʊʃɪz li:vz?

Yes, both the trees and the bushes have leaves.
jes, bəʊθ ðə tri:z and ðə bʊʃɪz hæv li:vz.

What is the colour of a leaf? The colour of a leaf is
hwɒt iz ðə kʌlə əv ə li:f? ðə kʌlə əv ə li:f iz

green. Are there flowers only in the garden? No,
gri:n. a: ðeə flauəz ounli ɪn ðə gɑ:dn? nou,

Mrs. Smith has some flowers in the house; there are
mɪsɪz smɪθ hæz sʌm flauəz ɪn ðə haʊs; ðeər a:

flowers both in the garden and in the house. There
flauəz bəʊθ ɪn ðə gɑ:dn and ɪn ðə haʊs. ðeər

are flowers in the house as well as in the garden. Are
a: flauəz ɪn ðə haʊs əz wel əz ɪn ðə gɑ:dn. a:

both Helen and Alice girls? Yes, both Helen and Alice
bouþ helin and ælis gæ:lz? jes, bouþ helin and ælis
 are girls. John and Helen as well as the baby are
a: gæ:lz. dʒɒn and helin æz wel æz ðə beibi a:
 children. Have the girls short hair? Yes, both of the
tʃɪldrən. hæv ðə gæ:lz ʃɔ:t heə? jes, bouþ əv ðə
 girls have short hair. Both Helen and the baby have
gæ:lz hæv ʃɔ:t heə. bouþ helin and ðə beibi hæv
 short hair.
ʃɔ:t heə.

Some trees in the garden have fruit. A pear is a fruit.
səm tri:z in ðə ɡɑ:dn hæv fru:t. ə peə iz ə fru:t.

An apple is a fruit. What is a pear? A pear is a fruit.
ən æpl iz ə fru:t. hwɒt iz ə peə? ə peə iz ə fru:t.

Are there other fruits? Yes, the apple is another fruit.
a: ðeə ʌðə fru:ts? jes, ði æpl iz ə'nʌðə fru:t.

The year has four seasons. Summer is a season, winter
ðə jɪə hæz fɔ: si:znz. sʌmə iz ə si:zn, wɪntə

is a season, spring is a season, and autumn is a season.
iz ə si:zn, sprɪŋ iz ə si:zn, and ɔ:təm iz ə si:zn.

The summer-months are June, July, and August. The
ðə sʌməmʌnθs a: dʒu:n, dʒu'laɪ, and ɔ:gəst. ði

autumn-months are September, October, and November.
ɔ:təmʌnθs a: səp'tembə, ɔk'təʊbə, and nəʊ'vembə.

The winter-months are December, January, and Fe-
ðə wɪntəmʌnθs a: dɪ'sembə, dʒænjuəri, and fe-

bruary. The spring-months are March, April, and May.
bruəri. ðə sprɪŋmʌnθs a: mɑ:ʃ, eɪprɪl, and meɪ.

both - and
as well as

Both Helen and
the baby are girls.

Helen and John **as**
well as the baby
are children.

both of

Both of the girls
are young.





are in blossom =
have flowers

when?
when

When is spring?

Spring is **when**
the fruit trees are
in blossom.

How many seasons has a year? A year has four seasons.
hau meni si:znz hæz ə jiə? ə jiə hæz fɔ: si:znz.

What are the four seasons? The four seasons are spring,
hwɒt a: ðə fɔ: si:znz? ðə fɔ: si:znz a: sprɪŋ,
summer, autumn, and winter. How long is a season?
samə, ɔ:təm, ənd wɪntə. hau lɔŋ ɪz ə si:zn?

A season is three months. When is summer? Summer
ə si:zn ɪz pri: mʌnθs. hwɛn ɪz samə? samə

is the months of June, July, and August. When is
ɪz ðə mʌnθs əv dʒu:n, dʒu'laɪ, ənd ɔ:gəst. hwɛn ɪz

winter? Winter is the months of December, January,
wɪntə? wɪntə ɪz ðə mʌnθs əv dɪ'sembə, dʒænjuəri,

and February. In spring the fruit trees are in blossom;
ənd febrʊəri. ɪn sprɪŋ ðə fru:t tri:z a: ɪn blɒsəm;

the fruit trees are in blossom when it is spring.
ðə fru:t tri:z a: ɪn blɒsəm hwɛn ɪt ɪz sprɪŋ.

The trees have no leaves when it is winter. In summer
ðə tri:z hæv nʌu li:vz hwɛn ɪt ɪz wɪntə. ɪn samə

and autumn the trees have fruit. When are the fruit
ənd ɔ:təm ðə tri:z hæv fru:t. hwɛn a: ðə fru:t

trees in blossom? The fruit trees are in blossom in
tri:z ɪn blɒsəm? ðə fru:t tri:z a: ɪn blɒsəm ɪn

spring. When have the trees fruit? The trees have
sprɪŋ. hwɛn hæv ðə tri:z fru:t? ðə tri:z hæv

fruit in summer and in autumn. Have the bushes also
fru:t ɪn samə ənd ɪn ɔ:təm. hæv ðə buʃɪz ɔ:lsəʊ

fruit? Yes, some of the bushes have fruit. The fruits
fru:t? jɛs, sʌm əv ðə buʃɪz hæv fru:t. ðə fru:ts

of the bushes are berries. What is a berry? A berry
əv ðə buʃɪz a: berɪz. hʊt ɪz ə berɪ? ə berɪ

is the small fruit of a bush.

ɪz ðə smɔ:l fru:t əv ə buʃ.

In winter it is cold. On some days in winter there is
ɪn wɪntə ɪt ɪz kəʊld. ɒn sʌm deɪz ɪn wɪntə ðeər ɪz

snow. The colour of snow is white. Is it warm in
snəʊ. ðə kʌlə əv snəʊ ɪz hwaɪt. ɪz ɪt wɔ:m ɪn

winter? No, it is cold in winter, but in summer it is
wɪntə? nəʊ, ɪt ɪz kəʊld ɪn wɪntə, bʌt ɪn sʌmə ɪt ɪz

warm. What is the colour of snow? The colour of
wɔ:m. hʊt ɪz ðə kʌlə əv snəʊ? ðə kʌlə əv

snow is white. Is snow cold or warm? Snow is cold.
snəʊ ɪz hwaɪt. ɪz snəʊ kəʊld ɔ: wɔ:m? snəʊ ɪz kəʊld.

Is there snow in summer? No, in summer it is warm,
ɪz ðeə snəʊ ɪn sʌmə? nəʊ, ɪn sʌmə ɪt ɪz wɔ:m,

and there is no snow.

ænd ðeər ɪz nəʊ snəʊ.

one day
 two days
 one berry
 two berries



berries

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Smith's house is in a —. In the — are many trees.
 Are all the — in the garden small? No, there are big
 — and small —. The big trees are —, and the small
 trees are —. Mr. Smith's house is not high; it is —,
 but it is — than the low trees. Trees and flowers are —,

WORDS:

garden
 tree
 flower
 bush

grass
plant
leaf
branch
pear
apple
berry
fruit
white
green
colour
summer
winter
spring
autumn
season
snow
blossom
cold
warm
tall
high
low
other
an
another
some
both
well
when?
when

and bushes are also —. Helen is not the only — in the family; there is also — girl in the family; the baby is the — girl in the family. John is the — son in the family.

Trees have —. Bushes have also —. The colour of a leaf is —. The — of leaves is green. Trees and bushes have —. — have no branches. Trees have both leaves and —. Bushes have — leaves — branches. — trees — bushes have leaves. Bushes — well — trees have leaves.

Flowers are not green; they have many — colours. Mrs. Smith has some flowers in the house, and she has also — flowers in the garden. She has flowers in the house — — — in the garden. Many — have fruit. A pear is a —, and an apple is a —. Pears and apples are —.

— many seasons are there in a year? There are — seasons in a year. What are the four — of the year? They are: —, —, —, and —. Which — the months are summer-months? The summer-months are —, —, and —. — — the months are autumn-months? The autumn-months are —, —, and —. — is winter? The winter-months are —, —, and —. — of the months are spring-months? The spring-months are —, —, and —. When — spring? Spring is — the fruit trees are in —. The trees have fruit in — and in —. Is it warm — cold in winter? In winter it is —, and on some days there is —. — is the colour of snow? The colour of snow is —. — — cold in summer? No, in summer it is —.

EXERCISE B.

Where is Mr. Smith's house? ... Are all the trees in the garden tall? ... Is Mr. Smith's house high? ... Are all persons big? ... What is a tree? ... What are the other plants in the garden? ... What is the colour of a leaf? ... Have trees and bushes leaves? ... Have they also branches? ... Has Mrs. Smith flowers in the garden only? ... Are all persons tall? ... Are both of the parents young? ... Are both John and Helen children? ... What are pears and apples? ... What are the fruits of bushes? ... What is a berry? ... How many seasons has a year? ... What are the four seasons? ... When is summer? ... When is winter? ... When have the trees fruit? ... When are the trees in blossom? ...

THE WEEK

The day after Sunday is Monday. The day after
ðə dei a:ftə sʌndi iz mʌndi. ðə dei a:ftə

Monday is Tuesday. The day before Sunday is Saturday.
mʌndi iz tʃu:zdi. ðə dei bi'fɔ: sʌndi iz sætədi.

The day before Saturday is Friday. The day after
ðə dei bi'fɔ: sætədi iz fraidi. ðə dei a:ftə

Wednesday is Thursday. The day before Wednesday
wenzdi iz þə:zdi. ðə dei bi'fɔ: wenzdi

is Tuesday. It is Wednesday to-day. The day after
iz tʃu:zdi. it iz wenzdi tə'dei. ðə dei a:ftə

to-day is Thursday. It is Thursday to-morrow. The
tə'dei iz þə:zdi. it iz þə:zdi tə'mɔru. ðə

day before to-day was Tuesday. It was Tuesday
dei bi'fɔ: tə'dei wɔz tʃu:zdi. it wɔz tʃu:zdi

yesterday. The day before yesterday was Monday. The
jestədi. ðə dei bi'fɔ: jestədi wɔz mʌndi. ðə

day after to-morrow is Friday.
dei a:ftə tə'mɔru iz fraidi.

What day is to-day? To-day is Wednesday. What
hwɒt dei iz tə'dei? tə'dei iz wenzdi. hwɒt

day was yesterday? Yesterday was Tuesday. What
dei wɔz jestədi? jestədi wɔz tʃu:zdi. hwɒt

day was the day before yesterday? The day before
dei wɔz ðə dei bi'fɔ: jestədi? ðə dei bi'fɔ:

is
are
was
were

To-day John **is** at school.

Yesterday John **was** not at school.

To-day the children **are** at school.

Yesterday the children **were** not at school.

yesterday was Monday. What day is to-morrow?
jestadi wɔz mɔndi. hwɔt dei iz tə'mɔrou?

To-morrow is Thursday. What day is the day after
tə'mɔrou iz þə:zdi. hwɔt dei iz ðə dei a:ftə

to-morrow? The day after to-morrow is Friday.
tə'mɔrou? ðə dei a:ftə tə'mɔrou iz fraidi.

John and Helen are at school to-day. They go to school
dʒɔn ənd helin a: ət sku:l tə'dei. dei gou tə sku:l

every day of the week except on Saturdays and Sundays.
evri dei əv ðə wi:k ik'sept ɔn sætədiz ənd sʌndiz.

They go to school every month of the year except in
dei gou tə sku:l evri mʌnθ əv ðə jɪə ik'sept in

July and August. To-day is Wednesday; John goes to
dʒu'lai ənd ɔ:gəst. tə'dei iz wenzdi; dʒɔn gouz tə

school on Wednesdays. Both John and Helen go to
sku:l ɔn wenzdiz. bəʊθ dʒɔn ənd helin gou tə

school on Wednesdays. The day before yesterday was
sku:l ɔn wenzdiz. ðə dei bi'fɔ: jestadi wɔz

Monday. John was at school on Monday. John and
mɔndi. dʒɔn wɔz ət sku:l ɔn mɔndi. dʒɔn ənd

Helen were both at school on Monday. Was Helen at
helin wə: bəʊθ ət sku:l ɔn mɔndi. wɔz helin ət

school the day before yesterday? Yes, she was. Were
sku:l ðə dei bi'fɔ: jestadi? jes, ʃi: wɔz. wə:

both of the children at school on Monday? Yes, they
bəʊθ əv ðə tʃɪldrən ət sku:l ɔn mɔndi? jes, dei

were both at school on Monday. John is at school
wə: bəʊθ ət sku:l ɔn mɔndi. dʒɔn iz ət sku:l

goes
go
went

He **goes** every day.

They **go** every day.

He **went** yester-
day.

They **went**
yesterday.

Chapter Seven (7).

does
do

He **does**.
They **do**.

He is. **Is** he?
They are. **Are**
they?

He has. **Has** he?
They have. **Have**
they?

He learns. **Does** he
learn?
They learn. **Do**
they **learn**?

He goes. **Does**
he **go**?
They go. **Do** they
go?

both of = both

Both of the
children went to
school = **both** the
children went to
school.



book

to-day. He also went to school the day before yesterday.
tə'dei. hi: ɔ:lsoʊ went tə sku:l ðə dei bi'fɔ: jɛstədi.

Both the children went to school on Monday.
bəʊp ðə tʃildrən went tə sku:l ɒn mʌndi.

The schools in England are English. The schools in
ðə sku:lz in ɪŋɡlənd a: ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ðə sku:lz in

France are French. In some French schools the children
fra:ns a: frenʃ. in sʌm frenʃ sku:lz ðə tʃildrən

learn English. John goes to an English school. He
lə:n ɪŋɡlɪʃ. dʒɒn ɡoʊz tə ən ɪŋɡlɪʃ sku:l. hi:

learns French at school. Does John go to school? Yes,
lə:nz frenʃ ət sku:l. dʌz dʒɒn ɡoʊ tə sku:l? jɛs,

he does; he goes to school every day except on Satur-
hi:, dʌz; hi: ɡoʊz tə sku:l evri dei ik'sept ɒn sətə-

days and Sundays. Does Helen go to school? Yes, she
diz ənd sʌndɪz. dʌz helɪn ɡoʊ tə sku:l? jɛs, ʃi:

does; she also goes to school. Does John learn French?
dʌz; ʃi: ɔ:lsoʊ ɡoʊz tə sku:l. dʌz dʒɒn lə:n frenʃ?

Yes, he does; he learns French at school. Do both the
jɛs, hi: dʌz; hi: lə:nz frenʃ ət sku:l. du: bəʊp ðə

children learn French? No, only John learns French;
tʃildrən lə:n frenʃ? nʌʊ, ɒnli dʒɒn lə:nz frenʃ;

Helen is too young to learn French; she is only ten years
helɪn ɪz tu: jʌŋ tə lə:n frenʃ; ʃi: ɪz ɒnli ten jɪəz

old. Do the French children learn English? Yes, they
əʊld. du: ðə frenʃ tʃildrən lə:n ɪŋɡlɪʃ? jɛs, ðei

do; they learn English at school.
du:; ðei lə:n ɪŋɡlɪʃ ət sku:l.

The schools in Denmark are Danish. Many Danish
ðə sku:lz in denma:k a: deiniʃ. meni deiniʃ

children learn English at school. The children
tʃildrən læ:n ɪŋɡlɪʃ æt sku:l. ðə tʃildrən

learn to read at school. They read books. They
læ:n tə ri:d æt sku:l. ðei ri:d buks. ðei

also learn to write. The big children write with
ɔ:lsoʊ læ:n tə rait. ðə biɡ tʃildrən rait wið

pens and ink. The small children write with pencils.
pens ənd ɪŋk. ðə smɔ:l tʃildrən rait wið pensilz.

They write on paper. What does John do at school?
ðei rait ɒn peɪpə. hwɒt dʌz dʒɒn du: æt sku:l?

He learns to read and to write. What does Helen do
hi: læ:nz tə ri:d ənd tə rait. hwɒt dʌz helin du:

at school? She learns to read and to write. What do
æt sku:l? ʃi: læ:nz tə ri:d ənd tə rait. hwɒt du:

the other children do at school? They also learn to
ði ʌðə tʃildrən du: æt sku:l? ðei ɔ:lsoʊ læ:n tə

read and to write. What does John learn to do? He
ri:d ənd tə rait. hwɒt dʌz dʒɒn læ:n tə du:? hi:

learns to read and to write. What does Helen learn
læ:nz tə ri:d ənd tə rait. hwɒt dʌz helin læ:n

to do? She learns to read and to write. What do the
tə du:? ʃi: læ:nz tə ri:d ənd tə rait. hwɒt du: ði

other children learn to do? They also learn to read
ʌðə tʃildrən læ:n tə du:? ðei ɔ:lsoʊ læ:n tə ri:d

and to write.
ənd tə rait.



ball



to do
to read
to write

What does John
learn **to do** at
school?

He learns **to read**
and **to write**.

a
the [ðə]
to [tə] } before

b
c
d
f
g
h
j
k
l
m
n
p
q
r
s
t
v
w
x
y = [j]
u = [ju]

an
the [ði]
to [tu] } before

a
e
i
o
u
(h)

a man
an ink-stand
a young [jʌŋ] man
an old man
the [ðə] man
the [ði] ink-stand
the [ðə] young
[jʌŋ] man
the [ði] old man
to [tə] school
to [tu] an English
school

What does John do on Sundays? On Sundays he reads
hwɒt dʌz dʒɒn du: ɒn sʌndɪz? ɒn sʌndɪz hi: rɪ:dz

a book or plays with a ball in the garden. What does
ə buk ɔ: pleɪz wɪð ə bɔ:l ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn. hwɒt dʌz

Helen do on Sundays? She plays with her doll, or she
helɪn du: ɒn sʌndɪz? ʃi: pleɪz wɪð hə: dɒl, ɔ: ʃi:

and John play with their ball. What do children do
ænd dʒɒn pleɪ wɪð ðeə bɔ:l. hwɒt du: tʃɪldrən du:

when they are not at school? They read their school-
hwen ðeɪ a: nɒt æt sku:l? ðeɪ rɪ:d ðeə sku:l-

books and play in the garden and in the house with
buks ænd pleɪ ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn ænd ɪn ðə haʊs wɪð

dolls and with balls. What does John read? He reads
dɒlz ænd wɪð bɔ:lz. hwɒt dʌz dʒɒn rɪ:d? hi: rɪ:dz

books. What does Helen write with? She writes with
buks. hwɒt dʌz helɪn raɪt wɪð? ʃi: raɪts wɪð

a pen and ink.

ə pen ænd ɪŋk.

Where is the ink? The ink is in the ink-stand. What
hweər ɪz ðɪ ɪŋk? ðɪ ɪŋk ɪz ɪn ðɪ ɪŋkstænd. hwɒt

is the colour of ink? The colour of ink is blue. What
ɪz ðə kʌlə əv ɪŋk? ðə kʌlə əv ɪŋk ɪz blu:. hwɒt

is the colour of John's eyes? They are also blue. Many
ɪz ðə kʌlə əv dʒɒnz aɪz? ðeɪ a: ɔ:lsoʊ blu:. meni

people in England have blue eyes. What do the small
pi:pl ɪn ɪŋɡlənd hæv blu: aɪz. hwɒt du: ðə smɔ:l

children write with? They write with pencils. What
tʃɪldrən raɪt wɪð? ðeɪ raɪt wɪð pensɪlz. hwɒt

do the children write on? They write on paper.

du: ðə tʃɪldrən raɪt ɒn? ðeɪ raɪt ɒn peɪpə.

Does John go to school on Sundays? No, he does not;

dʌz dʒɒn ɡəʊ tə sku:l ɒn sʌndɪz? nəʊ, hi: dʌz nɒt;

on Sundays he is in the garden, or he reads a book in

ɒn sʌndɪz hi: ɪz ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn, ɔ: hi: ri:dz ə buk ɪn

the house. Does Helen also read on Sundays? No, she

ðə haʊs. dʌz helɪn ɔ:lsoʊ ri:d ɒn sʌndɪz? nəʊ, ʃi:

does not; she plays with a ball in the garden or with

dʌz nɒt; ʃi: pleɪz wɪð ə bɔ:l ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn ɔ: wɪð

her doll. Does Baby play with a ball? No, she does

hə: dɒl. dʌz beɪbi pleɪ wɪð ə bɔ:l? nəʊ, ʃi: dʌz

not; she is too small to play with a ball; she plays with

nɒt; ʃi: ɪz tu: smɔ:l tə pleɪ wɪð ə bɔ:l; ʃi: pleɪz wɪð

a small doll and with her toes. Does John play with

ə smɔ:l dɒl ænd wɪð hə: tu:z. dʌz dʒɒn pleɪ wɪð

a doll? No, he does not; boys do not play with dolls.

ə dɒl? nəʊ, hi: dʌz nɒt; bɔɪz du: nɒt pleɪ wɪð dɒlz.

Does John learn German at school? No, he does not;

dʌz dʒɒn læ:n dʒə:mən æt sku:l? nəʊ, hi: dʌz nɒt;

he learns French. Do the small children write with

hi: læ:nʒ frenʃ. du: ðə smɔ:l tʃɪldrən raɪt wɪð

pens and ink? No, they do not; they are too small to

penz ænd ɪŋk? nəʊ, ðeɪ du: nɒt; ðeɪ a: tu: smɔ:l tə

write with pens and ink. Do the parents go to school?

raɪt wɪð penz ænd ɪŋk. du: ðə peərənts ɡəʊ tə sku:l?

No, they do not; they are too old to go to school, but

nəʊ, ðeɪ du: nɒt; ðeɪ a: tu: ould tə ɡəʊ tə sku:l, bʌt

does not
do not

Helen is **not** a boy.
They **are not** old.

The baby **has not**
much hair.

They **have not**
many children.

She **does not read**.
They **do not read**.

He **does not write**.
They **do not write**.

too
to

Too old to go to school.

they went to school when they were children. John
ðei went tə sku:l hwen ðei wə: tʃɪldrən. dʒɒn

does not go to school on Sundays. Helen does not learn
dʌz nɒt ɡoʊ tə sku:l ɒn sʌndɪz. helɪn dʌz nɒt lə:n

Russian at school. The children in England do not learn
rʌʃən æt sku:l. ðə tʃɪldrən ɪn ɪŋlənd du: nɒt lə:n

Russian at school. Baby does not go to school; she is
rʌʃən æt sku:l. beɪbi dʌz nɒt ɡoʊ tə sku:l; ʃi: ɪz

too young to go to school; she is only six months old.
tu: ʃʌŋ tə ɡoʊ tə sku:l; ʃi: ɪz ɒnli sɪks mʌnθs ould.

John's parents do not go to school; they are too old
dʒɒnz peərənts du: nɒt ɡoʊ tə sku:l; ðei a: tu: ould

to go to school, but when they were young, they went
tə ɡoʊ tə sku:l, bʌt hwen ðei wə: ʃʌŋ, ðei went

to school. John and Helen go to school; they are not
tə sku:l. dʒɒn ənd helɪn ɡoʊ tə sku:l; ðei a: nɒt

too old to go to school.

tu: ould tə ɡoʊ tə sku:l.

Do all the children in the school write with pens and
du: ɔ:l ðə tʃɪldrən ɪn ðə sku:l raɪt wɪð penz ənd

ink? All the children write with pens and ink except
ɪŋk? ɔ:l ðə tʃɪldrən raɪt wɪð penz ənd ɪŋk ɪk'sept

the small children; they are too young to write with
ðə smɔ:l tʃɪldrən; ðei a: tu: ʃʌŋ tə raɪt wɪð

pens and ink. What do the small children learn to write
penz ənd ɪŋk. hwɒt du: ðə smɔ:l tʃɪldrən lə:n tə raɪt

with? They learn to write with pencils. What do
wɪð? ðei lə:n tə raɪt wɪð pensɪlz. hwɒt du:

they write on? They write on paper. What is the
ðei rait ɔn? ðei rait ɔn peipə. hwɔt iz ðə

colour of the paper? The colour of the paper is white.
kʌlə əv ðə peipə? ðə kʌlə əv ðə peipə iz hwaɪt.

Are the parents too old to play? No, they are not.
a: ðə peərənts tu: ould tə pleɪ? nou, ðei a: nɒt.

Mrs. Smith plays with her baby, and Mr. Smith plays
misɪz smɪθ pleɪz wɪð hɜ: beɪbi, ənd mɪstə smɪθ pleɪz

with John and Helen in the garden with a ball.
wɪð dʒɔn ənd helɪn ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dən wɪð ə bɔ:l.

EXERCISE A.

The day — Sunday is Monday. The day — Sunday is Saturday. The day — Saturday is Sunday. The day — Friday is Saturday. The day — Friday is Thursday. The day — Wednesday is Thursday. The day — Wednesday is Tuesday. To-day — Wednesday, and — is Thursday. To-morrow is Friday, and — is Thursday. To-day — Monday, and — was Sunday. Yesterday — Tuesday, and to-day — Wednesday. To-day is Thursday, — is Friday, and the — — — is Saturday. To-day is Tuesday; — was Monday, and the — — — was Sunday.

To-day is Wednesday; John and Helen are — school to-day. John — to school every day — on Saturdays

WORDS:

after
before
to-day
to-morrow
yesterday
school
Danish
learn
read
write
book
pencil
pen
ink
ink-stand
paper
play
doll
ball
blue
with
to
too
every
except
go
goes
went
was
were
do
does

and Sundays. John and Helen — to school — day except on Saturdays and Sundays. John — to school the day before yesterday. John and Helen — to school the day before yesterday. At some French schools the children — English. John — French at school. The children — books. John — English and French books. Helen does not — French at school; she is only ten —. The ink is in the —. The colour of the ink is —. The colour of John's eyes is also —. — John learn Russian at school? No, he — not learn Russian. — the French children learn English at school? Yes, some —. — the English children learn Russian? No, they — not. — they learn French? Yes, they —. What — the children learn at school? They learn — read and — write. What — the big children write with? They write with — and —. — the small children also write with pens and ink? No, they — not write with pens and ink. What — they write with? They write with —. What — John write on? He writes on —. What — Helen write on? She also — on paper. What — John do at school? He — to read and to write. What does Helen — at school? She also learns — read and — write.

What — the children do on Sundays? They — with balls or with dolls. Where — the children play? They — in the garden or in the house. — John play with dolls? No, he — — play with dolls; he — with a ball or — a book. Does the baby — to school? No, she is — young to go to school. Are the parents — young — go to school? No, they are not — young — go to school; they are — old. — Helen old? No, Helen —

old. — Helen learn French? No, Helen — not learn French. — John a boy? Yes, John — a boy. — he learn French? Yes, he — French. Are Helen and Baby old? No, Helen and Baby — — old. — the English children learn Russian? No, the English children — not learn Russian. — Helen and Baby sisters? Yes, Helen and Baby — sisters. — the children learn French? John — French; Helen — not learn French; she is — young — learn French; she is — ten years old. — John three sisters? No, John — — three sisters. — Helen and Alice two brothers? No, they — — two brothers; they have only one.

EXERCISE B.

When do the children go to school? ... Were the children at school yesterday? ... Is John at school today? ... What day is to-morrow? ... What do the children learn at school? ... Do they learn French in the English schools? ... Do the children in France learn English? ... What do the big children write with? ... What do the small children write with? ... What do they write on? ... What does John read? ... Does Baby go to school? ... Do the parents go to school? ... Are John and Helen too young to go to school? ... What do the children do after school? ... Where do they play? ... What does Baby play with? ... Does she play with a ball? ...

THE CLOCK

A day has twelve hours. A night has also twelve hours.
a dei hæz twelv auæ. a nait hæz ɔ:lsou twelv auæ.

A day and a night have twenty-four (24) hours. An
a dei ænd a nait hæv twenti'fɔ: auæ. æn

hour has sixty (60) minutes, and a minute has sixty (60)
auæ hæz siksti minits, ænd a minit hæz siksti

seconds. How many hours has a day? It has twelve
sekændz. hau meni auæ hæz a dei? it hæz twelv

hours. How many hours have a day and a night?
auæ. hau meni auæ hæv a dei ænd a nait?

A day and a night have twenty-four (24) hours. How
a dei ænd a nait hæv twenti'fɔ: auæ. hau

many minutes are there in an hour? There are sixty (60)
meni minits a: ðeə in æn auæ? ðeə a: siksti

minutes in an hour. How many seconds are there in
minits in æn auæ. hau meni sekændz a: ðeə in

a minute? There are sixty seconds in a minute. An
a minit? ðeə a: siksti sekændz in a minit. æn

hour is a long time; a second is a short time.
auæ iz a lɔŋ taim; a sekænd iz a ʃɔ:t taim.

On the wall in Mr. Smith's house is a clock. The clock
ɔn ðə wɔ:l in mistə smiθs haus iz a klɒk. ðə klɒk

has a face with twelve figures on it. 1 is a figure,
hæz a feis wið twelv figəz ɔn it. wʌn iz a figə,

clock



3 is a figure, 11 is a figure. There are also two
pri: iz ə figə, i'levn iz ə figə. ðær a: ɔ:lsou tu:

hands on the clock, a long hand and a short hand. The
hændz ɔn ðə klɒk, ə lɔŋ hænd and ə ʃɔ:t hænd. ðə

hands of the clock give the time. The short hand gives
hændz əv ðə klɒk giv ðə taim. ðə ʃɔ:t hænd givz

the hours, and the long hand gives the minutes.

ði auəz, and ðə lɔŋ hænd givz ðə minits.

Where is Mr. Smith's clock? It is on the wall in his
hwɛər iz mistə smiθs klɒk? it iz ɔn ðə wɔ:l in hɪz

house. What does the clock do? The clock gives the
haus. hwɒt dɒz ðə klɒk du:? ðə klɒk givz ðə

time of the day; the short hand gives the hours, and
taim əv ðə dei; ðə ʃɔ:t hænd givz ði auəz, and

the long hand gives the minutes. Is there no hand to
ðə lɔŋ hænd givz ðə minits. iz ðeə nou hænd tə

give the seconds? Yes, on the face of the clock there
giv ðə sekəndz? jes, ɔn ðə feɪs əv ðə klɒk ðær

is another small face with figures and a very small
iz ə'nʌðə smɔ:l feɪs wið figəz and ə veri smɔ:l

hand. Are the figures also very small? Yes, they are
hænd. a: ðə figəz ɔ:lsou veri smɔ:l? jes, ðei a:

very small. Baby is very young; she is only six months
veri smɔ:l. beibi iz veri jʌŋ; ʃi: iz ounli siks mʌnθs

old. Is Mr. Smith very old? No, he is not; he is
ould. iz mistə smiθ veri ould? nou, hi: iz nɒt; hi: iz

thirty-six (36) years old. A second is a very short time.
þə:ti'siks jɪəz ould. ə sekənd iz ə veri ʃɔ:t taim.

watch



A watch is smaller than a clock. Mr. Smith has a watch,
a wɒtʃ ɪz smɔ:lə ðæn ə klɒk. mɪstə smɪθ hæz ə wɒtʃ,

and Mrs. Smith has a very small watch on her arm, but
ænd mɪsɪz smɪθ hæz ə veri smɔ:l wɒtʃ ɔn hɜ: ɑ:m, bʌt

John and Helen have no watches; they are too young
dʒɒn ænd helɪn hæv nu wɒtʃɪz; ðeɪ ɑ: tu: jʌŋ

to have watches. Mr. Smith gave Mrs. Smith her watch
tə hæv wɒtʃɪz. mɪstə smɪθ geɪv mɪsɪz smɪθ hɜ: wɒtʃ

when she was twenty-five (25) years old. The day
hwɛn ʃi: wɒz twenti'faɪv jɪəz ould. ðə deɪ

when she was twenty-five (25) years old was her birth-
hwɛn ʃi: wɒz twenti'faɪv jɪəz ould wɒz hɜ: bɜ:θ-

day. Her birthday is on the twenty-ninth (29th) of
deɪ. hɜ: bɜ:θdeɪ ɪz ɔn ðə twenti'nainθ əv

October. John's birthday is on the twenty-sixth (26th)
ɔk'təʊbə. dʒɒnz bɜ:θdeɪ ɪz ɔn ðə twenti'sɪksθ

of July. On his birthday his parents gave him some
əv dʒʊ'laɪ. ɔn hɪz bɜ:θdeɪ hɪz peərənts geɪv hɪm sʌm

books and a football.

bʊks ænd ə fʊtbɔ:l.

Has Mrs. Smith a watch? Yes, Mr. Smith gave Mrs. Smith
hæz mɪsɪz smɪθ ə wɒtʃ? jes, mɪstə smɪθ geɪv mɪsɪz smɪθ

a watch on her birthday, when she was twenty-five (25)
a wɒtʃ ɔn hɜ: bɜ:θdeɪ, hwɛn ʃi: wɒz twenti'faɪv

years old. Has John a football? Yes, his parents gave
jɪəz ould. hæz dʒɒn ə fʊtbɔ:l? jes, hɪz peərənts geɪv

him a football on his birthday. In two years, when he
hɪm ə fʊtbɔ:l ɔn hɪz bɜ:θdeɪ. ɪn tu: jɪəz, hwɛn hɪ:

is fourteen (14) years old, his father will give him a
iz fɔ:ti:n jɪz ould, hɪz fa:ðə wil gɪv hɪm ə

watch on his birthday. When he is fourteen, he will
wɒtʃ ɒn hɪz bɑ:pdeɪ. hwen hɪ: ɪz fɔ:ti:n, hɪ: wil

have a watch. His father will not give him a watch
hæv ə wɒtʃ. hɪz fa:ðə wil nɒt gɪv hɪm ə wɒtʃ

when he is thirteen (13) years old. The children will
hwen hɪ: ɪz þɜ:ti:n jɪz ould. ðə tʃɪldrən wil

go to school to-morrow. They will read their books,
ɡoʊ tə sku:l tə'mɔrəʊ. ðeɪ wil ri:d ðeə buks,

and they will write with pens or pencils. When it is
ænd ðeɪ wil raɪt wɪð penz ɔ: pensɪlz. hwen ɪt ɪz

John's birthday, he will be thirteen (13) years old.
dʒɒnz bɑ:pdeɪ, hɪ: wil bi: þɜ:ti:n jɪz ould.

Helen will be eleven years old on her birthday. Baby
helɪn wil bi: ɪ'levn jɪz ould ɒn hɜ: bɑ:pdeɪ. beɪbɪ

will be one year old on her birthday. To-morrow the
wɪl bi: wʌn jɪə ould ɒn hɜ: bɑ:pdeɪ. tə'mɔrəʊ ðə

children will be at school. The parents will not be at
tʃɪldrən wil bi: æt sku:l. ðə peərənts wil nɒt bi: æt

school; they will be in the house. After school the
sku:l; ðeɪ wil bi: ɪn ðə haʊs. ɑ:ftə sku:l ðə

children will be in the garden.
tʃɪldrən wil bi: ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn.

When will John be fourteen (14) years old? He will
hwen wil dʒɒn bi: fɔ:ti:n jɪz ould? hɪ: wil

be fourteen (14) in two years. When is Helen's birthday?
bi: fɔ:ti:n ɪn tu: jɪz. hwen ɪz helɪnz bɑ:pdeɪ?

gives
 give
 gave
 will give

John gives Helen a pear.

John and Helen give Baby a ball.

Yesterday John gave Helen a pear.

Yesterday John and Helen gave Baby a ball.

To-morrow John will give Helen a pear.

To-morrow John and Helen will give Baby a ball.

is
are
was
were
will be
To-day **John** is at school.
To-day both **John and Helen** are at school.
Yesterday **John** was at school.
Yesterday both **John and Helen** were at school.
To-morrow **John** will be at school.
Both **John and Helen** will be at school to-morrow.

Helen's birthday is on the sixteenth (16th) of March.
helinz bæ:pdei iz ɔn ðə siksti:nþ əv mɑ:tʃ.

When is Mr. Smith's birthday? His birthday is on the
hwen iz mistə smiþs bæ:pdei? hiz bæ:pdei iz ɔn ðə

thirteenth (13th) of July. When is the baby's birth-
þə:ti:nþ əv dʒu'lai. hwen iz ðə beibiz bæ:p-

day? Her birthday is on the tenth (10th) of June.
dei? hæ: bæ:pdei iz ɔn ðə tenþ əv dʒu:n.

Where will the children be to-morrow? To-morrow
hwæə wil ðə tʃildrən bi: tə'mɔrəu? tə'mɔrəu

they will be at school. When will the baby be one year
dei wil bi: æt sku:l. hwen wil ðə beibi bi: wʌn jɪə

old? She will be one year old in six months. Helen
ould? ʃi: wil bi: wʌn jɪə ould in siks mʌnθs. helin

will be fourteen (14) in four years. Mrs. Smith will be
wil bi: fɔ:ti:n in fɔ: jɪəz. misiz smiþ wil bi:

thirty-five (35) in three years.

þə:ti'faiv in pri: jɪəz.

When the short hand is at the figure 2 and the long
hwen ðə ʃɔ:t hænd iz æt ðə figə tu: ənd ðə lɔŋ

hand at the figure 12, it is two o'clock. When the short
hænd æt ðə figə twelv, it iz tu: ə'klɔk. hwen ðə ʃɔ:t

hand is at 3 and the long hand at 12, it is three o'clock.
hænd iz æt pri: ənd ðə lɔŋ hænd æt twelv, it iz pri: ə'klɔk.

When the short hand is at 3 and the long hand at 11,
hwen ðə ʃɔ:t hænd iz æt pri: ənd ðə lɔŋ hænd æt i'levn,

it is five minutes to three. When the long hand is at
it iz faiv minits tə pri:. hwen ðə lɔŋ hænd iz æt

1 and the short hand at 3, it is five minutes past
wan and ðə ʃɔ:t hænd æt pri:, it iz faiv minits pa:st

three. What time is it when the short hand is at 4
pri:. hwɔt taim iz it hwen ðə ʃɔ:t hænd iz æt ʃɔ:

and the long hand at 3? Then it is a quarter past four.
and ðə lɔŋ hænd æt pri:? ðen it iz ə kwɔ:tə pa:st ʃɔ:.

What time is it when the short hand is at 5 and the
hwɔt taim iz it hwen ðə ʃɔ:t hænd iz æt faiv and ðə

long hand at 9? Then it is a quarter to five. What
lɔŋ hænd æt nain? ðen it iz ə kwɔ:tə tə faiv. hwɔt

time is it when the long hand is at 5 and the short
taim iz it hwen ðə lɔŋ hænd iz æt faiv and ðə ʃɔ:t

hand is between 1 and 2? Then it is twenty-five (25)
hænd iz bi'twi:n wan and tu:? ðen it iz twenti'faiv

minutes past one. What time is it when the long hand
minits pa:st wan. hwɔt taim iz it hwen ðə lɔŋ hænd

is at 6 and the short hand is between 5 and 6?
iz æt siks and ðə ʃɔ:t hænd iz bi'twi:n faiv and siks?

Then it is half past five. Half an hour is thirty (30)
ðen it iz ha:f pa:st faiv. ha:f ən auə iz þə:ti

minutes. A quarter of an hour is fifteen (15) minutes.
minits. ə kwɔ:tə əv ən auə iz fifti:n minits.

At what time do the children go to school? They go
æt hwɔt taim du: ðə tʃɪldrən ɡəʊ tə sku:l? ðei ɡəʊ

to school at nine o'clock. (They go to school at nine.)
tə sku:l æt nain ə'klɒk. (ðei ɡəʊ tə sku:l æt nain.)

How long are the children at school? They are at
haʊ lɔŋ a: ðə tʃɪldrən æt sku:l? ðei a: æt

What time is it?

It is **two o'clock**.
 (It is **two**.)

It is ten minutes
past two.

It is five minutes
to two.

school from nine o'clock to four o'clock (from nine to
sku:l frɒm naɪn ə'klɒk tə fɔː ə'klɒk (frɒm naɪn tə

four). They are at school from nine o'clock to twelve
fɔː). ðeɪ aː æt sku:l frɒm naɪn ə'klɒk tə twelv

o'clock. At twelve o'clock they go to their houses. Then
ə'klɒk. æt twelv ə'klɒk ðeɪ ɡəʊ tə ðeə haʊzɪz. ðen

they go to school at two o'clock and are there from two
ðeɪ ɡəʊ tə sku:l æt tuː ə'klɒk ənd aː ðeə frɒm tuː

o'clock to four o'clock. At what time do the children
ə'klɒk tə fɔː ə'klɒk. æt hwɒt taɪm duː ðə tʃɪldrən

go home from school? They go home from school at
ɡəʊ haʊm frɒm sku:l? ðeɪ ɡəʊ haʊm frɒm sku:l æt

four o'clock (at four). Their father is not at home when
fɔː ə'klɒk (æt fɔː). ðeə faːðə ɪz nɒt æt haʊm hwɛn

they come from school, but their mother is at home.
ðeɪ kʌm frɒm sku:l, bʌt ðeə mʌðə ɪz æt haʊm.

Their father comes home at half past five; then all the
ðeə faːðə kʌmz haʊm æt haːf pɑːst faɪv; ðen ɔːl ðə

persons in the family are at home.

pəːsnz ɪn ðə fæmɪli aː æt haʊm.

When the children are at school, they are away from
hwɛn ðə tʃɪldrən aː æt sku:l, ðeɪ aː ə'weɪ frɒm

home. They are away from home from nine o'clock
haʊm. ðeɪ aː ə'weɪ frɒm haʊm frɒm naɪn ə'klɒk

to twelve o'clock, and from two o'clock to four o'clock.
tə twelv ə'klɒk, ənd frɒm tuː ə'klɒk tə fɔː ə'klɒk.

They are away from home for five hours. Mr. Smith
ðeɪ aː ə'weɪ frɒm haʊm fɔː faɪv aʊəz. mɪstə smɪθ

goes away from home at half past eight and comes
gouz ə'wei frɒm hɒm æt ha:f pa:st eit and kʌmz

home at half past five; he is away from home for nine
hɒm æt ha:f pa:st faɪv; hi: iz ə'wei frɒm hɒm fɔ: naɪn

hours every day. He is at home for fifteen (15) hours.
auəz evri dei. hi: iz æt hɒm fɔ: fɪfti:n auəz.

The children are at home for nineteen (19) hours. When
ðə tʃɪldrən a: æt hɒm fɔ: naɪnti:n auəz. hwen

does Mr. Smith come home? He comes home at half
dʌz mɪstə smɪθ kʌm hɒm? hi: kʌmz hɒm æt ha:f

past five. What time is it when Mr. Smith comes
pa:st faɪv. hwɒt taɪm iz ɪt hwen mɪstə smɪθ kʌmz

home? It is half past five. How long is he away from
hɒm? ɪt iz ha:f pa:st faɪv. haʊ lɔŋ iz hi: ə'wei frɒm

home every day? He is away for nine hours. How
hɒm evri dei? hi: iz ə'wei fɔ: naɪn auəz. haʊ

long are the children away? They are away from
lɔŋ a: ðə tʃɪldrən ə'wei? ðei a: ə'wei frɒm

home for five hours. On Sundays they are all at
hɒm fɔ: faɪv auəz. ɔn sʌndɪz ðei a: ɔ:l æt

home. In summer the children play for two hours
hɒm. ɪn sʌmə ðə tʃɪldrən pleɪ fɔ: tu: auəz

in the garden, but at half past six it is time for the
ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn, bʌt æt ha:f pa:st sɪks ɪt iz taɪm fɔ: ðə

children to read their school-books. Where are John
tʃɪldrən tə ri:d ðeə sku:lbuks. hwɛər a: dʒɒn

and Helen when they read their school-books? Then
ænd helɪn hwen ðei ri:d ðeə sku:lbuks? ðen

they are in the house. When is it time to go to school?
ðei a: in ðə haus. hwen iz it taim tə gou tə sku:l?

It is time to go to school at nine o'clock. When is it
it iz taim tə gou tə sku:l æt nain ə'klɒk. hwen iz it

time to come in from the garden? It is time to come
taim tə kʌm in frɒm ðə ga:dn? it iz taim tə kʌm

in from the garden at half past six. What do the children
in frɒm ðə ga:dn æt ha:f pa:st siks. hwɒt du: ðə tʃɪldrən

do when they come in from the garden? They read
du: hwen ðei kʌm in frɒm ðə ga:dn? ðei ri:d

their school-books.

ðeə sku:lbuks.

EXERCISE A.

A day has twelve —. A — has also twelve hours.
 A day and a night — twenty-four hours. An hour
 has sixty —, and a minute has sixty —. On a wall in
 the house is a —. The clock has a —. On the face
 of the clock are twelve —. The clock has two —.
 The hands of the clock give the —. The short hand —
 the hours, and the long hand — the minutes. There is
 also a — small hand to give the seconds. A — is
 smaller than a clock. The day when Mrs. Smith was
 twenty-five years old was her —. John's — is on the
 twenty-sixth of July. On his birthday, John's parents
 — him a football. When he is fourteen, his father —
 — him a watch.

When it is John's birthday, he will — thirteen years old. The children — go to school to-morrow. Helen will — eleven years old on her birthday. The baby — — one year old on her birthday. Helen will be fourteen years old — four years. Baby will be one year old — six months. When the short hand is at three and the long hand at twelve, it is three —. When the short hand is at five and the long hand at eleven, it is five minutes — five. When the short hand is at four and the long hand at two, it is ten minutes — four. When the long hand is at nine and the short hand at twelve, it is a — to twelve. When the short hand is at one and the long hand at three, it is a — past one. When the long hand is at six and the short hand is — three and four, it is — past —.

The children are at school — five hours. They go — from school — four o'clock. Their father is not — home when they come —. Their father — home at half — five. The children are — from — for five hours every day. Mr. Smith goes — from home at half — eight. How — are the children away from home? They are away for five —. — does Mr. Smith come home? He — home at half — five. — does he go away from home? He goes away from home — — past eight. — will John be fourteen years old? He will be fourteen — two years. When — Baby be one year old? She — — one year old in six months. — is Helen's birthday? Her birthday is — the sixteenth — March. — is John's birthday? His birthday is — — twenty-sixth — July.

WORDS:

o'clock
clock
watch
night
hour
minute
second
give
gave
very
time
birthday
football
in
will
be
figure
past
to
half
quarter
then
between
for
him

home
at home
from
come
away
fifteen
nineteen
twenty-four
twenty-five
sixty
sixteenth
twenty-sixth
twenty-ninth
thirty
thirty-five

— Mrs. Smith a watch? Yes, Mr. Smith — her a watch on her birthday. — is on the face of the clock? On the face of the clock are two — and twelve —. What time is it — the small hand is at nine and the big hand at three? Then it is a — — nine. — time is it — the big hand is at five and the small hand between two and three? — it is — — past two. What time is it — the big hand is at twelve and the small hand at six? Then it is six —. What — is it — both hands are at twelve? Then it is — —. At what time — the children go to school? They go to school — nine —. — — time do they come home? They come home — four —.

EXERCISE B.

When is John's birthday? ... What is on the clock? ... What is there to give the time? ... How many minutes has an hour? ... How many hours are there in a day and a night? ... What time is it? ... Where do the children go at nine o'clock every day? ... When does Mr. Smith come home? ... How long are the children at school? ... How long is Mr. Smith away from home every day? ... When will John be thirteen years old? ... When will Helen be fourteen? ... In how many months will Baby be one year old? ... Is their father at home when the children come from school? ... Does Mrs. Smith go away from home every day? ... Where are the hands of the clock at a quarter past five? ... At ten minutes to three? ... At half past ten? ... At twenty-five (25) minutes to eight? ... At seven o'clock? ... At a quarter to one? ...

THE SCHOOL

In the school there are many rooms. There are not
in ðə sku:l ðeər a: meni ru:mz. ðeər a: nɒt

many rooms in Mr. Smith's house; there are only five
meni ru:mz in mistə smiθs haʊs; ðeər a: ɒnli faɪv

rooms in his house. The school is a very big house,
ru:mz in hɪz haʊs. ðə sku:l ɪz ə veri bɪg haʊs,

and in it there are twenty (20) rooms.

and in it ðeər a: twenti ru:mz.

At nine o'clock in the morning the children come into
æt naɪn ə'klɒk in ðə mɔːnɪŋ ðə tʃɪldrən kʌm ɪntə

the schoolroom. When all the children are in the room,
ðə sku:lru:m. hwen ɔ:l ðə tʃɪldrən a: in ðə ru:m,

the teacher comes into the room. When he comes into
ðə ti:tʃə kʌmz ɪntə ðə ru:m. hwen hi: kʌmz ɪntə

the room, he says, "Good morning, children! Are you
ðə ru:m, hi: sez, "gud mɔːnɪŋ, tʃɪldrən! a: ju:

all here to-day?" John says, "No, my sister is not here
ɔ:l hiə tə'deɪ?" dʒɒn sez, "nəʊ, maɪ sɪstə ɪz nɒt hiə

to-day; she is at home." "Oh," says the teacher, "is
tə'deɪ; ʃi: ɪz æt haʊm." "əʊ," sez ðə ti:tʃə, "ɪz

your sister ill to-day?" "Yes, my sister is ill to-day.
juə sɪstə ɪl tə'deɪ?" "jes, maɪ sɪstə ɪz ɪl tə'deɪ.

Yesterday it was cold, and she was in the garden too
jɛstədi ɪt wəz kəʊld, and ʃi: wəz ɪn ðə ɡɑːdn tu:

teacher



go [ɡəʊ]
 goes [ɡəʊz]

do [duː]
 does [dʌz]

say [seɪ]
 says [sez]

I am
 you are
 he is
 she is
 it is

we are
 you are
 they are

John says, "I am
 a boy."

He says to Helen,
 "You are a girl,
 and Baby is also
 a girl," and she
 says, "Yes, and you
 and Baby and I
 are children; we
 are children."

The pencil is good;
 it is good.

John says, "You
 and Alice are girls;
 you are girls."

Helen and Alice
 are girls; they are
 girls.

my
your
his
her
its

our
your
their

John says, "Helen is **my** sister."

"Where is **your** sister, John?"

The girls have a brother; **his** name is John.

The teacher gives Helen **her** book.

The baby has a doll; **its** arms and legs are small.

John says, "**Our** house is small."

"How many rooms has **your** house, John and Helen?"

The house of Mr. and Mrs. Smith has five rooms; **their** house is not big.

long; and to-day she is ill, she has a cold." "Have you
lɔŋ; and tə'dei fi: iz il, fi: hæz ə kould." "*hæv ju:*

also a cold, John?" "Oh no, I am not ill," says John,
ɔ:lsoʊ ə kould, dʒɔn?" "*ou nou, ai æm nɒt il,*" *sez dʒɔn,*

"I am well. I was not in the garden very long. When
"ai æm wel. ai wəz nɒt in ðə ɡɑ:dn veri lɔŋ. hwen

it was too cold, I went into the house."

it wəz tu: kould, ai went intə ðə haʊs."

Teacher: "What does your mother say to Helen, John?"

ti:tʃə: "hwɒt dʌz juə mʌðə sei tə helin, dʒɔn?"

"My mother says to my sister: You are not a good girl,

"mai mʌðə sez tə mai sistə: ju: a: nɒt ə ɡʊd ɡə:l,

Helen, when you are in the garden for so long. John

helin, hwen ju: a: in ðə ɡɑ:dn fɔ: soʊ lɔŋ. dʒɔn

went into the house when he was too cold, and he has

went intə ðə haʊs hwen hi: wəz tu: kould, and hi: hæz

no cold; he is not ill, he is well."

nou kould; hi: iz nɒt il, hi: iz wel."

"How many rooms have you in your house, John?"

"hau meni ru:mz hæv ju: in juə haʊs, dʒɔn?"

"We have five rooms in our house." "How many

"wi: hæv faɪv ru:mz in aʊə haʊs." "hau meni

persons are you in your family?" "We are five persons

pə:snz a: ju: in juə fæmili?" "wi: a: faɪv pə:snz

in our family." "How many children are there in your

in aʊə fæmili." "hau meni tʃɪldrən a: ðeə in juə

family?" "There are three children in our family."

fæmili?" "ðeər a: ʒri: tʃɪldrən in aʊə fæmili."

"Who are the children in your family?" "They are my
"hu: a: ðə tfildrən in juə fæmili?" "ðei a: mai

two sisters, Helen and Alice, and I."

tu: sistəz, helin ænd ælis, ænd ai."

The teacher gives all the children pencils to write with.

ðə ti:tfə givz ɔ:l ðə tfildrən pensilz tə raɪt wið.

John says to the teacher, "Will you give me another

dʒɒn seɪz tə ðə ti:tfə, "wɪl ju: gɪv mi: ə'nʌðə

pencil? My pencil is not very good." "Yes, I will

pensil? maɪ pensil ɪz nɒt veri gud." "jes, ai wɪl

give you another pencil; here is one," the teacher says

gɪv ju: ə'nʌðə pensil; hiə ɪz wʌn," ðə ti:tfə seɪz

and gives him a pencil. He also gives him a pencil

ænd gɪvz hɪm ə pensil. hi: ɔ:lsou gɪvz hɪm ə pensil

for Helen; John will give it to her when he comes

fɔ: helɪn; dʒɒn wɪl gɪv ɪt tə hɜ: hwɛn hi: kʌmz

home.

həʊm.

Has John a pencil? Yes, but it is not very good; the

hæz dʒɒn ə pensil? jes, bʌt ɪt ɪz nɒt veri gud; ðə

teacher gives him another one, and he also gives him

ti:tfə gɪvz hɪm ə'nʌðə wʌn, ænd hi: ɔ:lsou gɪvz hɪm

one for Helen. John says he will give her the pencil

wʌn fɔ: helɪn. dʒɒn seɪz hi: wɪl gɪv hɜ: ðə pensil

when he comes home. Are all the children at school?

hwɛn hi: kʌmz həʊm. a: ɔ:l ðə tfildrən æt sku:l?

No, Helen is not at school, but when she is well, she

nəʊ, helɪn ɪz nɒt æt sku:l, bʌt hwɛn ʃi: ɪz wel, ʃi:

one

John has a long pencil; Helen has a short one.

me
you
him
her
it
us
you
them

John says, "The teacher gives **me** a pencil."

The teacher says to John, "I will give **you** a pencil."

The teacher gives John a pencil; he gives **him** a pencil.

He gives Helen a book; he gives **her** a book.

Mr. Smith gives his house a name; he gives **it** a name.

The children say to the teacher, "Will you give **us** some pencils?"

The teacher says, "Yes, I will give **you** some pencils."

The teacher gives the children some pencils; he gives **them** some pencils.

will go to school. Does the teacher give all the children
wil gou tə sku:l. dʌz ðə ti:tʃə giv ɔ:l ðə tʃildrən

pencils? Yes, when their pencils are not very good, or
pensilz? jes, hwen ðeə pensilz a: nɒt veri gud, ɔ:

when they have no pencils, the teacher gives them
hwen ðei hæv nou pensilz, ðə ti:tʃə givz ðem

pencils. What do the children say? They say, "Will
pensilz. hwɒt du: ðə tʃildrən sei? ðei sei, "wil

you give us some other pencils?" And the teacher
ju: giv ʌs sʌm ʌðə pensilz?" ənd ðə ti:tʃə

says, "Yes, I will give you some other pencils; here are
sez, "jes, ai wil giv ju: sʌm ʌðə pensilz; hiə a:

some pencils for you."

sʌm pensilz fɔ: ju:."

The teacher has no book. He says to one of the
ðə ti:tʃə hævz nou bʊk. hi: sez tə wʌn əv ðə

children, "Have you your book? Will you give it to
tʃildrən, "hæv ju: juə bʊk? wil ju: giv it tə

me? I have no book to-day." What is the colour of
mi: ʔ ai hæv nou bʊk tə'deɪ." hwɒt ɪz ðə kʌlə əv

ink? Its colour is blue. What is the colour of the
ɪŋk? ɪts kʌlə ɪz blu:. hwɒt ɪz ðə kʌlə əv ðə

walls of the room? Its walls are green. What is the
wɔ:lz əv ðə ru:m? ɪts wɔ:lz ɑ: gri:n. hwɒt ɪz ðə

colour of the paper of the books? Its colour is white.
kʌlə əv ðə peɪpə əv ðə bʊks? ɪts kʌlə ɪz hwaɪt.

What will John's father give him on his birthday? He
hwɒt wil dʒɒnz fa:ðə giv him ɒn hɪz bɜ:ðdeɪ? hi:

will give him a watch. Will he also give Helen a
wil giv him ə wɒtʃ. wil hi: ə:lsoʊ giv helin ə

watch? No, he will not give her a watch. When the
wɒtʃ? nou, hi: wil nɒt giv hæ: ə wɒtʃ. hwen ðə

children are good, their mother gives them balls to play
tʃɪldrən a: gud, ðeə mʌðə gɪvz ðem bɔ:lz tə pleɪ

with. When the children are good at school, the teacher
wɪð. hwen ðə tʃɪldrən a: gud æt sku:l, ðə ti:tʃə

reads to them from his book.
ri:dz tə ðem frəm hɪz bu:k.

Yesterday the children came to school at nine o'clock
jɛstədi ðə tʃɪldrən keɪm tə sku:l æt naɪn ə'klɒk

in the morning. When the children came to school
ɪn ðə mɔ:nɪŋ. hwen ðə tʃɪldrən keɪm tə sku:l

yesterday, the teacher said "Good morning" to them.
jɛstədi, ðə ti:tʃə sed "gud mɔ:nɪŋ" tə ðem.

Helen's mother said to her yesterday, "Come into the
helɪnz mʌðə sed tə hæ: jɛstədi, "kʌm ɪntə ðə

house; it is too cold to play in the garden; come in, or
haʊs; ɪt ɪz tu: kəʊld tə pleɪ ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dən; kʌm ɪn, ɔ:

you will be ill."
ju: wil bi: ɪl."

Was Mr. Smith at home yesterday when the children
wəz mɪstə smɪθ æt haʊm jɛstədi hwen ðə tʃɪldrən

came home from school? No, he was not at home. Mr.
keɪm haʊm frəm sku:l? nou, hi: wəz nɒt æt haʊm. mɪstə

Smith comes home at half past five. Is Helen very ill?
smɪθ kʌmz haʊm æt hɑ:f pɑ:st faɪv. ɪz helɪn veri ɪl?

I you } play

he she it } plays

we you they } play

comes
 come
 came

John **comes**
 every day.

The children **come**
 every day.

John **came**
 yesterday.

The children **came**
 yesterday.

says
 say
 said

The teacher **says**
 "Good morning."

The children **say**
 "Good morning."

Yesterday the
 teacher **said**
 "Good morning."

Yesterday the
 children also **said**
 "Good morning."

come!

Come into
 the house,
 John!

Come into the
 house, John
 and Helen!

No, she is not very ill; she has only a cold, but she will
nou, ʃi: iz nɒt veri il; ʃi: hæz ounli ə kould, bʌt ʃi: wil
 be too ill for some days to go to school. Is she too ill
bi: tu: il fɔ: sʌm deiz tə ɡou tə sku:l. iz ʃi: tu: il
 to read her school-books? No, she is not too ill to read.
tə ri:d hæ: sku:lbuks? nou, ʃi: iz nɒt tu: il tə ri:d.
 She reads her school-books and her other books, and
ʃi: ri:dz hæ: sku:lbuks ænd hæ: ʌðə buks, ænd
 when John comes home with the pencil for her from
hwen dʒɒn kʌmz hɒm wið ðə pensil fɔ: hæ: frɒm
 the teacher, she will also write. After some days at
ðə ti:tʃə, ʃi: wil ɔ:lsoʊ raɪt. a:ftə sʌm deiz ət
 home she will be well, and then she will go to school.
hɒm ʃi: wil bi: wel, ænd ðen ʃi: wil ɡou tə sku:l.

EXERCISE A.

There are five — in Mr. Smith's house. The children
 go to school at nine o'clock in the —. When all the
 children are in the schoolroom, the — comes into the
 room. When he comes, he says to the children, "—
 morning, children; are — all here?" Helen is not at
 school; she is —. John is not ill; he is —. Helen is
 ill; she has a —. The teacher gives John a pencil —
 Helen. John will give it to — when he comes home.
 When the children have no pencils, the teacher gives
 — some. The children write on paper; — colour is
 white. The children come — the schoolroom in the
 morning.

WORDS:

I
 me
 my
 you
 your
 we
 us
 our
 them

John has no pencil, but the teacher gives — one. The teacher says to John, “Are — ill, John?” “No,” he says, “—am not ill; I — well.” “How many persons are you in — family, John?” “— are five persons in — family.” “Is — house a big one, John?” “No, — house is not very big; — has only five rooms.” “Will — give — another pencil?” “Yes, — will; here is a pencil for —.” “What is — name, John?” “— name is John Smith.” What — the teacher say to the children every morning? He says “Good morning” to —. — is the name of John’s family? — name is Smith.

EXERCISE B.

How many rooms has the school? ... When do the children come into the schoolroom? ... What does the teacher say to the children every morning? ... Is Helen at school to-day? ... Is John ill? ... What does Mrs. Smith say to Helen? ... What do the children say to their teacher when they have no pencils? ... And what does he say to them? ... When will John’s father give him a watch? ... Does the teacher read to the children at school? ...

her
its
am
came
say
said
good
ill
well
cold
here
for
morning
into
room
teacher
twenty

*farm*

THE FARM

Mr. Smith's brother is a farmer. He has a farm in
mɪstə smɪθs brʌðə ɪz ə fɑ:mə. hi: hæz ə fɑ:m ɪn

the country. Mr. Smith's house is not in the country;
ðə kʌntri. mɪstə smɪθs haʊs ɪz nɒt ɪn ðə kʌntri;

it is in a city. Every summer Mr. Smith and his family
ɪt ɪz ɪn ə sɪti. evri sʌmə mɪstə smɪθ ænd hɪz fæmli

go to his brother in the country for the summer-holidays.
ɡoʊ tə hɪz brʌðə ɪn ðə kʌntri fɔ: ðə sʌmə'hɒlɪdɪz.

In August, when the children do not go to school, it
ɪn ɔ:ɡəst, hwen ðə tʃɪldrən du: nɒt ɡoʊ tə sku:l, ɪt

is their summer-holidays. Mr. Smith's summer-holidays
ɪz ðeə sʌmə'hɒlɪdɪz. mɪstə smɪθs sʌmə'hɒlɪdɪz

are not so long as the children's; they are only two
ɑ: nɒt səʊ lɒŋ æz ðə tʃɪldrənʒ; ðeɪ ɑ: ɒnli tu:

weeks. He works more than eleven months a year
wi:ks. hi: wɜ:kz mɔ: ðæn ɪ'levn mʌnθs ə jɪə

and has two weeks' holidays.
ænd hæz tu: wi:ks hɒlɪdɪz.

The children have one month's holidays in summer, but
ðə tʃɪldrən hæv wʌn mʌnθs hɒlɪdɪz ɪn sʌmə, bʌt

they do not work eleven months at school. They also
ðeɪ du: nɒt wɜ:k ɪ'levn mʌnθs ət sku:l. ðeɪ ɔ:lsəʊ

have other holidays; they have two weeks' holidays in
hæv ʌðə hɒlɪdɪz; ðeɪ hæv tu: wi:ks hɒlɪdɪz ɪn

one month's
holidays

two months'
holidays

December and January, two weeks' holidays in spring,
dɪ'sembə and dʒænjuəri, tu: wi:ks hɒlɪdɪz ɪn sprɪŋ,

and one week's holidays in autumn. Mrs. Smith works
and wʌn wi:ks hɒlɪdɪz ɪn ɔ:təm. mɪsɪz smɪθ wɜ:k

too; but she does not go away from home to work; she
tu:; bʌt ʃi: dʌz nɒt ɡəʊ ə'weɪ frəm haʊm tə wɜ:k; ʃi:

works in her house.

wɜ:k ɪn hɜ: haʊs.

What is Mr. Smith's brother? He is a farmer. Where
hwɒt ɪz mɪstə smɪθs brʌðə? hi: ɪz ə fɑ:mə. hwɛər

is his farm? His farm is in the country. When do
ɪz hɪz fɑ:m? hɪz fɑ:m ɪz ɪn ðə kʌntri. hwen du:

Mr. Smith and his family go to his brother's farm?
mɪstə smɪθ and hɪz fæmɪli ɡəʊ tə hɪz brʌðəz fɑ:m?

They go there in summer for Mr. Smith's holidays. Are
ðeɪ ɡəʊ ðeə ɪn sʌmə fɔ: mɪstə smɪθs hɒlɪdɪz. a:

Mr. Smith's holidays as long as the children's? No,
mɪstə smɪθs hɒlɪdɪz æz lɔŋ æz ðə tʃɪldrənz? nɒu,

he has only two weeks' holidays in summer; the children
hi: hæz ɒnli tu: wi:ks hɒlɪdɪz ɪn sʌmə; ðə tʃɪldrən

have one month's holidays. How many months does
hæv wʌn mʌnθs hɒlɪdɪz. haʊ meni mʌnθs dʌz

Mr. Smith work a year? He works more than eleven
mɪstə smɪθ wɜ:k ə jɪə? hi: wɜ:k mɔ: ðæn ɪ'levn

months a year. Does he work on Sundays? No, on
mʌnθs ə jɪə. dʌz hi: wɜ:k ɒn sʌndɪz? nɒu, ɒn

Sundays he does not work; Sunday is a holiday. Is
sʌndɪz hi: dʌz nɒt wɜ:k; sʌndɪ ɪz ə hɒlɪdɪ. ɪz

too = also

She works **too**;
 she **also** works.

's
 s'
 the boy's ball
 (one person)
 the boys' ball
 (more than one
 person)
 the man's house
 (one person)
 the men's house
 (more than one
 person)

last year
this year
next year

this
This pencil is not
good.

Monday also a holiday? No, Monday is a weekday.
mandi ɔ:lsou ə holidi? nou, mandi iz ə wi:kdei.

Friday is also a weekday. Thursday is a weekday too.
fraidɪ iz ɔ:lsou ə wi:kdei. θə:zdi iz ə wi:kdei tu:.

Wednesday is a weekday too. All the days of the week
wenzdi iz ə wi:kdei tu:. ɔ:l ðə deɪz əv ðə wi:k

are weekdays, except Sunday; Sunday is a holiday.

a: wi:kdeɪz, ɪk'sept sʌndi; sʌndi iz ə holidi.

Mr. Smith is at the farm every summer. He has been
mɪstə smɪθ iz æt ðə fɑ:m evri sʌmə. hi: hæz bi:n

there every summer for many years. He was there
ðeə evri sʌmə fɔ: meni jɪəz. hi: wəz ðeə

last summer. He will go there this summer. John
la:st sʌmə. hi: wɪl ɡoʊ ðeə ðɪs sʌmə. dʒɒn

is twelve years old this year. Last year he was eleven
ɪz twelv jɪəz ould ðɪs jɪə. la:st jɪə hi: wəz ɪ'levn

years old; next year he will be thirteen years old.
jɪəz ould; nekst jɪə hi: wɪl bi: θə:ti:n jɪəz ould.

Helen is ten years old this year. Last year she was nine
helɪn iz ten jɪəz ould ðɪs jɪə. la:st jɪə ʃi: wəz naɪn

years old; next year she will be eleven years old. Baby
jɪəz ould; nekst jɪə ʃi: wɪl bi: ɪ'levn jɪəz ould. beɪbi

is six months old this year; last year there was no baby.
ɪz sɪks mʌnθs ould ðɪs jɪə; la:st jɪə ðeə wəz nou beɪbi.

John said to his teacher, "This pencil is not very good;
dʒɒn sed tə hɪz ti:tʃə, "ðɪs pensɪl iz nɒt veri ɡʊd;

will you give me another one?"

wɪl ju: ɡɪv mi: ə'nʌðə wʌn?"

John and Helen have been at the farm every summer
dʒɒn ænd helin hæv bi:n æt ðə fa:m evri samə

for many years. Mr. Smith has had his family with
fɔ: meni jɪəz. mistə smiθ hæz həd hiz fæmili wið

him every year. Were Mr. Smith and his family at
him evri jɪə. wə: mistə smiθ ænd hiz fæmili æt

the farm last year? Yes, they were. Do they go
ðə fa:m la:st jɪə? jes, ðei wə:. du: ðei gou

there every year? Yes, they do; Mr. Smith has been
ðeə evri jɪə? jes, ðei du:; mistə smiθ hæz bi:n

at the farm every summer for many years, and his wife
æt ðə fa:m evri samə fɔ: meni jɪəz, ænd hiz waɪf

and children have been with him. Has Mr. Smith
ænd tʃɪldrən hæv bi:n wið him. hæz mistə smiθ

had his family with him? Yes, the parents have had
həd hiz fæmili wið him? jes, ðə peərənts hæv həd

their children with them at the farm. Mr. Smith's
ðeə tʃɪldrən wið ðem æt ðə fa:m. mistə smiθs

brother is the uncle of John and Helen; his brother's
brʌðə ɪz ði ʌŋkl əv dʒɒn ænd helin; hiz brʌðəz

wife is their aunt. John is the nephew of Mr. Smith's
waɪf ɪz ðeə a:nt. dʒɒn ɪz ðə nevjʊ: əv mistə smiθs

brother, and Helen is his niece. Has John an uncle?
brʌðə, ænd helin ɪz hiz ni:s. hæz dʒɒn ən ʌŋkl?

Yes, his father's brother, Mr. Smith, is his uncle, and
jes, hiz fa:ðəz brʌðə, mistə smiθ, ɪz hiz ʌŋkl, ænd

John is his nephew. Who is Helen's aunt? Her aunt
dʒɒn ɪz hiz nevjʊ:. hu: ɪz helins a:nt? hə: a:nt

been

He is, he was, he has **been**.

They are, they were, they have **been**.

had

He has, he had, he has **had**.

They have, they had, they have **had**.

COW



is the wife of her uncle, Mr. Smith, and Helen is her
iz ðə waif əv hə: ʌŋkl, mɪstə smɪθ, and helɪn iz hə:
 niece.
ni:s.

At the farm there are many animals. A cow is an
æt ðə fa:m ðeər a: meni ænɪməlz. ə kau iz ən
 animal, and a hen is an animal. From the cows we get
ænɪməl, and ə hen iz ən ænɪməl. frəm ðə kaʊz wi: get
 milk. From the hens we get eggs. What animals are
mɪlk. frəm ðə henz wi: get eɡz. hwɒt ænɪməlz a:
 there at the farm? There are cows and hens. From
ðeə æt ðə fa:m? ðeər a: kaʊz and henz. frəm
 what animal do we get milk? We get milk from the
hwɒt ænɪməl du: wi: get mɪlk? wi: get mɪlk frəm ðə
 cow. What do we get from the hens? We get eggs from
kaʊ. hwɒt du: wi: get frəm ðə henz? wi: get eɡz frəm
 the hens. From where do we get fruit? We get fruit
ðə henz. frəm hwɛə du: wi: get fru:t? wi: get fru:t
 from the trees in the garden. From the milk we get
frəm ðə tri:tz in ðə ɡɑ:dn. frəm ðə mɪlk wi: get
 cream, and from the cream the farmer's wife makes
kri:m, and frəm ðə kri:m ðə fa:məz waif meɪks
 butter.
bʌtə.



hen

In the morning, Mr. and Mrs. Smith drink coffee. The
ɪn ðə mɔ:nɪŋ, mɪstə and mɪsɪz smɪθ drɪŋk kɒfi. ðə
 children do not drink coffee; coffee is not good for
tʃɪldrən du: nɒt drɪŋk kɒfi; kɒfi iz nɒt ɡʊd fɔ:

children; they drink milk or tea. Mrs. Smith puts
tfildrən; ðei driŋk mi:lk ɔ: ti:. misiz smiþ puts

cream in her coffee; Mr. Smith puts both cream and
kri:m in hə: kɔ:fi; mistə smiþ puts bəʊþ kri:m ənd

sugar in his coffee. In England people drink much
ʃʊgə in hiz kɔ:fi. in ɪŋlənd pi:pl driŋk mʌtʃ

tea. The English do not put cream in their tea; they
ti:. ði ɪŋglɪʃ du: nɒt put kri:m in ðə ti:; ðei

put milk in their tea. When John comes home from
put mi:lk in ðə ti:. hwen dʒɒn kʌmz həʊm frəm

school, he puts his books away in his room.
sku:l, hi: puts hiz buks ə'wei in hiz ru:m.

What do Mr. and Mrs. Smith drink in the morning?
hwɒt du: mistə ənd misiz smiþ driŋk in ðə mɔ:nɪŋ?

They drink coffee. Who makes the coffee? Mrs. Smith
ðei driŋk kɔ:fi. hu: meiks ðə kɔ:fi? misiz smiþ

makes it. What do they put in their coffee? Mr. Smith
meiks it. hwɒt du: ðei put in ðə kɔ:fi? mistə smiþ

puts both cream and sugar in his coffee, but Mrs. Smith
puts bəʊþ kri:m ənd ʃʊgə in hiz kɔ:fi, bʌt misiz smiþ

puts only cream in her coffee. What do the English
puts ʌnli kri:m in hə: kɔ:fi. hwɒt du: ði ɪŋglɪʃ

put in their tea? They put milk in their tea. Do the
put in ðə ti: ðei put mi:lk in ðə ti: du: ðə

children drink coffee? No, they do not drink coffee;
tfildrən driŋk kɔ:fi? nəʊ, ðei du: nɒt driŋk kɔ:fi;

coffee is not good for children. They get tea or milk
kɔ:fi ɪz nɒt ɡʊd fɔ: tfildrən. ðei get ti: ɔ: mi:lk

get
gets

I get
you get
he gets
she gets
it gets

we get
you get
they get

makes?
does make?

Who makes the
coffee?

Does Mrs. Smith
make the coffee?



egg

to drink. Who makes the butter at the farm? The
tə driŋk. hu: meiks ðə bʌtə æt ðə fa:m? ðə

farmer's wife makes it. From what does she make it?
fa:məz wʌɪf meiks it. frɒm hwɒt dʌz ʃi: meɪk it?

She makes it from cream. Where does she get the
ʃi: meiks it frɒm kri:m. hwɛə dʌz ʃi: get ðə

cream from? She gets it from the milk.
kri:m frɒm? ʃi: gets it frɒm ðə milk.

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Smith's brother is a —. He lives at a — in the —.
 Mr. Smith's house is in — —. In August, it is the
 children's —. Mr. Smith's — are not so long as the
 children's. The children have one — holidays every sum-
 mer. Mr. Smith has only two — holidays. Mr. Smith
 — more than eleven months — year. Mrs. Smith
 works —; she works in — —. Sunday is a —. People
 do not work on holidays, but only on —. Mr. — holi-
 days are in August. The — holidays are also in
 August. The — name is John. The — names are
 Helen and Alice. Mr. Smith has — at the farm every
 summer for many years. He has — his family with
 him every year. Helen is ten — old. — year she will
 be eleven years old. — year there was no baby.

Mr. Smith's brother is the children's uncle; his wife
 is their —. John is their —, and Helen is their —.
 There are many — at the farm. Cows and hens are —.
 From the cows we — milk, and from the hens we get —.

WORDS:

farmer
 farm
 holiday
 work
 too
 this
 next
 uncle
 aunt
 nephew
 niece
 animal
 cow
 hen
 get
 milk
 cream

We get — from the milk, and from the cream the farmer's wife — butter. The children — tea or milk in the morning, but Mr. and Mrs. Smith — coffee. Mr. Smith — both cream and sugar in his coffee, but Mrs. Smith — only cream in her coffee.

Where does John — his books? He — them in his room. Who — the coffee in the morning? Mr. — wife makes it. — the children drink coffee or tea? They — not drink coffee; they — tea or milk. — do we get milk from? We get it from the —. Where — we — eggs from? We get eggs from the —. — are cows and hens? They are —. Is Helen ten years —? Yes, — year she is ten years old, but — year she will — eleven years old.

butter
egg
make
drink
coffee
tea
put
sugar
had
been

EXERCISE B.

What is Mr. Smith's brother? ... Where is his farm? ... Where is Mr. Smith's house? ... Is Saturday a holiday? ... Does Mrs. Smith work too? ... Where does she work? ... Does Mr. Smith go to his brother's farm every year? ... Has his family been with him every year? ... Who is John's uncle? ... Who is his aunt? ... What do we get from the cows? ... Where do we get eggs from? ... Who makes the butter at the farm? ... What does she make it from? ... What do the English put in their tea? ... What do the children drink? ...

THE LAKE

One day at the farm Mr. Smith said to his brother
wan dei æt ðə fa:m mistə smiþ sed tə hiz brʌðə

George, "To-day I shall go to the lake with the children."
dʒɔ:dʒ, "tə'dei ai ʃæl gou tə ðə leik wið ðə tʃildrən."

"Yes," said his brother, "it will be good for them."
"jes," sed hiz brʌðə, "it wil bi: gud fɔ: ðem."

The lake is only small. It is near the farm; it is only
ðə leik iz ounli smɔ:l. it iz niə ðə fa:m; it iz ounli

five minutes from the farm to the lake. The farm is
faiv minits frɔm ðə fa:m tə ðə leik. ðə fa:m iz

not near the city; it is two hours from the city to the
nɒt niə ðə siti; it iz tu: aʊəz frɔm ðə siti tə ðə

farm. The lake is not far from the farm; it is near
fa:m. ðə leik iz nɒt fa: frɔm ðə fa:m; it iz niə

the farm. The farm is far from the city; it is not near
ðə fa:m. ðə fa:m iz fa: frɔm ðə siti; it iz nɒt niə

the city. England is far from Sweden, but England is
ðə siti. iŋɡlənd iz fa: frɔm swi:dn, bʌt iŋɡlənd iz

near France.
niə fra:ns.

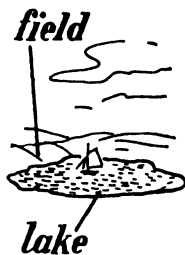
Between the farm and the lake there are fields. In
bi'twi:n ðə fa:m ənd ðə leik ðeə a: fi:ldz. in

some fields there is grass, and in other fields there is
səm fi:ldz ðeə iz gra:s, ənd in ʌðə fi:ldz ðeə iz

shall
 will

I shall
 you will
 he will
 she will
 it will

we shall
 you will
 they will



corn. In summer the animals are in the fields; there
kɔ:n. in sʌmə ði ænɪməlz a: in ðə fi:ldz; ðɛər

are cows in the fields, and there are also horses in the
a: kaʊz in ðə fi:ldz, ənd ðɛər a: ɔ:lsoʊ hɔ:sɪz in ðə

fields. The cows and the horses eat the grass in the
fi:ldz. ðə kaʊz ənd ðə hɔ:sɪz i:t ðə grɑ:s in ðə

fields. When the cows eat much grass, they give good
fi:ldz. hwen ðə kaʊz i:t mʌtʃ grɑ:s, ðei giv gud

milk. The hens eat grass too, and we eat the hens' eggs.
milk. ðə henz i:t grɑ:s tu:, ənd wi: i:t ðə henz eɡz.

The hens also eat corn. When the hens get much corn
ðə henz ɔ:lsoʊ i:t kɔ:n. hwen ðə henz get mʌtʃ kɔ:n

to eat, we get many eggs.
tu i:t, wi: get meni eɡz.

Where is the lake? The lake is near the farm. Is the
hwɛər iz ðə leɪk? ðə leɪk iz niə ðə fa:m. iz ðə

farm near the city? No, the farm is not near the city;
fa:m niə ðə siti? nou, ðə fa:m iz nɒt niə ðə siti;

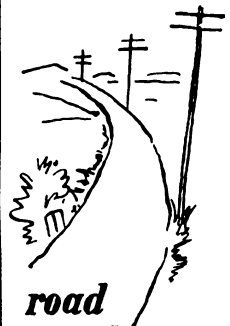
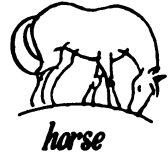
it is far from the city. Is England far from France?
it iz fa: frɒm ðə siti. iz ɪŋɡlənd fa: frɒm fra:ns?

No, England is near France. What is between the lake
nou, ɪŋɡlənd iz niə fra:ns. hwɒt iz bɪ'twi:n ðə leɪk

and the farm? There are fields between the lake and
ənd ðə fa:m? ðɛər a: fi:ldz bɪ'twi:n ðə leɪk ənd

the farm. What animals are there in the fields? There
ðə fa:m. hwɒt ænɪməlz a: ðɛə in ðə fi:ldz? ðɛər

are cows and horses in the fields. What do they eat?
a: kaʊz ənd hɔ:sɪz in ðə fi:ldz. hwɒt du: ðei i:t?



They eat the grass in the fields.

ðei i:t ðə gra:s in ðə fi:ldz.

There is a road from the farm to the lake. There is

ðær iz ə roud frɒm ðə fa:m tə ðə leik. ðær iz

also a road from the city to the farm. The road from

ɔ:lsou ə roud frɒm ðə siti tə ðə fa:m. ðə roud frɒm

the farm to the lake is short. It goes through the fields.

ðə fa:m tə ðə leik iz ʃɔ:t. it gouz þru: ðə fi:ldz.

The children go through the door of the house into the

ðə tʃildrən gou þru: ðə dɔ: əv ðə haus intə ðə

garden. Does the road go through the farm? No, one

ga:dn. dʌz ðə roud gou þru: ðə fa:m? nou, wʌn

road goes to the farm from the city, and another road

roud gouz tə ðə fa:m frɒm ðə siti, and ə'nʌðə roud

goes from the farm to the lake. What does the road

gouz frɒm ðə fa:m tə ðə leik. hwɒt dʌz ðə roud

to the lake go through? It goes through the fields.

tə ðə leik gou þru: it gouz þru: ðə fi:ldz.

How do the children get from the house into the garden?

hau du: ðə tʃildrən get frɒm ðə haus intə ðə ga:dn?

how?

how many?

how long?

How do we swim?

We swim with our arms and legs.

How many horses are there at the farm?

There are four horses at the farm.

How long have you walked?

I have walked for ten minutes.

They go through the door; but sometimes John goes

ðei gou þru: ðə dɔ:; bʌt sʌmtaɪmz dʒɒn gouz

through the window. How do they get from the farm

þru: ðə wɪndəu. hau du: ðei get frɒm ðə fa:m

to the lake? They go by the road through the fields.

tə ðə leik? ðei gou baɪ ðə roud þru: ðə fi:ldz.

How do Mr. Smith and his family get from the farm

hau du: mɪstə smɪθ ənd hɪz fæmɪli get frɒm ðə fa:m

to the city? They go by the road to the city. There
tə ðə siti? ðei gou bai ðə roud tə ðə siti. ðær

is water in the lake. In summer the water is warm.
iz wɔ:tə in ðə leik. in sʌmə ðə wɔ:tə iz wɔ:m.

In winter it is cold, and sometimes there is ice on the
in wintə it iz kould, ənd sʌmtaɪmz ðær iz aɪs ɔn ðə

lake. But when it is summer, the water is warm. When
leik. bʌt hwen it iz sʌmə, ðə wɔ:tə iz wɔ:m. hwen

the children are very warm, they drink cold water, but
ðə tʃɪldrən a: veri wɔ:m, ðei drɪŋk kould wɔ:tə, bʌt

the water in the lake is not good to drink. Mr. Smith
ðə wɔ:tə ɪn ðə leik iz nɒt gud tə drɪŋk. mɪstə smɪθ

takes his children with him to the lake. John takes a
teɪks hɪz tʃɪldrən wɪð hɪm tə ðə leik. dʒɒn teɪks ə

ball with him to play with in the water, and Helen
bɔ:l wɪð hɪm tə pleɪ wɪð ɪn ðə wɔ:tə, ənd helɪn

takes her doll with her.

teɪks hɜ: dɒl wɪð hɜ:.

What is in the lake? There is water in the lake. Do
hwɒt ɪz ɪn ðə leɪk? ðær ɪz wɔ:tə ɪn ðə leɪk. du:

the children drink the water of the lake? No, they
ðə tʃɪldrən drɪŋk ðə wɔ:tə əv ðə leɪk? nou, ðei

do not, but the horses and the cows do. What is on the
du: nɒt, bʌt ðə ha:sɪz ənd ðə kaʊz du:. hwɒt ɪz ɔn ðə

lake in winter? Sometimes there is ice on the lake in
leɪk ɪn wɪntə? sʌmtaɪmz ðær ɪz aɪs ɔn ðə leɪk ɪn

winter. Does Mr. Smith take his children with him to
wɪntə. dʌz mɪstə smɪθ teɪk hɪz tʃɪldrən wɪð hɪm tə

the lake? Yes, he takes them with him. Does he take
ðə leik? jes, hi: teiks ðəm wið him. dʌz hi: teik
 his brother with him? No, his brother has no time
hiz brʌðə wið him? nou, hiz brʌðə hæz nou taim
 to go to the lake; he works every day in summer,
tə gou tə ðə leik; hi: wə:ks evri dei in sʌmə,
 except on Sundays. What do the children take with
ik'sept ɔn sʌndiz. hwɒt du: ðə tʃildrən teik wið
 them to play with? John takes his ball, and Helen
ðəm tə plei wið? dʒɔn teiks hiz bɔ:l, ənd helin
 takes her doll. Does Helen take her doll with her into
teiks hə: dɔl. dʌz helin teik hə: dɔl wið hə: intə
 the water? No, it is not good for her doll to get into
ðə wɔ:tə? nou, it iz nɒt gud fɔ: hə: dɔl tə get intə
 the water. What do Mr. Smith and the children do at
ðə wɔ:tə. hwɒt du: mistə smiθ ənd ðə tʃildrən du: æt
 the lake? They swim in the water. Do they all swim?
ðə leik? dei swim in ðə wɔ:tə. du: dei ɔ:l swim?
 Yes, they all swim, except Baby, but Helen is not a very
jes, dei ɔ:l swim, ik'sept beibi, bʌt helin iz nɒt ə veri
 good swimmer; she has learned to swim this summer.
gud swimə; ʃi: hæz lə:nd tə swim ðis sʌmə.
 Has John learned to swim this summer, too? No, he
hæz dʒɔn lə:nd tə swim ðis sʌmə, tu:ʔ nou, hi:
 learned to swim last summer, and he is a very good
lə:nd tə swim la:st sʌmə, ənd hi: iz ə veri gud
 swimmer. Is the water warm enough to swim in?
swimə. iz ðə wɔ:tə wɔ:m i'nʌf tə swim in?

-ed

He learns, he
 learned, he has
 learned.

They learn, they
 learned, they have
 learned.

Yes, in August it is warm enough, but in spring it is
jes, in ɔ:gast it iz wɔ:m i'naf, bʌt in sprɪŋ it iz

not warm enough; it is too cold in spring to swim in.
nɒt wɔ:m i'naf; it iz tu: kould in sprɪŋ tə swɪm in.

Is the baby big enough to learn to swim? No, she is
iz ðə beɪbi bɪɡ i'nʌf tə lɜ:n tə swɪm? nɒu, ʃi: iz

too small to learn to swim.

tu: smɔ:l tə lɜ:n tə swɪm.

This morning John asked his father, "Father, when
ðɪs mɔ:nɪŋ dʒɒn ɑ:skt hɪz fa:ðə, "fa:ðə, hwen

will you take us to the lake?" "I shall take you there
wɪl ju: teɪk ʌs tə ðə leɪk?" "aɪ ʃæl teɪk ju: ðeə

to-day," his father answered. "Will you come with us,
tə'deɪ," hɪz fa:ðə ɑ:nsəd. "wɪl ju: kʌm wɪð ʌs,

George?" he asked his brother. "No," the farmer
dʒɔ:dʒ? hɪ: ɑ:skt hɪz brʌðə. "nɒu," ðə fa:mə

answered, "I have no time to-day, but ask me on
ɑ:nsəd, "aɪ hæv nɒu taɪm tə'deɪ, bʌt ɑ:sk mi: ɒn

Sunday, and I shall answer 'yes'."

sʌndi, ænd aɪ ʃæl ɑ:nsə 'jes'."

John has asked his father every day for a week, "Will
dʒɒn hæz ɑ:skt hɪz fa:ðə evri deɪ fɔ: ə wi:k, "wɪl

you take us to the lake to-day?" and every day his father
ju: teɪk ʌs tə ðə leɪk tə'deɪ?" ænd evri deɪ hɪz fa:ðə

has answered, "No, not to-day," but this morning his
hæz ɑ:nsəd, "nɒu, nɒt tə'deɪ," bʌt ðɪs mɔ:nɪŋ hɪz

father answered, "Yes, to-day we shall all go to the
fa:ðə ɑ:nsəd, "jes, tə'deɪ wi: ʃæl ɔ:l ɡəʊ tə ðə

-ed

He asks, he asked,
 he has asked.

They ask, they
 asked, they have
 asked.

-ed

He answers, he
 answered, he has
 answered.

They answer, they
 answered, they
 have answered.

-ed

He walks, he
 walked, he has
 walked.

They walk, they
 walked, they have
 walked.

lake." The children and their father will walk to the lake." *ðə tʃɪldrən and ðeə fa:ðə wil wɔ:k tə ðə leɪk.*

lake. What is "to walk"? To walk is to go on foot. *leɪk. hʌt ɪz "tə wɔ:k"? tə wɔ:k ɪz tə ɡoʊ ɔn fu:t.*

The baby does not walk; she is not big enough to walk; *ðə beɪbi dʌz nɒt wɔ:k; ʃi: ɪz nɒt bɪɡ ɪ'nʌf tə wɔ:k;*

but her father takes her on his arm.

bʌt hɜ: fa:ðə teɪks hɜ: ɔn hɪz a:m.

Yesterday the children walked for two hours through *jɛstədi ðə tʃɪldrən wɔ:kt fɔ: tu: aʊəz þru:*

the fields. How long has John walked to-day? He *ðə fi:ldz. hʌu lɔŋ hæz dʒɒn wɔ:kt tə'deɪ? hi:*

has walked for only ten minutes to-day, five minutes *hæz wɔ:kt fɔ: ɒnli ten mɪnɪts tə'deɪ, faɪv mɪnɪts*

town = city

to the lake and five minutes back to the house. After *tə ðə leɪk and faɪv mɪnɪts bæk tə ðə haʊs. a:ftə*

the summer-holidays the family will go back to town *ðə sʌmə'hɒlɪdɪz ðə fæmɪli wil ɡoʊ bæk tə taʊn*

(to the city), and the children will go back to school. *(tə ðə sɪti), and ðə tʃɪldrən wil ɡoʊ bæk tə sku:l.*

When will they go back to town? They will go back *hwen wil ðeɪ ɡoʊ bæk tə taʊn? ðeɪ wil ɡoʊ bæk*

to the city in August.

tə ðə sɪti ɪn ɔ:ɡəst.

What does Mr. Smith say to his brother? He says, *hʌt dʌz mɪstə smɪθ sei tə hɪz brʌðə? hi: sez,*

"Come with us to the lake to-day, George!" And what *"kʌm wɪð ʌs tə ðə leɪk tə'deɪ, dʒɔ:dʒ!" and hʌt*

does his brother answer? He answers, "Not to-day,
dΛz hiz brΛðə a:nsə? hi: a:nsəz, "nɔt tə'dei,

but ask me on Sunday, and I shall answer 'yes'."
bΛt a:sk mi: ɔn sΛndi, ənd ai ʃæl a:nsə 'jes'."

What does John ask his father? He asks, "Will you
hwɔt dΛz dʒɔn a:sk hiz fa:ðə? hi: a:skz, "wil ju:

take us to the lake to-day?" And what does his father
teik ʌs tə ðə leik tə'dei?" ənd hwɔt dΛz hiz fa:ðə

answer? He answers, "Yes, go and take your ball and
a:nsə? hi: a:nsəz, "jes, ɡoʊ ənd teik juə bɔ:l ənd

your doll. To-day we shall all go to the lake and
juə dɔl. tə'dei wi: ʃæl ɔ:l ɡoʊ tə ðə leik ənd

swim."

swim."

EXERCISE A.

The animals of the farm drink —. The water is in
 a —. In winter there is — on the lake. The lake
 is — the farm. The farm is — from the city. There
 are — between the lake and the farm. In some fields
 there is —, and in other fields there is —. There are
 cows and — in the fields. The animals — the grass
 in the fields. From the farm to the lake there is a —.
 The road goes — the fields. To — is to go on foot. In
 winter there is — ice on the lake, but not every day.

John — his ball with him to the lake, and Helen — her
 doll. — do Mr. Smith and his children do at the lake?
 They — in the water of the lake. — John learned to

WORDS:

lake
 near
 far
 field
 corn
 horse
 eat
 road
 through
 by
 town
 sometimes

water
ice
take
swim
swimmer
enough
ask
answer
walk
back
how?
get
shall

swim? Yes, he learned — — last summer; he is a very good —. Is the baby big — to swim? No, she is — small to swim. — do the children get from the house into the garden? They go — the door. — do they get from the farm to the lake? They — by the road to the lake. “When will you take us to the lake?” John — his father. “I — take you there to-day; to-day I have time,” his father —.

EXERCISE B.

Who drinks the water in the lake? ... What is on the lake sometimes in winter? ... Is the lake far from the farm? ... Is the farm far from the city? ... How do they get from the farm to the lake? ... Does the baby walk? ... What animals are in the fields? ... What does the road to the lake go through? ... What is there in the fields? ... Do all the children swim in the lake? ... What do the children take with them to the lake? ... How does Mr. Smith take the baby to the lake? ... Is it warm enough in spring to swim in the lake? ... Is Helen a good swimmer? ...

Has Helen learned to swim this year? ... Has John asked his father before to-day to take them to the lake? ... What does Mr. Smith's brother answer, when Mr. Smith asks him, “Will you come with us to the lake?” ... How long has John walked to-day? ... When will the family go back to town? ... How far is it from the farm to the lake? ... How far is it from the farm to the city? ...

MEALS

In England most people have three meals every day.
in ɪŋɡlənd maʊst pi:pl hæv θri: mi:lz evri dei.

We also eat three meals a day. The first meal of the
wi:ʔ:lsou i:t θri: mi:lz ə dei. ðə fə:st mi:l əv ðə

day we call breakfast. In England people eat much
dei wi: kɔ:l brekfəst. in ɪŋɡlənd pi:pl i:t mʌʃ

more for breakfast than in other countries. In many
mɔ: fɔ: brekfəst ðæn in ʌðə kʌntriz. in menɪ

countries people have only bread and butter with coffee
'kʌntriz pi:pl hæv ʌnli bred ənd bʌtə wið kɔ:fi

or tea, but in England they have fish, eggs and bacon,
ɔ: ti:, bʌt in ɪŋɡlənd ðei hæv fɪʃ, eɡz ənd beɪkən,

and sometimes porridge, too, for breakfast. After this,
ənd sʌmtaɪnz pɔ:ridʒ, tu:, fɔ: brekfəst. a:ftə ðɪs,

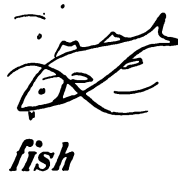
they have tea or coffee with bread and butter. Some-
ðei hæv ti: ɔ: kɔ:fi wið bred ənd bʌtə. sʌm-

times they put marmalade on their bread and butter.
taɪmz ðei put mɑ:məleɪd ɒn ðeə bred ənd bʌtə.

We make marmalade from one of the fruits.
wi: meɪk mɑ:məleɪd frəm wʌn əv ðə fru:ts.

The next meal of the day is lunch, at one o'clock. Some
ðə nekst mi:l əv ðə dei ɪz lʌnʃ, ət wʌn ə'klɒk. sʌm

people eat lunch at noon (twelve o'clock). For lunch
pi:pl i:t lʌnʃ ət nu:n (twelv ə'klɒk). fɔ: lʌnʃ





bacon

one potato
two potatoes



carrot



potato

most English people eat some meat and vegetables. The
moust ɪŋɡlɪʃ pi:pl i:t sʌm mi:t ənd vedʒɪtəblz. ðə

meat of cows is beef. Vegetables are plants. A potato
mi:t əv kaʊz ɪz bi:f. vedʒɪtəblz ɑ: plɑ:nts. ə pə'teɪtəʊ

is a vegetable; a carrot is a vegetable. At seven o'clock
ɪz ə vedʒɪtəbl; ə kə'reɪt ɪz ə vedʒɪtəbl. æt səvən ə'klɒk

we have dinner. Dinner is the biggest meal of the
wɪ: hæv dɪnə. dɪnə ɪz ðə bɪɡɪst mi:l əv ðə

day. For dinner most people have meat and vegetables
deɪ. fɔ: dɪnə moust pi:pl hæv mi:t ənd vedʒɪtəblz

first. After the meat they sometimes have fruit.
fə:st. ɑ:ftə ðə mi:t ðeɪ sʌmtaɪmz hæv fru:t.

How many meals do we eat a day? We eat three meals
haʊ menɪ mi:lz du: wɪ: i:t ə deɪ? wɪ: i:t θri: mi:lz

a day, but some people also drink tea between the meals.
ə deɪ, bʌt sʌm pi:pl ɔ:lsoʊ drɪŋk ti: bi'twi:n ðə mi:lz.

What are the three big meals of the day? They are
hwɒt ɑ: ðə θri: bɪɡ mi:lz əv ðə deɪ? ðeɪ ɑ:

breakfast in the morning, lunch at noon or at one o'clock,
brekfʌst ɪn ðə mɔ:niŋ, lʌnʃ æt nu:n ɔ: ət wʌn ə'klɒk,

and dinner in the evening at seven o'clock. Do all
ənd dɪnə ɪn ði i:vniŋ æt səvən ə'klɒk. du: ɔ:l

people have dinner in the evening? No, some people
pi:pl hæv dɪnə ɪn ði i:vniŋ? nəʊ, sʌm pi:pl

have dinner at one o'clock, and then they call the
hæv dɪnə ət wʌn ə'klɒk, ənd ðen ðeɪ kɔ:l ði

evening meal supper. For supper people have bread
i:vniŋ mi:l sʌpə. fɔ: sʌpə pi:pl hæv bred

and butter, sometimes with cold meat.
ænd bʌtə, sʌmtaɪmz wɪð kəʊld mi:t.

What are vegetables? Vegetables are plants; potatoes
hwɒt a: vedʒɪtəblz? vedʒɪtəblz a: plɑ:nts; pə'teɪtəʊz

and carrots are vegetables. Food is what we eat. Meat
ænd kærəʊts a: vedʒɪtəblz. fu:d ɪz hwɒt wi: i:t. mi:t

is food, bread is food, everything we eat is food. A
ɪz fu:d, bred ɪz fu:d, evriθɪŋ wi: i:t ɪz fu:d. ə

tree is a thing; a house is a thing. A man is not a
tri: ɪz ə θɪŋ; ə haʊs ɪz ə θɪŋ. ə mæn ɪz nɒt ə

thing, a man is a person. A boy is not a thing, a boy
θɪŋ, ə mæn ɪz ə pɜ:sn. ə bɔɪ ɪz nɒt ə θɪŋ, ə bɔɪ

is a person, too.
ɪz ə pɜ:sn, tu:.

When it was time to have a meal, the mother went to
hwɛn ɪt wəz taɪm tə hæv ə mi:l, ðə mʌðə went tə

the door and called, "John and Helen, where are you?
ðə dɔ: ænd kɔ:ld, "dʒɒn ænd helɪn, hwɛər a: ju:?"

Come in, it is dinner-time." But the children were not
kʌm ɪn, ɪt ɪz dɪnətaɪm." bʌt ðə tʃɪldrən wə: nɒt

in the garden. The mother called again, "John and
ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn. ðə mʌðə kɔ:ld ə'geɪn, "dʒɒn ænd

Helen — it is dinner-time!"
helɪn — ɪt ɪz dɪnətaɪm!"

She went back into the house again and said to her
ʃi: went bæk ɪntə ðə haʊs ə'geɪn ænd sed tə hɜ:

husband, "Allan, will you go out into the fields and see
hʌsbænd, "ælən, wɪl ju: ɡəʊ aʊt ɪntə ðə fi:ldz ænd si:

what?
 what

What does he say?

I take **what** you
 give me.

What we eat is
 food.

Chapter Twelve (12).

do
does
did

The teacher **does**
not see the child-
ren every day.

The children
do not go to
school every day.

He **did** not see
them yesterday.

They **did** not go to
school yesterday.

had been

He **had been**.
They **had been**.

where the children are? It is dinner-time. They do
hwæa ða tfildræn a:ʔ it iz dinətaim. ðei du:

not hear me when I call. I have called three times.
nɒt hiə mi: hwen ai kɔ:l. ai hæv kɔ:ld ʔri: taimz.

They are not good children; every day at lunch-time
ðei a: nɒt gud tfildræn; evri ðei æt lʌnstaim

and dinner-time, they are not here and do not hear me.”
ænd dinətaim, ðei a: nɒt hiə ænd du: nɒt hiə mi:.”

Mr. Smith went out, but when he came back, the
mistə smiθ went aʊt, bʌt hwen hi: keim bæk, ða

children were not with him. “I called many times, but
tfildræn wə: nɒt wið him. “ai kɔ:ld meni taimz, bʌt

they were not there.” “Oh, where are the children?”
ðei wə: nɒt ðeə.” “ou, hwær a: ða tfildræn?”

the mother said and went into the house — and there
ðə mʌðə sed ænd went intə ðə haʊs — ænd ðeə

were the children!
wə: ðə tfildræn!

They had been in their rooms in the house when their
ðei hæd bi:n in ðeə ru:mz in ðə haʊs hwen ðeə

mother called. “Have you called, father and mother?”
mʌðə kɔ:ld. “hæv ju: kɔ:ld, fa:ðə ænd mʌðə?”

they asked. What did the mother go out into the
ðei a:skt. hwɒt did ðə mʌðə ɡoʊ aʊt intə ðə

garden for? She went out to call the children. Did
ɡɑ:dn fɔ:ʔ ʃi: went aʊt tə kɔ:l ðə tfildræn. did

she see them? No, she did not see them, they were
ʃi: si: ðem? nɒu, ʃi: did nɒt si: ðem, ðei wə:

not there. What did the mother do when she did
not ðəə. hʷɔt did ðə mʌðə du: hwen si: did

not see the children? She said to the father, "Will
not si: ðə tʃɪldrən? si: sed tə ðə fa:ðə, "wɪl

you go out into the fields and call the children?"
ju: ɡəʊ aʊt ɪntə ðə fi:ldz ənd kɔ:l ðə tʃɪldrən?"

Did the children hear their parents call them? No,
did ðə tʃɪldrən hiə ðəə peərənts kɔ:l ðem? nou,

they did not. Where had the children been? They
ðei did nɔt. hweə həd ðə tʃɪldrən bi:n? ðei

had been in their rooms. How many meals a day do
həd bi:n ɪn ðəə ru:mz. haʊ meni mi:lz ə dei du:

most people have? They have three meals a day.
mʌst pi:pl həv? ðei həv θri: mi:lz ə dei.

What is food? Everything we eat is food. Bread is
hʷɔt ɪz fu:d? evriθɪŋ wi: i:t ɪz fu:d. bred ɪz

food; meat is food. Is a man a thing? No, a man
fu:d; mi:t ɪz fu:d. ɪz ə mæn ə θɪŋ? nou, ə mæn

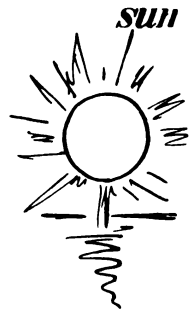
is not a thing, a man is a person. When do people
ɪz nɔt ə θɪŋ, ə mæn ɪz ə pə:sn. hwen du: pi:pl

have tea? Oh, some have tea many times a day.
həv ti:? ɔʊ, sʌm həv ti: meni taɪmz ə dei.

Most people have tea in the afternoon at four o'clock
mʌst pi:pl həv ti: ɪn ði ɑ:ftə'nu:n æt fɔ: ə'klɔk

or five o'clock (at tea-time). Some people have coffee
ɔ: faɪv ə'klɔk (æt ti:taɪm). sʌm pi:pl həv kɔfi

after lunch and after dinner.
ɑ:ftə lʌnʃ ənd ɑ:ftə dɪnə.



bed



comes?
does ... come?

What comes?
Who comes?

Does **the man**
come?

do you have?
have you?

Do you have
dinner at seven
o'clock?

I do not have
dinner at seven
o'clock.

Have you walked
to the lake?

I have not walked
to the lake.

When is it morning? It is morning from the time the
hwen iz it mɔ:nɪŋ? it iz mɔ:nɪŋ frəm ðə taɪm ðə

sun is up till (until) noon. When is noon? Noon is
sʌn iz ʌp tɪl (ʌn'tɪl) nu:n. hwen iz nu:n? nu:n iz

at twelve o'clock. When is the afternoon? The after-
æt twelv ə'klɒk. hwen iz ði ɑ:ftə'nu:n? ði ɑ:ftə-

noon is from lunch-time until tea-time. What do we
'nu:n iz frəm lʌnstɑɪm ʌn'tɪl ti:taɪm. hwɔt du: wi:

call the time after tea-time? The time after tea-time
kɔ:l ðə taɪm ɑ:ftə ti:taɪm? ðə taɪm ɑ:ftə ti:taɪm

we call the evening. What comes after the evening?
wi: kɔ:l ði i:vniŋ. hwɔt kʌmz ɑ:ftə ði i:vniŋ?

After the evening comes the night. At night people
ɑ:ftə ði i:vniŋ kʌmz ðə naɪt. æt naɪt pi:pl

sleep. They sleep in beds. The children go to bed at
slɪ:p. ðeɪ slɪ:p ɪn bedz. ðə tʃɪldrən ɡoʊ tə bed æt

eight o'clock in the evening. Then their mother puts
eɪt ə'klɒk ɪn ði i:vniŋ. ðen ðeə mʌðə pʊts

them to bed and says, "Good night, John and Helen.
ðəm tə bed ʌnd sez, "ɡʊd naɪt, dʒɒn ʌnd helɪn.

sleep well!" The parents do not go to bed till eleven
slɪ:p wel!" ðə peərənts du: nɔt ɡoʊ tə bed tɪl ɪ'levn

o'clock.
ə'klɒk.

What do John and Helen have for breakfast? Some-
hwɔt du: dʒɒn ʌnd helɪn hæv fɔ: brekfʌst? sʌm-

times they have porridge and milk for breakfast. Do
taɪmz ðeɪ hæv pɔrɪdʒ ʌnd mɪlk fɔ: brekfʌst. du:

the children have coffee in the afternoon? No, they
ðə tʃɪldrən hæv kɒfi ɪn ði ɑːftəˈnuːn? nou, ðeɪ

do not, but sometimes, when they come from school
duː nɒt, bʌt sʌmtaɪmz, hwen ðeɪ kʌm frəm skuːl

in the afternoon, they have tea with bread and butter.
ɪn ði ɑːftəˈnuːn, ðeɪ hæv tiː wɪð bred ænd bʌtə.

EXERCISE A.

We have three big — a day. The first meal of the day is —. Some people have — in the morning with — and butter, and the children sometimes have — and milk. The English eat more for — than most people; they have — and eggs, and sometimes —. They drink tea and have bread and butter with —. At one o'clock people have —. In some countries most people — bread and butter for lunch, but in England many people have — and — for lunch.

— and — are vegetables. The third big meal of the day is —. For dinner we have — and vegetables. The meat of cows is —. At twelve o'clock it is —. The time between lunch-time and tea-time is the —. Sometimes people have dinner at one o'clock, and then they call the meal at seven o'clock —. The time after tea-time is the —. — is what we eat. A tree is a —, and a house is also a —, but a man is not a —; a man is a person.

When did the mother — the children? The mother went to the door and — John and Helen before dinner. Did the children — their mother call? No, the children

WORDS:
 breakfast
 meal
 bread
 fish
 bacon
 porridge
 marmalade
 lunch
 vegetable
 potato
 carrot
 dinner
 meat
 beef
 supper
 food
 everything
 thing

call
hear
again
see
evening
noon
did
afternoon
sleep
bed
till
until
out
sun
up

did not — their mother call. What — the mother do, when the children did not come? When they did not come, she went into the house — and said to her husband, “I do not — the children. Will you go — and see — they are?” — do the children go to bed? The children go to — at eight o'clock. — puts the children to bed? Their mother puts them to bed and says, “Good night, children, — well!” — do the parents go to bed? The parents do not go to bed — eleven o'clock.

EXERCISE B.

How many meals do most people have a day? ... What are the three big meals of the day? ... What do they have in England for breakfast? ... What do people in some other countries have for breakfast? ... What do English people have for lunch? ... What do we call potatoes and carrots? ... Do all people have dinner at seven o'clock? ... Are trees and houses things or persons? ... Where had the children been when their mother called them? ... What did they say when they came from their rooms? ... When is the afternoon? ... What do we call the time after tea-time? ... When do the children go to bed? ...

LANGUAGES

English is a language, Swedish is a language, and
ɪŋglɪʃ ɪz ə læŋɡwɪdʒ, swiːdɪʃ ɪz ə læŋɡwɪdʒ, ænd

French is a language. English, Swedish, and French
frenʃ ɪz ə læŋɡwɪdʒ. ɪŋglɪʃ, swiːdɪʃ, ænd frenʃ

are languages. The people in England speak the English
ɑː læŋɡwɪdʒɪz. ðə piːpl ɪn ɪŋɡlənd spiːk ði ɪŋglɪʃ

language; they speak English. The people in Sweden
læŋɡwɪdʒ; ðeɪ spiːk ɪŋglɪʃ. ðə piːpl ɪn swiːdn

speak the Swedish language; they speak Swedish. The
spiːk ðə swiːdɪʃ læŋɡwɪdʒ; ðeɪ spiːk swiːdɪʃ. ðə

people in France speak the French language; they speak
piːpl ɪn fraːns spiːk ðə frenʃ læŋɡwɪdʒ; ðeɪ spiːk

French. A language has many words. "Man" is a
frenʃ. ə læŋɡwɪdʒ hæz mæni wəːdz. "mæn" ɪz ə

word; "go" is a word. The word "read" has four
wəːd; "ɡoʊ" ɪz ə wəːd. ðə wəːd "riːd" hæz fɔː

letters: r-e-a-d; "r" is a letter; "e" is a letter; "a" is
letəz. ɑː-iː-eɪ-diː; "ɑː" ɪz ə letə; "iː" ɪz ə letə; "eɪ" ɪz

a letter; "d" is a letter.

ə letə; "diː" ɪz ə letə.

What language do people speak in Norway? In Norway
hwɒt læŋɡwɪdʒ duː piːpl spiːk ɪn nɔːwei? ɪn nɔːwei

they speak Norwegian. Where do they speak the
ðeɪ spiːk nɔːˈwiːdʒən. hwɛə duː ðeɪ spiːk ði

Chapter Thirteen (13).

The English
alphabet:

a [ei]
b [bi:]
c [si:]
d [di:]
e [i:]
f [ef]
g [dʒi:]
h [eitʃ]
i [ai]
j [dʒei]
k [kei]
l [el]
m [em]
n [en]
o [ou]
p [pi:]
q [kju:]
r [a:]
s [es]
t [ti:]
u [ju:]
v [vi:]
w [dʌbl ju:]
x [eks]
y [wai]
z [zed]

English language? They speak the English language
ɪŋɡlɪʃ læŋɡwɪdʒ? ðei spi:k ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ læŋɡwɪdʒ

in many countries, for example: in England, in North
in meni kʌntri:z, fər ɪɡˈzɑ:mpl: in ɪŋɡlənd, in nɔ:θ

America, and in Australia. How many words has the
əˈmerɪkə, ænd in ɔ:ˈstreɪljə. haʊ meni wə:dz hæz ði

English language? They say it has 250,000 (two hundred
ɪŋɡlɪʃ læŋɡwɪdʒ? ðei sei ɪt hæz tu: hʌndrɪd

and fifty thousand) words. How many letters are
ænd fɪfti ˈpaʊzənd wə:dz. haʊ meni letəz a:

there in the word "woman"? There are five letters
ðeə ɪn ðə wə:d ˈwʊmən? ðeər a: faɪv letəz

in the word "woman".

ɪn ðə wə:d ˈwʊmən.

How many letters has the alphabet? The English
haʊ meni letəz hæz ði ˈælfəbɪt? ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

alphabet has twenty-six (26) letters. Some alphabets
ˈælfəbɪt hæz ˈtwentiˈsɪks letəz. sʌm ˈælfəbɪts

have more than twenty-six letters.

hæv mɔ: ðæn ˈtwentiˈsɪks letəz.

Can the children in the Swedish schools speak English?

kæn ðə ˈtʃɪldrən ɪn ðə swɪˈdiʃ sku:lz spi:k ɪŋɡlɪʃ?

No, not the small children, but the big children learn
nəʊ, nɒt ðə smɔ:l ˈtʃɪldrən, bʌt ðə bɪɡ ˈtʃɪldrən læ:n

to speak English. Can John speak Danish? No, the
tə spi:k ɪŋɡlɪʃ. kæn dʒɒn spi:k ˈdeɪnɪʃ? nəʊ, ðə

children in England cannot speak Danish; they do
ˈtʃɪldrən ɪn ɪŋɡlənd kænɒt spi:k ˈdeɪnɪʃ; ðei du:

cannot = can not

not learn to speak Danish in the English schools.
nɒt lə:n tə spi:k deiniʃ in ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ sku:lz.

Can the baby walk? No, she cannot walk, she is not
kæn ðə beɪbi wɔ:k? nou, ʃi: kænɒt wɔ:k, ʃi: ɪz nɒt

big enough to walk. The mother says that she cannot
big i'nʌf tə wɔ:k. ðə mʌðə sez ðæt ʃi: kænɒt

see the children; the mother says, "I cannot see the
si: ðə tʃɪldrən; ðə mʌðə sez, "aɪ kænɒt si: ðə

children." The father says that they are in the fields;
tʃɪldrən." ðə fa:ðə sez ðæt ðeɪ a: in ðə fi:ldz;

he says, "They are in the fields." John said that he
hi: sez, "ðeɪ a: in ðə fi:ldz." dʒɒn sed ðæt hi:

had been in his room; John said, "I have been in my
həd bi:n in hɪz ru:m; dʒɒn sed, "aɪ hæv bi:n in maɪ
room."
ru:m."

Some words say that a person or a thing does or is
səm wə:dz sei ðæt ə pə:sn ɔ: ə ʃɪŋ dʌz ɔ: ɪz

something, for example: The man goes; the house is in
səmʃɪŋ, fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl: ðə mæn ɡəʊz; ðə haʊs ɪz in

the garden; the mother makes the food; the children
ðə ɡɑ:dən; ðə mʌðə meɪks ðə fu:d; ðə tʃɪldrən

play in the garden. The words we have here we call
pleɪ in ðə ɡɑ:dən. ðə wə:dz wi: hæv hɪə wi: kɔ:l

"verbs". The words "go", "play", "make" are verbs.
"və:bz". ðə wə:dz "ɡəʊ", "pleɪ", "meɪk" a: və:bz.

Are there other verbs? Yes, there are many other
a: ðeə ʌðə və:bz? jes, ðeə a: menɪ ʌðə

Chapter Thirteen (13).

this
these

This boy is
English.

These children are
English.

everything
something

Can you say
everything in
English?

No, but now I can
say **something** in
English.

verbs. There is a word for everything we do, and
və:bz. ðeər ɪz ə wə:d fɔ: evriþɪŋ wi: du:, and

these words we call "verbs". "Give" is an English
ði:z wə:dz wi: kɔ:l "və:bz". "gɪv" ɪz ən ɪŋglɪʃ

verb; this verb is English. "Give" and "take" are
və:b; ðɪs və:b ɪz ɪŋglɪʃ. "gɪv" and "teɪk" ɑ:

English verbs; these verbs are English.

ɪŋglɪʃ və:bz; ði:z və:bz ɑ: ɪŋglɪʃ.

We shall now write some of the English verbs we have
wɪ: ʃæl naʊ raɪt sʌm əv ðɪ ɪŋglɪʃ və:bz wi: hæʊ

learned till now: I **learn**, they **call**, he **plays**, we **ask**,
lə:nd tɪl naʊ: aɪ lə:n, ðeɪ kɔ:l, hi: pleɪz, wi: ɑ:sk,

you **answer**, she **has**, and many others. All these verbs
ju: ɑ:nsə, ʃi: hæz, and menɪ ʌðəz. ɔ:l ði:z və:bz

say that a person does or is something at this time,
seɪ ðæt ə pə:sn dʌz ɔ: ɪz sʌmþɪŋ æt ðɪs taɪm,

to-day, or now. But when we say: I **learned**, they have
tə'deɪ, ɔ: naʊ. bʌt hwen wi: seɪ: aɪ lə:nd, ðeɪ hæʊ

called, he **played**, we have **asked**, you **answered**, she
kɔ:ld, hi: pleɪd, wi: hæʊ. ɑ:skt, ju: ɑ:nsəd, ʃi:

had, we do not say that the persons do something now,
həd, wɪ: du: nɒt seɪ ðæt ðə pə:snz du: sʌmþɪŋ naʊ,

at this time, but at another time, a time before now:
æt ðɪs taɪm, bʌt æt ə'nʌðə taɪm, ə taɪm bɪ'fɔ: naʊ:

we **asked** her **yesterday**; **last year** they **were** at the
wɪ: ɑ:skt hə: jestədi; lɑ:st jɪə ðeɪ wə: æt ðə

farm. In most of these verbs we put -ed after the word
fɑ:m. ɪn mʌst əv ði:z və:bz wi: pʊt ɪ'di: ɑ:ftə ðə wə:d

when the time is not now, but a time before now.
hwen ðə taim ɪz nɒt nau, bʌt ə taim bɪ'fɔː nau.

But in some of the verbs we do not put -ed after the
bʌt ɪn sʌm əv ðə vɜːbz wiː duː nɒt pʊt ɪ'diː aːftə ðə

word; we say: I **give** to-day, but: I **gave** yesterday. We
wəːd; wiː seiː aɪ gɪv tə'deɪ, bʌtː aɪ geɪv jɛstədi. wiː

also say: I have **learned** to read at school, but: I have
ɔːlsou seiː aɪ hæv ləːnd tə riːd æt skuːl, bʌtː aɪ hæv

given her the pencil. I **take** the book now. I **took** the
gɪv hɜː ðə pensɪl. aɪ teɪk ðə buːk nau. aɪ tuk ðə

book yesterday. I have **taken** the book home with me.
buːk jɛstədi. aɪ hæv teɪkən ðə buːk haʊm wɪð miː.

What **does** John do in the morning? He **goes** to school
hwɒt dʌz dʒɒn duː ɪn ðə mɔːnɪŋ? hiː goʊz tə skuːl

in the morning. What **did** John do yesterday? He **went**
ɪn ðə mɔːnɪŋ. hwɒt dɪd dʒɒn duː jɛstədi? hiː wɛnt

to school yesterday. What has John **done** for seven
tə skuːl jɛstədi. hwɒt hæz dʒɒn dʌn fɔː sevn

years? He has **gone** to school for seven years.
jiəz? hiː hæz ɡɒn tə skuːl fɔː sevn jiəz.

I **see** the children in the garden. I also **saw** them there
aɪ siː ðə tʃɪldrən ɪn ðə ɡɑːdn. aɪ ɔːlsou sɔː ðɛm ðeə

yesterday. I have **seen** them there every day.
jɛstədi. aɪ hæv siːn ðɛm ðeə evri deɪ.

John **hears** mother call him now. He **heard** mother call
dʒɒn hiəz mʌðə kɔːl hɪm nau. hiː hæd mʌðə kɔːl

him before. He has not **heard** mother call.
hɪm bɪ'fɔː. hiː hæz nɒt hæd mʌðə kɔːl.

They **put** their books in their rooms now. They **put** their
dei put ðeə buks in ðeə ru:mz nau. dei put ðeə

books in their rooms yesterday. They have **put** their
buks in ðeə ru:mz jestədi. dei hæv put ðeə

books in their rooms every day this week.
buks in ðeə ru:mz evri dei ðis wi:k.

Mother **makes** the food to-day. Aunt Gwen **made** the
mʌðə meiks ðə fu:d tə'dei. a:nt gwen meid ðə

tea yesterday. Helen has not **made** the tea.
ti: jestədi. helin hæz nɒt meid ðə ti:.

Baby **sleeps** in Helen's room now. Baby **slept** in her
beibi sli:ps in helinz ru:m nau. beibi slept in hə:

mother's room till she was six months old. Baby has
mʌðəz ru:m til ʃi: wəz siks mʌnθs ould. beibi hæz

slept in Helen's room for twelve days.
slept in helinz ru:m fɔ: twelv deiz.

We **eat** three meals a day. John **ate** a pear yesterday.
wi: i:t θri: mi:lz ə dei. dʒɒn et ə peə jestədi.

Helen has not **eaten** all her apples.
helin hæz nɒt i:tn ɔ:l hə: æplz.

Helen **says** something to her father now. She **said**
helin sez sʌmθɪŋ tə hə: fa:ðə nau. ʃi: sed

something to him yesterday. Has mother **said** "Good
sʌmθɪŋ tə him jestədi. hæz mʌðə sed "gud

night" to you?
nait" tə ju:?

Helen **swims** very well now. John **swam** in the lake
helin swimz veri wel nau. dʒɒn swæm in ðə leik

yesterday. He has **swum** many times in the lake.

jestadi. hi: hæz swam meni taimz in ðə leik.

The cows **drink** the water of the lake. John **drank**

ðə kauz driŋk ðə wɔ:tə əv ðə leik. dʒɒn dræŋk

milk yesterday. Baby has not **drunk** her milk.

milk jestadi. beibi hæz nɒt dræŋk hæ: milk.

I **read** a book every week. I **read** a book yesterday. I

ai ri:d ə buk evri wi:k. ai red ə buk jestadi. ai

have **read** this book many times.

hæv red ðis buk meni taimz.

John **writes** to his uncle every month. He **wrote** to his

dʒɒn raits tə hiz ʌŋkl evri mʌnθ. hi: rəʊt tə hiz

uncle yesterday. He has **written** many times to his uncle.

ʌŋkl jestadi. hi: hæz ritn meni taimz tə hiz ʌŋkl.

John **can** read books now. He **could** not read when he was

dʒɒn kæn ri:d buks nau. hi: kud nɒt ri:d hwen hi: wɔz

five years old. He **has been able to** read for six years.

faɪv jɪəz ould. hi: hæz bi:n eɪbl tə ri:d fɔ: siks jɪəz.

We say: I am able to, or I can. I was able to, or I could.

wi: sei: ai æm eɪbl tə, ɔ: ai kæn. ai wɔz eɪbl tə, ɔ: ai kud.

But we can only say: I have been able to. You are able

bʌt wi: kæn ɔnli sei: ai hæv bi:n eɪbl tə. ju: a: eɪbl

to, or you can. You were able to, or you could. You

tə, ɔ: ju: kæn. ju: wə: eɪbl tə, ɔ: ju: kud. ju:

have been able to. He is able to, or he can. He was

hæv bi:n eɪbl tə. hi: ɪz eɪbl tə, ɔ: hi: kæn. hi: wɔz

able to, or he could. He has been able to. When you

eɪbl tə, ɔ: hi: kud. hi: hæz bi:n eɪbl tə. hwen ju:

have read all these verbs many times, you will have
hæv red ɔ:l ði:z və:bz meni taimz, ju: wil hæv

learned them.

lə:nd ðem.

What is a verb? A verb is a word. What does a verb
hwɒt iz ə və:b? ə və:b iz ə wə:d. hwɒt dʌz ə və:b

say? A verb says what a person or a thing does or is.
sei? ə və:b sez hwɒt ə pə:sn ɔ: ə þɪŋ dʌz ɔ: iz.

Which of these words: "The father gives John a foot-
hwɪts əv ði:z wə:dz: "ðə fa:ðə gɪvz dʒɒn ə fut-

ball", is a verb? The word "gives" is a verb; when
bɔ:l", iz ə və:b? ðə wə:d "gɪvz" iz ə və:b; hwɛn

we ask, "What does the father do?" we answer, "He
wɪ: ɑ:sk, "hwɒt dʌz ðə fa:ðə du:?" wɪ: ɑ:nsə, "hi:

gives." Which of these words: "John was in the garden",
gɪvz." hwɪts əv ði:z wə:dz: "dʒɒn wəz ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn",

is a verb? The word "was" is a verb. What do we put
iz ə və:b? ðə wə:d "wəz" iz ə və:b. hwɒt du: wɪ: put

after most English verbs when it is not now that we do
ɑ:f tə mʌst ɪŋɡlɪʃ və:bz hwɛn ɪt ɪz nɒt naʊ ðət wɪ: du:

something, but at a time before now? We put the letters
sʌmþɪŋ, bʌt ət ə taim bɪ'fɔ: naʊ? wɪ: put ðə letəz

-ed after the word. We have had some of these verbs.
ɪ:di: ɑ:f tə ðə wə:d. wɪ: hæv həd sʌm əv ði:z və:bz.

The word "learn" is one of these verbs; we say: I **learn**
ðə wə:d "lə:n" ɪz wʌn əv ði:z və:bz; wɪ: sei: ɑɪ lə:n

English now, I **learned** some English words yesterday,
ɪŋɡlɪʃ naʊ, ɑɪ lə:nd sʌm ɪŋɡlɪʃ wə:dz jɛstədi,

but I have not learned enough English words.

bʌt aɪ hæv nɒt lɜːnd iˈnʌf ɪŋɡlɪʃ wəːdɜː.

Have we had others of these verbs? Yes, we have

hæv wiː hæd ʌðəz əv ðiːz vɜːbz? jɛs, wiː hæv

learned some others: “call”, “play”, “ask”, “answer”,

lɜːnd sʌm ʌðəzː “kɔːl”, “pleɪ”, “ɑːsk”, “ɑːnsə”,

and “walk”; after all these verbs we put the letters -ed

ænd “wɔːk”; ɑːftə ɔːl ðiːz vɜːbz wiː put ðə letəz iːdiː

when we speak of a time before now. Do all verbs take

hwen wiː spiːk əv ə taɪm bɪfɔː naʊ. duː ɔːl vɜːbz teɪk

-ed? No, we have also learned some other verbs, for

iːdiː? nou, wiː hæv ɔːlsou lɜːnd sʌm ʌðə vɜːbz, fɔː

example: “give”, “take”; these verbs do not take the -ed.

ɪɡˈzɑːmplː “ɡɪv”, “teɪk”; ðiːz vɜːbz duː nɒt teɪk ði iːdiː.

other
others

Have we had
other verbs?

Yes, we have had
others.

EXERCISE A.

French is a —, and English is also a —. In England

people — the English language, and in Sweden they —

Swedish. “Man” and “book” are —. There are three

— in the word “man”. There are twenty-six letters

in the English —, but in other — there are more —.

The big children in the Swedish schools can speak

English, but in the English schools the children — speak

Swedish. John says — he can swim. Helen says —

she is not a good swimmer. I gave her the pencil;

I have — her the pencil. He takes the book to-day;

he — the book yesterday; he has — the book many

times. Helen has — to school for five years.

Chapter Thirteen (13).

WORDS:

language
speak
word
letter
alphabet
can
cannot
could
able to
that
something
example
verb
these
north
fifty
hundred
thousand
given
took
taken
gone
done
saw
seen
said
heard
put
made
slept
ate
eaten
swam
swum
drank
drunk

Verbs say what a person or a thing does, — example:
The man goes. The words “play”, “walk”, “learn” we call —. In — three verbs we put -ed after the word when we speak of a time before —.

What — John do yesterday morning? He — to school.
What has Helen — for five years? She has — to school for five years. John asks Helen, “Have you seen my book?” and she —, “No, I have not — it to-day, but I — it yesterday.” Had John and Helen — their mother call them? No, but they — her when they came from their rooms. Where does John — his books when he comes home from school? He — them in his room. He — them there yesterday, and he has — them there every day. Who — the food? Mother — it. Who — the tea yesterday? Aunt Gwen — it. Has Helen — the tea? No, she has not — it.

Where — people sleep? They sleep in —. — Helen sleep last night? Yes, she — last night. — the baby slept in John’s room? No, but she has — in Helen’s room for twelve days. What — the children have for breakfast? They — porridge. Did they — porridge yesterday? No, yesterday they — bread and butter. Has Baby — bread for breakfast, too? No, she has — milk. — John and Helen swim in the lake every day? No, but they — there yesterday, and they have — there many times this summer. Has John — the book his father gave him? Yes, he read it yesterday, and Helen will — it now.

What — John write with at school? He — with pen and ink, but when he was small, he — with a pencil.

Has Helen — with pen and ink? Yes, but when she was small, she — not — with pen and ink. Can Helen swim? Yes, but last year she — not swim. Has John been — to swim for many years? No, he has only — able — swim for two years.

read
wrote
written
now
twenty-six
time
America
Australia

EXERCISE B.

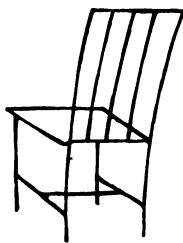
What language do they speak in England? ... What language do they speak in Norway? ... How many letters has the word "write"? ... What is a verb? ... Can you write some of the verbs we have learned? ... Were you able to write them last year? ... Who took the children to the lake? ... What do we put after the verbs "call", "learn", "walk", "ask", "answer" when we speak of some time before now? ...

MR. SMITH'S HOUSE

this
that

This book (here)
is my book.

That book (there)
is your book.



chair

Mr. Smith has a house with five rooms. In one of the
mistə smiþ hæz ə haus wið faiv ru:mz. in wʌn əv ðə

rooms the family have their meals; that is the dining-room.
ru:mz ðə fæmili hæv ðeə mi:lz; ðæt iz ðə daɪnɪŋru:m.

They have their dinner in the dining-room; they dine
ðei hæv ðeə dɪnə in ðə daɪnɪŋru:m; ðei daɪn

in the dining-room. After dinner they go into another
in ðə daɪnɪŋru:m. ɑ:ftə dɪnə ðei ɡoʊ ɪntu ə'nʌðə

room; that is the sitting-room. Here they sit in big
ru:m; ðæt iz ðə sɪtɪŋru:m. hiə ðei sit in bɪɡ

chairs and read their books in the evenings. There is
tʃeəz ənd ri:d ðeə buks in ði i:vɪnɪŋz. ðeər iz

also a kitchen in the house. The kitchen is the room
ɔ:lsoʊ ə kɪtʃən in ðə haus. ðə kɪtʃən iz ðə ˈru:m

where Mrs. Smith makes the food.

hweə mɪsɪz smiþ meɪks ðə fu:d.

How many rooms are there in Mr. Smith's house? There
haʊ menɪ ru:mz ɑ: ðeə in mɪstə smiþs haus? ðeər

are five rooms in it. Where do the family have their
ɑ: faiv ru:mz in ɪt. hweə du: ðə fæmili hæv ðeə

meals? They have their meals in the dining-room. Into
mi:lz? ðei hæv ðeə mi:lz in ðə daɪnɪŋru:m. ɪntə

which of the rooms do the family go after dinner?
hwɪtʃ əv ðə ru:mz du: ðə fæmili ɡoʊ ɑ:ftə dɪnə?

After dinner they go into the sitting-room. What is
a:ftə dɪnə ðeɪ ɡəʊ ɪntə ðə sɪtɪŋru:m. hwɒt ɪz

the kitchen? That is the room where Mrs. Smith
ðə kɪtʃən? ðæt ɪz ðə ru:m hweə mɪsɪz smɪθ

makes the food. What is in the sitting-room? In the
meɪks ðə fu:d. hwɒt ɪz ɪn ðə sɪtɪŋru:m? ɪn ðə

sitting-room there are some big chairs and two small
sɪtɪŋru:m ðeər a: sʌm bɪɡ tʃeəz ənd tu: smɔ:l

tables. Are there chairs in the dining-room, too? Yes,
teɪblz. a: ðeə tʃeəz ɪn ðə daɪnɪŋru:m, tu:ʔ jes,

but the chairs in the dining-room are not so big. Is
bʌt ðə tʃeəz ɪn ðə daɪnɪŋru:m a: nɒt səʊ bɪɡ. ɪz

there a table? Yes, the family have their meals at a
ðeə ə teɪbl? jes, ðə fæmɪli hæv ðeə mi:lz æt ə

large table in the dining-room.

la:dʒ teɪbl ɪn ðə daɪnɪŋru:m.

Every room in Mr. Smith's house has four walls at the
evri ru:m ɪn mɪstə smɪθs haʊs hæz fɔ: wɔ:lz æt ðə

sides, a ceiling at the top, and a floor to walk on. From
sɑɪdz, ə si:lɪŋ æt ðə tɒp, ənd ə flɔ: tə wɔ:k ɒn. frəm

the ceiling of the room hangs a lamp. The lamp gives
ðə si:lɪŋ əv ðə ru:m hæŋz ə læmp. ðə læmp ɡɪvz

light in the room in the evenings so that people can
laɪt ɪn ðə ru:m ɪn ðɪ i:vnɪŋz səʊ ðæt pi:pl kæn

read. In the day it is light, but at night it is dark.
ri:d. ɪn ðə ðeɪ ɪt ɪz laɪt, bʌt æt naɪt ɪt ɪz da:k.

People cannot read when it is dark. There are chairs
pi:pl kənɒt ri:d hwen ɪt ɪz da:k. ðeər a: tʃeəz

table



large = big

ceiling



light
light

The light of the lamp makes the room light.



which of?
which?

On **which** of
the floors is
Helen's room?
= On **which**
floor is Helen's
room?

and a table on the floor of the dining-room. Mr.
ænd æ teibl ɔn ðə flɔ: əv ðə daɪnɪŋru:m. mɪstə

Smith's house has two gardens, one at the front and
smɪθs haʊs hæz tu: ɡɑ:dnz, wʌn æt ðə frʌnt ænd

another at the back of the house. When we come
ə'nʌðə æt ðə bæk əv ðə haʊs. hwen wi: kʌm

through the front garden into the house, we first come
θru: ðə frʌnt ɡɑ:dn ɪntə ðə haʊs, wi: fə:st kʌm

into the hall. In the hall people hang their hats and
ɪntə ðə hɔ:l. ɪn ðə hɔ:l pi:pl hæŋ ðeə hæts ænd

coats when they come in through the door. The
kəʊts hwen ðeɪ kʌm ɪn θru: ðə dɔ:. ðə

dining-room, the sitting-room, the kitchen, and the hall
daɪnɪŋru:m, ðə sɪtɪŋru:m, ðə kɪtʃən, ænd ðə hɔ:l

are all on the ground floor of the house. On the first
ɑ: ɔ:l ɔn ðə ɡraʊnd flɔ: 'əv ðə haʊs. ɔn ðə fə:st

floor of the house there are three bedrooms. Mr. and
flɔ: əv ðə haʊs ðeər ɑ: θri: bedru:mz. mɪstə ænd

Mrs. Smith sleep in one bedroom, John sleeps in
mɪsɪz smɪθ sli:p ɪn wʌn bedru:m, dʒɒn sli:ps ɪn

another bedroom, and Helen and Baby sleep in a third
ə'nʌðə bedru:m, ænd helɪn ænd beɪbi sli:p ɪn ə θə:d

bedroom.

bedru:m.

On which of the floors is the dining-room? The
ɔn hwi:tf əv ðə flɔ:z ɪz ðə daɪnɪŋru:m? ðə

dining-room is on the ground floor. On which floor is
daɪnɪŋru:m ɪz ɔn ðə ɡraʊnd flɔ:. ɔn hwi:tf flɔ: ɪz

Helen's and Baby's bedroom? It is on the first floor.
helinz and beibiz bedru:m? it iz on ðə fə:st flɔ:.

How do we get from the ground floor to the first floor?
haʊ du: wi: get frəm ðə graʊnd flɔ: tə ðə fə:st flɔ:?

We go up the stairs to get to the first floor. On which
wi: ɡəʊ ʌp ðə steəz tə get tə ðə fə:st flɔ:. on hwitʃ

floor is John's room at school? His room at school is
flɔ: iz dʒɒnz ru:m æt sku:l? hiz ru:m æt sku:l iz

on the second floor. The school is a big house; it has
on ðə sekənd flɔ:. ðə sku:l iz ə big haʊs; it hæz

a ground floor, a first, and a second floor. In some
ə graʊnd flɔ:, ə fə:st, and ə sekənd flɔ:. in sam

schoolrooms there are many chairs and tables, one for
sku:lru:mz ðeər a: meni tʃeəz and teiblz, wʌn fɔ:

each of the children. Each of the children in John's
i:tʃ əv ðə tʃildrən. i:tʃ əv ðə tʃildrən in dʒɒnz

school has a small table and a chair. Not every child
sku:l hæz ə smɔ:l teibl and ə tʃeə. nɒt evri tʃaɪld

has a table and a chair; Baby has not a table and a
hæz ə teibl and ə tʃeə; beibi hæz nɒt ə teibl and ə

chair; but each of the children in John's school has.
tʃeə; bʌt i:tʃ əv ðə tʃildrən in dʒɒnz sku:l hæz.

Has each of the persons in the Smith family a room?
hæz i:tʃ əv ðə pə:snz in ðə smiθ fæmili ə ru:m?

No, not each of the persons, only John has his own
nəʊ, nɒt i:tʃ əv ðə pə:snz, ɒnli dʒɒn hæz hiz ɒn

room. Helen does not sleep alone in her room; she and
ru:m. helin dʌs nɒt sli:p ə'ləʊn in hə: ru:m; ʃi: and



stairs

every
each

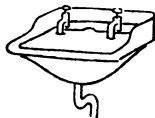
Every child has
two arms.

Each of the
children in the
school has a
pencil.

bathroom



bath [ba:p]
baths [ba:ðz]
mouth [maʊθ]
mouths [maʊðz]



wash-basin

Baby sleep in one room; they sleep together. Mr. and
beibi sli:p in wʌn ru:m; ðei sli:p tə'geðə. mistə ənd

Mrs. Smith also sleep in one room. John and Helen
misiz smiθ ɔ:lsou sli:p in wʌn ru:m. dʒɒn ənd helin

go to school together in the morning. Helen does not
gou tə sku:l tə'geðə in ðə mɔ:nɪŋ. helin dʌz nɒt

go alone; she goes together with John. Baby does not
gou ə'loun; ʃi: gouz tə'geðə wið dʒɒn. beibi dʌz nɒt

sleep alone; she sleeps together with Helen; but John
sli:p ə'loun; ʃi: sli:ps tə'geðə wið helin; bʌt dʒɒn

sleeps alone in his own room.

sli:ps ə'loun in hiz oun ru:m.

How many rooms are there on the first floor of the
hau meni ru:mz a: ðeə ɔn ðə fə:st flɔ: əv ðə

house? There are three bedrooms and a bathroom.

haus? ðeər a: ʃri: bedru:mz ənd ə ba:pru:m.

Every morning Mr. Smith takes a cold shower in the

evri mɔ:nɪŋ mistə smiθ teiks ə kould faʊə in ðə

bathroom. Mrs. Smith and the children do not take

ba:pru:m. misiz smiθ ənd ðə tʃɪldrən du: nɒt teik

cold showers, they take hot baths in the bath-tub every

kould faʊəz, ðei teik hɒt ba:ðz in ðə ba:ptʌb evri

night before they go to bed. When they take hot baths,

nait bi'fɔ: ðei gou tə bed. hwen ðei teik hɒt ba:ðz,

they have hot water in the bath-tub. Hot water is very

ðei hæv hɒt wɔ:tə in ðə ba:ptʌb. hɒt wɔ:tə iz veri

warm water. Before the meals the children wash their

wɔ:m wɔ:tə. bi'fɔ: ðə mi:lz ðə tʃɪldrən wɒʃ ðeə

hands in the wash-basin. Their hands are very dirty
hændz in ðə wɒʃbeɪsn. ðeə hændz a: veri dɑ:ti

when they come in from their play in the garden, but
hwen ðei kʌm in frɒm ðeə pleɪ in ðə ɡɑ:dn, bʌt

when they have washed themselves, their hands are
hwen ðei hæv wɒʃt ðəm'selvz, ðeə hændz a:

clean. They put hot water in the wash-basin and wash
kli:n. ðei put hɒt wɔ:tə in ðə wɒʃbeɪsn ænd wɒʃ

their hands with soap. "Soap and water are good things
ðeə hændz wɪð səʊp. "səʊp ænd wɔ:tə a: ɡʊd þɪŋz

for dirty hands," Mrs. Smith says to her children. Baby
fɔ: dɑ:ti hændz," mɪsɪz smɪθ seɪz tə hɜ: tʃɪldrən. beɪbi

cannot wash herself; she is too small; but John washes
kənɒt wɒʃ hɜ:'self; ʃi: ɪz tu: smɔ:l; bʌt dʒɒn wɒʃɪz

himself. Helen can wash herself, too; she is big enough
hɪm'self. helɪn kæn wɒʃ hɜ:'self, tu:; ʃi: ɪz bɪɡ i'nʌf

for that now. John and Helen both wash themselves.
fɔ: ðæt naʊ. dʒɒn ænd helɪn bəʊθ wɒʃ ðəm'selvz.

himself
 herself
 themselves

John washes
himself.

Helen washes
herself.

John and Helen
 wash **themselves.**

EXERCISE A.

We have our meals in the —. We have dinner in the dining-room, or we — in the dining-room. After dinner Mr. Smith and his family go into the —. In the sitting-room they — in big chairs. There are big — and small — in the sitting-room. Mrs. Smith makes the food in the —. At the top of the room is the —. From

Chapter Fourteen (14).

WORDS:

dining-room
that
dine
sitting-room
sit
chair
kitchen
large
table
ceiling
floor
ground floor
lamp
hang
light
dark
hall
coat
hat
up
bedroom
stairs
each
together
alone
own
soap
bath
shower
bathroom
hot
bath-tub
wash
wash-basin
dirty

the ceiling of the room — a lamp. The lamp gives — in the room at night. In the day it is —, but at night it is —. The lamp gives — in the room when it is —. We walk on the — of the room. On the floor of the room there are chairs and —. There are two floors in Mr. Smith's house; on the — — are two large rooms, a dining-room and a —; on the — — are three bedrooms and a —. Helen and Baby sleep in one —, and John sleeps in another —. We go — the — to get to the first floor. When Mr. Smith comes home, he hangs his — and his — in the hall.

— of the children in the school has a pencil. There is a table and a chair for — of the children in John's school. Has — child a pencil? No, not — child has a pencil, but — of the children in the school has a pencil. Has — of the persons in Mr. Smith's family a room? No, only John has his — room. Has Helen not her — room? No, Helen and Baby sleep —. Does John sleep —? Yes, he sleeps — in his own room.

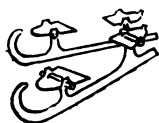
Does Mrs. Smith take a cold — in the morning? No, Mrs. Smith and the children do not take cold —; they take hot baths in the —. — do we call very warm water? We call it — water. Where do the children — their hands before the meals? They wash their hands in the —. Are their hands dirty or — when they come in from their — in the garden? Their hands are —. What — the children wash their hands with? They wash their hands with — and hot —. Can the baby wash —? No, the baby cannot wash herself, but John and Helen wash —. Does Mr. Smith

wash —? Yes, Mr. Smith washes —, and Mrs. Smith also washes —. — is the kitchen? The — is the room where Mrs. Smith makes the —.

clean
play
herself
himself
themselves

EXERCISE B.

In which of the rooms do we have our meals? ... Where do we sleep at night? ... Where does Mrs. Smith make the food? ... What do the family sit in in the sitting-room? ... Where does Mr. Smith hang his hat and coat? ... Has Helen her own bedroom? ... Has each of the persons in the family a room? ... Has every child a pencil? ... On which floor is the sitting-room? ... Where are the bedrooms? ... What hangs from the ceiling of the sitting-room? ... Do Helen and John sleep in their own rooms? ... Does the baby sleep alone? ... How do we get light when it is too dark to read? ...

**skates****WINTER**

One day this winter John and his friend George went
wʌn dei ðis wintə dʒɒn and hɪz frend dʒɔ:dʒ went

out together. John has many friends, but his best
aut tə'gedə. dʒɒn hæz menɪ frendz, bʌt hɪz best

friend is George. They go to school together in the
friend ɪz dʒɔ:dʒ. dei gou tə sku:l tə'gedə ɪn ðə

morning, and they play together in the afternoon. John
mɔ:nɪŋ, and dei pleɪ tə'gedə ɪn ði ɑ:ftə'nu:n. dʒɒn

and Helen are good friends, too; but sometimes he is
and helɪn ɑ: gud frendz, tu:; bʌt sʌmtaɪmz hɪ: ɪz

not good to her, and then they are not friends.
nɒt gud tə hə:, and ðen dei ɑ: nɒt frendz.

George is the son of Mr. Smith's neighbour, Mr. Green.
dʒɔ:dʒ ɪz ðə sʌn əv mɪstə smɪθs neɪbə, mɪstə gri:n.

Mr. Green's house is next to Mr. Smith's house, and
mɪstə gri:nz haʊs ɪz nekst tə mɪstə smɪθs haʊs, and

the two men are neighbours. John's room is next to
ðə tu: men ɑ: neɪbəz. dʒɒnz ru:m ɪz nekst tə

Helen's and Baby's room, and the bathroom is next to
helɪnz and beɪbɪz ru:m, and ðə bɑ:θru:m ɪz nekst tə

Mr. and Mrs. Smith's room. The other day the two
mɪstə and mɪsɪz smɪθs ru:m. ði ʌðə dei ðə tu:

boys walked to a little lake near their homes. They
bɔɪz wɔ:kt tu ə lɪtl leɪk nɪə ðeə haʊmz. dei

little = small

had their skates with them. John's skates were old,
hæd ðeə skeits wið ðem. dʒɔnz skeits wə: ould,

but George's skates were new. John got his skates
bʌt dʒɔ:dʒiz skeits wə: nju:. dʒɔn gɒt hiz skeits

two years ago; they are old now; but George got his
tu: jɪəz ə'gou; ðei a: ould nau; bʌt dʒɔ:dʒ gɒt hiz

skates only three days ago; they are new.

skeits ounli þri: deiz ə'gou; ðei a: nju:.

What is the name of Mr. Smith's neighbour? It is
hwɒt iz ðə neim əv mistə smiθs neibə? it iz

Mr. Green. Why do we call him Mr. Smith's neigh-
mistə gri:n. hwai du: wi: kɔ:l him mistə smiθs nei-

bour? Because he lives in the first house after that
bə? bi'kɔz hi: livz in ðə fə:st haus a:ftə ðæt

of Mr. Smith. Has Mr. Smith more than one neigh-
əv mistə smiθ. hæz mistə smiθ mɔ: ðæn wʌn nei-

bour? Yes, he has two; the man in the house before
bə? jes, hi: hæz tu:; ðə mæn in ðə haus bi'fɔ:

that of Mr. Smith is also his neighbour. Why did
ðæt əv mistə smiθ iz ɔ:lsou hiz neibə. hwai did

George get skates? Because it was Christmas. When
dʒɔ:dʒ get skeits? bi'kɔz it wəz krisməs. hwen

is Christmas? Christmas Day is the twenty-fifth (25th)
iz krisməs? krisməs dei iz ðə twenti'fifθ

of December. Are John's skates new or old? They
əv di'sembə. a: dʒɔnz skeits nju: ɔ: ould? ðei

are old. Are George's skates also old? No, they are
a: ould. a: dʒɔ:dʒiz skeits ɔ:lsou ould? nou, ðei a:

John **gets** tea every day.

John **got** tea yesterday.

John has **got** tea the last five years.

(He **gets**, he **got**, he has **got**.)

that of

Mr. Green's house is larger than **that** of Mr. Smith = Mr. Green's house is larger than Mr. Smith's house.

why?
 because

Why do we call him Mr. Smith's neighbour?

Because he lives in the next house.

new; he has had them only three days.

nju:; hi: hæz hæd ðem ounli pri: deiz.

In summer the weather is warm, but in winter the

in samə ðə weðə iz wɔ:m, bʌt in wintə ðə

weather is cold. The weather had been very cold

weðə iz kould. ðə weðə hæd bi:n veri kould

for the last two days. Then John said to his friend

fɔ: ðə la:st tu: deiz. ðen dʒɒn sed tə hiz frend

George in the morning, "Now there is ice on the water.

dʒɔ:dʒ in ðə mɔ:niŋ, "nau ðeər iz ais ɒn ðə wɔ:tə.

Let us go out and skate on the lake to-day." He said

let ʌs ɡəʊ aʊt ənd skeit ɒn ðə leɪk tə'deɪ." hi: sed

nothing to his mother. She would not have let him

nʌθɪŋ tə hi:z mʌðə. ʃi: wʊd nɒt hæv let him

nothing = no
thing

go. She would have said to him, "John, do not go

ɡəʊ. ʃi: wʊd hæv sed tə him, "dʒɒn, du: nɒt ɡəʊ

He will, he would.

and skate to-day, or you will go through the ice. The

He lets, he let, he
has let.

ənd skeit tə'deɪ, ɔ: ju: wɪl ɡəʊ θru: ði ais. ði

ice is not thick enough. In two days the ice will be

ais iz nɒt θɪk i'nʌf. ɪn tu: deɪz ði ais wɪl bi:

One inch = 2.54
centimetres.

one or two inches thick, and then you can skate on it.

wʌn ɔ: tu: ɪnʃɪz θɪk, ənd ðen ju: kæn skeit ɒn ɪt.

To-day the ice is too thin, only half an inch thick, so

tə'deɪ ði ais iz tu: θɪn, ounli ha:f ən ɪnʃ θɪk, səʊ

that you will go through it and fall into the water."

ðæt ju: wɪl ɡəʊ θru: ɪt ənd fɔ:l ɪntə ðə wɔ:tə."

He falls, he fell,
he has fallen.

John did not put on enough clothes; he did not put on

dʒɒn dɪd nɒt put ɒn i'nʌf kləʊðz; hi: dɪd nɒt put ɒn

his coat. Hats and coats are clothes. In the morning
hiz kout. hæts and kouts a: klouðz. in ðə mɔ:nɪŋ

people put on their clothes, and in the evening before
pɪ:pl put ɔn ðeə klouðz, and in ði i:vniŋ bi'fɔ:

they go to bed, they take them off again. When you
ðei gou tə bed, ðei teik ðem ɔ:f ə'geɪn. hwen ju:

go out, you put on your hat and coat, and when you
gou aut, ju: put ɔn juə hæt and kout, and hwen ju:

come home, you take them off again.
kʌm haʊm, ju: teik ðem ɔ:f ə'geɪn.

When the two boys came to the lake, they put on their
hwen ðə tu: bɔɪz keɪm tə ðə leɪk, ðei put ɔn ðeə

skates and went out on the ice. When they had skated
skeɪts and went aut ɔn ði aɪs. hwen ðei hæd skeɪtɪd

for some time, John fell through the ice into the water.
fɔ: sʌm taɪm, dʒɔn fel þru: ði aɪs ɪntə ðə wɔ:tə.

When he came out again, he was wet and cold. He
hwen hi: keɪm aut ə'geɪn, hi: wɔz wet and kould. hi:

went home at once. When he got home, his mother
went haʊm æt wʌns. hwen hi: ɡɒt haʊm, hɪz mʌðə

said, "Your clothes are wet. You must have fallen
sed, "juə klouðz a: wet. ju: mʌst hæv fɔ:ln

into the water. You must go to bed at once, or you
ɪntə ðə wɔ:tə. ju: mʌst gou tə bed æt wʌns, ɔ: ju:

will get a cold."
wɪl get ə kould."

John's mother said that he must go to bed at once;
dʒɔnz mʌðə sed ðæt hi: mʌst gou tə bed æt wʌns;

He **must** = he
has to;
 he **must** = he
had to;
 he **has had to**.

that is, he had to go to bed, not in two or three minutes,
ðæt iz, hi: hæd tə gou tə bed, nɒt in tu: ɔ: pri: minits,

but now, at once. Would John's mother have let him
bət nau, æt wʌns. wʊd dʒɒnz mʌðə hæv let him

go to the lake? No, she would have said to him, "You
gou tə ðə leik? nou, fi: wʊd hæv sed tə him, "ju:

must not go there to-day, you must play here." Must
mʌst nɒt gou ðeə tə'deɪ, ju: mʌst pleɪ hiə." mʌst

the children go to school every day? (Do the children
ðə tʃɪldrən gou tə sku:l evri dei? (du: ðə tʃɪldrən

have to go to school every day?) Yes, they must (or
hæv tə gou tə sku:l evri dei?) jes, ðei mʌst (ɔ:

"have to") go to school every day. Why did John fall
"hæv tə") gou tə sku:l evri dei. hwai did dʒɒn fɔ:l

through the ice into the water? Because the ice was
bru: ði ais intə ðə wɔ:tə? bi'kɒz ði ais wɔz

too thin. Were John's clothes dry when he came out
tu: þɪn. wə: dʒɒnz kləʊðz draɪ hwen hi: keɪm aʊt

of the water? No, they were very wet; his mother
əv ðə wɔ:tə? nou, ðei wə: veri wet; hɪz mʌðə

had to dry them for him. If you go out in wet weather,
hæd tə draɪ ðem fɔ: him. ɪf ju: gou aʊt ɪn wet weðə,

it will make your clothes wet. Then you must dry
ɪt wɪl meɪk juə kləʊðz wet. ðen ju: mʌst draɪ

them when you get home, and they will be dry again.
ðem hwen ju: get haʊm, ənd ðei wɪl bi: draɪ ə'geɪn.

How long had the weather been cold? The weather had
haʊ lɒŋ hæd ðə weðə bi:n kəʊld? ðə weðə hæd

I dry;
 he dries, he dried,
 he has dried.

been cold for two days. Did John tell his mother that
bi:n kould fɔ: tu: deiz. did dʒɒn tel hi: mʌðə ðæt

he would go to the lake? No, he did not tell his
hi: wud ɡou tə ðə leik? nou, hi: did nɒt tel hi: z

mother. Would his mother have let him go if he had
mʌðə. wud hi: mʌðə hæv let him ɡou if hi: həd

told her that he would go and skate on the lake?
tould hə: ðæt hi: wud ɡou ənd skeit ɒn ðə leik?

No, she would not have let him go if he had told her
nou, ʃi: wud nɒt hæv let him ɡou if hi: həd tould hə:

that. What would she have said to him if she had
ðæt. hwɒt wud ʃi: hæv sed tə him if ʃi: həd

seen him go to the lake? She would have said, "You
si:n him ɡou tə ðə leik? ʃi: wud hæv sed, "ju:

must not go to-day, but in two days." What did John's
mʌst nɒt ɡou tə'deɪ, bʌt ɪn tu: deiz." hwɒt did dʒɒnz

mother say when he came home? She said, "Go to
mʌðə sei hwen hi: keɪm hoʊm? ʃi: sed, "ɡou tə

bed at once, or you will get a cold." Did he go to bed
bed ət wʌns, ɔ: ju: wɪl ɡet ə kould." did hi: ɡou tə bed

at once? No, he did not go to bed at once; he went to
ət wʌns? nou, hi: did nɒt ɡou tə bed ət wʌns; hi: went tə

bed five minutes after his mother had said that he must.
bed faɪv mɪnɪts ɑ:ftə hi: mʌðə həd sed ðæt hi: mʌst.

John's father had said to his wife, "Do not let the
dʒɒnz fɑ:ðə həd sed tə hi: waɪf, "du: nɒt let ðə

children go to the lake. The ice is too thin." The
tʃɪldrən ɡou tə ðə leik. ði aɪs ɪz tu: pi:n." ðə

tell = say to

He **tells**, he **told**,
 he has **told**.

go!
 do not go!

Do not go out to
 play again, John,
 but **go** to bed at
 once!

WORDS:

friend
neighbour
next to
home
skate
new
why
got
because
ago
Christmas
weather
let
thick
inch
(to) skate
thin
fall
fell

mother had said to Helen, "Do not put on that thin
mʌðə hæd sed tə helin, "du: nɒt put ɒn ðæt þɪn
coat to-day; the weather is too cold. Put on your
kəʊt tə'deɪ; ðə weðə ɪz tu: kəʊld. put ɒn juə
thick winter coat."
þɪk wɪntə kəʊt."

EXERCISE A.

George is John's —. Mr. Green is Mr. Smith's —. John and George went to the lake to — on the ice. George's father gave him — for Christmas. George's skates are —, but John's are —. — Day is the twenty-fifth of December. In winter the — is cold, in summer the weather is —. When it is very cold, there is — on the water. John did not — his mother that they went — the lake; he said — to his mother. John said to George, "— us go to the lake to-day." The mother will not — him go to-day, and she — not have let him go yesterday. She would have said, "— not go to the lake to-day, John!" The ice was not — enough to skate on; it was too —; it was only half an — thick.

In the morning people put on their —, and in the evening they take them — again. John — through the ice into the water, when he had — for some time. Many children — through the ice every year when the ice is not — enough. It was the first time that John had — through the ice. When John came out of the water, he was very —. His mother said to him, "You — go to bed

at —, — you will get a cold.” John’s clothes were not — when he came home; they were —, and his mother had to — the wet clothes.

— are John’s clothes wet? — he has fallen into the water. — would John’s mother have said that he must not go to the lake? — the ice was too thin to skate on. — did John say nothing to his mother? — she would not have — him go. Why — the boys go to the lake? They went there to —.

EXERCISE B.

Who is Mr. Green? ... Why were the boys good friends? ... When did John get his skates? ... Did George get his skates for Christmas? ... Why did John say nothing to his mother before he went to the lake? ... Was the ice thick enough to skate on? ... What were John’s clothes when he had fallen into the water? ... What did his mother do with the wet clothes? ... Did John go to bed at once? ...

fallen
put on
clothes
off
wet
must
at once
dry
(to) dry
little
tell
nothing
would
if
had
best
twenty-fifth

**boot**

He **comes**, he **came**,
he has **come**.

should
would

I **should**,
you **would**,
he **would**,
we **should**,
you **would**,
they **would**.

a pair = two

**shoe**

CLOTHES

When George and John had come back from the lake,
hwɛn dʒɔ:dʒ and dʒɔn hæd kʌm bæk frɒm ðə leɪk,

George went home to his parents' house. "Where have
dʒɔ:dʒ wɛnt hoʊm tə hɪz peərənts haʊs. "hwɛə hæv

you been, George?" his mother asked. "Father is at
ju: bi:n, dʒɔ:dʒ?" hɪz mʌðə ɑ:skt. "fa:ðə ɪz æt

home to-day; he will go with us to town to get some
hoʊm tə'deɪ; hɪ: wɪl ɡoʊ wɪð ʌs tə taʊn tə ɡet sʌm

new clothes for you. If you had not come home now,
nju: kləʊðz fɔ: ju:. ɪf ju: hæd nɒt kʌm hoʊm naʊ,

we should have gone without you. Go and put on
wɪ: ʃʊd hæv ɡɒn wɪð'aʊt ju:. ɡoʊ ənd pʊt ɒn

another hat and coat! Take off your old boots and put
ə'nʌðə hæt ənd kəʊt! teɪk ɔ:f juə ould bu:ts ənd pʊt

on the new pair of shoes you got for Christmas!"

ɒn ðə nju: peə əv ʃu:z ju: ɡɒt fɔ: krɪsməs!"

When George was ready to go, that is, when he had
hwɛn dʒɔ:dʒ wəz redi tə ɡoʊ, ðæt ɪz, hwɛn hɪ: hæd

put on his other clothes, his father said, "Are you ready
pʊt ɒn hɪz ʌðə kləʊðz, hɪz fa:ðə sed, "a: ju: redi

now? Then we can go." "Oh, but I am not ready yet,"
naʊ? ðen wɪ: kæn ɡoʊ." "əʊ, bʌt aɪ æm nɒt redi jet,"

his mother said from the first floor. "Where are my
hɪz mʌðə sed frɒm ðə fɜ:st flɔ:. "hwɛər ɑ: maɪ

gloves? I cannot find them. Have you seen my gloves,
glʌvz? ai kənɒt faɪnd ðem. hæv ju: si:n mai glʌvz,

George? It is too cold to go without them; my fingers
dʒɔ:dʒ? ɪt ɪz tu: kəʊld tə ɡəʊ wɪð'aʊt ðem; mai fɪŋɡəz

will be cold." Mr. Green: "Oh, women can never find
wɪl bi: kəʊld." mɪstə ɡri:n: "ou, wɪmɪn kæn nevə faɪnd

their things. — Have you not found them yet? George,
ðeə þɪŋz. — hæv ju: nɒt faʊnd ðem jət? dʒɔ:dʒ,

please go and find them!" George went to see if he
pli:z ɡəʊ ənd faɪnd ðem!" dʒɔ:dʒ wɛnt tə si: ɪf hi:

could find them — and there they were, on the table
kʊd faɪnd ðem — ənd ðeə ðeɪ wə:, ɔn ðə teɪbl

in the hall! "Here they are, mother, I have found them.
ɪn ðə hɔ:l! "hiə ðeɪ a:, mʌðə, ai hæv faʊnd ðem.

They were on the little table in the hall." "That is
ðeɪ wə: ɔn ðə lɪtl teɪbl ɪn ðə hɔ:l." "ðæt ɪz

fine, then I am ready — I have my gloves, my bag, my
faɪn, ðen ai æm redɪ — ai hæv mai glʌvz, mai bæɡ, mai

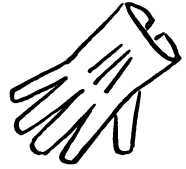
handkerchief — yes, I am ready to go now. I have all
hæŋkətʃɪf — jɛs, ai æm redɪ tə ɡəʊ naʊ. ai hæv ɔ:l

my things with me." Mr. Green: "It is time you came
mai þɪŋz wɪð mi:." mɪstə ɡri:n: "ɪt ɪz taɪm ju: keɪm

now. It will be very late before we get to town. First
naʊ. ɪt wɪl bi: vɛrɪ leɪt bɪ'fɔ: wi: ɡet tə taʊn. fɜ:st

George came home late — we waited forty minutes for
dʒɔ:dʒ keɪm haʊm leɪt — wi: weɪtɪd fɔ:ti mɪnɪts fɔ:

him — and now we have had to wait a quarter of an
hɪm — ənd naʊ wi: hæv həd tə weɪt ə kwɔ:tə əv ən



glove

He **finds**, he **found**,
 he has **found**.

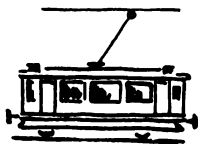
Find my gloves,
 please = Will you
 find my gloves
 for me?



bag



handkerchief



tram



shop

look at = see



trousers

hour for you; will this family never learn to be ready
aʊə fɔ: ju:; wil ðis fæmili nevə læ:n tə bi: redi:

in time?"
in taim?"

At last they could go. It was so late that they did
æt la:st ðei kud gou. it wəz sou leit ðæt ðei did

not have time to walk to town, so they had to take a
nɒt hæv taim tə wɔ:k tə taʊn, sou ðei hæd tə teik ə

tram. The tram took them to a shop where George
træm. ðə træm tuk ðem tu ə ʃɒp hwɛə dʒɔ:dʒ

could get his new clothes. They went into the shop,
kud get hiz nju: kləʊðz. ðei went intə ðə ʃɒp,

and a man came and asked them what they wanted.
ænd ə mæn keim ænd ə:skt ðem hwɒt ðei wɒntid.

"I want to look at some clothes for my son, please," said
"ai wɒnt tə luk æt sam kləʊðz fɔ: mi: sʌn, pli:z," sed

Mr. Green. "What colour, sir?" "What colour do you
mistə gri:n. "hwɒt kələ, sə:?" "hwɒt kələ du: ju:

want, George?" "Oh, I like brown best. My hair is
wɒnt, dʒɔ:dʒ?" "ou, ai laik braʊn best. mi: heə iz

brown, and my eyes are brown, too. Do you like brown,
braʊn, ænd mi: aiz ə: braʊn, tu: du: ju: laik braʊn,

too, mother?"
tu:, mʌðə?"

Mrs. Green is a dark-eyed and dark-haired little woman;
misiz gri:n iz ə dɑ:kaid ænd dɑ:kheəd litl wʊmən;

she likes brown very much. "Well, let me see, then.
ʃi: laiks braʊn veri mʌtʃ. "wel, let mi: si:, ðen.

You must have a pair of trousers, no, two pairs, one
ju: mast hæv ə peə əv traʊzəz, nou, tu: peəz, wʌn

pair of long trousers and one pair of trousers to play in.
peə əv lɒŋ traʊzəz and wʌn peə əv traʊzəz tə pleɪ ɪn.

You must also have a waistcoat and a coat. Do you
ju: mast ɔ:lsoʊ hæv ə weɪskəʊt and ə kəʊt. du: ju:

like this suit of clothes, George?" "Yes, but I like
laɪk ðɪs sju:t əv kləʊðz, dʒɔ:dʒ?" "jes, bʌt aɪ laɪk

that suit better; which do you like best, mother?" "I
ðæt sju:t betə; hwɪtʃ du: ju: laɪk best, mʌðə?" "aɪ

like the dark-brown one best." "Do you want that suit
laɪk ðə dɑ:kbraʊn wʌn best." "du: ju: wɒnt ðæt sju:t

then, my boy?" "Yes, I should like to have the
ðen, maɪ bɔɪ?" "jes, aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə hæv ðə

dark-brown one, please." "How much does it cost?"
dɑ:kbraʊn wʌn, pli:z." "haʊ mʌtʃ dʌz ɪt kɒst?"

"It is very dear, sir, but it is also a very good suit, it
"ɪt ɪz veri diə, sɜ:, bʌt ɪt ɪz ɔ:lsoʊ ə veri gud sju:t, ɪt

is the best we have. It costs six pounds (£6) with two
ɪz ðə best wi: hæv. ɪt kɒsts sɪks paʊndz wɪð tu:

pairs of trousers, five pounds (£5) with only one pair."
peəz əv traʊzəz, faɪv paʊndz wɪð ɒnli wʌn peə."

"That is too much money, Henry, for a suit of clothes
"ðæt ɪz tu: mʌtʃ mʌni, henri, fɔ: ə sju:t əv kləʊðz

for a boy, is it not?" "Yes, it is very dear, but let
fɔ: ə bɔɪ, ɪz ɪt nɒt?" "jes, ɪt ɪz veri diə, bʌt let

him have it if he likes it so much." "Oh, thank you,
hɪm hæv ɪt ɪf hi: laɪks ɪt soʊ mʌtʃ." "əʊ, θæŋk ju:,



waistcoat

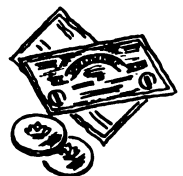
good
better
best



coat

It **costs**, it **cost**, it
has **cost**.

£ 1 = 20 shillings



money

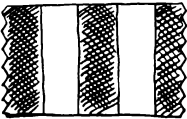
I thank you, I
thanked you,
I have thanked
you.



Grey is the colour
of dirty snow.

sir
madam
Thank you, **sir** =
thank you, Mr.
Green.
Thank you, **madam**
= thank you, Mrs.
Green.

He likes, he liked,
he has liked.



broad stripes



narrow stripes

father!" "We also want to look at some shirts for the
fa:ðə!" "*wi: ɔ:lsoʊ wɒnt tə lʊk ət sʌm ʃə:ts fɔ: ðə*

boy, please." "Yes, sir, we have here some very fine
bɔɪ, pli:z." "*jes, sə:, wi: hæv hiə sʌm veri faɪn*

grey shirts for boys, with blue stripes." "No," said
greɪ ʃə:ts fɔ: bɔɪz, wið blu: straɪps." "*nou,*" *sed*

Mrs. Green, "the stripes are too broad; have you no
misɪz gri:n," "*ðə straɪps a: tu: brɔ:d; hæv ju: nou*

shirts with narrow stripes? And the colour must not
ʃə:ts wið nærou straɪps? ʌnd ðə kʌlə mʌst nɒt

be blue; blue is for people with blue or grey eyes. I
bi: blu:; blu: ɪz fɔ: pi:pl wið blu: ɔ: greɪ aɪz. aɪ

like green better with the brown suit and his brown
laɪk gri:n betə wið ðə braʊn sju:t ʌnd hɪz braʊn

eyes. Let me see that shirt, please! Do you like it,
aɪz. let mi: si: ðæt ʃə:t, pli:z! du: ju: laɪk ɪt,

George?" "Yes, mother, I do." "Let us take this one,
dʒɔ:dʒ?" "*jes, mʌðə, aɪ du:.*" "*let ʌs teɪk ðɪs wʌn,*

then. How much does it cost?" "Eight shillings, madam;
ðen. haʊ mʌʃ dʌz ɪt kɒst?" "*eɪt ʃɪlɪŋz, mædəm;*

that is very cheap, because it is a very good shirt. It
ðæt ɪz veri tʃi:p, bɪ'kɒz ɪt ɪz ə veri gu:d ʃə:t. ɪt

is so cheap because we have only two of these shirts,
ɪz sʊ tʃi:p bɪ'kɒz wi: hæv ɒnli tu: əv ði:z ʃə:ts,

and they are very small." "Yes, that is cheap; eight
ʌnd ðeɪ a: veri smɔ:l." "*jes, ðæt ɪz tʃi:p; eɪt*

shillings is not much for a good shirt. Shall we take
ʃɪlɪŋz ɪz nɒt mʌʃ fɔ: ə gu:d ʃə:t. ʃæl wi: teɪk

both shirts for him, Henry?" "Yes, let us do that. Do
bəʊʃ ʃə:ts fɔ: him, henri? "jes, let əs du: ðæt. du:

you want some underwear for him, too?" "Yes, but it
ju: wɒnt sʌm ʌndəweə fɔ: him, tu:? "jes, bʌt it

must be woollen underwear; this time of the year is
mʌst bi: wulin ʌndəweə; ðis taim əv ðə jɪə iz

too cold for cotton underwear. — Do you know where
tu: kəʊld fɔ: kɒtn ʌndəweə. — du: ju: nou hwəə

we get wool from, George?" "Oh, yes, I know that.
wi: get wul frɒm, dʒɔ:dʒ? "ou, jes, ai nou ðæt.

I have learned it at school. We get wool from sheep.
ai hæv lə:nd it æt sku:l. wi: get wul frɒm ʃi:p.

I also know where we get cotton from. It is a plant
ai ɔ:lsoʊ nou hwəə wi: get kɒtn frɒm. it iz ə plɑ:nt

product from warmer countries than our own." The
prɒdʌkt frɒm wɔ:mə kʌntriz ðæn ʌʊə ʌʊn. "ðə

man in the shop: "Is that all, sir? No socks or ties?"
mæn in ðə ʃɒp: "iz ðæt ɔ:l, sɜ:ʔ nou sɒks ɔ: taiz?"

"No, we have enough now, thank you. My wife makes
"nou, wi: hæv i'nʌf naʊ, þæŋk ju:. mai waɪf meɪks

all his woollen socks herself, and he never puts on his
ɔ:l hɪz wulin sɒks hə:'self, ʌnd hi: nevə pʊts ɒn hɪz

ties. How much does it all come to, now?" "Let me
taiz. haʊ mʌtʃ dʌz it ɔ:l kʌm tə, naʊ?" "let mi:

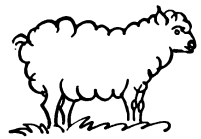
see: a suit of clothes — six pounds (£6), 2 shirts
si: ə sju:t əv kləʊðz — sɪks paʊndz, tu: ʃə:ts

— 16 shillings, 2 suits of woollen underwear —
— sɪksti:n ʃɪlɪŋz, tu: sju:ts əv wulin ʌndəweə —

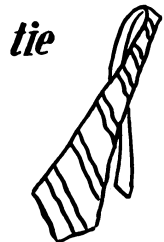
underwear



one **sheep**
 two **sheep**



sheep



tie



sock

25 shillings; 8 pounds 1 shilling in all, sir.” Mr. *twenti'faiv fīlɪŋz; eɪt paʊndz wʌn fīlɪŋ ɪn ɔ:l, sə:.*” *mɪstə*

Green: “Here is the money.” The man: “Thank you, *gri:n: “hɪə ɪz ðə mʌni:.” ðə mæn: “þæŋk ju:,*

sir.” George: “Oh, thank you, father and mother, for *sə:.*” *dʒɔ:dʒ: “ou, þæŋk ju:, fa:ðə ənd mʌðə, fɔ:*

all the fine things I have got to-day.” Mr. Green: “Do *ɔ:l ðə faɪn þɪŋz aɪ hæv ɡɒt tə'deɪ.*” *mɪstə gri:n: “du:*

you like them, my boy? That is fine, then.” *ju: laɪk ðem, maɪ bɔɪ? ðæt ɪz faɪn, ðen.”*

George: “Mother, I should like to go in and speak *dʒɔ:dʒ: “mʌðə, aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə ɡəʊ ɪn ənd spi:k*

to John when we get home. Is there time for that *tə dʒɒn hwen wi: ɡet haʊm. ɪz ðeə taɪm fɔ: ðæt*

before dinner?” Mrs. Green: “Oh, I know that Mrs. *bɪ'fɔ: dɪnə?” mɪsɪz gri:n: “ou, aɪ nəʊ ðæt mɪsɪz*

Smith would not like that! It is too late now, and she *smɪp wʊd nɒt laɪk ðæt! ɪt ɪz tu: leɪt naʊ, ənd ʃi:*

has so many things to do before dinner that she cannot *hæz səʊ meni þɪŋz tə du: bɪ'fɔ: dɪnə ðæt ʃi: kənɒt*

have two boys in the house.” “But mother, John fell *hæv tu: bɔɪz ɪn ðə haʊs.” “bʌt mʌðə, dʒɒn fel*

through the ice this afternoon, and I want to know if *bru: ðɪ aɪs ðɪs ɑ:ftə'nu:n, ənd aɪ wɒnt tə nəʊ ɪf*

he is in bed, and what his mother said.” “So you have *hi: ɪz ɪn bed, ənd hwɒt hɪz mʌðə sed.” “səʊ ju: hæv*

been on the ice! Well, then it is better for you to go *bɪ:n ɒn ðɪ aɪs! wel, ðen ɪt ɪz betə fɔ: ju: tə ɡəʊ*

in and ask if John is ill, but you must be back in five
in ənd a:sk if dʒɒn ɪz ɪl, bʌt ju: mʌst bi: bæk ɪn faɪv

minutes. And I shall have something to say to you
minits. ənd aɪ ʃæl hæv sʌmθɪŋ tə seɪ tə ju:

when you come home. On the ice, and I did not know!
hwɛn ju: kʌm hoʊm. ɒn ði aɪs, ənd aɪ dɪd nɒt nəʊ!

We should not have given him the skates until the ice
wɜ: ʃʊd nɒt hæv gɪvən hɪm ðə skeɪts ʌn'tɪl ði aɪs

was thick enough to skate on, Henry.”
wʌz θɪk ɪ'nʌf tə skeɪt ɒn, henri.”

EXERCISE A.

If George had not — home now, his parents would have
 — without him. George's mother said that he must
 take off his old — and put on some new —. When
 George was — to go, his father said, “Are you — to go
 now?” But Mrs. Green was not ready yet; she could
 not — her —. Mr. Green said that women can — find
 their things. George's parents had to — for him, be-
 cause he came home so —. It was so late that they
 had to take a — to town. The tram took them to a
 — where they could get George's new clothes.

The man in the shop asked them what they —. “I
 want to — at some clothes for my son, please,” said
 Mr. Green. George — the brown colour best. Mr.
 Green got two — of trousers for George. Mrs. Green
 said that the suit was too — for a boy. It cost too
 much —. “I like this suit, but I like that suit —,”

WORDS:

without
 boot
 shoe
 ready
 glove
 find
 found
 never
 yet
 bag
 handkerchief
 late
 wait
 tram
 shop
 want
 look at
 brown

Chapter Sixteen (16).

like
trousers
pair
madam
sir
coat
waistcoat
suit
better
cost
dear
pound (£)
money
thank
shirt
fine
broad
stripe
grey
narrow
cheap
shilling
underwear
woollen
wool
cotton
know
product
sheep
sock
tie
should
dark-eyed
dark-haired
dark-brown
please

George said. They got a shirt with narrow —, because Mrs. Green did not like the — stripes. The man in the shop said that the shirt was very —; it cost only eight shillings. They also got some woollen — for him. George said that we get — from sheep. We get — from warmer countries than our own.

— they get socks for George? No, they did —; Mrs. Green makes all his — socks herself. — did they not get a tie for him? — he never puts on his ties. — do you say to a person when he has given you something? You say, “— you!” to a person when you get something from him. — was Mrs. Green not ready to go? — she could not find her —. Where did George — her gloves? He — them in the hall. How long did George’s parents — for him? They — forty minutes for him.

EXERCISE B.

Did George have his boots on when he went to town? ... How did they go to town? ... Where did they get George’s new clothes? ... Why was it late, before they got to town? ... What things did Mrs. Green take with her to town? ... What did they get for George at the shop? ... Was his new suit cheap? ... Did they also get handkerchiefs for George? ... How much money did Mr. Green give the man in the shop? ... Did George like a brown suit best? ... Which shirt did his mother like best? ... Where do we get cotton and wool from? ... Who makes George’s socks? ... What did George say to his father when he had got all the fine things? ...

MRS. SMITH'S NEW FROCK

Mrs. Smith has a very good friend, Mrs. Daisy Brown;
misiz smiþ hæz ə veri gud frend, misiz deizi braun;

she is the woman who lives on the other side of the
ʃi: iz ðə wuman hu: livz ɔn ði ʌðə said əv ðə

road. Next Wednesday is her birthday, and Mrs. Smith
roud. nekst wenzdi iz hæ: bæ:þdei, ənd misiz smiþ

and her other friends will come to her house in the
ənd hæ: ʌðə frendz wil kʌm tə hæ: haus in ði

evening to see her.

i:vniŋ tə si: hæ:.

Yesterday Mrs. Smith said to her husband, who was in
jestədi misiz smiþ sed tə hæ: hʌzbənd, hu: wəz in

the sitting-room with a good book, "Allan, I have no
ðə sitiŋru:m wið ə gud buk, "ælən, ai hæv nou

frock to put on next Wednesday on Daisy's birthday.
fɹɒk tə put ɔn nekst wenzdi ɔn deiziz bæ:þdei.

I must have a new one." "What, have you no frock?
ai mast hæv ə nju: wʌn." "hwɒt, hæv ju: nou fɹɒk?

You have a green silk frock, a brown one, and one
ju: hæv ə gri:n silk fɹɒk, ə braun wʌn, ənd wʌn

with little flowers; you have three good frocks." "No,
wið litl flauəz; ju: hæv þri: gud fɹɒks." "nou,

the green frock is the one which I had on last year on
ðə gri:n fɹɒk iz ðə wʌn hwɪtʃ ai hæd ɔn lɑ:st jɪə ɔn

who
 which

The **person** who
 lives there.

The **thing** which
 is there.

frock



He buys, he
bought, he has
bought.

myself
yourself

Is this for
myself?

Yes, it is for
yourself.

I wash myself.

You wash
yourself.

new
newer
newest

her birthday, and the others are not good enough."
hə: bə:ʃdeɪ, and ði ʌðəz a: nɒt gud i'naʃ."

"Well, if you must have a new frock, you must. Here
"wel, ɪf ju: mʌst hæv ə nju: frɒk, ju: mʌst. hɪə

is twelve pounds (£12) to buy a new frock. Is that
ɪz twelv paʊndz tə baɪ ə nju: frɒk. ɪz ðæt

enough money?" "Oh yes, I can buy a very good frock
i'naʃ mʌni?" "ou jes, aɪ kæn baɪ ə veri gud frɒk

for £12. I know a little shop which has very
fɔ: twelv paʊndz. aɪ nou ə lɪtl ʃɒp hwɪtʃ hæz veri

good things, and they are not very dear. I shall go
gud þɪŋz, and ðeɪ a: nɒt veri diə. aɪ ʃæl ɡoʊ

now, so that I can be back in time for dinner."
naʊ, soʊ ðæt aɪ kæn bi: bæk ɪn taɪm fɔ: dɪnə."

In the Shop.

"What can I do for you, madam?" "I want to look at
"hwɒt kæn aɪ du: fɔ: ju:, mædəm?" "aɪ wɒnt tə luk æt

some evening-frocks which are not too dear." "For
sʌm i:vnɪŋfrɒks hwɪtʃ a: nɒt tu: diə." "fɔ:

yourself, madam?" "Yes, for myself." "We have some
juə'self, mædəm?" "jes, fɔ: maɪ'self." "wi: hæv sʌm

new silk frocks from Paris, the newest frocks we have
nju: sɪlk frɒks frɒm pə'ri:s, ðə nju:ɪst frɒks wi: hæv

got." "Yes, let me look at them. Can I try them on?"
ɡɒt." "jes, let mi: luk æt ðem. kæn aɪ traɪ ðem ɒn?"

"Yes, madam, we have some small rooms here for that.
"jes, mædəm, wi: hæv sʌm smɔ:l ru:mz hɪə fɔ: ðæt.

It is better to try and see if the frocks are big enough
it iz betə tə trai ənd si: if ðə frɒks a: big ɪˈnʌf

for you. This frock is very beautiful; the blue colour
fɔ: ju:. ðis frɒk iz veri bju:tɪfʊl; ðə blu: kələ

goes very well with madam's beautiful blue eyes."
gəʊz veri wɛl wɪð mədəmz bju:tɪfʊl blu: aɪz."

"Yes, it is a beautiful frock. Let me try it on. — Oh,
"jes, it iz ə bju:tɪfʊl frɒk. let mi: trai it ɒn. — ou,

it is too big for me." The woman in the shop: "Will
it iz tu: big fɔ: mi:." ðə wʊmən in ðə ʃɒp: "wɪl

you try on this frock, please, madam?" Mrs. Smith:
ju: trai ɒn ðis frɒk, pli:z, mədəm?" mɪsɪz smɪθ:

"No, I do not like this one so well. Can you not make
"nəʊ, aɪ du: nɒt laɪk ðis wʌn səʊ wɛl. kæn ju: nɒt meɪk

the blue frock smaller? I must have it next Tuesday.
ðə blu: frɒk smɔ:lə? aɪ mʌst hæv it nekst tʃu:zdi.

Can it be ready then?" "Yes, we shall have it ready.
kæn it bi: redi ðen?" "jes, wi: ʃəl hæv it redi.

Shall we send it to you, madam?" "Yes, I should like
ʃəl wi: send it tə ju:, mədəm?" "jes, aɪ ʃʊd laɪk

you to send it, please." "What is the address?"
ju: tə send it, pli:z." "hwɒt iz ði əˈdres?"

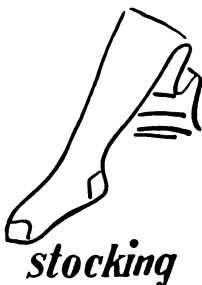
"Forty-nine (49), Nelson Road. You sent me some
"fɔ:tɪˈnaɪn, nɛlsn rəʊd. ju: sent mi: sʌm

things last week, but they went to the wrong address
θɪŋz ˌlɑ:st wɪ:k, bʌt ðeɪ went tə ðə rɒŋ əˈdres

first. You sent them to number forty-five (45). Have
fɜ:st. ju: sent ðəm tə nʌmbə fɔ:tɪˈfaɪv. hæv

I **try**;
 he **tries**, he **tried**.
 he has **tried**.

He **sends**, he **sents**,
 he has **sent**.



that

The person **that** lives there = the person **who** lives there.

The thing **that** is there = the thing **which** is there.

£ 1 (one pound)
= 20 shillings

1 shilling
= 12 pence

one penny
eleven pence

you the right address now?" "Yes, madam, number
ju: ðə rait ə'dres nau?" "jes, mædəm, nambə

forty-nine." "Yes, that is the right number. Oh, how
fɔ:ti'nain." "jes, ðæt iz ðə rait nambə. ou, hau

much does the frock cost?" "Ten pounds ten shillings,
mʌtʃ dʌz ðə frɒk kɒst?" "ten paundz ten šilinz,

madam. — Do you want to look at some silk stockings?
mædəm. — du: ju: wɒnt tə luk æt sam silk stɒkɪnz?

We have some new colours that would go very well
wi: hæv sam nju: kʌləz ðæt wud gou veri wel

with the blue frock."
wið ðə blu: frɒk."

"These stockings are very good. What is the price?"
"ði:z stɒkɪnz a: veri gud. hwɒt iz ðə praɪs?"

"The price is fourteen shillings and elevenpence
"ðə praɪs iz fɔ:ti:n šilinz ənd i'levnpəns

(14/11)." "I shall take only one pair, because
(fɔ:ti:n ənd i'levn)." "ai ʃæl teik ounli wʌn peə, bi'kɒz

I want to buy a new petticoat, too, and I have only
ai wɒnt tə bai ə nju: petikout, tu:, ənd ai hæv ounli

£ 12 with me. Have you petticoats in the same
twelv paundz wið mi:. hæv ju: petikouts in ðə seim

blue colour as the frock, and at not too high a price?"
blu: kʌlə æz ðə frɒk, ənd æt nɒt tu: hai ə praɪs?"

"We have some petticoats at a very low price, but they
"wi: hæv sam petikouts æt ə veri lou praɪs, bʌt ðei
are the wrong blue colour. If you want the same
a: ðə rɔŋ blu: kʌlə. if ju: wɒnt ðə seim

colour, the price is a little higher; but they are not
kʌlə, ðə praɪs ɪz ə lɪtl haɪə; bʌt ðeɪ aː nɒt

very dear. This one without lace costs ten shillings
veri diə. ðɪs wʌn wɪð'aʊt leɪs kɒsts ten ʃɪlɪŋz

and elevenpence (10/11), and the same petticoat
ænd ɪ'levnpəns (ten ænd ɪ'levn), ænd ðə seɪm pətɪkəʊt

with lace costs thirteen shillings and elevenpence
wɪð leɪs kɒsts þə'tiːn ʃɪlɪŋz ænd ɪ'levnpəns

(13/11). It is just the right colour for your
(þə'tiːn ænd ɪ'levn). ɪt ɪz dʒʌst ðə raɪt kʌlə fɔː jʊə

frock." "What beautiful lace! I shall take that one.
fɹɒk." "hwɒt bjuːtɪfʊl leɪs! aɪ ʃəl teɪk ðæt wʌn.

I have just enough money to buy it. Oh, just one thing
aɪ hæv dʒʌst ɪ'nʌf mʌni tə baɪ ɪt. ou, dʒʌst wʌn ɪŋ

more! I should like to have a small lace collar for my
mɔː! aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə hæv ə smɔːl leɪs kɒlə fɔː maɪ

old frock, but I have no more money with me. Will
əʊld fɹɒk, bʌt aɪ hæv nəʊ mɔː mʌni wɪð miː. wɪl

you send a bill for the collar with the frock when you
jʊː send ə bɪl fɔː ðə kɒlə wɪð ðə fɹɒk hwɛn jʊː

send it? — Thank you, that is very kind of you." "Oh,
send ɪt? — þæŋk jʊː, ðæt ɪz veri kaɪnd əv jʊː." "ou,

that is nothing, madam. We are glad to do that for
ðæt ɪz nəθɪŋ, mædəm. wiː aː glæd tə duː ðæt fɔː

you."

jʊː."



Back at Home.

small
smaller
smallest
(a short word)

but:
beautiful
more beautiful
most beautiful
(a long word)

The frock which
Mrs. Smith bought
= the frock that
Mrs. Smith bought
= the frock Mrs.
Smith bought.

I know, I knew,
I have known.

"Hallo, Allan! Here I am again." "Hallo, Patricia!
"hə'lou, ælən! hiə ai æm ə'gein." "hə'lou, pə'trifə!

Did you buy the frock that you wanted?" "Yes, I
did ju: bai ðə frɒk ðæt ju: wɒntid?" "jes, ai

bought the most beautiful blue silk frock I have seen
bɔ:t ðə moust bjʊ:tɪfʊl blu: silk frɒk ai hæv si:n

for a long time, and a pair of stockings, and a collar,
fɔ: ə lɒŋ taɪm, ənd ə peə əv stɒkɪŋz, ənd ə kɒlə,

and a petticoat." "Did you buy all that? Well, I should
ənd ə petikout." "did ju: bai ɔ:l ðæt? wel, ai şud

have known that I would get no money back!" "Allan,
hæv noun ðæt ai wud get nou mʌni bæk!" "ælən,

I did not have enough money, but the woman who has
ai did nɒt hæv i'nʌf mʌni, bʌt ðə wʊmən hu: hæz

the shop said she would send a bill with the frock.
ðə ʃɒp sed ʃi: wud send ə bil wið ðə frɒk.

That was very kind of her, was it not?" "Not enough
ðæt wəz veri kaɪnd əv hə:, wəz it nɒt?" "nɒt i'nʌf

money? How big is the bill?" "Only four shillings
mʌni? hau big iz ðə bil?" "əʊnli fɔ: ʃɪlɪŋz

and elevenpence (4/11)." "Well, I am glad it is
ənd i'levnpəns (fɔ: ənd i'levn)." "wel, ai æm glæd it iz

no more. When will dinner be ready?" "In half an
nou mɔ:. hwen wil dɪnə bi: redi?" "in hʌf ən

hour." "Fine — oh, Patricia, will you be so kind as
auə." "faɪn — ou, pə'trifə, wil ju: bi: sou kaɪnd əz

to give me that book? Thank you!"

tə giv mi: ðæt buk? þæŋk ju:!

"Patricia!" "Yes, Allan?" "How many people will you

"pə'trifə!" "jes, ælən?" "hau meni pi:pl wil ju:

be at Daisy's house on her birthday?" "I do not know

bi: æt deiziz haus ɔn hə: bə:ðdei?" "ai du: nɔt nou

how many we shall be this year. Last year we were

hau meni wi: ʃæl bi: ðis jiə. la:st jiə wi: wə:

ten." "All women?" "Yes, we girls like to be together

ten." "ɔ:l wimin?" "jes, wi: gə:lz laik tə bi: tə'geðə

sometimes without our husbands." "Oh, so I do not

səmtaimz wið'aut auə hʌzbəndz." "ou, sou ai du: nɔt

have to go, too? Fine! Then I could take the children

hæv tə gou, tu:ʔ faɪn! ðen ai kud teik ðə tʃɪldrən

out with me and have dinner in town that day — that

aut wið mi: ənd hæv dɪnə ɪn taʊn ðæt dei — ðæt

is, not the baby. We could ask one of your aunts if

ɪz, nɔt ðə beɪbi. wi: kud ɑ:sk wʌn əv juə ɑ:nts ɪf

she would be so kind as to come and look after her."

ʃi: wʊd bi: sou kaɪnd əz tə kʌm ənd luk ɑ:ftə hə:."

"Yes, we could ask Aunt Jane. She is always very

"jes, wi: kud ɑ:sk ɑ:nt dʒeɪn. ʃi: ɪz ɔ:lwɪz veri

kind. The baby likes her, and she looked after Helen

kaɪnd. ðə beɪbi. laɪks hə:, ənd ʃi: lʊkt ɑ:ftə helɪn

and John many times when they were younger. So

ənd dʒɔn meni taimz hwen ðei wə: jʌŋgə. sou

she knows where things are in the house, and how to

ʃi: nəʊz hwɛə þɪŋz ɑ: ɪn ðə haus, ənd hau tə

give the baby her food, and what to do when the baby
giv ðə beibi hə: fu:d, and hwət tə du: hwen ðə beibi

is wet — and everything.”

iz wet — and evriþiŋ.”

As you have seen in some of the last chapters, some of
æz ju: hæv si:n in sam əv ðə la:st tʃæptəz, sam əv

the verbs do not take an -s in the present tense. (The
ðə və:bz du: nɒt teik ən es in ðə preznt tens. (ðə

time of a verb we call its tense. The time “now” we
taim əv ə və:b wi: kɔ:l its tens. ðə taim “nau” wi:

call the present tense.) Most of the verbs take an -s
kɔ:l ðə preznt tens.) moust əv ðə və:bz teik ən es

in the present tense when the verb says that one thing
in ðə preznt tens hwen ðə və:b sez ðæt wʌn þiŋ

or one person does something. We say: he goes, she
ɔ: wʌn pə:sn dʌz sʌmþiŋ. wi: sei: hi: gouz, fi:

says. But some verbs do not take this -s. We say:
sez. bʌt sam və:bz du: nɒt teik ðis es. wi: sei:

he can, she will, he must, he shall, without the -s.
hi: kæn, fi: wil, hi: mʌst, hi: ʃæl, wið'aʊt ði es.

Another thing, too, is not the same in these verbs as
ə'nʌðə þiŋ, tu:, iz nɒt ðə seim in ði:z və:bz æz

in other verbs. We say: he goes, he went, he **has gone**;
in ʌðə və:bz. wi: sei: hi: gouz, hi: went, hi: hæz ɡɒn;

she plays, she played, she **has played**. But with the
fi: pleiz, fi: pleid, fi: hæz pleid. bʌt wið ðə

verbs "can", "will", "must", "shall", we must put other
və:bz "kæn", "wɪl", "mʌst", "ʃæl", wi: mʌst put ʌðə

words after "has" and "have". We say: I **can** swim,
wə:dz ɑ:ftə "hæz" ənd "hæv". wi: sei: ai kæn swim,

or I **am able** to swim; I **could** swim, or I **was able** to
ɔ: ai æm eibl tə swim; ai kud swim, ɔ: ai wəz eibl tə

swim; but only: I **have been able** to swim for many
swim; bʌt ounli: ai hæv bi:n eibl tə swim fɔ: meni

years. — He **must** go, or he **has to** go; he **must** go, or
jiəz. — hi: mʌst gou, ɔ: hi: hæz tə gou; hi: mʌst gou, ɔ:

he **had to** go; but only: he **has had to** go. — He **shall**
hi: həd tə gou; bʌt ounli: hi: hæz həd tə gou. — hi: ʃæl

do it, or he **has to** do it; he **should** do it, or he **had to** do it;
du: it, ɔ: hi: hæz tə du: it; hi: ʃud du: it, ɔ: hi: həd tə du: it;

but only: he **has had to** do it. — I **will** give her the pencil,
bʌt ounli: hi: hæz həd tə du: it. — ai wɪl gɪv hə: ðə pensɪl,

or I **want to** give her the pencil; I **would** give her the
ɔ: ai wɒnt tə gɪv hə: ðə pensɪl; ai wʊd gɪv hə: ðə

pencil, or I **wanted to** give her the pencil; but only:
pensɪl, ɔ: ai wɒntɪd tə gɪv hə: ðə pensɪl; bʌt ounli:

I **have wanted to** give her the pencil.

ai hæv wɒntɪd tə gɪv hə: ðə pensɪl.

EXERCISE A.

Mrs. Smith told her husband that she had no — to put
 on on Daisy's birthday. People — — their clothes in
 the morning. Mr. Smith gave his wife £12 to — a new
 frock, and she — a beautiful one in town. When she

WORDS:

frock

silk

buy

bought

myself

yourself

try

tried

beautiful

address

send

sent

who

which

right

wrong

number

stocking

hallo

that

price

same

penny

pence

lace

petticoat

just

had — the frock, she wanted to buy — things, too. Mrs. Smith tried — some new — frocks from Paris. The woman in the shop said that Mrs. Smith's blue eyes were —. The woman asked, "— we send you the frock, madam?" and Mrs. Smith answered that she — like them to send it. Mrs. Smith said to the woman, "Will you — the frock to my —, 49, Nelson Road, please?" 49, Nelson Road, was the — address, and 45, Nelson Road, was the — address.

Mrs. Smith has a friend — lives on the other side of the road. The stockings — Mrs. Smith bought were made of —. The English say: The woman who lives on the other side of the road, or: The woman — lives on the other side of the road. They say: The stockings which Mrs. Smith bought, or: The stockings — Mrs. Smith bought. The time of a verb we call it: —. The price of the petticoat with lace was a — higher than the price of the petticoat without lace.

— in Nelson Road does Mrs. Smith live? She lives at — forty-nine. What did Mrs. Smith buy at the — of 14/11 (fourteen shillings and —)? She bought a pair of —. — did Mrs. Smith buy at the price of thirteen — and elevenpence? She bought a — of the — blue colour as the frock. Had she enough money to — it? Yes, she had —, money to buy it. Had she enough money to buy the — collar? No, but the woman in the shop would send a — for the lace —. — did Mrs. Smith say? She said it was — of her. Do you wash — in the morning? Yes, I wash — in the morning.

EXERCISE B.

Who is Mrs. Smith's friend? ... What did Mrs. Smith buy in town? ... Where did she try on the frock? ... What more did she buy? ... What colour is Mrs. Smith's new frock? ... What is the address of Mr. and Mrs. Smith? ... Was the petticoat the same colour as the frock? ... What did Mrs. Smith buy for her old frock? ... Had she enough money to buy the lace collar? ... Was the woman in the shop glad to send a bill for the collar? ... How big was the bill she sent for it? ...

collar
bill
known
kind
a little
glad
present
tense
chapter
forty-nine

**postman**

He brings, he brought, he has brought.

**letter**

THE BIRTHDAY PARTY

The other day, Mrs. Smith was at her friend Daisy's
ði ʌðə dei, misiz smiθ wəz æt hæ: frend deiziz

birthday party. (When it is your birthday, you have
bə:ðdei pɑ:ti. (hwen it iz juə bə:ðdei, ju: hæv

a party for your friends.) Some days before, the
ə pɑ:ti fɔ: juə frendz.) sʌm deiz bi'fɔ:, ðə

postman had brought her a letter from her friend.
pəustmən hæd brɔ:t hæ: ə letə frəm hæ: frend.

In the letter Daisy wrote that she would be very glad
in ðə letə deizi raut ðæt fi: wud bi: veri glæd

to see her at her birthday party on the next Wednesday,
tə si: hæ: æt hæ: bə:ðdei pɑ:ti ɔn ðə nekst wenzdi,

and that she wanted her to come to dinner at seven
ænd ðæt fi: wɒntid hæ: tə kʌm tə di:nə æt sevən

o'clock.

ə'klɒk.

"Look here," Mrs. Smith said to her husband and gave
"lʊk hiə," misiz smiθ sed tə hæ: hæzbænd ænd geiv

him the letter, "an invitation to my best friend Daisy's
him ðə letə, "ən invi'teifən tə mai best frend deiziz

birthday party, and it is not an invitation to afternoon
bə:ðdei pɑ:ti, ænd it iz nɒt ən invi'teifən tu ɑ:f'tə'nu:n

tea, but to dinner, and later we are to have chocolate.
ti:, bʌt tə di:nə, ænd leitə wi: ɑ: tə hæv tʃɒkəlɪt.

How glad I shall be to put on my new frock for the
hau glæd ai ʃæl bi: tə put ɔn mai nju: frɒk fɔ: ðə

first time! You will dine in town then that day, my
fə:st taim! ju: wil daɪn ɪn taʊn ðen ðæt dei, mai

dear, will you not?"

diə, wil ju: nɒt?"

What is a letter? The English word letter means two
hwɒt ɪz ə letə? ði ɪŋglɪʃ wə:d letə mi:nz tu:

things. First it means one of the letters of the alpha-
bɪt: ei, bi:, si:, ɪt'setɹə. ðen ɪt mi:nz ə pi:s əv

bet: a, b, c, etc. (et cetera). Then it means a piece of
bet: ei, bi:, si:, ɪt'setɹə. ðen ɪt mi:nz ə pi:s əv

paper on which you have written something to a person.
peɪpə ɔn hwɪtʃ ju: hæv rɪtən sʌmθɪŋ tu ə pə:sn.

Who brings you the letters? The postman brings the
hu: brɪŋz ju: ðə letəz? ðə pəʊstmən brɪŋz ðə

letters. Who wrote a letter to Mrs. Smith? Her friend
letəz. hu: rəʊt ə letə tə mɪsɪz smɪθ? hə: frend

Daisy wrote her a letter in which she asked her to
deɪzi rəʊt hə: ə letə ɪn hwɪtʃ ʃi: ɑ:skt hə: tə

dinner on her birthday. Did Daisy invite Mrs. Smith's
dɪnə ɔn hə: bɜ:θdeɪ. dɪd deɪzi ɪn'vaɪt mɪsɪz smɪθs

husband, too? No, she only invited Mrs. Smith; the
hʌzbænd, tu:ə? nəʊ, ʃi: ɔnli ɪn'vaɪtɪd mɪsɪz smɪθ; ði

invitation was not for Mr. Smith.

ɪnvi'teɪʃən wəz nɒt fɔ: mɪstə smɪθ.

What is chocolate? It is a brown drink which people
hwɒt ɪz tʃɒkəlɪt? ɪt ɪz ə braʊn drɪŋk hwɪtʃ pi:pl

He begins, he began, he has begun.

to-night = this evening

sometimes have on birthdays; but you can also buy
samtaimz hæv ɔn bæ:ðdeiz; bæt ju: kæn ɔ:lsou bai
 a piece of chocolate in a shop to eat, and then you get
ə pi:s əv tʃɔkəlɪt ɪn ə ʃɒp tu i:t, and ðen ju: get
 it in a piece of paper.
ɪt ɪn ə pi:s əv peɪpə.

On Wednesday, Mrs. Smith had to begin two hours
ɔn wenzdi, misɪz smɪθ hæd tə bi'ɡɪn tu: auəz
 before the party to make herself ready. She began to
bɪ'fɔ: ðə pɑ:ti tə meɪk hæ:'self redi. ʃi: bi'ɡæn tə
 make herself ready in the afternoon at five o'clock.
meɪk hæ:'self redi ɪn ði a:ftə'nu:n æt faɪv ə'klɒk.

She took a bath, and then she dressed, that is, she put
ʃi: tuk ə bɑ:θ, and ðen ʃi: drest, ðæt ɪz, ʃi: put
 on her clothes, and at half past six she was ready to go.
ɔn hæ: kləʊðz, and æt hɑ:f pɑ:st sɪks ʃi: wəz redi tə ɡoʊ.

"Now, be good children," she said to John and Helen;
"nau, bi: ɡʊd tʃɪldrən," ʃi: sed tə dʒɔn and helɪn;

"if you are naughty to-night when I am away, you
"ɪf ju: ɑ: nɔ:ti, tə'nait hwen aɪ æm ə'wei, ju:

must not go out and play to-morrow. George is always
mʌst nɒt ɡoʊ aʊt and pleɪ tə'mɒrəʊ. dʒɔ:dʒ ɪz ɔ:lweɪz

a good boy when he is alone at home, but you are not
ə ɡʊd bɔɪ hwen hi: ɪz ə'ləʊn æt hoʊm, bæt ju: ɑ: nɒt

always good. You have been naughty children the last
ɔ:lweɪz ɡʊd. ju: hæv bi:n nɔ:ti tʃɪldrən ðə la:st

two or three times I have been away." "But this time
tu: ɔ: ʒri: taimz aɪ hæv bi:n ə'wei." "bæt ðɪs taim

we will be good children, mamma." "All right, then I
wi: wil bi: gud tʃildrən, mə'ma:." "ɔ:l rait, ðen ai

I will go = I want to go.

will go. Good-bye, children!" "Good-bye, mamma!"
wil gou. gud'bai, tʃildrən!" "gud'bai, mə'ma:!"

we will be good = we want to be good.

At what time did Mrs. Smith begin to make herself
æt hwɒt taim did misiz smiθ bi'gin tə meik hə:'self

ready for Daisy's birthday party? She began at five
redi fɔ: deiziz bæ:pdeɪ pɑ:ti? ʃi: bi'gæn æt faɪv

o'clock. What did she do? First she took a bath, and
ə'klɒk. hwɒt did ʃi: du:ʔ fə:st ʃi: tuk ə bɑ:p, ənd

then she dressed. What does the word "to dress" mean?
ðen ʃi: drest. hwɒt dʌz ðə wə:d "tə dres" mi:nʔ

It means to put on your clothes. Are Helen and John
it mi:nz tə put ɔn juə kləʊðz. a: helɪn ənd dʒɒn

always good children? No, they are not always good;
ɔ:lweɪz gud tʃildrən? nou, ðeɪ a: nɒt ɔ:lweɪz gud;

sometimes they are naughty. Is George always a good
sʌmtaɪmz ðeɪ a: naʊti. ɪz dʒɔ:dʒ ɔ:lweɪz ə gud

boy? Yes, he is always a good boy. What did Mrs.
bɔɪ? jes, hi: ɪz ɔ:lweɪz ə gud bɔɪ. hwɒt did misiz

Smith say to her children just before she went to the
smiθ sei tə hə: tʃildrən dʒʌst bi'fɔ: ʃi: went tə ðə

birthday party? She said, "Good-bye, children!"
bə:pdeɪ pɑ:ti? ʃi: sed, "gud'bai, tʃildrən!"

"Hallo, Daisy, how are you?" "Hallo, Patricia, I am
"hə'lou, deɪzi, hau a: ju:ʔ" "hə'lou, pə'trɪʃə, ai æm

very well, thank you, and I hope you are well, too."
veri wel, þæŋk ju:, ənd ai haʊp ju: a: wel, tu:."

still = yet

She is still in bed
= she is in bed
yet.

"I am all right, thank you. And how is your sister?
"ai æm ɔ:l rait, þæŋk ju:. and hau iz juə sistə?"

The last time I heard of her, she was ill." "She is
ðə la:st taim ai hæ:d əv hæ:, fi: wəz il." "fi: iz

better now, thank you, but she is still in bed." "I
betə nau, þæŋk ju:, bʌt fi: iz stɪl in bed." "ai

hope it will not be long before she is all right again.
houp it wil nɒt bi: lɔŋ bi'fɔ: fi: iz ɔ:l rait ə'gein.

Here is my birthday present for you. I hope you will
hiə iz mai bæ:θdeɪ preznt fɔ: ju:. ai houp ju: wil

like it." "Oh, a pair of silk stockings; thank you, dear;
laɪk it." "ou, ə peə əv silk stɒkɪŋz; þæŋk ju:, diə;

I had hoped for a pair of stockings, but it is too much
ai hæd houpt fɔ: ə peə əv stɒkɪŋz, bʌt it iz tu: mʌtʃ

to give me such a fine birthday present." "Oh no, you
tə gɪv mi: sʌtʃ ə faɪn bæ:θdeɪ preznt." "ou nou, ju:

have always been such a good and dear friend to me."
hæv ɔ:lweɪz bi:n sʌtʃ ə gud ənd diə frend tə mi:."

Daisy: "It is kind of you to say that, my dear. Now
deɪzi: "it iz kaɪnd əv ju: tə sei ðæt, mai diə. nau

all my guests have come. You know them all, Patricia,
ɔ:l mai gests hæv kʌm. ju: nou ðem ɔ:l, pə'trɪʃə,

except this young lady. This is Mrs. Hudson, and this
ɪk'sept ðɪs jʌŋ leɪdi. ðɪs iz mɪsɪz hʌdsn, ənd ðɪs

is Mrs. Smith." Mrs. Smith: "How do you do, Mrs.
iz mɪsɪz smɪθ." mɪsɪz smɪθ: "hau du: ju: du:, mɪsɪz

Hudson." Mrs. Hudson: "How do you do, Mrs. Smith."
hʌdsn." mɪsɪz hʌdsn: "hau du: ju: du:, mɪsɪz smɪθ."

Daisy: "Dinner is ready now."

deizi: "dinə iz redi nau."

Did Mrs. Smith give Daisy a birthday present? Yes,
did misiz smiθ giv deizi ə bə:ðdei preznt? jes,

she gave her a pair of silk stockings as a birthday
ʃi: geiv hə: ə pɛə əv silk stɔkiŋz əz ə bə:ðdei

present. Did Daisy like her birthday present? Yes,
preznt. did deizi laik hə: bə:ðdei preznt? jes,

ladies are always glad to get such presents. They can
leidiz a: ɔ:lweɪz glæd tə get sʌʃ preznts. ðei kæn

never get enough silk stockings.

nevə get i'nʌf silk stɔkiŋz.

Did Daisy have other guests than Mrs. Smith and Mrs.

did deizi hæv ʌðə gests ðæn misiz smiθ ænd misiz

Hudson on her birthday? Yes, she had still other guests

hʌdsn ɔn hə: bə:ðdei? jes, ʃi: hæd stɪl ʌðə gests

on her birthday. When do people have guests? When

ɔn hə: bə:ðdei. hwen du: pi:pl hæv gests? hwen

they give a party, they invite guests to come to their

ðei giv ə pɑ:ti, ðei in'vait gests tə kʌm tə ðeə

home. Were all the people at the party ladies? No,

houm. wə: ɔ:l ðə pi:pl æt ðə pɑ:ti leidiz? nou,

not all, but almost all of them were ladies; the only

nɒt ɔ:l, bʌt ɔ:lməʊst ɔ:l əv ðem wə: leidiz; ði ounli

gentleman was Daisy's husband. Were all the guests

dʒentlmən wəz deiziz hʌzbənd. wə: ɔ:l ðə gests

ladies? Yes, all the guests were ladies; Daisy's husband

leidiz? jes, ɔ:l ðə gests wə: leidiz; deiziz hʌzbənd

lady = woman
gentleman = man

one lady
two ladies

one gentleman
two gentlemen

was not a guest in his own house. Did Mrs. Smith know
wɔːz nɒt ə gest ɪn hɪz ɒn haʊs. dɪd mɪsɪz smɪθ nəʊ

all the guests? No, she did not know all of them, but
ɔːl ðə gests? nəʊ, ʃiː dɪd nɒt nəʊ ɔːl əv ðəm, bʌt

almost all; she had never seen Mrs. Hudson before.
ɔːlməʊst ɔːl; ʃiː həd nəvə siːn mɪsɪz hʌdsn bɪ'fɔː.

What did Mrs. Smith say when she saw Mrs. Hudson?
hwɒt dɪd mɪsɪz smɪθ sei hwən ʃiː sɔː mɪsɪz hʌdsn?

She said, "How do you do." And what did Mrs. Hudson
ʃiː sed, "haʊ duː juː duː." ənd hwɒt dɪd mɪsɪz hʌdsn

say? She said, "How do you do", too. In England you
sei? ʃiː sed, "haʊ duː juː duː.", tuː. ɪn ɪŋɡlənd juː

say "How do you do" the first time you see a person;
sei "haʊ duː juː duː." ðə fɜːst taɪm juː siː ə pɜːsn;

but when you see a person you know well, you only
bʌt hwən juː siː ə pɜːsn juː nəʊ wel, juː ɒnli

say "Hallo" or "How are you?"

sei "hə'ləʊ" ɔː "haʊ aː juː?"

EXERCISE A.

The other day Mrs. Smith was at her friend Daisy's birthday —. Some days before, she got an — for the party. The postman — the invitation in a —. It was not an invitation to — —, but to dinner. The word "letter" — two things: the letters of the alphabet, and a — of paper on which you have written something. Daisy had not — Mr. Smith, but only his wife. Mrs. Smith — to make herself ready at five o'clock. She took a —, and then she —. John and Helen are not

always good children, sometimes they are —. George is — a good boy.

“Hallo, Patricia, — are you?” “I am very well, thank you, and I — you are well, too. How — your sister?” “She is better now, — you.” What — Patricia give Daisy? Her birthday — for Daisy was a pair of silk stockings. — did Daisy say? She said, “It is too — to give me — a fine present.”

Had Daisy invited both — and gentlemen to her party? No, the — were all ladies. What — Patricia say to Mrs. Hudson? She said, “How — you —, Mrs. Hudson.” Had Mrs. Smith — all the guests before? No, she had seen — all the guests, but not Mrs. Hudson. — do you say the first time you see a person? You say, “———”. And what — you say to a person you know well? You say, “—”, or “— — —?”

EXERCISE B.

Who brings the letters? ... What does the word “letter” mean? ... What was in the letter for Mrs. Smith? ... When do people have parties? ... Are John and Helen always good children? ... Were all the guests ladies? ... When did Mrs. Smith begin to dress? ... Had the guests all come when Patricia came? ... What did Mrs. Smith say to her children just before she went to the party? ... What was Mrs. Smith’s birthday present for Daisy? ... Was Daisy glad to get such a beautiful pair of silk stockings? ... Who was the only gentleman at the party? ... Had Patricia seen Mrs. Hudson before? ...

WORDS:
postman
letter
bring
brought
invitation
invite
ask
guest
party
chocolate
drink
lady
gentleman
begin
began
dress
to-night
such
present
piece
mean
etc.
et cetera
mamma
naughty
hope
all right
always
good-bye
dear
almost
still

THE DINNER

He sits, he sat,
he has sat.



plate

Daisy's husband had been in his bedroom to dress, but
deiziz hʌzbənd hæd bi:n in hiz bedru:m tə dres, bʌt

now he came down from the first floor. When they
nau hi: keim daun frəm ðə fə:st flɔ:. hwen ðei

had all come into the dining-room, Daisy's husband
hæd ɔ:l kʌm intə ðə daɪnɪŋru:m, deiziz hʌzbənd

said, "Please sit down at the table. Will you sit down
sed, "pli:z sit daun æt ðə teibl. wil ju: sit daun

there, Mrs. Smith, and will you sit down on that chair
ðeə, misiz smɪθ, ənd wil ju: sit daun ɔn ðæt tʃeə

next to my wife, Mrs. Hudson?" When they had all
nekst tə maɪ waɪf, misiz hʌdsn?" hwen ðei hæd ɔ:l

sat down at the table, they began to eat. First they had
sæt daun æt ðə teibl, ðei bɪ'gæn tu i:t. fə:st ðei hæd

soup made from many vegetables. "What a good soup,"
su:p meɪd frəm meni vedʒɪtəblz. "hʌt ə gud 'su:p,"

Mrs. Hudson said, "how good it tastes!" Daisy: "I am
misiz hʌdsn sed, "haʊ gud ɪt teɪsts!" deizi: "aɪ æm

glad that it tastes good. Do you want another plate
glæd ðæt ɪt teɪsts gud. du: ju: wɒnt ə'nʌðə pleɪt

of soup?" "No, thank you, I can eat no more." Daisy's
əv su:p?" "nəʊ, θæŋk ju:, aɪ kæn i:t nəʊ mɔ:." deiziz

husband: "Please give me another plate of soup. I am
hʌzbənd: "pli:z gɪv mi: ə'nʌðə pleɪt əv su:p. aɪ æm

very hungry. I had so much work to do to-day that
veri hangri. ai hæd sou matʃ wə:k tə du: tə'dei ðət

I had no time for lunch, so now I am so hungry that
ai hæd nou taim fɔ: lʌnʃ, sou nau ai æm sou hangri ðət

two plates of soup are not too much for me."
tu: pleits əv su:p a: nɒt tu: matʃ fɔ: mi:."

Where had Daisy's husband been? He had been in his
hwɛə hæd deiziz hʌzbənd bi:n? hi: hæd bi:n in hiz

bedroom on the first floor to dress. Did he come down
bedru:m ɒn ðə fə:st flɔ: tə dres. did hi: kʌm daʊn

to the guests? Yes, he came down from the first floor
tə ðə gests? jes, hi: keim daʊn frɒm ðə fə:st flɔ:

when he had dressed. What did the guests do when
hwen hi: hæd drest. hwɒt did ðə gests du: hwen

they came into the dining-room? They sat down at
ðei keim intə ðə daɪnɪŋru:m? ðei sæt daʊn æt

the table. Who asked them to sit down? Daisy's hus-
ðə teɪbl. hu: ɑ:skt ðem tə sit daʊn? deiziz hʌz-

band asked them to sit down. What did they have
bænd ɑ:skt ðem tə sit daʊn. hwɒt did ðei hæv

first? First they had soup. What is soup made from?
fə:st? fə:st ðei hæd su:p. hwɒt ɪz su:p meɪd frɒm?

It is made from vegetables, and sometimes it is also
ɪt ɪz meɪd frɒm vedʒɪtəblz, ənd sʌmtaɪmz ɪt ɪz ɔ:lsoʊ

made from meat; but the meat is not in the soup when
meɪd frɒm mi:t; bʌt ðə mi:t ɪz nɒt in ðə su:p hwen

you get it for dinner; it has been taken out again. It
ju: get ɪt fɔ: dɪnə; ɪt hæz bi:n teɪkn aʊt ə'geɪn. ɪt

is made
 was made
 has been made

How **is** soup
made? = How do
 you make soup?

How **was** the soup
made? = How did
 you make the
 soup?

How **has** the soup
been made? =
 How have you
 made the soup?

you (here) =
 people

maid

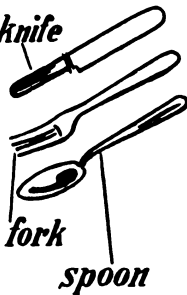


dish

He cuts, he cut,
he has cut.

one knife
two knives

knife



fork

spoon

was only put in to give the soup a good taste. Did the
wɔː ʊnli ˈpʊt ɪn tə ɡɪv ðə suːp ə ɡʊd teɪst. dɪd ðə

soup taste good? Yes, Mrs. Hudson said that it tasted
suːp teɪst ɡʊd? jɛs, mɪsɪz ˈhʌdsn sɛd ðæt ɪt teɪstɪd

very good. Why was Daisy's husband so hungry?
veri ɡʊd. hwaɪ wɔː deɪzɪz ˈhʌzbænd sou ˈhʌŋɡri?

Because he had had so much work to do that he had
bɪˈkɔːz hiː ˈhæd ˈhæd sou mʌtʃ wɜːk tə duː ðæt hiː ˈhæd

had no time for lunch; he was so hungry that he ate
ˈhæd noʊ taɪm fɔː ˈlʌnʃ; hiː wɔː sou ˈhʌŋɡri ðæt hiː et

two plates of soup.

tuː ˈpleɪts əv suːp.

Then the maid came in with a large dish. On the dish
ðen ðə meɪd keɪm ɪn wɪð ə ˈlɑːdʒ dɪʃ. ɔn ðə dɪʃ

was beef. Daisy's husband cut the beef with a big
wɔːz biːf. deɪzɪz ˈhʌzbænd kʌt ðə biːf wɪð ə bɪɡ

knife, and then put a piece on each plate. Daisy put
naɪf, ænd ðen ˈpʊt ə piːs ɔn iːtʃ pleɪt. deɪzi ˈpʊt

potatoes and vegetables on the plates and gave one plate
pəˈteɪtəʊz ænd ˈvedʒɪtəblz ɔn ðə pleɪts ænd ɡeɪv wʌn pleɪt

to each of the guests. "Will you give me the salt,
tu iːtʃ əv ðə ɡests. "wɪl juː ɡɪv miː ðə sɔːlt,

please," said Mrs. Hudson to Mrs. Smith. "I like salt
pliːz," sɛd mɪsɪz ˈhʌdsn tə mɪsɪz smɪθ. "aɪ laɪk sɔːlt

both in the soup and with the meat." With the beef
bəʊp ɪn ðə suːp ænd wɪð ðə miːt." wɪð ðə biːf

they had wine. Daisy's husband poured wine into the
ðeɪ ˈhæd waɪn. deɪzɪz ˈhʌzbænd ˈpɔːd waɪn ɪntə ðə

glasses from a big bottle, and when he had tasted it,
gla:siz frəm ə big bɒtl, and hwen hi: həd teistid it,
 he said, "Oh, it would make a new and better man of
hi: sed, "ou, it wud meik ə nju: and betə mæn əv
 me to have such a glass of wine every day. Water is
mi: tə hæv sʌf ə gla:s əv wain evri dei. wɔ:tə iz
 good to drink for people who are thirsty, but wine is
ɡud tə driŋk fɔ: pi:pl hu: a: þə:sti, bʌt wain iz
 better." Then they had ice-cream, and when they had
betə." *ðen ðei həd 'aɪs'kri:m, and hwen ðei həd*
 gone into the sitting-room, a cup of coffee was ready
ɡɒn intə ðə sitɪŋru:m, ə kʌp əv kɔ:fi wəz redi
 there for each of the guests.
ðeə fɔ: i:tʃ əv ðə ɡests.

Who came into the dining-room with the dishes? The
hu: keim intə ðə daɪnɪŋru:m wɪð ðə dɪʃɪz? ðə
 maid came into the dining-room with the dishes. Is
meɪd keim intə ðə daɪnɪŋru:m wɪð ðə dɪʃɪz. iz
 there a maid in every home? No, it is only people
ðeə ə meɪd ɪn evri haʊm? noʊ, ɪt ɪz ɒnli pi:pl
 with big houses where there is much work to do, who
wɪð big haʊzɪz hwɛə ðeər ɪz mʌʃ wɜ:k tə du:, hu:
 have maids. Who cut the beef? Daisy's husband cut
hæv meɪdz. hu: kʌt ðə bi:f? deɪzɪz hʌzbənd kʌt
 the beef. What do people use knives for? A knife is
ðə. bi:f. hwɒt du: pi:pl ju:z naɪvz fɔ:? ə naɪf ɪz
 used to cut the food into pieces before it is put into
ju:zd tə kʌt ðə fu:d intə pi:sɪz bɪfɔ: ɪt ɪz pʊt intə



Chapter Nineteen (19).

is used
are used

A pencil **is used** to
write with.

Pencils **are used** to
write with.

is called
are called

The boy **is called**
John.

The small spoons
are called tea-
spoons.

for instance =
for example

the mouth. Do they use knives to put the food into
ðə maʊθ. du: ðei ju:z naɪvz tə put ðə fu:d intə

their mouths? No, they use forks; a fork is used to put
ðeə maʊðz? nou, ðei ju:z fɔ:ks; ə fɔ:k ɪz ju:zd tə put

the food into the mouth. Do people also use forks when
ðə fu:d intə ðə maʊθ. du: pi:pl ə:lsoʊ ju:z fɔ:ks hwen

they eat soup? No, then they use spoons; a spoon is
ðei i:t su:p? nou, ðen ðei ju:z spu:nz; ə spu:n ɪz

used for soup. Spoons are also used to put sugar in tea
ju:zd fɔ: su:p. spu:nz a: ə:lsoʊ ju:zd tə put sugə in ti:

or coffee; but they are smaller than the spoons which
ɔ: kɔ:fi; bʌt ðei a: smɔ:lə ðæn ðə spu:nz hwɪtʃ

are used for soup, and they are called teaspoons.

a: ju:zd fɔ: su:p, ənd ðei a: kɔ:ld ti:spu:nz.

What do people drink when they are thirsty? They
hwɒt du: pi:pl driŋk hwen ðei a: þə:sti? ðei

drink water, but sometimes, for instance at parties, they
driŋk wɔ:tə, bʌt sʌmtaɪmz, fəɪɪnstəns æt pɑ:tɪz, ðei

drink wine. Who took the bottle and poured wine into
driŋk waɪn. hu: tuk ðə bɒtl ənd pɔ:d waɪn intə

the glasses? Daisy's husband took the bottle and poured
ðə gla:sɪz? deɪzɪz hʌzbənd tuk ðə bɒtl ənd pɔ:d

the wine into the glasses. What did the guests have
ðə waɪn intə ðə gla:sɪz. hwɒt dɪd ðə gests hæv

after the beef? They had ice-cream. What did they
a:ftə ðə bi:f? ðei həd 'aɪskri:m. hwɒt dɪd ðei

have in the sitting-room? They had a cup of coffee.

hæv ɪn ðə sɪtɪŋru:m? ðei həd ə kʌp əv kɔ:fi.

After the coffee the guests had a good, long talk
a:ftə ðə kɔfi ðə gests həd ə gud, lɔŋ tɔ:k

together. Mrs. Smith talked to Daisy about her three
tə'geðə. misiz smiθ tɔ:kt tə deizi ə'baut hæ: θri:

children, and Daisy's husband had a good talk with
tʃildrən, ənd deiziz həzbənd həd ə gud tɔ:k wið

Mrs. Hudson about his work. Later in the evening they
misiz hədsn ə'baut hiz wə:k. leɪtə in ði i:vniŋ ðei

had birthday chocolate. "Oh, I have eaten so much for
həd bə:θdei tʃkəlɪt. "ou, ai həv i:tn sou mʌtʃ fɔ:

dinner," Daisy's husband said, "must I have chocolate,
dɪnə," deiziz həzbənd sed, "mʌst ai həv tʃkəlɪt,

too?" Daisy: "It is my birthday, and you must have
tu:?" deizi: "it iz mai bə:θdei, ənd ju: mʌst həv

chocolate, too." When it was almost eleven o'clock,
tʃkəlɪt, tu:." hwen it wəz ə:lmoʊst i'levn ə'klɒk,

Mrs. Smith said, "How late it is! Now I must go home.
misiz smiθ sed, "hau leɪt it iz! nau ai mʌst ɡoʊ hoʊm.

It has been a very pleasant evening, Daisy. It was so
it həz bi:n ə veri pleznt i:vniŋ, deizi. it wəz sou

pleasant to be together again." "Yes, I was glad to see
pleznt tə bi: tə'geðə ə'geɪn." "jes, ai wəz glæd tə si:

you again, too."
ju: ə'geɪn, tu:."

What did the guests do after the coffee? After the
hwɒt did ðə gests du: a:ftə ðə kɔfi? a:ftə ðə

coffee the guests had a long talk together. What did
kɔfi ðə gests həd ə lɔŋ tɔ:k tə'geðə. hwɒt did

to talk = to speak
 We **talk** together.
 Can you **speak**
 English?

Mrs. Smith talk to Daisy about? She talked to Daisy
misiz smiþ tɔ:k tə deizi ə'baut? ʃi: tɔ:kt tə deizi

about her own children. Did the guests have a pleasant
ə'baut hæ: oun tʃildrən. did ðə gests hæv ə pleznt

evening at Daisy's home? Yes, they had a very pleasant
i:vniŋ æt deiziz hɒm? jes, ðei hæd ə veri pleznt

evening, and Mrs. Smith told Daisy that it had been
i:vniŋ, and misiz smiþ tould deizi ðæt it hæd bi:n

so good to see her.

sou gud tə si: hæ:.

WORDS:

down
 sit
 sat
 soup
 taste
 (to) taste
 plate
 hungry
 work
 maid
 dish
 cut
 knife
 salt
 wine
 pour
 glass
 thirsty
 ice-cream
 fork
 use

EXERCISE A.

Daisy's husband came — from the first floor. He said,
 “— sit — at the table. Will you please — — on that
 chair?” — is made from vegetables and sometimes
 from meat, too. Mrs. Hudson said that the soup —
 good; it had a good —. Daisy's husband was so — that
 he ate two — of soup. He had had much — to do that
 day. The — came in with a dish. On the — was beef.
 Knives are used to — with. You cut your food into
 pieces with a —. A fork is — to put the food into
 the mouth. When you eat soup, you do not use a —,
 but a —. With the beef the guests had —. Daisy's
 husband — the wine into the — from a big —. People
 drink water when they are —. You put sugar in
 coffee with a —. People drink — from glasses.

Did the guests have more than — and beef for dinner?
 Yes, they also had —. Did the guests — together after
 the coffee? Yes, they had a long — together; Mrs. Smith

talked to Daisy — her three children. Did the guests have a — evening at Daisy's home? Yes, they had a very — evening.

EXERCISE B.

What is soup made from? ... Why was Daisy's husband so hungry that day? ... How many plates of soup did he eat? ... What do people drink wine from? ... Did the soup have a good taste? ... Who came in with the dishes? ... What are knives used for? ... What are forks used for? ... What do people eat soup with? ... Did the guests have more than soup and beef for dinner? ... When did they talk together? ... Was it late when Mrs. Smith went home? ... Had it been a pleasant evening? ...

spoon
teaspoon
bottle
talk
(to) talk
pleasant
cup
about
instance

AT THE RESTAURANT

On the evening when Mrs. Smith went to her friend's
ɔn ði i:vniŋ hwen misiz smiþ went tə hə: frendz

birthday party, Mr. Smith took the children to a res-
bə:þdeɪ pɑ:ti, mistə smiþ tuk ðə tʃɪldrən tu ə res-

taurant for dinner. It was the first time that the
tərənt fɔ: dɪnə. ɪt wəz ðə fə:st taɪm ðət ðə

children had been to a restaurant, and they were very
tʃɪldrən həd bi:n tu ə restərənt, ənd ðeɪ wə: veri

happy = glad

happy to go. Before they went, their father had to
hæpi tə ɡəʊ. bɪ'fɔ: ðeɪ went, ðeə fɑ:ðə həd tə

see that they put on their best clothes. "Tell Helen
si: ðət ðeɪ put ɔn ðeə best kləʊðz. "tel helɪn

dress = frock

to put on her new green dress," he said to John, "and
tə put ɔn hə: nju: gri:n dres," hi: sed tə dʒɔn, "ənd

you can put on your new suit with the grey stripes."
ju: kæn put ɔn juə nju: sju:t wɪð ðə greɪ straɪps."

late
later
latest

A little later Mr. Smith went up to see if the children
ə lɪtl leɪtə mistə smiþ went ʌp tə si: ɪf ðə tʃɪldrən

were ready, and then he saw that Helen had not put
wə: redɪ, ənd ðen hi: sɔ: ðət helɪn həd nɒt put

on her green dress. "Did you not tell her to put it on?"
ɔn hə: gri:n dres. "dɪd ju: nɒt tel hə: tə put ɪt ɔn?"

he asked John. "Yes, I told her what you said, but
hi: a:skt dʒɒn. "jes, ai tould hæ: hwɒt ju: sed, bʌt

she said that the last time she had that dress on, she
ʃi: sed ðæt ðə lɑ:st taim ʃi: hæd ðæt dres ɒn, ʃi:

dropped some ice-cream on it, and now there is a spot
drɒpt sʌm 'aɪs'kri:m ɒn ɪt, ænd naʊ ðeə ɪz ə spɒt

where the ice-cream has been." "Oh, is there a spot on
hwɛə ði 'aɪs'kri:m hæz bi:n." "ou, ɪz ðeə ə spɒt ɒn

the dress? Well, then she must put on another dress."
ðə dres? wel, ðen ʃi: mʌst put ɒn ə'nʌðə dres."

"No, come here, Helen," said Aunt Jane, who had come
"nou, kʌm hɪə, helɪn," sed a:nt dʒeɪn, hu: hæd kʌm

to look after the baby, "I shall take the spot away with
tə luk a:ftə ðə beɪbi, "aɪ ʃæl teɪk ðə spɒt ə'wei wɪð

some hot water. There, now it is gone, and you can
sʌm hɒt wɔ:tə. ðeə, naʊ ɪt ɪz gɒn, ænd ju: kæn

be happy again. Oh, look, Baby has dropped her doll
bi: hæpi ə'geɪn. ou, luk, beɪbi hæz drɒpt hæ: dɒl

on the floor; will you pick it up for me? I am too old
ɒn ðə flɔ:; wɪl ju: pik ɪt ʌp fɔ: mi: ʔ aɪ æm tu: ould

to pick things up from the floor. Don't give it to the
tə pik θɪŋz ʌp frɒm ðə flɔ:. daʊnt gɪv ɪt tə ðə

baby, Helen; it is not clean, now it has been on the
beɪbi, helɪn; ɪt ɪz nɒt kli:n, naʊ ɪt hæz bi:n ɒn ðə

floor; we must wash it first. I shall have to tie it to
flɔ:; wi: mʌst wɒʃ ɪt fɜ:st. aɪ ʃæl hæv tə taɪ ɪt tə

her bed with a piece of string so that she can't drop it
hæ: bed wɪð ə pi:s əv striŋ sɒ ðæt ʃi: kɑ:nt drɒp ɪt



gone = away

don't = do not



string

can't = cannot

Chapter Twenty (20).

Have you got a penny? = Have you a penny?

I'll = I shall
you'll = you will
he'll = he will
she'll = she will
it'll = it will
we'll = we shall
you'll = you will
they'll = they will

ourselves
yourselves

Something for
ourselves.

Something for
yourselves.

We wash our-
selves.

Wash yourselves,
John and Helen!



as = because

on the floor. Have you got a piece of string, Helen?"
ɔn ðə flɔ:. hæv ju: gɒt ə pi: s əv striŋ, helin?"

"No, Aunt Jane, but I know where there is some string.
"nou, a:nt dʒein, bʌt ai nou hweə ðeər iz sʌm striŋ.

Mamma has always got some string in the kitchen.
mə'ma: hæz ɔ:lwiz gɒt sʌm striŋ in ðə kiʃən.

I'll go and get it for you." "Thank you, my dear, you
ail gou ənd get it fɔ: ju:." "θæŋk ju:, mai diə, ju:

are a very good little girl."
a: ə veri gud litl gə:l."

"Let me look at you now, children. John, you have not
"let mi: luk æt ju: nau, tʃildrən. dʒɒn, ju: hæv nɒt

tied your shoe-laces. Can't such a big boy tie his own
taid juə fu:leisiz. kɑ:nt sʌtʃ ə big bɔi tai hiz oun

shoe-laces? Well, now you look fine, both of you. Here
fu:leisiz? wel, nau ju: luk faɪn, bəʊθ əv ju:. hiə

is a shilling to buy something good for yourselves, my
iz ə ʃiliŋ tə bai sʌmʃiŋ gud fɔ: juə'selvz, mai

dears. Good-bye, now!" "Good-bye, Aunt Jane, and
diəz. gud'bai, nau!" "gud'bai, a:nt dʒein, ənd

thank you for the money! We'll buy chocolate for
θæŋk ju: fɔ: ðə mʌni! wi:l bai tʃɒkəlɪt fɔ:

ourselves, and something good for Alice, too."
auə'selvz, ənd sʌmʃiŋ gud fɔ: əlis, tu:."

Mr. Smith wanted the children to have a good time
mɪstə smɪθ wɒntɪd ðə tʃildrən tə hæv ə gud taim

that evening, and as the children liked very much to
ðæt i:vnɪŋ, ənd əz ðə tʃildrən laɪkt veri mʌʃ tə

ride in a car, he called a taxi. They rode for only ten
raid in ə ka:, hi: kɔ:ld ə tæksi. ðei roud fɔ: ounli ten

minutes in the taxi, but if they had ridden in a tram,
minits in ðə tæksi, bət if ðei hæd ridn in ə træm,

it would have taken them half an hour to get to the
it wud hæv teikn ðem ha:f ən auə tə get tə ðə

restaurant. The restaurant was one to which Mr. Smith
restərənt. ðə restərənt wəz wʌn tə hwi:ʃ mistə smiθ

often went when he had to have a meal in town. He
ɔ:fən went hwen hi: hæd tə hæv ə mi:l in taun. hi:

had been there so often that the waiters knew his
hæd bi:n ðeə sou ɔ:fən ðæt ðə weitəz nju: hiz

name.

neim.

“Good evening, Mr. Smith,” said one of the waiters

“gud i:vniŋ, mistə smiθ,” sed wʌn əv ðə weitəz

when they came into the restaurant, “I’ll find you a
hwen ðei keim intə ðə restərənt, “aɪl faɪnd ju: ə

good table. What will you have for dinner?” “What
gud teɪbl. hwɒt wil ju: hæv fɔ: dɪnə?” “hwɒt

have you got?” “Well, let me see — we have some
hæv ju: gɒt?” “wel, let mi: si: — wi: hæv sʌm

very good mutton with cabbage, and a fine vegetable
veri gud mʌtn wið kæbɪdʒ, ənd ə faɪn vedʒɪtəbl

soup.” Mr. Smith: “How would you like that, children?”

su:p.” mistə smiθ: “haʊ wud ju: laɪk ðæt, tʃɪldrən?”

“That would be fine, daddy.” “And what would you

“ðæt wud bi: faɪn, dədi.” “ənd hwɒt wud ju:

He **rides**, he **rode**,
 he has **ridden**.



waiter

often = many
 times

He **knows**, he
knew, he has
known.

mutton = the
 meat of sheep



cabbage

daddy = father

Chapter Twenty (20).

let's = let us

like for a sweet?" "Oh, an ice-cream!" "Let's have
laik fɔ: ə swi:t?" "ou, ən 'ais'kri:m!" "lets hæv

soup and mutton then, two ice-creams with fruit, and
su:p ənd mʌtn ðen, tu: 'ais'kri:mz wið fru:t, ənd

a cup of coffee for me, waiter." "Yes, thank you, sir."
ə kʌp əv kɔfi fɔ: mi:, weita." "jes, þæŋk ju:, sə:."

"Don't you want some more cabbage, John? Cabbage
"dʌnt ju: wɒnt sʌm mɔ: kæbidʒ, dʒɒn? kæbidʒ

is good for you." "Yes, thank you; let me have a little
iz gud fɔ: ju:." "jes, þæŋk ju:; let mi: hæv ə litl

more cabbage before we have the sweet."

mɔ: kæbidʒ bi'fɔ: wi: hæv ðə swi:t."

couldn't = could
not

"Well, children, have you had enough to eat? What
"wel, tʃildrən, hæv ju: hæd i'nʌf tu i:t? hwɒt

shall we do now?" "Oh, daddy, couldn't we go to a
ʃæl wi: du: naʊ?" "ou, dædi, kʌdnt wi: ɡəʊ tu ə

cinema and see a picture? There is a very good picture
sinəmə ənd si: ə pɪktʃə? ðeər iz ə veri gud pɪktʃə

on at the 'Nelson Cinema'. It is an old picture with
ɒn æt ðə 'nelɪn sinəmə'. it iz ən ɔld pɪktʃə wið

Shirley Temple, who played in 'Wee Willie Winkie'.
ʃə:li templ, hu: pleid in 'wi: 'wili wiŋki:."

Mr. Smith: "It's your evening, and I want you to have
mɪstə smɪθ: "its juə i:vnɪŋ, ənd ai wɒnt ju: tə hæv

a good time, so let us go and see that picture. At what
ə gud taɪm, sɒ let ʌs ɡəʊ ənd si: ðæt pɪktʃə. æt hwɒt

time does it begin?" "It begins at half past seven."
taɪm dʌz it bi'ɡɪn?" "it bi'ɡɪnz æt ha:f pɑ:st sevən."



wee = little

it's = it is

"Then we must go now. Waiter, I want to pay the
"ðen wi: mʌst gou nau. waitə, ai wɒnt tə pei ðə

bill; how much is it, please?" "Twelve shillings and
bil; hau mʌtʃ iz it, pli:z?" "twelv ʃilɪŋz ənd

tenpence (12/10), sir." "Here you are — and
tenpəns (twelv ənd ten), sə:." "hiə ju: a: — ənd

one and sixpence for yourself." "Thank you, sir; shall
wʌn ənd siksɪpəns fɔ: juə'self." "θæŋk ju:, sə:; ʃəl

I get you a taxi?" "No, thank you, it's not very far;
ai get ju: ə tæksi?" "nou, θæŋk ju:, its nɒt veri fa:;

we'll walk."
wi:l wɔ:k."

He **pays**, he **paid**,
 he has **paid**.

At the Cinema.

Mr. Smith to the lady at the booking-office: "Three
mɪstə smɪθ tə ðə leɪdi æt ðə bukiŋɔfis: "pri:

tickets, please!" The lady: "Are the two children with
tɪkɪts, pli:z!" ðə leɪdi: "a: ðə tu: tʃɪldrən wɪð

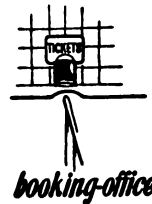
you, sir? Then you only have to pay half price for their
ju:, sə: ðen ju: ɒnli hæv tə pei ha:f praɪs fɔ: ðeə

tickets. Three shillings and sixpence (3/6)."
tɪkɪts. pri: ʃilɪŋz ənd siksɪpəns (pri: ənd sɪks)."

Mr. Smith paid for the tickets with a pound (£1) note.
mɪstə smɪθ peɪd fɔ: ðə tɪkɪts wɪð ə paʊnd nəʊt.

"Is it a good picture?" he asked when he picked up the
"ɪz ɪt ə gud pɪktʃə?" hi: ə:skt hwɛn hi: pɪkt ʌp ðə

coins which she gave him. "Yes, very good," she said.
kɔɪnz hwɪtʃ ʃi: geɪv hɪm. "jes, veri gud," ʃi: sed.



"All the children have been so happy to see it."

"ɔ:l ðə tʃildrən hæv bi:n sou hæpi tə si: it."

The children looked at the pictures on the walls near

ðə tʃildrən lukt æt ðə piktʃəz ɔn ðə wɔ:lz niə

the booking-office, and before they went into the cinema,

ðə bukiŋɔfis, ænd bi'fɔ: ðei went intə ðə sinəmə,

they went to the chocolate-shop to buy something with

ðei went tə ðə tʃɔkəlɪtʃɒp tə baɪ smʌŋiŋ wið

their shilling. "Two pieces of milk-chocolate, please,"

ðeə ʃiliŋ. "tu: pi:siz əv mi:lktʃɔkəlɪt, pli:z,"

John said and gave the coin to the lady. "Here is your

dʒɔn sed ænd geɪv ðə kɔɪn tə ðə leɪdi. "hiə iz juə

chocolate," she said, "that will be sixpence (6 d)."

tʃɔkəlɪt," ʃi: sed, "ðæt wil bi: sɪkspens."

They rode home in a taxi, and when they got home,

ðei rəʊd hoʊm in ə tæksi, ænd hwen ðei ɡɒt hoʊm,

John and Helen thanked their father for the good time

dʒɔn ænd helɪn θæŋkt ðeə fa:ðə fɔ: ðə ɡʊd taɪm

they had had. They said it was the best time that they

ðei hæd hæd. ðei sed it wəz ðə best taɪm ðæt ðei

had had for a long time, and that it was much better

hæd hæd fɔ: ə lɔŋ taɪm, ænd ðæt it wəz mʌtʃ betə

than to be with their mother at a birthday party for

ðæn tə bi: wið ðeə mʌðə æt ə bə:θdeɪ pɑ:ti fɔ:

ladies, who talked and talked all the evening. When

leɪdiz, hu: tɔ:kt ænd tɔ:kt ɔ:l ði i:vniŋ. hwen

they got home, Mrs. Smith had not yet come back from

ðei ɡɒt hoʊm, misɪz smɪθ hæd nɒt jət kʌm bæk frɒm

the party. So Mr. Smith told the children to go up
ðə pɑ:ti. sɒu mistə smiθ tould ðə tʃɪldrən tə ɡoʊ ʌp

to bed, and then he said: "Please ask Aunt Jane to
tə bed, ənd ðen hi: sed: "pli:z ə:sk ə:nt dʒein tə

come down. If you like, you can bring your night-
kʌm daʊn. ɪf ju: laɪk, ju: kæn briŋ juə naɪt-

clothes down and dress for the night in the warm room.
kləʊðz daʊn ənd dres fɔ: ðə naɪt ɪn ðə wɔ:m ru:m.

Aunt Jane and I will have a cup of tea now, and then
ə:nt dʒein ənd aɪ wɪl hæv ə kʌp əv ti: naʊ, ənd ðen

you can tell her where we have been, and what we have
ju: kæn tel hɜ: hwɛə wi: hæv bi:n, ənd hwɒt wi: hæv

seen. And then you can also give Aunt Jane this piece
si:n. ənd ðen ju: kæn ə:lsoʊ ɡɪv ə:nt dʒein ðɪs pi:s

of chocolate that I have bought for her because she has
əv tʃɒkəlɪt ðæt aɪ hæv bɔ:t fɔ: hɜ: bɪ'kɔz ʃi: hæz

looked after Baby to-night."

lʊkt ə:ftə beɪbi tə'naɪt."

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Smith and his children went to a — for dinner,
 and the children were very — to go. He told John
 that he should — Helen to put on her new green —.
 Later the father asked John if he had — Helen to do
 what he had said. Helen had — some ice-cream on her
 new frock, so that now there was a — on it. Aunt Jane
 was too old to — things up from the floor. She had to
 — the baby's doll to the bed with a piece of —. John
 had not tied his —. "Buy something good for —,"

WORDS:

restaurant
 dress
 happy
 drop
 spot
 pick up
 tie
 string
 shoe-lace
 ourselves
 yourselves

as
ride
rode
ridden
car
taxi
often
waiter
knew
mutton
cabbage
daddy
sweet
cinema
picture
wee
pay
paid
booking-office
ticket
note
coin
milk-chocolate
chocolate-shop
gone

Aunt Jane said, and the children answered, "We shall buy chocolate for —, and something good for Alice, too."

Mr. Smith called a taxi, — the children liked very much to ride in a —. They — for ten minutes in the —. If they had — in a tram, it would have taken them much longer. Mr. Smith came so — to the restaurant that the — knew his name. The meat of sheep is called —. With the mutton they got —, and for a sweet they — ice-cream. Another word for father in English is —. Where — Mr. Smith and his children go at half past seven? They went to the 'Nelson —' to see an old — with Shirley Temple. How much did they — for the tickets? They — three shillings and sixpence for the —. What did Mr. Smith pay the lady at the — with? He paid her with a pound —. What did the children buy in the — with their money? They bought two pieces of —.

EXERCISE B.

Where did Mr. Smith and his children dine? ... What dress did Helen put on? ... What had Helen dropped on her new dress? ... What did Aunt Jane take the spot away with? ... What had Baby done with her doll? ... Did Mr. Smith and his children walk to the restaurant? ... Why did the waiters know Mr. Smith? ... What did the father and his children have for dinner? ... Where did they go after dinner? ... What did Mr. Smith ask the lady at the booking-office? ... What did the children buy with their shilling? ... Did the children have a good time? ...

THE STUDY OF ENGLISH

One winter evening in a small European town, three
wʌn wɪntə iːvniŋ in ə smɔːl juərəˈpiən taʊn, θriː

young men came together in the home of one of their
jʌŋ men keɪm təˈɡeðə in ðə haʊm əv wʌn əv ðeə

old teachers. They had not been taught English at
əʊld tiːtʃəz. ðeɪ həd nɒt biːn təʊt ɪŋɡlɪʃ at

school, and in their work they had seen many times
skuːl, and in ðeə wəːk ðeɪ həd siːn meni taɪmz

that it would be a good thing for them to know some
ðət it wʊd biː ə ɡʊd þɪŋ fɔː ðəm tə nəʊ sʌm

English. So five months ago, they wrote a letter to
ɪŋɡlɪʃ. səʊ faɪv mʌnθs əˈɡəʊ, ðeɪ raʊt ə leɪtə tə

one of the teachers of their old school and asked him
wʌn əv ðə tiːtʃəz əv ðeə əʊld skuːl and ɑːskt hɪm

to teach them English. They knew that he had been to
tə tiːtʃ ðəm ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ðeɪ nəʊ ðət hiː həd biːn tu

England several times, and that he spoke the language
ɪŋɡlənd severəl taɪmz, and ðət hiː spəʊk ðə læŋɡwɪdʒ

well. He was glad to hear that they were interested
wel. hiː wəz ɡlæd tə hiə ðət ðeɪ wəː ɪntrɪstɪd

in English, and answered that he would like very much
ɪn ɪŋɡlɪʃ, and ɑːnsəd ðət hiː wʊd laɪk veri mʌtʃ

to teach them. They began their study of English
tə tiːtʃ ðəm. ðeɪ bɪˈɡæn ðeə stʌdi əv ɪŋɡlɪʃ

a European town
 = a town in
 Europe

He **teaches**,
 he **taught**,
 he has **taught**
 [tiːtʃɪz, təʊt, təʊt].

several times =
 more than one
 time

He **speaks**,
 he **spoke**,
 he has **spoken**
 [spiːks, spəʊk,
 spəʊkən].

Chapter Twenty-One (21).

twice = two times

were to come =
should come

once = one time



end of book

to be asleep =
to sleep

four months ago, and had come to the house of their
fɔ: mʌnθs ə'gou, and həd kʌm tə ðə haʊs əv ðeə

teacher several times every week, sometimes twice a
ti:tʃə sevrəl taimz evri wi:k, samtaimz twais ə

week and sometimes three times a week. If they were to
wi:k and samtaimz pri: taimz ə wi:k. if ðei wə: tə

come only once a week, it would take too long to learn
kʌm ounli wʌns ə wi:k, it wʊd teik tu: lɒŋ tə lə:n

English. They had read about the Smith family and
ɪŋglɪʃ. ðei həd red ə'baʊt ðə smɪθ fæmili and

were almost at the end of the book.

wə: ɔ:lmoʊst at ði end əv ðə bu:k.

Now the young men were in their teacher's sitting-room,
nau ðə jʌŋ men wə: in ðeə ti:tʃəz sitiŋrʊm,

ready to begin their studies. They were alone at first,
redi tə bi'ɡɪn ðeə stadi:z. ðei wə: ə'loun at fə:st,

but at ten minutes past eight their teacher came in.
bʌt at ten minits pɑ:st eit ðeə ti:tʃə keim in.

"Good evening, boys," he said when he came in; "I am
"ɡʊd i:vnɪŋ, bɔiz," hi: sed hwen hi: keim in; "ai əm

a little late to-night. I had to put my little son to bed,
ə litl leit tə'nait. ai həd tə put mai litl sʌn tə bed,

because my wife is not at home, and I had to wait
bi'kɔz mai waɪf ɪz nɒt at hoʊm, and ai həd tə weɪt

until he was asleep, or he would call all the time."
ʌn'tɪl hi: wəz ə'sli:p, ɔ: hi: wʊd kɔ:l ɔ:l ðə taim."

"I have never seen your son," said one of the young
"ai həv nevə si:n jɔ: sʌn," sed wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ

men; "couldn't we go and have a look at him?" "Yes,"
men; "kudnt wi: gou ənd həv ə luk ət him?" "jes,"

the teacher answered, "but we shall have to be quiet.
ðə ti:tʃər a:nsəd, "bət wi: ʃəl həv tə bi: kwaɪət.

If we make a noise, he will wake up from his sleep,
ɪf wi: meɪk ə noɪz, hi: wɪl weɪk ʌp frəm hɪz sli:p,

and then it will be a long time before he goes to sleep
ənd ðen ɪt wɪl bi: ə lɔŋ taɪm bɪ'fɔ: hi: gouz tə sli:p

again."

ə'geɪn."

So they went up into the bedroom to have a look at
sou ðei went ʌp ɪntə ðə bedrʊm tə həv ə luk ət

the sleeping child. "He is very quiet now, because
ðə sli:pɪŋ tʃaɪld. "hi: ɪz vɛri kwaɪət naʊ, bɪ'kɔ:z

he is sleeping," the teacher said when they came down
hi: ɪz sli:pɪŋ," ðə ti:tʃə sed hwen ðei keɪm daʊn

again, "but when he is awake, he makes a great noise
ə'geɪn, "bət hwen hi: ɪz ə'weɪk, hi: meɪks ə greɪt noɪz

all the time. I must go up now and then to see that
ɔ:l ðə taɪm. ɪ mʌst gou ʌp naʊ ənd ðen tə si: ðət

he is warm enough, because my wife says that he is
hi: ɪz wɔ:m ɪ'nʌf, bɪ'kɔ:z maɪ waɪf sez ðət hi: ɪz

beginning a cold. He is sleeping in our room to-night,
bɪ'gɪnɪŋ ə kəʊld. hi: ɪz sli:pɪŋ ɪn əʊə ru:m tə'naɪt,

but when he is well, he always sleeps in his own room...
bət hwen hi: ɪz wel, hi: ɔ:lweɪz sli:ps ɪn hɪz əʊn ru:m...

Well, let us go back to our studies. You know that
wel, let ʌs gou bæk tu əʊə stədɪz. ju: nəʊ ðət

He **wakes**,
 he **woke**,
 he has **waked**
 [weɪks, wʊk,
 weɪkt].

great = big

now and then =
 from time to time

The child **sleeps**
every night.
 The child **is**
sleeping now.

Chapter Twenty-One (21).

The girl has a smile on her face; she has a **smiling face**; she is **smiling now**. She **often smiles**.

parents always talk too much about their children," the
pɛərənts ɔ:lwəz tɔ:k tu: mʌtʃ ə'baʊt ðə tʃɪldrən," ðə

teacher said with a smile on his face. "Oh, that is all
ti:tʃə sed wið ə smaɪl ɔn hɪz feɪs. "ou, ðæt ɪz ɔ:l

right," one of the young men answered, smiling.
raɪt," wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ men a:nsəd, smaɪlɪŋ.

An hour later, they got to the end of the last exercise
ən aʊə leɪtə, ðeɪ gɒt tə ðɪ end əv ðə la:st ɛksəsaɪz

about the Smith family. They had given the answers
ə'baʊt ðə smɪθ fæmɪli. ðeɪ həd gɪvən ðɪ a:nsəz

to all the questions in the exercises except the last one,
tu ɔ:l ðə kwestʃənz ɪn ðɪ ɛksəsaɪzɪz ɪk'sept ðə la:st wʌn,

and now the teacher asked one of the young men the
ænd naʊ ðə ti:tʃər a:skt wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ men ðə

last question, "Did the children have a good time?"
la:st kwestʃən, "dɪd ðə tʃɪldrən hæv ə gud taɪm?"

The young man gave the answer: "Yes, they had the
ðə jʌŋ mæn geɪv ðɪ a:nsə: "jes, ðeɪ həd ðə

best time they had had for a long time." "That is
best taɪm ðeɪ həd həd fər ə lɔŋ taɪm." "ðæt ɪz

right," said the teacher, "and now I want to talk to
raɪt," sed ðə ti:tʃə, "ænd naʊ aɪ wʌnt tə tɔ:k tə

you about something new. You have learnt English
ju: ə'baʊt sʌmɪŋ nju:. ju: hæv lə:nt ɪŋglɪʃ

now for four months, and you already know many
naʊ fə fɔ: mʌnθs, ænd ju: ɔ:l'redi naʊ menɪ

words. Sometimes we speak English together, but from
wə:dz. sʌmtaɪmz wi: spi:k ɪŋglɪʃ tə'geðə, bʌt frəm

He learns, he learned, he has learned = he learns, he learnt, he has learnt
[lə:nz, lə:nt, lə:nt].

now on I want you to speak English always when we
nau ɔn ai wɔnt ju: tə spi:k ɪŋglɪʃ ɔ:l wəz hwen wi:

do our study work. How do you like that idea?" "It
du: auə stʌdi wə:k. hau du: ju: laɪk ðæt aɪ'diə?" "it

is a good idea, and I like it very much," one of the young
ɪz ə gud aɪ'diə, ənd ai laɪk ɪt veri mʌtʃ," wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ

men answered, and the others also said that the idea
mən a:nsəd, ənd ði ʌðəz ɔ:l sou sed ðæt ði aɪ'diə

was good. "It would be a good idea to begin now,
wəz gud. "it wud bi: ə gud aɪ'diə tə bi'ɡɪn nau,

to-night," the teacher said. "I will try to put the
tə'nait," ðə ti:tʃə sed. "ai wɪl traɪ tə put ðə

words together in such a way that you will be able to
wə:dz tə'ɡedə ɪn sʌtʃ ə wei ðæt ju: wɪl bi: eɪbl tu

understand the new words, and if you do not understand
ʌndə'stænd ðə nju: wə:dz, ənd ɪf ju: du: nɒt ʌndə'stænd

what a word means, just ask me what the meaning of
hwɒt ə wə:d mi:nz, dʒʌst ɑ:sk mi: hwɒt ðə mi:nɪŋ əv

it is, and I will explain it to you in some other way,
ɪt ɪz, ənd ai wɪl ɪks'pleɪn ɪt tə ju: ɪn sʌm ʌðə wei,

speaking English all the time. — Did you understand
spi:kiŋ ɪŋglɪʃ ɔ:l ðə taɪm. — dɪd ju: ʌndə'stænd

everything I said now?" "Yes, we understood every
evrɪθɪŋ ai sed nau?" "jes, wi: ʌndə'stʌd evri

word, also the new words."

wə:d, ɔ:l sou ðə nju: wə:dz."

One of the young men: "I have a good idea! It would
wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ mən: "ai hæv ə gud aɪ'diə! ɪt wud

He **understands**,
 he **understood**,
 he has **understood**
 [ʌndə'stændz,
 ʌndə'stʌd,
 ʌndə'stʌd].

It **means**, it **meant**,
 it has **meant**
 [mi:nz, ment, ment].

He **feels**, he **felt**,
he has **felt**
[fi:lz, felt, felt].

be much better to use English names when we speak
bi: mʌtʃ bətə tə ju:z ɪŋɡlɪʃ neɪmz hwen wi: spi:k

English." "Yes," the teacher answered; "the English
ɪŋɡlɪʃ." "jes," ðə ti:tʃər ɑ:nsəd; "ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

word for my name would be Miller, and your name
wə:d fə mai neɪm wud bi: mɪlə, ænd jɔ: neɪm

would be Brown." "Tell us the English words for our
wud bi: braʊn." "tel ʌs ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ wə:dz fər əʊə

names, too," the other young men asked the teacher.
neɪmz, tu:," ði ʌðə jʌŋ men ɑ:skt ðə ti:tʃə.

"Your name," he said to one of them, "would be Storm,
"jɔ: neɪm," hi: sed tə wʌn əv ðəm, "wud bi: stɔ:m,

and your name," he said to the other, "would be Wood.
ænd jɔ: neɪm," hi: sed tə ði ʌðə, "wud bi: wud.

It is a good idea; from to-night we will all be English
ɪt ɪz ə guɪd aɪ'dɪə; frəm tə'nait wi: wɪl ɔ:l bi: ɪŋɡlɪʃ

people twice a week." "I am already beginning to feel
pi:pl twaɪs ə wi:k." "aɪ əm ɔ:l'redɪ bɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ tə fi:l

very English," Brown said. "Well, the name is not
veri ɪŋɡlɪʃ," braʊn sed. "wel, ðə neɪm ɪz nɒt

enough for me to feel English," said Wood; "I shall
ɪ'nʌf fə mi: tə fi:l ɪŋɡlɪʃ," sed wud; "aɪ ʃəl

have to hear my new name several times before I can
hæv tə hiə mai nju: neɪm severəl taɪmz bɪ'fɔ: aɪ kən

remember who Mr. Wood is. I am writing it down in
rɪ'membə hu: mɪstə wud ɪz. aɪ əm raɪtɪŋ ɪt daʊn ɪn

my book now to remember my new name. What is it,
maɪ bu:k naʊ tə rɪ'membə maɪ nju: neɪm. hwɒt ɪz ɪt,

Storm, why are you so quiet?" "I am just trying to
stɔ:m, hwai a: ju: sou kwaiət? "ai əm dʒʌst traɪɪŋ tə

remember my new name, too." "When you have heard
ri'membə mai nju: neim, tu:. "hwen ju: həv hə:d

it three or four times, you will not forget it," said
it pri: ɔ: fɔ: taimz, ju: wil nɒt fə'get it," sed

Mr. Miller.

mɪstə mɪlə.

"You have forgotten that you have been asked to look
"ju: həv fə'gɒtn ðət ju: həv bi:n a:skt tə luk

after the boy, Mr. Miller; he is calling you now," said
a:ftə ðə bɔɪ, mɪstə mɪlə; hi: ɪz kɔ:lɪŋ ju: nau," sed

Brown. "Oh, and my wife is coming in through the
braun. "ou, ənd mai waɪf ɪz kʌmɪŋ ɪn pru: ðə

garden now; what will she say when she finds the boy
ɡɑ:dn nau; hwɒt wil ʃi: sei hwen ʃi: faɪndz ðə bɔɪ

awake? I shall have to explain to her that we had
ə'weɪk? ai ʃəl həv tu ɪks'pleɪn tə hə: ðət wi: həd

so much to talk about to-night that we forgot him.
sou mʌtʃ tə tɔ:k ə'baut tə'nait ðət wi: fə'gɒt him.

I hope he will go to sleep again and have a good sleep
ai hoʊp hi: wil ɡoʊ tə sli:p ə'geɪn ənd həv ə ɡud sli:p

all night. Last night he woke up three times."

ɔ:l nait. lɑ:st nait hi: wəʊk ʌp pri: taimz."

"I want to ask you a question," Storm said to the others
"ai wɒnt tu a:sk ju: ə kwestʃən," stɔ:m sed tə ði ʌðəz

when the teacher had gone up to the boy. "What does
hwen ðə ti:tʃə həd ɡɒn ʌp tə ðə bɔɪ. "hwɒt dʌz

He **forgets**, he
forgot, he has
forgotten [fə'gets,
 fə'gɒt, fə'gɒtn].

the word 'explain' mean? I did not like to ask the
ðə wə:d 'iks'plein' mi:n? ai did nɒt laik tu a:sk ðə
 teacher about it, because I could see that you two
ti:tfər ə'baut it, bi'kɒz ai kʊd si: ðæt ju: tu:
 understood it." "Yes, I understood it," Wood answered;
ʌndə'stud it." "jes, ai ʌndə'stud it," wʊd a:nsəd;
 "it means to give the meaning of something, or to tell
"it mi:nz tə giv ðə mi:niŋ əv smɒpiŋ, ɔ: tə tel
 why something is done, or how it is done." "Oh yes;
hwaɪ smɒpiŋ iz dʌn, ɔ: haʊ it iz dʌn." "ou jes;
 when you say it in this way, I understand what it
hwen ju: sei it in ðis wei, ai ʌndə'stænd hwɒt it
 means. Thank you!"
mi:nz. ʔæŋk ju:!"

When Mr. Miller came down again, he said to the young
hwen mistə milə keɪn daʊn ə'geɪn, hi: sed tə ðə jʌŋ
 men, "I hope you will have a cup of coffee with us.
men, "ai haʊp ju: wɪl hæv ə kʌp əv kɒfi wɪð ʌs.
 My wife has already made the coffee and is now putting
maɪ waɪf hæz ɔ:l'redi meɪd ðə kɒfi ənd iz naʊ pʊtiŋ
 the cups on the table. She will be interested to hear
ðə kʌps ɔn ðə teɪbl. ʃi: wɪl bi: ɪntrɪstɪd tə hiə
 you speak English, because she has been to England
ju: spi:k ɪŋglɪʃ, bi'kɒz ʃi: hæz bi:n tu ɪŋɡlənd
 with me several times and speaks the language very
wɪð mi: sevrəl taɪmz ənd spi:ks ðə læŋɡwɪdʒ veri
 well." "I don't feel hungry," said Wood; "but I would
wel." "ai daʊnt fi:l haŋɡri," sed wʊd; "bʌt ai wʊd

like a cup of coffee and a talk with your wife about the
laik ə kʌp əv kɔfi ænd ə tɔ:k wið jɔ: waif ə'baʊt ðə

language we are all so interested in."
læŋgwɪdʒ wi: a: ɔ:l sou intrɪstɪd ɪn."

EXERCISE A.

The three young men — to their old teacher five months — and asked him to — them English. The teacher had been to England — times and was very much interested in English. His wife was also — in English.

The teacher said it would be a good — for them to speak English together when they did their — work. Would they be able to — the new words? Yes, the teacher would put the words together in such a — that they would understand the — of all the words. If there should be a word now and — that they did not understand, the teacher would — the meaning of it in English.

Could Mr. Wood — his new name? No, he said that he would — it if he did not write it down in his book. Had Mr. Miller remembered that he had been asked to — after his boy? No, he had — it. Was the teacher's boy — when he was awake? No, he always made a great — when he was —; he was only quiet when he was —. Did Wood — hungry? No, but he would — to have a cup of coffee.

WORDS:

European
 teach
 taught
 several
 interested
 very much
 twice
 once
 end
 at first
 asleep
 quiet
 noise
 wake
 woke
 waked
 awake
 great
 now and then
 smile
 smile (verb)
 exercise
 already
 idea
 understand
 understood
 meant

meaning
explain
feel
felt
remember
forget
forgot
forgotten
study
look
way
question
answer
spoke
spoken
sleep
learnt
speak —
 speaking
call —
 calling
sleep —
 sleeping
try — trying
begin —
 beginning
put — putting
smile —
 smiling
come —
 coming
write —
 writing
Miller
Brown
Storm
Wood

EXERCISE B.

What did the young men write to their teacher? ...
When did they write to him? ... What did he answer them? ... Why were they interested in English? ...
How many times a week did they come to their teacher's house for study? ... What idea did the teacher get? ...
Who got the idea that they should use English names? ... Did they feel that they could remember their new names? ... Did Storm understand everything the teacher said to them in English? ... What did he do to get the meaning of the word 'explain'? ... Did the teacher's boy wake up that evening? ... Was the teacher's wife at home when they were at their studies? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'where'.

Where is London? Answer ... New question ...? Paris is in France. Where is John? Answer ... Question ...? Helen is at school. Where were John and Helen when their mother called them? Answer ... Question ...? Daisy's husband was on the first floor when the guests came. Where does the Smith family live? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith's brother lives in the country. Where do the Swedes live? Answer ... Question ...? The Norwegians live in Norway. Where did George and John go with their skates? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith went to a restaurant with the children. Where did they go after they had dined at the restaurant? Answer ... Question ...? After they had been to the cinema, they went home. Where did Mrs. Smith get twelve pounds to buy a new frock? Answer ... Question ...? They got their shilling from their Aunt Jane.

A GOOD IDEA

Our three young friends have come to their teacher's
auə ʒri: ʒɒŋ frendz həv kʌm tə ðeə ti:tʃəz

house again to learn English. They have been working
haʊs ə'geɪn tə lə:n ɪŋglɪʃ. ðeɪ həv bi:n wə:kɪŋ

at their studies for an hour and are now having a cup
ət ðeə stʌdiz fər ən aʊə ənd a: naʊ hæviŋ ə kʌp
 of coffee.
əv kɔ:fi.

Brown: "Mr. Miller, this evening when I was walking
braʊn: "mɪstə mɪlə, ðɪs i:vniŋ hwen aɪ wəz wɔ:kɪŋ

home from work, I thought of the idea you told us
həʊm frəm wə:k, aɪ ʒɔ:t əv ðɪ aɪ'dɪə ju: təʊld əs

about the other evening, to speak nothing but English
ə'baʊt ðɪ ʌðə i:vniŋ, tə spi:k nʌθɪŋ bʌt ɪŋglɪʃ

but (here) =
except

when we are together. I said to myself that when
hwen wi: a: tə'geðə. aɪ sed tə maɪ'self ðæt hwen

the four of us have talked English for some time, it
ðə fɔ:r əv əs həv tɔ:kt ɪŋglɪʃ fə sʌm taɪm, ɪt

would be a good thing to try to talk to some English
wʊd bi: ə gʊd ʒɪŋ tə traɪ tə tɔ:k tə sʌm ɪŋglɪʃ

people. 'But where do you find English people to talk
pi:pl. 'bʌt hwɛə du: ju: faɪnd ɪŋglɪʃ pi:pl tə tɔ:k

to?' I asked myself. I couldn't think of an answer to
tu?' aɪ ɑ:skt maɪ'self. aɪ kʊdnt ʒɪŋk əv ən ɑ:nsə tə

that question at once; but when I was sitting at supper,
ðæt kwestʃən æt wʌns; bʌt hwen ai wəz sitiŋ æt sʌpə,

I thought of this idea, 'Why not make a trip to England?
ai þɔ:t əv ðis ai'diə, 'hwaɪ nɒt meɪk ə tri:p tu ɪŋɡlənd?

Then there would be enough English people to talk to!
ðen ðeə wʊd bi: i'nʌf ɪŋɡlɪʃ pi:pl tə tɔ:k tu!

What do you think of that idea?"
hwɒt du: ju: þɪŋk əv ðæt ai'diə?"

Mr. Miller: "I think it would be a very good idea if
mɪstə mɪlə: "ai þɪŋk ɪt wʊd bi: ə veri ɡʊd ai'diə ɪf

you could all make a trip to England together." Storm:
ju: kʊd ɔ:l meɪk ə tri:p tu ɪŋɡlənd tə'geðə." stɔ:m:

"I have another question to ask you, Mr. Miller. Do you
"ai hæv ə'nʌðə kwestʃən tu ɑ:sk ju:, mɪstə mɪlə. du: ju:

think that you could come with us yourself?" Wood:
þɪŋk ðæt ju: kʊd kʌm wɪð ʌs ʃɔ:'self?" wʊd:

"Yes, you know England and the English so well; but
"jes, ju: nəʊ ɪŋɡlənd ənd ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ səʊ wel; bʌt

perhaps you do not want to go to England again,
pə'hæps ju: du: nɒt wɒnt tə ɡəʊ tu ɪŋɡlənd ə'geɪn,

because you have been there so many times already?"
bɪ'kɔ:z ju: hæv bi:n ðeə səʊ meni taɪmz ɔ:l'redi?"

Mr. Miller: "Perhaps, and perhaps not. I shall have
mɪstə mɪlə: "pə'hæps, ənd pə'hæps nɒt. ai ʃəl hæv

to think more about it. You know I have a wife and
tə þɪŋk mɔ:r ə'baut ɪt. ju: nəʊ ai hæv ə waɪf ənd

a child to think of! But you have no wives to think of
ə tʃaɪld tə þɪŋk ɒv! bʌt ju: hæv nəʊ waɪvz tə þɪŋk ɒv

one wife,
 two wives

yet. As you said yourself, Wood, I have made many
jet. əz ju: sed jɔ:'self, wud, ai hæv meid meni

trips to England, so there are few places where I have
trips tu ɪŋɡlənd, sou ðeər a: fju: pleisiz hwɛər ai hæv

not been before, but, on the other hand, it is several
nɒt bi:n bi'fɔ:, bʌt, ɔn ði ʌðə hænd, it iz severəl

years since I was there last time, and since then many
jiəz sins ai wəz ðeə la:st taim, and sins ðen meni

things have changed, that is, they are not the same
þɪŋz hæv tʃeɪndʒd, ðæt iz, ðei a: nɒt ðə seɪm

now as they were then. You know that most people
nau əz ðei wə: ðen. ju: nou ðæt mʌst pi:pl

think that the English are very conservative, that is,
þɪŋk ðæt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ a: veri kən'sə:vətɪv, ðæt iz,

they like old ideas better than modern ones, and are
ðei laɪk ould aɪ'diəz betə ðən mɒdən wʌnz, and a:

not glad to change things. I do not think that people
nɒt glæd tə tʃeɪndʒ þɪŋz. aɪ du: nɒt þɪŋk ðæt pi:pl

are right in this. The English of to-day are not the
a: raɪt ɪn ðɪs. ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ əv tə'deɪ a: nɒt ðə

same as the English of some years ago, so there will
seɪm əz ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ əv sʌm jiəz ə'ɡəʊ, sou ðeə wɪl

also be new things for me to learn on another trip to
ɔ:lsoʊ bi:nju: þɪŋz fə mi: tə lə:n ɔn ə'nʌðə trɪp tu

England. I must say that of all the foreign countries
ɪŋɡlənd. aɪ mʌst seɪ ðæt əv ɔ:l ðə fɔrɪn kʌntrɪz

I have seen, I have found England the most interesting."
ai hæv si:n, ai hæv faʊnd ɪŋɡlənd ðə mʌst ɪn'trɪstɪŋ."

few = not many

one
ones

Do you like an old
house better than
a modern **one**?

Do you like old
ideas better than
modern **ones**?

He **spends**,
he **spent**,
he has **spent**
[spendz, spent, spent].

like = the same as



world

the whole world
= all the world

Storm: "I have never been to a foreign country before;
stɔ:m: "ai hæv nevə bi:n tu ə fɔrɪn kəntri bɪ'fɔ:;

I have spent all my holidays in our own country. The
ai hæv spent ɔ:l mai hɒlɪdɪz ɪn aʊər oun kəntri. ðə

last five years I have spent my summer-holidays with
la:st faɪv jɪəz ai hæv spent mai sʌmə'hɒlɪdɪz wɪð

my parents in the country, where they have a small
mai peərənts ɪn ðə kəntri, hwɛə ðeɪ hæv ə smɔ:l

house near a lake. But it would be a good thing to
haʊs niər ə leɪk. bʌt ɪt wʊd bi: ə gʊd ɪŋ tə

try something new this year. Of all foreign countries
traɪ sʌm'ɪŋ nju: ðɪs jɪə. əv ɔ:l fɔrɪn kəntrɪz

I am most interested in England, just like you, Mr.
ai əm maʊst ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ɪŋɡlənd, dʒʌst laɪk ju:, mɪstə

Miller. If we make the trip, we must visit the British
mɪlə. ɪf wi: meɪk ðə trɪp, wi: mʌst vɪzɪt ðə brɪtɪʃ

Museum one of the first days we are in London. It
mju:'ziəm wʌn əv ðə fə:st deɪz wi: a: ɪn lʌndən. ɪt

is one of the greatest museums, not only in Europe,
ɪz wʌn əv ðə greɪtɪst mju:'ziəmz, nɒt ounli ɪn jʊərəp,

but in the whole world. I have seen a picture of the
bʌt ɪn ðə haʊl wɜ:ld. ai hæv si:n ə pɪktʃər əv ðə

museum, and I know that inside it there are so many
mju:'ziəm, ənd ai nəʊ ðæt ɪn'saɪd ɪt ðɛər a: sʌu meni

things which we must see. I should like to spend
ɪŋz hwɪtʃ wi: mʌst si:. ai ʃʊd laɪk tə spend

several hours there every day."
sevrəl aʊəz ðɛə evri deɪ."

Mr. Miller: "And you can. I know a hotel in the same
mistə milə: "ænd ju: kæn. ai nou ə hou'tel in ðə seim

part of the town as the British Museum. I have always
pɑ:t əv ðə taun əz ðə britiʃ mju'ziəm. ai həv ɔ:lwəz

lived there when I have been in London. It is a good
livd ðeə hwen ai həv bi:n in lʌndən. it iz ə gud

hotel, and cheap, too, so if we go, I think we will live
hou'tel, ənd tʃi:p, tu:, sou if wi: gou, ai þɪŋk wi: wil liv

there as long as we are in London. Then you can
ðeə əz lɔŋ əz wi: a: in lʌndən. ðen ju: kæn

visit the British Museum as often as you like, Storm.
vizit ðə britiʃ mju'ziəm əz ɔ:fn əz ju: laik, stɔ:m.

It is only a few minutes' walk from the hotel. The
it iz ounli ə fju: minits wɔ:k frəm ðə hou'tel. ðə

first seven or eight days we could spend in London
fə:st sevn ɔ:r eit deiz wi: kud spend in lʌndən

itself. There are many things to be seen in a big town
it'self. ðeər a: meni þɪŋz tə bi: si:n in ə big taun

like London, so that a week would not be too much
laik lʌndən, sou ðət ə wi:k wud nɒt bi: tu: mʌtʃ

for us to spend in London itself. Then we could visit
fər ʌs tə spend in lʌndən it'self. ðen wi: kud vizit

some places just outside London, where the Thames
səm pleisiz dʒʌst 'aʊt'said lʌndən, hweə ðə temz

is not the same dirty river as in the town itself. I
iz nɒt ðə seim də:ti rɪvə əz in ðə taun it'self. ai

often spent a whole day on the river Thames in summer
ɔ:fn spent ə houl dei ɔn ðə rɪvə temz in sʌmə





steamer

think
am thinking
thought
was thinking
have thought
have been
thinking

I think of a trip
to England **now**
and then.

I am thinking of a
trip to England
now.

I thought of a trip
to England
yesterday.

I was thinking of
a trip to England
when he came into
the room.

I have thought of
a trip to England
many times.

I have just been
thinking of a trip
to England.

that
those

I like that house.
I like those houses.

my grandparents
= my parents'
parents

my grandmother
= the mother of
one of my parents

my grandfather =
the father of one
of my parents

when the weather was fine. There are small steamers
hwen ðə weðə wəz faɪn. ðeər a: smɔ:l sti:məz

to take you from place to place. It is not very far
tə teɪk ju: frəm pleɪs tə pleɪs. ɪt ɪz nɒt veri fa:

from our hotel to the river, so that we could go down
frəm ʌʊə hɒtəl tə ðə rɪvə, sɒ ðət wi: kʊd ɡəʊ daʊn

there one day and look at the steamers."

ðeə wʌn deɪ ənd lʊk ət ðə sti:məz."

Mrs. Miller: "I think the idea you have been talking
misɪz mɪlə: "aɪ θɪŋk ðɪ aɪ'dɪə ju: hæv bi:n tɔ:kiŋ

about just now is a very good one. I should like to
ə'baʊt dʒʌst naʊ ɪz ə veri ɡʊd wʌn. aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə

go with you on the trip to England, but I can't. We
ɡəʊ wɪð ju: ɔn ðə trɪp tu ɪŋɡlənd, bʌt aɪ kɑ:nt. wi:

can't take the boy on a trip like that, he is too small;
kɑ:nt teɪk ðə bɔɪ ɔn ə trɪp laɪk ðæt, hi: ɪz tu: smɔ:l;

just think of him on a steamer! He and I will spend
dʒʌst θɪŋk əv hɪm ɔn ə sti:mə! hi: ənd aɪ wɪl spend

those few weeks with my parents; they will be only
ðəʊz fju: wi:kz wɪð maɪ peərənts; ðeɪ wɪl bi: ɒnli

too glad to have us. You know what grandparents
tu: ɡlæd tə hæv ʌs. ju: nəʊ hʌʊt ɡrændpeərənts

are like — they always think that their grandchildren
a: laɪk — ðeɪ ɔ:lweɪz θɪŋk ðæt ðeə ɡrændtʃɪldrən

are the best in the whole world. The boy's grand-
a: ðə best ɪn ðə həʊl wə:ld. ðə bɔɪz ɡrænd-

mother lets him do everything he wants to, and his
mʌðə lets hɪm du: evrɪθɪŋ hi: wɒnts tu, ənd hɪz

grandfather buys so many things for him to play with
grændfa:ðə baiz sou meni þiŋz fə him tə plei wið

that I don't know what to do with them. It will be
ðæt ai dount nou hwɔt tə du: wið ðəm. it wil bi:

so good for the boy to be at a farm in the country;
sou gud fə ðə bɔi tə bi: ət ə fa:m in ðə kʌntri;

he can play outside in the sun all day, and we shall
hi: kən plei 'aʊt'said in ðə sʌn ɔ:l dei, ənd wi: ʃəl

both have a good time."
bəʊþ hæv ə gud taim."

Mr. Miller: "Well, if you feel like that, my dear, I shall
mɪstə milə: "wel, if ju: fi:l laɪk ðæt, maɪ diə, ai ʃəl

be glad to go. It would be good to see old England
bi: glæd tə ɡoʊ. it wʊd bi: gud tə si: ould ɪŋɡlənd

again with these young men." Storm: "We are glad
ə'ɡeɪn wið ði:z jʌŋ men." stɔ:m: "wi: a: glæd

to hear that. Well, boys, it's time to go home, I think.
tə hiə ðæt. wel, bɔiz, ɪts taim tə ɡoʊ hoʊm, ai þɪŋk.

Oh, it's cold outside, and look — there is snow falling!
oʊ, ɪts kəʊld 'aʊt'said, ənd lʊk — ðeə ɪz snəʊ fɔ:lɪŋ!

One doesn't think of that when it is so warm inside."
wʌn dʌznt þɪŋk əv ðæt hwɛn ɪt ɪz soʊ wɔ:m 'ɪn'said."

EXERCISE A.

What did Brown — of when he was walking home from
 work? He was thinking that it would be a good —
 to try to find some English people to — to. Later

WORDS:
 trip
 perhaps
 few

since
change
conservative
modern
foreign
spend
spent
like
visit
British
hotel
place
outside
Thames
river
steamer
world
inside
grandparents
grandfather
grandmother
grandchild
interesting
walk
whole
museum
just
ones
but
work —
 working
walk —
 walking
fall — falling
talk — talking
sit — sitting
have — having

in the evening he — of the idea that they could all make a — to England. The others — that this was a very good idea. Mr. Miller has been to most — in England; there are — places that he has not seen. But it is several years — he was there, and many things have — since then. The English are not so — as many people think. Many people go to — countries in their holidays, but Storm has — all his holidays in his own country.

The — at which Mr. Miller has lived in London is near the British Museum, so that the young men can — it as often as they —. A week is not too much to spend in a big town — London.

EXERCISE B.

What was Brown doing when he thought of a trip to England? ... What did Mr. Miller think of the idea? ... When was Mr. Miller in England last? ... Are the English very conservative? ... Which of the foreign countries he has visited has Mr. Miller found the most interesting? ... How many days will they spend in London itself? ... What will they visit after the first week? ... What is the name of the museum in London that is one of the biggest in the world? ... Who lives at the farm that Mrs. Miller will go to when her husband goes to England? ... Are the boy's grandparents kind to him? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'how'.

How many children are there in the Smith family?

Answer ... New question ...? There are twenty-four hours in a day and a night. How old is Mr. Smith? Answer ... Question ...? Mrs. Smith was twenty-five years old when she got her watch. How far is it from the farm to the lake? Answer ... Question ...? It is two hours in a car from the farm to the city. How long does Mr. Smith work every day? Answer ... Question ...? Most English children go to school for ten years. How much did Mrs. Smith pay for her new frock? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith gave his wife twelve pounds. How often does Mr. Smith visit his brother in the country? Answer ... Question ...? The children go to school five days a week.

MAKING PLANS

The next time the young men were together to study
ðə nekst taim ðə jʌŋ men wə: tə'geðə tə stʌdi

English, they had much to talk about. All of them had
ɪŋglɪʃ, ðei hæd mʌtʃ tə tɔ:k ə'baut. ɔ:l əv ðəm hæd

been thinking about the trip and making plans. They
bi:n ʔɪŋkiŋ ə'baut ðə tri:p ənd meikiŋ plænz. ðei

had talked to their families about it and asked people
hæd tɔ:kt tə ðeə fæmiliz ə'baut it ənd ɑ:skt pi:pl

who had visited England about the best time to go there.
hu: hæd vɪzɪtɪd ɪŋɡlənd ə'baut ðə best taim tə ɡoʊ ðeə.

Their families were very much interested in the plans,
ðeə fæmiliz wə: veri mʌtʃ ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðə plænz,

but thought that the young men would not be able to
bʌt ʔɔ:t ðət ðə jʌŋ men wʊd nɒt bi: eɪbl tə

learn to speak English well enough before they were
lə:n tə spi:k ɪŋglɪʃ wel ɪ'nʌf bi'fɔ: ðei wə:

to go. Storm told the others that his brother smiled
tə ɡoʊ. stɔ:m təʊld ði ʌðəz ðət hɪz brʌðə smɑɪld

when he spoke about the trip, as if he thought that
hwen hi: spəʊk ə'baut ðə tri:p, əz ɪf hi: ʔɔ:t ðət

they would not be able to make it. “Well, wait and
ðei wʊd nɒt bi: eɪbl tə meɪk ɪt. “wel, wəɪt ənd

start = begin

see,’ I tell him,” Storm said, smiling; “when we start
si:,’ ai tel him,” stɔ:m sed, smaɪlɪŋ; “hwen wi: stɑ:t

on our trip, and you must stay at home because you
ɔn auə tri:p, ənd ju: mʌst steɪ ət haʊm bi'kɔ: ju:

don't speak English, I shall be the one to smile.' And
dəʊnt spi:k ɪŋɡlɪʃ, aɪ ʃəl bi: ðə wʌn tə smaɪl.' ənd

I think that when he sees us start on our trip next
aɪ θɪŋk ðæt hwen hi: si:z ʌs stɑ:t ɔn auə tri:p nekst

summer, you will have him as a pupil in the autumn,
sʌmə, ju: wɪl hæv hɪm əz ə pju:pl ɪn ðɪ ɔ:təm,

Mr. Miller!"

mɪstə mɪlə!"

Mr. Miller was very glad to hear that his three pupils
mɪstə mɪlə wəz veri glæd tə hiə ðæt hɪz θri: pju:plz

felt that they would be able to learn enough. "I hope
felt ðæt ðeɪ wʊd bi: eɪbl tə lə:n ɪ'nʌf. "aɪ haʊp

you know that you must do much work before the
ju: nəʊ ðæt ju: mʌst du: mʌtʃ wə:k bi'fɔ: ðə

summer-holidays. When we make our plans and talk
sʌmə'hɒlɪdɪz. hwen wi: meɪk auə plænz ənd tɔ:k

about all the things that we are going to do, you will
ə'baʊt ɔ:l ðə θɪŋz ðæt wi: ɑ: ɡəʊɪŋ tə du:, ju: wɪl

learn many words that you are going to use on the
lə:n meni wə:dz ðæt ju: ɑ: ɡəʊɪŋ tə ju:z ɔn ðə

trip. So the more we talk about it, the better you
tri:p. səʊ ðə mɔ: wi: tɔ:k ə'baʊt ɪt, ðə betə ju:

will be able to make yourselves understood on the trip
wɪl bi: eɪbl tə meɪk jɔ:'selvz ʌndə'stʊd ɔn ðə tri:p

itself," said Mr. Miller. "First we must decide when
ɪt'self," seɪd mɪstə mɪlə. "fə:st wi: mʌst dɪ'saɪd hwen

I am the one to smile = I am he who can smile.

I am going to do something = I shall do something.

the ... the
 The more we do, the better it is.

upon = on



manager

we want to go, and you three will have to decide how
wi: wɔnt tə gou, ənd ju: ʔri: wil hæv tə dɪ'saɪd hau
 long we are going to stay in England. My holidays are
lɔŋ wi: a: ɡoʊɪŋ tə steɪ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd. maɪ hɒlɪdɪz a:
 two months, and I can stay there the whole summer,
tu: mʌnθs, ənd aɪ kæn steɪ ðeə ðə haʊl sʌmə,
 if I want to, so you must decide that part of it your-
ɪf aɪ wɔnt tu, su: ju: mʌst dɪ'saɪd ðæt pɑ:t əv ɪt ʔɔ:-
 selves.”
'selvz.”

“That depends upon how long our holidays are,” said
“ðæt dɪ'pendz ə'pɔn hau lɔŋ ʌwə hɒlɪdɪz a:,” sed
 Storm. “I have two weeks; how much have you?” he
stɔ:m. “aɪ hæv tu: wi:ks; hau mʌtʃ hæv ju:?” hi:
 asked the others. Brown also had two weeks, but Wood
a:skt ði ʌðəz. braʊn ɔ:lsoʊ həd tu: wi:ks, bʌt wʊd
 said, “I don’t know whether I shall have two weeks or
sed, “aɪ daʊnt nəʊ hwedə aɪ ʃəl hæv tu: wi:ks ɔ:
 not, for I have not worked a whole year for my new
nɒt, fər aɪ hæv nɒt wə:kt ə haʊl jɪə fə maɪ nju:
 firm, you know. It all depends upon the manager of
fə:m, ju: nəʊ. ɪt ɔ:l dɪ'pendz ə'pɔn ðə mænɪdʒər əv
 the firm. I will ask him whether I can have two
ðə fə:m. aɪ wɪl ʌ:sk hɪm hwedə aɪ kæn hæv tu:
 weeks, which I think he will give me when he hears
wi:ks, hwɪtʃ aɪ ʔɪŋk hi: wɪl ɡɪv mi: hwɛn hi: hɪəz
 that we are planning to go to England. I will ask the
ðæt wi: a: plænɪŋ tə ɡoʊ tu ɪŋɡlənd. aɪ wɪl ʌ:sk ðə

manager to-morrow whether I can have that or not.”
mænɪdʒə tə'mɔ:rou hwedə ai kən hæv ðæt ɔ: nɒt.

“Good,” said Mr. Miller; “we know that we shall have
“gud,” sed mɪstə mɪlə; “wi: nou ðæt wi: ʃəl hæv

at least twelve days for the trip, and perhaps two weeks.
æt li:st twelv deɪz fə ðə trɪp, ʌnd pə'hæps tu: wi:ks.

Now we must decide on the time for the trip. As you
nau wi: mʌst di'saɪd ɒn ðə taɪm fə ðə trɪp. əz ju:

know, I have been to England at different times of the
nou, ai hæv bi:n tu ɪŋɡlənd ət dɪfrənt taɪmz əv ðə

year, so it is not difficult for me to tell you which of the
jɪə, sou ɪt ɪz nɒt dɪfɪkəlt fə mi: tə tel ju: hwɪtʃ əv ðə

different holiday months will be best. June is often
dɪfrənt hɒlɪdi mʌnθs wɪl bi: best. dʒu:n ɪz ɔ:fən

a lovely month in England, a very beautiful month,
ə lʌvli mʌnθ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd, ə veri bju:təfʊl mʌnθ,

but you can never be sure that the weather will be
bʌt ju: kən nevə bi: ʃʊə ðæt ðə wedə wɪl bi:

good. July is often a very dry month; it is the month
ɡʊd. dʒʊ'lai ɪz ɔ:fən ə veri draɪ mʌnθ; ɪt ɪz ðə mʌnθ

that has the least rain. I was there for four weeks
ðæt hæz ðə li:st reɪn. ai wəz ðeə fə fɔ: wi:ks

in July once and had only half an hour's rain, but then
ɪn dʒʊ'lai wʌns ʌnd hæd ɒnli ha:f ən aʊəz reɪn, bʌt ðen

that was less rain than they had had for years in that
ðæt wəz les reɪn ðən ðeɪ hæd hæd fə jɪəz ɪn ðæt

month. I am sure that July would be the best month.
mʌnθ. ai əm ʃʊə ðæt dʒʊ'lai wʊd bi: ðə best mʌnθ.

little
less
least

lovely = beautiful



rain

Chapter Twenty-Three (23).

He **leaves**, he **left**,
he has **left** [li:vz,
left, left].

some
any?
not any

We shall see **some**
football.

Is there **any** foot-
ball this week?

We shall **not** see
any football.

In August it is too hot to be in London. The school
in ɔ:gəst it iz tu: hɒt tə bi: in lʌndən. ðə sku:l

holidays are in August, and every one who is able to
hɒlɪdɪz a: in ɔ:gəst, ənd evri wʌn hu: iz eɪbl tə

leave London in August goes away. Many of my
li:v lʌndən in ɔ:gəst ɡəʊz ə'wei. meni əv maɪ

friends that I should like to see again will have left
frendz ðæt aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə si: ə'geɪn wɪl hæv left

London if we go there in that month."

lʌndən ɪf wi: ɡəʊ ðəə ɪn ðæt mʌnθ."

Brown: "I should like to see some English football. Do
braʊn: "aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə si: sʌm ɪŋɡlɪʃ fʊtbɔ:l. du:

you think there will be any football in July?" "No,
ju: ɪŋk ðəə wɪl bi: enɪ fʊtbɔ:l ɪn dʒʊ'laɪ?" "nəʊ,

you will not see any football if we go in July; the
ju: wɪl nɒt si: enɪ fʊtbɔ:l ɪf wi: ɡəʊ ɪn dʒʊ'laɪ; ðə

football season does not begin until September. Perhaps
fʊtbɔ:l si:zn dʌz nɒt bɪ'ɡɪn ʌn'tɪl sɛp'tembə. pə'hæps

you think it would be better to go in September, then?"
ju: ɪŋk ɪt wʊd bi: betə tə ɡəʊ ɪn sɛp'tembə, ðen?"

"What is the weather like in September?" "Oh, some-
"hʌt ɪz ðə weðə laɪk ɪn sɛp'tembə?" "əʊ, sʌm-

times it is very good, but you can't be sure. There is
taɪmz ɪt ɪz veri ɡʊd, bʌt ju: kɑ:n't bi: ʃʊə. ðəər ɪz

often very much rain in September, and the evenings
ɔ:fən veri mʌtʃ reɪn ɪn sɛp'tembə, ənd ðɪ i:vniŋz

are so short." "Well, then I think that July will be
a: səʊ ʃɔ:t." "wel, ðen aɪ ɪŋk ðæt dʒʊ'laɪ wɪl bi:

the best month. I don't want to go in September,"
ðə best mʌnθ. aɪ daʊnt wɒnt tə ɡoʊ ɪn sɛp'tembə,

Brown said with a smile, "just to see football. I can
braʊn sed wɪð ə smaɪl, "dʒʌst tə si: fʊtbɔ:l. aɪ kən

see English football when the English football players
si: ɪŋɡlɪʃ fʊtbɔ:l hwen ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ fʊtbɔ:l pleɪəz

come to our country to play." "Well, have we decided
kʌm tu əʊə kʌntri tə pleɪ." "wel, hæv wi: dɪ'saɪdɪd

to go in July, then?" asked Mr. Miller. "Yes," Wood
tə ɡoʊ ɪn dʒʊ'lai, ðen?" ɑ:skt mɪstə mɪlə. "jes," wʊd

answered, "we can at least decide upon July as the
ɑ:nsəd, "wi: kən ət li:st dɪ'saɪd ə'pɒn dʒʊ'lai əz ðə

best month to go in; then it depends upon whether
best mʌnθ tə ɡoʊ ɪn; ðen ɪt dɪ'pendz ə'pɒn hwedə

we can all get our holidays in July. But let us leave
wi: kən ɔ:l ɡet əʊə hɒlɪdɪz ɪn dʒʊ'lai. bʌt let ʌs li:v

that question now. We can talk about that later; it
ðæt kwestʃən naʊ. wi: kən tɔ:k ə'baut ðæt leɪtə; ɪt

is difficult for our managers to decide now when we
ɪz dɪfɪkəlt fɔr əʊə mænɪdʒəz tə dɪ'saɪd naʊ hwen wi:

are to have our holidays this year."
ɑ: tə hæv əʊə hɒlɪdɪz ðɪs jɪə."

are to have = shall have

"Well, boys," said Mr. Miller, "before we leave, you
"wel, bɔɪz," sed mɪstə mɪlə, "bɪ'fɔ: wi: li:v, ju:

have got at least six months in which to learn the
hæv ɡɒt ət li:st sɪks mʌnθs ɪn hwɪtʃ tə lɜ:n ðə

different words that you will need on the trip. To-night
dɪfrənt wə:dz ðæt ju: wɪl ni:d ɒn ðə trɪp. tə'nait

Chapter Twenty-Three (23).

Let me see some books, please = be kind enough to let me see some books!

order = ask for

I will talk to you about what to say when you go
ai wil tɔ:k tə ju: ə'baut hwət tə sei hwen ju: gou

into a shop to buy something that you need. What
intu ə ʃɒp tə bai sʌmpɪŋ ðət ju: ni:d. hwət

do you say when you want to buy a book, Wood?"
du: ju: sei hwen ju: wɒnt tə bai ə bu:k, wud?"

Wood: "I think I should say: I want to buy a book; let
wud: "ai ɪŋk ai ʃud sei: ai wɒnt tə bai ə bu:k; let

me look at some."

mi: luk æt sʌm."

Mr. Miller: "Yes, you could say that. But you could
mɪstə mɪlə: "jes, ju: kud sei ðət. bʌt ju: kud

have put in a word which the English use very much,
hæv put ɪn ə wɔ:d hwɪtʃ ði ɪŋglɪʃ ju:z veri mʌtʃ,

that is 'please'. Very often, you need only give the
ðət ɪz 'pli:z'. veri ɔ:fən, ju: ni:d ɔunli gɪv ðə

name of the thing you want and put the word 'please'
neɪm əv ðə ɪŋ ju: wɒnt ænd put ðə wɔ:d 'pli:z'

after it. That is enough. But don't forget the word
ɑ:ftər ɪt. ðət ɪz ɪ'nʌf. bʌt daʊnt fə'get ðə wɔ:d

'please' when you want to ask for something. Now
'pli:z' hwen ju: wɒnt tu ɑ:sk fə sʌmpɪŋ. naʊ

let me hear you buy cinema tickets for us, Brown!"
let mi: hiə ju: bai sɪnɪmə tɪkɪts fər ʌs, braʊn!"

Brown: "Four tickets for eight o'clock, please!"
braʊn: "fɔ: tɪkɪts fər eɪt ə'klɒk, pli:z!"

"Right! And will you call the waiter and order our
"raɪt! ænd wil ju: kɔ:l ðə weɪtə ænd ɔ:də ʌsə

dinner, Storm?" Storm: "Waiter! Four vegetable soups,
dinə, stɔ:m?" *stɔ:m:* "weɪtə! fɔ: vedʒɪtəbl su:ps,
 please!"
pli:z!"

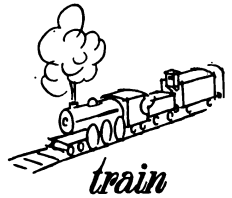
"Yes, that is right. I think you can do that now; it
"jes, ðæt iz rait. ai ɪŋk ju: kən du: ðæt nau; it
 is not very difficult. We will also talk about how to
iz nɒt veri dɪfɪkəlt. wi: wil ɔ:lsoʊ tɔ:k ə'baʊt haʊ tə
 go to London. Part of the trip we shall go by water,
gou tə lʌndən. pɑ:t əv ðə trɪp wi: ʃəl gou bai wɔ:tə,
 and part of the trip we shall go by land. When we
ænd pɑ:t əv ðə trɪp wi: ʃəl gou bai lænd. hwen wi:
 travel by land, we shall go in a train, and on the part
trævl bai lænd, wi: ʃəl gou in ə treɪn, ænd ɒn ðə pɑ:t

of our trip when we travel by water, we shall go in
əv əʊə trɪp hwen wi: trævl bai wɔ:tə, wi: ʃəl gou in
 a steamer. Did any of you ever travel by train?"
ə sti:mə. dɪd eni əv ju: evə trævl bai treɪn?"

"Oh yes, we have all done that," they answered.
"ou jes, wi: həv ɔ:l dʌn ðæt," ðei ɑ:nsəd.

"But I never travelled much by steamer," one of them
"bʌt ai nevə trævld mʌtʃ bai sti:mə," wʌn əv ðəm

said. "I have only made very short trips of about
sed. "ai həv ounli meɪd veri ʃɔ:t trɪps əv ə'baʊt
 twenty minutes, so it will be the first time that I shall
twenti mɪnɪts, soʊ ɪt wɪl bi: ðə fə:st taɪm ðæt ai ʃəl
 ever try a long trip by water."
evə traɪ ə lɒŋ trɪp bai wɔ:tə."



I travel, I tra-
 velled, I have tra-
 velled.

WORDS:

study (verb)
stay
start
pupil
going to
decide
depend
whether
firm
manager
plan
plan (verb)
at least
different
lovely
sure
less
least
rain
every one
leave
left
any
player
play
difficult
land
travel
train
ever
need
upon
the ... the
order
about

EXERCISE A.

Storm's brother will have to — at home when they — on their trip, because he cannot — English; and then Storm will be the — to smile. The three young men must — how long they are — to stay in England, because their teacher can stay the — summer, if he — to. Which of the — holiday months is the best to — London? July is the best month; it has the — rain, and people have not — London yet. If they go in August, Mr. Miller cannot be — that he will find — of his friends in London. What is the shortest way to say that you want to — socks, for example? The shortest way is to say, "A pair of socks, —!" In what way were the teacher and his three pupils going to — to England? They were going to travel part of the trip by — and part by —. Had the young men — travelled by steamer before? Yes, but one of them had — been on a trip of more than twenty minutes.

EXERCISE B.

What does Storm's brother do when Storm speaks about the trip? ... Why do the young men's families think that they will not be able to learn enough English before they start on the trip? ... Which will be the one to smile when they start on their trip, Storm or his brother? ... In which month did they decide to make the trip? ... Did Wood know whether he would get two weeks' holidays? ... Has Wood worked for the manager of his firm for a whole year yet? ... Can they be sure

that the weather will be good in July? ... In which month do most people leave London for their holidays? ... Is there any football in England in July? ... Could the young men's managers decide at once when they could have their holidays? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'how'.

How do we go in and out of houses? Answer ...
Question ...? John sometimes goes through the window.
How do we get from the ground floor to the second floor? Answer ... Question ...? The children walk to school. How did Mrs. Smith get her friend Daisy's letter? Answer ... Question ...? The children bought the chocolate at the chocolate-shop. How are the three young men and their teacher going to get to England? Answer ... Question ...? By land they are going to travel in a train. How did Storm know that Mr. Miller's son was awake? Answer ... Question ...? He knew that the best time to go was July, because he had visited England at different times of the year. How did Mr. Smith take the baby to the lake? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith took the children to the restaurant in a taxi.

GETTING MONEY FOR THE TRIP

“Well, have you made any plans for our trip?” Mr.
“wel, hæv ju: meid eni plænz fər auə trip?” mistə

Miller asked the boys on their next English evening.
milə a:skt ðə bɔiz ɒn ðeə nekst ɪŋglɪʃ i:vniŋ.

“Oh yes, we have made many, and we have something
“ou jes, wi: hæv meid meni, ənd wi: hæv sʌmþiŋ

good to tell you; Wood’s manager will let him have
ɡud tə tel ju:; wudz mænɪdʒə wil let him hæv

two weeks’ holidays this summer. We have been
tu: wi:ks hɒlɪdeɪz ðɪs sʌmə. wi: hæv bi:n

thinking of how much the trip will cost, and we have
þɪŋkiŋ əv haʊ mʌtʃ ðə trip wil kɒst, ənd wi: hæv

also asked about the tickets. We know how much it
ə:lsoʊ a:skt ə'baʊt ðə ti:kɪts. wi: nəʊ haʊ mʌtʃ ɪt

will cost us to go to England and back, but we do not
wil kɒst ʌs tə ɡəʊ tu ɪŋɡlənd ənd bæk, bʌt wi: du: nɒt

know how much it will cost to stay for two weeks in
nəʊ haʊ mʌtʃ ɪt wil kɒst tə steɪ fər tu: wi:ks ɪn

England. Could you tell us about that, Mr. Miller?”
ɪŋɡlənd. kʊd ju: tel ʌs ə'baʊt ðæt, mistə milə?”

“Yes, two weeks in London at a hotel that is both good
“jes, tu: wi:ks ɪn lʌndən ət ə haʊ'tel ðæt ɪz bəʊp ɡʊd

and cheap will cost about fifteen pounds for each. Have
ənd tʃi:p wil kɒst ə'baʊt fi:f ti:n paʊndz fər i:tʃ. hæv

you got so much money?"

ju: ɡɒt sou mʌtʃ mʌni?"

Wood: "Fifteen pounds! That is much. I haven't got

wud: "fifti:n paundz! ðæt iz mʌtʃ. ai hævnt ɡɒt

so much money." Brown: "I think we shall all have

sou mʌtʃ mʌni." braun: "ai þɪŋk wi: ʃəl ɔ:l hæv

to try to earn some extra money, for we have very

tə traɪ tu ə:n sʌm ɛkstrə mʌni, fə wi: hæv veri

little, I am afraid."

lɪtl, ai əm ə'freɪd."

Storm: "When I spoke to the manager at the office

stɔ:m: "hwen ai spəʊk tə ðə mænɪdʒə ət ði ɔfɪs

about our trip to London, he was very interested. He

ə'baut əʊə trɪp tə lʌndən, hi: wəz veri ɪntrɪstɪd. hi:

said that the firm would be glad to have a young man

sed ðæt ðə fə:m wud bi: glæd tə hæv ə jʌŋ mæn

in the office who knew something about the English

ɪn ði ɔfɪs hu: nju: sʌmpɪŋ ə'baut ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

and England. He said that such a man would always

ænd ɪŋɡlənd. hi: sed ðæt sʌtʃ ə mæn wud ɔ:lweɪz

be of great use to a big firm, and he gave me to under-

bi: əv greɪt ju:s tu ə bɪɡ fə:m, ænd hi: geɪv mi: tu ʌndə-

stand that the firm would give me some of the money

'stænd ðæt ðə fə:m wud ɡɪv mi: sʌm əv ðə mʌni

for the trip. So I do not think that I shall need to

fə ðə trɪp. sou ai du: nɒt þɪŋk ðæt ai ʃəl ni:d tu

earn extra money for the trip."

ə:n ɛkstrə mʌni fə ðə trɪp."

haven't = have
not



office

The idea is used
by the manager =
the manager uses
the idea.



next to nothing =
almost nothing

Brown: "It must be a fine thing to work for a firm like
braun: "it mʌst bi: ə faɪn ʃɪŋ tə wə:k fər ə fə:m laɪk
that. But I will tell you something about the book-shop
ðæt. bʌt aɪ wɪl tel ju: sʌmʃɪŋ ə'baʊt ðə bu:kʃɒp
where I work. If one of us gets a good idea for the
hwɛər aɪ wə:k. ɪf wʌn əv ʌs gets ə gʊd aɪ'diə fər ðə
shop, and it is used by the manager, we are paid well
ʃɒp, ənd ɪz ju:zd baɪ ðə mænɪdʒə, wi: a: peɪd wel
for it. And I have an idea! It is just the right time
fər ɪt. ənd aɪ hæv ən aɪ'diə! ɪz dʒʌst ðə raɪt taɪm
now to speak to him about it. I will tell you all about
nəʊ tə spi:k tə hɪm ə'baʊt ɪt. aɪ wɪl tel ju: ɔ:l ə'baʊt
it; then you can tell me what you think of it. Perhaps
ɪt; ðen ju: kən tel mi: hwɒt ju: ʃɪŋk əv ɪt. pə'hæps
you know that some book-shops have a library. There
ju: nəʊ ðæt sʌm bu:kʃɒps hæv ə laɪbrəri. ðeər
are many people who would like to read, but they
a: meni pi:pl hu: wʊd laɪk tə ri:d, bʌt ðeɪ
cannot afford to buy many books, because the prices
kənɒt ə'fɔ:d tə baɪ meni buks, bi'kɔz ðə praɪsɪz
are so high. But at a library, they can borrow books
a: sɒʊ haɪ. bʌt ət ə laɪbrəri, ðeɪ kən bɔ:rəʊ buks
for next to nothing, and after they have read the books,
fə nekst tə nʌʃɪŋ, ənd a:ftə ðeɪ hæv red ðə buks,
they bring them back again. At the back of the shop
ðeɪ brɪŋ ðəm bæk ə'geɪn. ət ðə bæk əv ðə ʃɒp
we have a small extra room, which could be made into
wɪ: hæv ə smɔ:l ɛkstrə ru:m, hwɪtʃ kʊd bi: meɪd ɪntu

a library where people could read for a short time to
a laibrəri hwɛə pi:pl kud ri:d fər ə ʃɔ:t taim tə

see what books they want to borrow. In this way,
si: hwɔt buks ðei wɔnt tə bɒrou. in ðis wei,

many people who cannot afford to buy the books they
meni pi:pl hu: kænɔt ə'fɔ:d tə baɪ ðə buks ðei

would like to read, can get all the books they want
wud laɪk tə ri:d, kən get ɔ:l ðə buks ðei wɔnt

without paying very much, but we should get some
wɪð'aʊt peɪɪŋ veri mʌʃ, bʌt wi: ʃʊd get sʌm

money out of it. Besides, when people come in to
ˌmʌni aʊt əv ɪt. bi'saɪdz, hwɛn pi:pl kʌm in tə

borrow books, they would also see all the other things
bɒrou buks, ðei wud ɔ:lsoʊ si: ɔ:l ði ʌðə ɪŋz

we have in the shop, so that perhaps we could sell
wi: hæv in ðə ʃɒp, sʊ ðæt pə'hæps wi: kud sel

them some of these things, too. There are four other
ðəm 'sʌm əv ði:z ɪŋz, tu:. ðɛər a: fɔ:r ʌðə

book-shops in our street; but this idea has not been
bʊkʃɒps in ʌʊə stri:t; bʌt ðɪs aɪ'diə həz nɒt bi:n

tried by any of them. And it would be a good thing
traɪd baɪ ɛni ɔv ðəm. ʌnd ɪt wud bi: ə gud ɪŋ

for us to be the first shop to take it up."
fər ʌs tə bi: ðə fə:st ʃɒp tə teɪk ɪt ʌp."

Mr. Miller: "That is a very good idea! I am sure that
mɪstə mɪlə: "ðæt ɪz ə veri gud aɪ'diə! aɪ əm ʃʊə ðæt

it will be a good thing for your shop. And you would
ɪt wɪl bi: ə gud ɪŋ fə ʃɔ: ʃɒp. ʌnd ju: wud



street

The idea has not
 been tried **by**
 them = they have
 not tried the idea.

Chapter Twenty-Four (24).

He **sells**, he **sold**,
he has **sold** [*selz*,
sould, *sould*].

sell more books, too, because people would learn to
sel mɔ: buks, tu:, bi'kɔz pi:pl wud lə:n tə

read good books, and that would bring more people to
ri:d gud buks, ənd ðæt wud briŋ mɔ: pi:pl tə

the shop to buy them."

ðə ʃɒp tə baɪ ðəm."

Brown: "Yes, and I would write letters to the people

braʊn: "jes, 'ənd aɪ wud raɪt letəz tə ðə pi:pl

who live in our part of the town to tell them about

hu: liv in əʊə pɑ:t əv ðə taʊn tə tel ðəm ə'baʊt

new books and to invite them to read books in this

nju: buks ənd tu in'vaɪt ðəm tə ri:d buks in ðɪs

cheap way.

I will take this idea to the manager

tʃi:p wei. aɪ wɪl teɪk ðɪs aɪ'dɪə tə ðə mænɪdʒə

to-morrow. I am sure he will use the idea, and then

tə'mɔ:ru. aɪ əm suə hi: wɪl ju:z ðɪ aɪ'dɪə, ənd ðen

I shall be able to afford the trip, because he always

aɪ ʃəl bi: eɪbl tu ə'fɔ:d ðə tri:p, bi'kɔz hi: ɔ:lweɪz

pays well. My manager is a man of modern ideas;

peɪz wel. maɪ mænɪdʒər ɪz ə mæn əv mɔ:dən aɪ'dɪəz;

he is always looking for something new, and he is not

hi: ɪz ɔ:lweɪz lʊkɪŋ fə səmʃɪŋ nju:, ənd hi: ɪz nɒt

afraid to try something very modern if he thinks it

ə'freɪd tə traɪ səmʃɪŋ veri mɔ:dən ɪf hi: ʃɪŋks ɪt

will bring more business to the shop. I think that he

wɪl briŋ mɔ: bɪznɪs tə ðə ʃɒp. aɪ ʃɪŋk ðæt hi:

is a very clever business man, the cleverest I know.

ɪz ə veri klevə bɪznɪs mæn, ðə klevərist aɪ nou.

He always knows the right thing to do to sell more.

hi: ɔ:lwəz nouz ðə rait þɪŋ tə du: tə sel mɔ:.

The managers of the other shops in our street are not

ðə mænɪdʒəz əv ði ʌðə ʃɒps ɪn əʊə stri:t a: nɒt

half so clever as he is, and when their shops are almost

ha:f sou klevə əz hi: ɪz, ənd hwen ðeə ʃɒps a: ɔ:lmoust

empty, our shop is almost full of customers, and we are

empti, əʊə ʃɒp ɪz ɔ:lmoust ful əv kʌstəməz, ənd wi: a:

always busy all day. Sometimes we are so busy that

ɔ:lwəz bɪzi ɔ:l dei. sʌmtaɪmz wi: a: sou bɪzi ðət

we cannot find time to have our lunch, because there

wɪ: kənɒt faɪnd taɪm tə hæv əʊə lʌnʃ, bi'kɔ:z ðeər

are customers coming in all the time so that our shop

a: kʌstəməz kʌmɪŋ ɪn ɔ:l ðə taɪm sou ðət əʊə ʃɒp

is never empty. I hope I shall be just as clever a

ɪz nevər empti. aɪ hoʊp aɪ ʃəl bi: dʒʌst əz klevər ə

business man when I get older, but I am afraid there

bɪznɪs mæn hwen aɪ ɡet ouldə, bʌt aɪ əm ə'freɪd ðeər

are many things for me to learn first."

a: meni þɪŋz fə mi: tə lə:n fə:st."

Mr. Miller: "It is a good thing to work for such a clever

mɪstə mɪlə: "ɪt ɪz ə gud þɪŋ tə wə:k fə sʌtʃ ə klevə

business man, for you can learn much from him and

bɪznɪs mæn, fə ju: kən lə:n mʌtʃ frəm hɪm ənd

get cleverer yourself. Well, how about you, Wood?

ɡet klevərə ʤɔ:'self. wel, haʊ ə'baʊt ju:, wʊd?

You have been so quiet all the evening. What is

ju: hæv bi:n sou kwaɪət ɔ:l ði i:vɪnɪŋ. hwɒt ɪz

customers =
people who want
to buy something
in a shop

wrong?" Wood: "I have been thinking that perhaps
rɔŋ?" *wud:* "ai həv bi:n piŋkiŋ ðət pə'hæps

I shall have to stay at home. There is no way for me
ai ʃəl həv tə stei ət haʊm. ðeər iz nou wei fə mi:

to earn extra money at our office, and, besides, there
tu ə:n ekstrə mʌni ət auər ɔfis, ənd, bi'saidz, ðeər

is so much work to do there, that it would be diffi-
iz sou mʌtʃ wə:k tə du: ðeə, ðət it wud bi: difi-

cult for me to take any other work in the evenings.
kʌlt fə mi: tə teik eni ʌðə wə:k ɪn ði i:vniŋz.

I don't know how to get the money. I don't like to
ai daʊnt nou haʊ tə get ðə mʌni. ai daʊnt laik tə

borrow it, because my salary is not very high, and it
bɔraʊ it, bi'kɔz mai sæləri iz nɒt veri hai, ənd it

would be difficult for me when the money had to be
wud bi: difikʌlt fə mi: hwen ðə mʌni hæd tə bi:

paid back. I think my salary is too low for all the
peɪd bæk. ai piŋk mai sæləri iz tu: laʊ fər ɔ:l ðə

work I do."

wə:k ai du:."

Brown: "Why don't you ask your manager for a rise
braʊn: "hwaɪ daʊnt ju: ɑ:sk jɔ: mænɪdʒə fər ə raɪz

of salary, then?" "Oh, I couldn't do that. I haven't
əv sæləri, ðen?" "əʊ, ai kʊdn̩t du: ðæt. ai hævnt

been there for a year yet, and, besides, I have just
bi:n ðeə fər ə jɪə jət, ənd, bi'saidz, ai həv dʒʌst

asked him for longer holidays." Brown: "You can at
ɑ:skt him fə lɔŋgə hɒlɪdɪz." braʊn: "ju: kæn ət

least try. If you cannot earn the money you need in
li:st trai. if ju: kænɒt ə:n ðə mʌni ju: ni:d in

some other way, you must try. Go to him to-morrow
sʌm ʌðə wei, ju: mʌst trai. ɡoʊ tə him tə'mɒrəʊ

and ask for a rise; tell him how much work you do, and
ænd ə:sk fəʀ ə raiz; tel him haʊ mʌtʃ wə:k ju: du:, ænd

what you are going to spend the money on." Wood:
hwɒt ju: ə: ɡoʊɪŋ tə spend ðə mʌni ɒn." wʊd:

to spend money =
to pay out money

"Well, I don't like to ask for a rise, but I will try. If
"wel, ai daʊnt laɪk tu ə:sk fəʀ ə raiz, bʌt ai wɪl trai. if

I can't earn a higher salary, I don't see where I shall
ai kɑ:nt ə:n ə haɪə sæləri, ai daʊnt si: hwɛər ai ʃəl

get the money from. I am not full of ideas like Brown;
get ðə mʌni frɒm. ai əm nɒt fʊl ɒv aɪ'diəz laɪk braʊn;

my head is empty."
maɪ hed ɪz ɛmti."

Mr. Miller: "Don't let us talk any more of it to-night.
mɪstə mɪlə: "daʊnt let ʌs tɔ:k ɛni mɔ:r əv ɪt tə'naɪt.

It is getting late now, I am afraid, and, besides, my wife
ɪt ɪz ɡetɪŋ leɪt naʊ, ai əm ə'freɪd, ænd, bɪ'saɪdz, maɪ waɪf

is already waiting with the coffee. Next time we shall
ɪz ɔ:l'reɪdi weɪtɪŋ wɪð ðə kɒfi. nekst taɪm wi: ʃəl

know whether you will be able to afford to go or not,
naʊ hwedə ju: wɪl bi: eɪbl tu ə'fɔ:d tə ɡoʊ ɔ: nɒt,

and then we will speak more about our plans."
ænd ðen wi: wɪl spi:k mɔ:r ə'baut ʌʊə plænz."

Mrs. Miller: "Please come and have coffee. A cup of
mɪsɪz mɪlə: "pli:z kʌm ænd hæv kɒfi. ə kʌp əv

hot coffee will do you good, now that you have to go
hɔt kɔfi wil du: ju: gud, nau ðæt ju: hæv tə gou

out into the cold night." "Yes, thank you very much,"
aut intə ðə kould naɪt. "jes, þæŋk ju: veri mʌtʃ,"

the young men answered.

ðə jʌŋ men a:nsəd.

Brown: "Hot coffee is a very good thing on a cold
braʊn: "hɔt kɔfi ɪz ə veri gud þɪŋ ɔn ə kould

night, and we should all like very much to speak English
naɪt, ənd wi: ʃud ɔ:l laɪk veri mʌtʃ tə spi:k ɪŋglɪʃ

with you for a few minutes, Mrs. Miller. We know from
wɪð ju: fər ə fju: mɪnɪts, mɪsɪz mɪlə. wi: nou frəm

your husband that you speak English well, and that
jɔ: hʌzbənd ðæt ju: spi:k ɪŋglɪʃ wel, ənd ðæt

you like that language as much as we do." Mrs. Miller:
ju: laɪk ðæt læŋgwɪdʒ əz mʌtʃ əz wi: du:." mɪsɪz mɪlə:

"Yes, my husband and I like English so well that we
"jes, maɪ hʌzbənd ənd aɪ laɪk ɪŋglɪʃ sou wel ðæt wi:

often use it when we are alone together."

ɔ:fən ju:z ɪt hwen wi: ɑ: ə'loun tə'geðə."

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:

earn
 extra
 office
 use
 library

The three friends would try to — some extra money.
 Many people like to read, but they cannot — to buy
 all the books which they want to —. So they borrow
 the books in a —, where they can get them for — —
 nothing. There were five book-shops in the — where

Brown's — had his shop, and Brown thought that he was the — business man he knew. Mr. Miller thought that Brown's new idea would bring more — to the shop. Did they have many — in the shop? Yes, sometimes the shop was so — of customers that they had no time to have their —. Did Wood have a high —? No, but he would try to ask for a — of salary the next day. Why was he not glad to ask for a —? Because he had just asked the manager for longer —.

afford
borrow
sell
sold
street
afraid
business
clever
business man
empty
full
customer
busy
get
salary
besides
rise
by

EXERCISE B.

What did Mr. Miller ask the young men on the next English evening? ... How much would it cost for each to stay two weeks in London? ... How would they get the money? ... Was Storm's manager interested in his trip to England? ... Why would Storm not need to earn extra money for the trip? ... What would Brown do to earn some extra money? ... Where could Brown's manager have his library? ... What would Brown do to let people know about the library? ... Why would it be difficult for Wood to take any other work in the evenings? ... Did he think that his salary was high enough? ... What did Brown tell him to do to get more money? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'when'.

When is summer? Answer ... Question ...? Winter

is in the months of December, January, and February. When are John and Helen at school? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith is at his office from nine till five. When will John be fourteen years old? Answer ... Question ...? Helen will be thirteen years old in three years. When do the Smith family have their summer-holidays? Answer ... Question ...? In London the school holidays are in August. When did the three young men begin their study of English? Answer ... Question ...? John began to go to school seven years ago. When did Mr. Smith take his children to the cinema? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith took his children out for a walk to the lake when the weather was fine. When are you going to England? Answer ... Question ...? I am going to town to-morrow. When did Mrs. Smith come home from the birthday party? Answer ... Question ...? George came home very late from the lake.

GOOD NEWS

"You look very happy to-night, boys," said Mr. Miller

"ju: luk veri hæpi tə'nait, bɔɪz," sed mistə mila

a few evenings later when they were together again;

ə fju: iːvniŋz leɪtə hwen ðei wə: tə'geðər ə'geɪn;

"you must have something good to tell me." "Yes,

"ju: mast hæv sʌmpɪŋ gud tə tel mi:." "jes,

I, at least, have good news," Storm answered; "my

ai, ət li:st, hæv gud nju:z," stɔ:m a:nsəd; "mai

manager said yesterday that he would pay the whole

mænidʒə sed jestədi ðət hi: wud pei ðə houl

trip for me. Isn't that good news? I had hoped that he

trip fɔ: mi:. ɪznt ðæt gud nju:z? ai həd həʊpt ðət hi:

would pay part of it; but it is very kind of him to

wud pei pɑ:t əv ɪt; bʌt ɪt ɪz veri kaɪnd əv hɪm tə

pay all of it, I think."

pei ɔ:l əv ɪt, ai ɪŋk."

"And I have good news, too," said Brown. "My manager

"ænd ai hæv gud nju:z, tu:," sed braʊn. "mai mænidʒə

thought that my idea about the library was very good.

θɔ:t ðət mai aɪ'diə ə'baut ðə laɪbrəri wəz veri gud.

I am going to begin to work at it at once. I am going

ai əm ɡəʊɪŋ tə bɪ'ɡɪn tə wɜ:k ət ɪt ət wʌns. ai əm ɡəʊɪŋ

to write all the letters myself and make all the plans,

tə raɪt ɔ:l ðə letəz maɪ'self ænd meɪk ɔ:l ðə plænz,

He **shows**, he **showed**, he has **shown** [ʃəʊz, ʃəʊd, ʃəʊn].

I think of going
= I think to go

too, so it is a good chance for me to show what I can do.
tu:, sou it iz ə gud tʃɑ:ns fə mi: tə ʃəʊ hʌwt aɪ kən du:.

It is the first time I have had such a chance, and it is
it iz ðə fɜ:st taim aɪ hæv həd sʌtʃ ə tʃɑ:ns, ənd it iz

a very good chance for a young man like myself; so
ə veri gud tʃɑ:ns fə ə jʌŋ mæn laɪk maɪ'self; sou

you will understand that I am happy. I showed him
ju: wɪl ʌndə'stænd ðæt aɪ əm hæpi. aɪ ʃəʊd hɪm

some of the letters I had written, and he said they
sʌm əv ðə letəz aɪ həd rɪtn, ənd hi: sed ðei

were very good. And now I come to the best part of
wə: veri gud. ənd naʊ aɪ kʌm tə ðə best pɑ:t əv

my news. The manager is so sure that the idea is good
maɪ nju:z. ðə mænɪdʒər iz sou ʃʊə ðæt ði aɪ'diə iz gud

that he is going to give me a month's extra pay. Is that
ðæt hi: iz ɡəʊɪŋ tə ɡɪv mi: ə mʌnθs ɛkstrə peɪ. iz ðæt

good news or not, I ask you?"
ɡud nju:z ɔ: nɒt, aɪ ɑ:sk ju:?"

Mr. Miller: "Yes, that is very good news. And even
mɪstə mɪlə: "jes, ðæt iz veri gud nju:z. ənd i:vən

Wood looks happy to-night."
wʊd lʊks hæpi tə'nait."

Wood: "Yes, I have some good news, too. You know
wʊd: "jes, aɪ hæv sʌm gud nju:z, tu:. ju: nəʊ

I didn't like to ask for a rise, and yesterday I was
aɪ dɪdn't laɪk tu ɑ:sk fə ə raɪz, ənd jɛstədi aɪ wəz

thinking all day of going to my manager, but I hadn't
pɪŋkɪŋ ɔ:l ðei əv ɡəʊɪŋ tə maɪ mænɪdʒə, bʌt aɪ hədnt

the courage; I was afraid of asking him. Once I tried
ðə kʌrɪdʒ; ai wəz ə'freɪd əv ɑːskiŋ hɪm. wʌnz ai traɪd

afraid of asking =
 afraid to ask

to take courage and had even got as far as the door,
tə teɪk kʌrɪdʒ ənd həd iːvən ɡɒt əz fɑːr əz ðə dɔː,

when the manager called one of the young ladies into
hwɛn ðə mænɪdʒə kɔːld wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ leɪdɪz ɪntə

his office, and I had to wait again. But later in the
hɪz ɒfɪs, ənd ai həd tə weɪt ə'geɪn. bʌt leɪtər ɪn ðə

day he called me in, as there was something he wanted
deɪ hiː kɔːld miː ɪn, əz ðeə wəz smʌŋhɪŋ hiː wɒntɪd

to speak to me about. He had been watching my work
tə spiːk tə miː ə'baut. hiː həd biːn wɒtʃɪŋ maɪ wəːk

to watch = to
 look at

for some time, he said, to see how I did it. He had
fə sʌm taɪm, hiː sed, tə siː haʊ ai dɪd ɪt. hiː həd

been watching that of some of the others, too, and
biːn wɒtʃɪŋ ðæt əv sʌm əv ðɪ ʌðəz, tuː, ənd

that of some of
 the others = the
 work of some of
 the others

although I was a new man there, he thought that I
ɔːlðəʊ ai wəz ə njuː mæn ðeə, hiː þɔːt ðæt ai

did my work best. I am going to work for him as his
dɪd maɪ wəːk best. ai əm ɡoʊɪŋ tə wəːk fə hɪm əz hɪz

secretary, because, he said, he was getting older now,
sekrətəri, bɪ'kɔːz, hiː sed, hiː wəz ɡetɪŋ ouldə naʊ,

and he needed a young man to remember all the things
ənd hiː niːdɪd ə jʌŋ mæn tə rɪ'membə ɔːl ðə þɪŋz

that he forgot himself. 'I need a man,' he said, 'with
ðæt hiː fə'ɡɒt hɪm'self. 'ai niːd ə mæn,' hiː sed, 'wɪð

a good head, who can look after all the small things in
ə ɡʊd hed, huː kən lʊk ɑːftər ɔːl ðə smɔːl þɪŋz ɪn

He becomes, he became, he has become [bi'kʌmz, bi'keim, bi'kʌm].

a rich man = a man with much money

the office, so that there will be no need for me to
ði ɔfis, sou ðæt ðeə wil bi: nou ni:d fə mi: tə

think of them, a man who can write my letters, and
θɪŋk əv ðəm, ə mæn hu: kæn raɪt maɪ letəz, ənd

who is not afraid of a little extra work now and then.
hu: ɪz nɒt ə'freɪd əv ə lɪtl ɛkstrə wə:k nau ənd ðen.

And you are not afraid of that, I know. How would
ənd ju: a: nɒt ə'freɪd əv ðæt, aɪ nou. hau wʊd

you like to become my secretary? 'I should like
ju: laɪk tə bi'kʌm maɪ sekrətri?' 'aɪ ʃʊd laɪk

nothing better,' I answered. 'Well, I shall be glad to
nʌθɪŋ betə,' aɪ ɑ:nsəd. 'wel, aɪ ʃəl bi: glæd tə

have you do this work — oh, and I almost forgot to
hæv ju: du: ðɪs wə:k — ou, ənd aɪ ɔ:lmʌst fə'ɡɒt tə

tell you, that now you have become my secretary you
tel ju:, ðæt nau ju: hæv bi'kʌm maɪ sekrətri ju:

will become a rich man, too,' he said, smiling. 'From
wil bi'kʌm ə rɪtʃ mæn, tu:, 'hi: sed, smaɪlɪŋ. 'frəm

the first of next month you will get a rise. You will
ðə fə:st əv nekst mʌnθ ju: wil get ə raɪz. ju: wil

need the money for your trip, I think.' I thanked him,
ni:d ðə mʌni fə ʒɔ: trɪp, aɪ θɪŋk.' aɪ þæŋkt hɪm,

but I did not tell him that I had been trying all the
bʌt aɪ dɪd nɒt tel hɪm ðæt aɪ həd bi:n traɪɪŋ ɔ:l ðə

morning to work up courage enough to ask for a
mɔ:nɪŋ tə wə:k ʌp kʌrɪdʒ ɪ'nʌf tu ɑ:sk fər ə

rise."

raɪz."

Mr. Miller: "I 'could see that you all had good news,
mistə milə: "ai kud si: ðæt ju: ɔ:l hæd gud nju:z.

although I didn't think it would be as good as this.
ɔ:l'dou ai didnt þɪŋk it wud bi: əz gud əz ðis.

Now, when can you have your holidays?"
nau, hwen kən ju: hæv jɔ: holidiz?"

Storm: "I can have mine when I want them. Shall
stɔ:m: "ai kən hæv main hwen ai wɒnt ðəm. ʃəl

we try to make the trip during the first fortnight of
wi: trai tə meɪk ðə tri:p dʒuəriŋ ðə fə:st fɔ:tnait əv

July? How does that time suit you?"
dʒu'lai? hau dʌz ðæt taim sju:t ju:?"

Mr. Miller: "It suits me well enough, but the question
mistə milə: "it sju:ts mi: wel i'nʌf, bʌt ðə kwestʃən

is not so much how it suits me, as how it suits Brown
iz nɒt sɒ mʌʃ hau it sju:ts mi:, əz hau it sju:ts braʊn

and Wood, because my holidays are longer than theirs.
ənd wud, bi'kɔ:z mai holidiz a: lɒŋgə ðən ðeəz.

When do you think you can have yours, Wood?" "That
hwen du: ju: þɪŋk ju: kən hæv jɔ:z, wud?" "ðæt

time suits me very well. July is a quiet month at
taim sju:ts mi: veri wel. dʒu'lai iz ə kwaɪət mʌnθ ət

our office. Most of the people with whom we do
aʊər ɒfis. mɒst əv ðə pi:pl wið hu:m wi: du:

business are away on their holidays, so we also have
biznis a:r ə'wei ɔn ðeə holidiz, sɒ wi: ɔ:lsou hæv

ours in July. How about yours, Brown?" "I am
aʊəz in dʒu'lai. hau ə'baut jɔ:z, braʊn?" "ai əm

a fortnight = two weeks

mine
yours
his
hers
ours
yours
theirs

It is **my** book =
the book is **mine**.
It is **your** book =
the book is **yours**.
It is **his** book =
the book is **his**.
It is **her** book =
the book is **hers**.
It is **our** book =
the book is **ours**.
It is **your** book =
the book is **yours**.
It is **their** book =
the book is **theirs**.

Chapter Twenty-Five (25).

easy = not difficult

who
whom
whose

The men **who** do business are business men.

The man **whom** you saw at my office is a business man.

The men **with whom** we do business are also business men.

The business man **whose** shop I work in is very clever.

afraid it is not going to be easy for me to have mine
ə'freid it iz nɒt ɡoʊɪŋ tə bi: i:zi fə mi: tə hæv maɪn

in July, because I had half of July last year. But I
in dʒu'lai, bi'kɔ:z ai hæd ha:f əv dʒu'lai la:st jɪə. bʌt ai

will try to speak to some of the others at the shop
wɪl traɪ tə spi:k tə sʌm əv ði ʌðəz æt ðə ʃɒp

to-morrow. There are two whom I will ask to exchange
tə'mɒrəʊ. ðeər a: tu: hu:m ai wɪl ɑ:sk tu iks'tʃeɪndʒ

holidays with me. There is a young man whose
hɒlɪdɪz wɪð mi:. ðeər iz ə jʌŋ mæn hu:z

holidays are in July this year. I will ask him to
hɒlɪdɪz a:r ɪn dʒu'lai ðɪs jɪə. ai wɪl ɑ:sk hɪm tu

exchange holidays with me, so that he can have mine,
ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ hɒlɪdɪz wɪð mi:, sɒ ðæt hi: kən hæv maɪn,

and I can have his. If his holidays are during the last
ænd ai kən hæv hɪz. ɪf hɪz hɒlɪdɪz a: dʒuəriŋ ðə la:st

fortnight of July, I can ask one of the young ladies,
fɔ:tnaɪt əv dʒu'lai, ai kən ɑ:sk wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ leɪdɪz,

whose holidays are during the first part of the month,
hu:z hɒlɪdɪz a: dʒuəriŋ ðə fə:st pɑ:t əv ðə mʌnθ,

to exchange hers for mine. We often exchange our
tu iks'tʃeɪndʒ hə:z fə maɪn. wi: ɔ:fən iks'tʃeɪndʒ ʌs

holidays at the shop, when it suits us better that way,
hɒlɪdɪz æt ðə ʃɒp, hwen ɪt sju:ts ʌs betə ðæt wei,

won't = will not

so I hope it won't be too difficult." Mr. Miller: "Well,
sɒ ai hoʊp ɪt wəʊnt bi: tu: dɪfɪkəlt." *mɪstə mɪlə: "wel,*

that is decided, then."
ðæt iz dɪ'saɪdɪd, ðen."

Some days later, Brown was able to bring the good
sam deiz leitə, braun wəs eibl tə brinj ðə gud

news that the young lady whose holidays were during
nju:z ðət ðə jʌŋ leidi hu:z holidiz wə: djuəriŋ

the first fortnight of July, was willing to exchange
ðə fə:st fɔ:tnait əv dʒu'laɪ, wəs wiliŋ tu iks'tʃeɪndʒ

holidays with him, although his were a whole month
holidiz wið him, ɔ:l'dəu hɪz wə:r ə haʊl mʌnθ

later. It had even been very easy to get her to do so,
leɪtə. ɪt həd i:vən bi:n veri i:zi tə get hə: tə du: sɒ,

because the time suited her plans much better.

bɪ'kɒz ðə taɪm sju:tɪd hə: plænz mʌtʃ betə.

Now that they knew they would have enough money,

naʊ ðət ðeɪ nju: ðeɪ wʊd hæv i'nʌf mʌni,

and that they would be able to take their holidays at

ænd ðət ðeɪ wʊd bi: eibl tə teɪk ðeə holidiz ət

one and the same time, the young men became still

wʌn ænd ðə seɪm taɪm, ðə jʌŋ men bɪ'keɪm stɪl

more interested in their studies. Every time they had

mɔ:r ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðeə stʌdiz. evri taɪm ðeɪ həd

a chance of being together during the next month, they

ə tʃɑ:ns əv bi:ɪŋ tə'geðə djuəriŋ ðə nekst mʌnθ, ðeɪ

talked about their coming trip. Mr. Miller told them

tɔ:kt ə'baut ðeə kʌmɪŋ trɪp. mɪstə mɪlə təʊld ðəm

about the things he had seen in England, and they

ə'baut ðə ʃɪŋz hi: həd si:n ɪn ɪŋɡlənd, ænd ðeɪ

read about England in books and newspapers. Some-

red ə'baut ɪŋɡlənd ɪn buks ænd nju:speɪpəz. sʌm-

is willing to = is
glad to

a chance of being
together =
a chance to be to-
gether



newspaper

paper = news-
paper

times they even bought the English newspaper 'The
 taimz ðei i:vən bɔ:t ði ɪŋglɪʃ nju:speɪpə 'ðə
 Times' and tried to read it; but that was not easy for
 taimz' ənd traɪd tə ri:d ɪt; bʌt ðæt wəz nɒt i:zi fɔ:
 them; although they could understand something, most
 ðəm; ɔ:lðəu ðei kʊd ʌndə'stænd sʌmθɪŋ, mʌst
 of it was too difficult, and Mr. Miller often had to
 əv ɪt wəz tu: dɪfɪkəlt, ənd mɪstə mɪlə ɔ:fən həd tu
 explain it to them in words that they knew.
 ɪks'pleɪn ɪt tə ðəm ɪn wə:dz ðæt ðei nju:.

Brown often bought the extra paper about books and
 braʊn ɔ:fən bɔ:t ði ɛkstrə peɪpər ə'baut bʊks ənd
 the men who write them, which 'The Times' brings
 ðə men hu: raɪt ðəm, hwiʃf 'ðə taimz' brɪŋz
 out every week. He could understand enough of the
 aʊt evri wi:k. hi: kʊd ʌndə'stænd ɪ'nʌf əv ðə
 language to be able to get many ideas for his library,
 læŋgwɪdʒ tə bi: eɪbl tə get mæni aɪ'diəz fə hɪz laɪbrəri,
 so that his manager began to think that he must be
 sʊ ðæt hɪz mænɪdʒə bɪ'ɡæn tə θɪŋk ðæt hi: mʌst bi:
 a very clever man who had studied much about modern
 ə veri klevə mæn hu: həd stʌdɪd mʌʃ ə'baut mɒdən
 books.
 bʊks.

Brown also tried to get Storm and Wood interested in
 braʊn ɔ:lsəʊ traɪd tə get stɔ:m ənd wʊd ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn
 this extra paper, but Wood was too busy with his new
 ðɪs ɛkstrə peɪpər, bʌt wʊd wəz tu: bɪzi wɪð hɪz nju:

work, and Storm was too much of a business man to be
wɔ:k, and stɔ:m wəz tu: mʌtʃ əv ə biznis mæn tə bi:

interested in "all these dry old books", as he called
intristid in "ɔ:l di:s drai ould buks", əs hi: kɔ:ld

them. They never used a word of any language but
ðəm. ðei nevə ju:zd ə wɔ:d əv ɛni læŋgwidʒ bʌt

English when they were together. This was a very
iŋglɪʃ hwen ðei wə: tə'geðə. ðis wəz ə vɛri

good thing, and when the month of July came at
ɡud θɪŋ, ənd hwen ðə mʌnθ əv dʒu'lai keim ət

last, the young men had become very good at English
lə:st, ðə jʌŋ men həd bi'kʌm vɛri ɡud ət iŋglɪʃ

and were able to say almost everything.

ənd wɔ:r eɪbl tə sei ɔ:lmoʊst evriθɪŋ.

EXERCISE A.

The good — that Storm brought was that his manager was — to pay the whole trip for him. Brown had never before had a — to work at any idea of his own in the shop. When he had — his manager the letters which he had —, the manager said that they were — good. Wood was going to work for his — as his —, because the manager — a young man to — after things for him. The people with — Wood's office does — are away in July. Was it — for Brown to have his holidays in July? No, it was very — for him to have his — in July. Were there any persons at the shop — holidays were — the first fortnight of July? Yes, there was a young lady, and she was — to exchange holidays with Brown.

WORDS:

news
chance
show
showed
shown
even
courage
watch (verb)
although
secretary
become
became
fortnight
suit (verb)
whom

whose
during
so
newspaper
mine
yours
hers
ours
theirs
need
easy
willing
a few
rich
exchange

EXERCISE B.

Why did all the boys look happy? ... Had Wood taken courage to ask for a rise? ... Why was Brown's manager going to give him a month's extra pay? ... How did Wood's manager know that Wood was the best man to have as his secretary? ... When was Storm going to have his holidays, and when was Brown going to have his? ... Whose holidays were during the first fortnight of July, the young man's or the young lady's? ... With whom did Brown exchange holidays? ... During which month is it best to go to England? ... Where did the three young men read about England? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'why'.

Why is it best to go to England in July? Answer ... Question ...? Because you cannot be sure that the weather will be good in June. Why are the young men going to England? Answer ... Question ...? Mrs. Miller and the child are going to a farm in the country, because the child is too young to go for a trip to England. Why was Wood happy? Answer ... Question ...? John's mother was afraid to let him go out on the ice, because it was too thin. Why did Daisy have a party? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith and the children had dinner in town, because they had not been invited to the party. Why had the young men begun to study English? Answer ... Question ...? Wood's manager had watched his work to see how he did it. Why will

Mr. Miller get a new pupil next winter? Answer ...

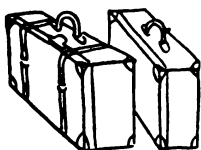
Question ...? They will have to do much work so that they can speak English well enough when they go to England. Why would they like to visit the British Museum when they get to England? Answer ...

Question ...? Mr. Miller would like to go to England in July, because if he goes in August, most of his friends will have left London. Why would Mr. Smith's brother not go with Mr. Smith and the children to the lake?

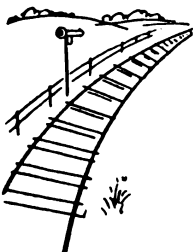
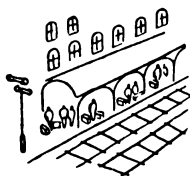
Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith will not give John a watch yet, because he is too young.

THE TRIP BEGINS

at length = at last

*luggage*

finish = come to the end of

*railway**station*

along with = together with

At length the day has come when the teacher and his
at lenθ ðə dei hæz kʌm hwen ðə ti:tʃər ænd his

three pupils start on their trip to England. The time
θri: pju:plz stɑ:t ɒn ðeə tri:p tu ɪŋɡlənd. ðə taɪm

has gone too slowly for them, but at length the day
hæz ɡɒn tu: sləuli fɔ: ðəm, bʌt ət lenθ ðə dei

has come. Brown has been packing his luggage all
hæz kʌm. braʊn hæz bi:n ˈpækiŋ his ˈlʌɡɪdʒ ɔ:l

the morning, but now his mother comes into his room,
ðə mʌ:nɪŋ, bʌt naʊ his mʌðə kʌmz ɪntə his ru:m,

saying, "You must finish packing your luggage at once.
seɪɪŋ, "ju: mʌst fɪnɪʃ ˈpækiŋ jɔ: ˈlʌɡɪdʒ ət wʌns.

You will have to be at the railway station in half an
ju: wɪl hæv tə bi: ət ðə reɪlweɪ steɪʃən ɪn hʌf ən

hour."
aʊə."

Brown: "I am ready to go, but I think I shall have to
braʊn: "aɪ əm redi tə ɡəʊ, bʌt aɪ θɪŋk aɪ ʃəl hæv tə

take a taxi to the station, or I shall be late for my train."
teɪk ə ˈtæksi tə ðə steɪʃən, ɔ:r aɪ ʃəl bi: leɪt fə maɪ treɪn."

"Shall I come along with you to the station, or would
"ʃəl aɪ kʌm ə'lɒŋ wɪð ju: tə ðə steɪʃən, ɔ: wʊd

you rather go alone?" Brown: "I would rather have
ju: rə:ðə ɡəʊ ə'ləʊn?" braʊn: "aɪ wʊd rə:ðə hæv

you along with me. But we must ask the driver to
 ju: ə'ləŋ wið mi:. bat wi: mast a:sk ðə draɪvə tə
 go fast. We have only twenty-five minutes now, and
 ɡou fa:st. wi: hæv ounli twenti'faɪv minits nau, and
 if he drives too slowly, I shall be late for my train."
 ɪf hi: draɪvz tu: slouli, ai ʃəl bi: leɪt fə mai treɪn."

Five minutes later they were on their way to the
 faɪv minits leɪtə ðei wə:r ɔn ðeə wei tə ðə

railway station in a taxi. Brown was nervous. "It is
 reɪlwei steɪʃən ɪn ə tæksi. braʊn wəz nə:vəs. "ɪt ɪz

too slow, driver, can't you drive a little faster?" he said
 tu: slou, draɪvə, kɑ:nt ju: draɪv ə lɪtl fa:stə?" hi: sed

nervously. "All right, I will try," the driver answered.
 nə:vəsli. "ɔ:l rait, ai wɪl traɪ," ðə draɪvər a:nsəd.

When they arrived at the station, the three others were
 hwen ðei ə'raɪvd at ðə steɪʃən, ðə ʒri: ʌðəz wə:r

already there, waiting. "Oh, there you are, Brown,
 ɔ:l'redi ðeə, weɪtɪŋ. "ou, ðeə ju: a:, braʊn,

we were a little nervous; we were afraid that you would
 wi: wə:r ə lɪtl nə:vəs; wi: wə:r ə'freɪd ðæt ju: wʊd

be late. We arrived here ten minutes ago. Now let us
 bi: leɪt. wi: ə'raɪvd hiə ten minits ə'ɡou. nau let ʌs

go to the train."
 ɡou tə ðə treɪn."

They were the last people to enter the train. "Good-bye,
 ðei wə: ðə la:st pi:pl tu entə ðə treɪn. "'ɡʊd'baɪ,

mother," said Brown, kissing his mother on the mouth;
 mʌðə," sed braʊn, kɪsɪŋ hɪz mʌðər ɔn ðə maʊθ;



He **drives**, he **drove**, he has **driven** [draɪvz, draʊv, draɪvɪn].

slow
 slowly

A **slow driver**.

The driver **is slow**.

The driver **drives slowly**.

nervous
 nervously

The **nervous boy** dropped his book on the floor.

The boy **is nervous**.

"I cannot do it," **said** the boy **nervously**.

enter = go into

kissing his mother = **and kissed** his mother

“now I am leaving you and our good old country for
“nau ai əm li:vɪŋ ju: ənd auə gud ould kʌntri fə
 two weeks.” “Good-bye, my boy, I hope you will have
tu: wi:ks.” “gud’bai, mai bɔi, ai haʊp ju: wɪl hæʊ
 a good time in England.”
ə gud taɪm ɪn ɪŋɡlənd.”

Wood’s sister had also come along with her brother to
wudz sistə həd ɔ:lsoʊ kʌm ə’lɔŋ wið hə: brʌðə tə
 the station, and when she kissed him good-bye, she
ðə steɪʃən, ənd hwen ʃi: kɪst hɪm gud’bai, ʃi:
 asked him to buy something for her in England. When
ɑ:skt hɪm tə baɪ sʌmʃɪŋ fɔ: hə: ɪn ɪŋɡlənd. hwen
 the train was leaving the station, the three young men
ðə treɪn wəz li:vɪŋ ðə steɪʃən, ðə ʃri: ʒəŋ men
 shouted a hurrah as loud as they could. “I never knew
ʃaʊtɪd ə hu’rɑ: əz laʊd əz ðeɪ kʊd. “ai nevə nju:
 you could shout as loud as that,” Mr. Miller said
ju: kʊd ʃaʊt əz laʊd əz ðæt,” mɪstə mɪlə sed
 smilingly.
smɪlɪŋli.

smiling
 smilingly

We saw the men’s
 smiling faces.

The men were
 smiling.

Themensaid good-
 bye smilingly.

He sings, he sang,
 he has sung
 [sɪŋz, sæŋ, sʌŋ].

Brown: “Well, I never knew, myself. But now that
braʊn: “wɛl, ai nevə nju:, maɪ’sɛlf. bʌt nau ðæt
 we have started on our trip, let us sing a song. Wood
wɪ: həv stɑ:tɪd ɔn auə trɪp, let ʌs sɪŋ ə sɔŋ. wʊd
 has a very good voice for singing, and he knows so
hæz ə veri gud vɔɪs fə sɪŋɪŋ, ənd hi: nəʊz soʊ
 many songs.” Wood: “Do you know the song of
meni sɔŋz.” wʊd: “du: ju: nəʊ ðə sɔŋ əv

'The Emperor Napoleon and his ten thousand men'?
'ðɪ ɛmpərə nə'pəʊljən ənd hɪz ten ʔaʊsənd men'?

Let us try that."
let ʌs traɪ ðæt."

For the next ten minutes they were singing English
fə ðə nekst ten mɪnɪts ðeɪ wə: sɪŋɪŋ ɪŋɡlɪʃ

songs at the top of their voices, so loud that almost
sɒŋz ət ðə tɒp əv ðeə vɔɪsɪz, sʊ laʊd ðæt ɔ:lmoʊst

everybody in the carriage could hear them. Then,
evrɪbɒdi ɪn ðə kærɪdʒ kʊd hɪə ðəm. ðen,

after some time, they began talking together. The
ɑ:f tə sʌm taɪm, ðeɪ bɪ'ɡæn tɔ:kɪŋ tə'ɡedə. ðə

train in which they were travelling was a very fast
treɪn ɪn kwɪtʃ ðeɪ wə: trævəlɪŋ wəz ə veri fɑ:st

one with modern carriages.
wʌn wɪð mɒdən kærɪdʒɪz.

Mr. Miller: "We are going at a very high speed now,
mɪstə mɪlə: "wi: ɑ: ɡəʊɪŋ ət ə veri haɪ spi:d naʊ,

I should think seventy miles (a hundred and ten
aɪ ʃʊd ʔɪŋk sevn ti maɪlz (ə haʊdrəd ənd ten

kilometres) an hour. At this speed we shall soon be
kɪləmi:təz) ən aʊə. ət ðɪs spi:d wi: ʃəl su:n bi:

very far from home." Brown: "Have you got a ciga-
veri fɑ: frəm haʊm." braʊn: "həv ju: ɡɒt ə sɪɡə-

rette, Storm? I should like to smoke one now." Storm:
'ret, stɔ:m? aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə smʊk wʌn naʊ." stɔ:m:

"Yes, here are some cigarettes, but I have no matches.
"jes, hɪə ɑ: sʌm sɪɡə'rets, bʌt aɪ həv nə mætʃɪz.

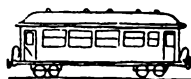


emperor

at the top of their voices = in as loud voices as they could

everybody = every one

began talking = began to talk



carriage

1 mile = 1.61 kilometres

soon = in a very short time



match



Have you got a match, Mr. Miller?" Mr. Miller: "Yes,
hæv ju: gɒt ə mætʃ, mɪstə mɪlə?" mɪstə mɪlə: "jes,

I have got matches, and I have also got tobacco, if you
ai hæv gɒt mætʃɪz, ænd ai hæv ɔ:lsoʊ gɒt tə'bækou, if ju:

would rather smoke a pipe than cigarettes. I think a
wʊd rə:ðə smʊk ə paɪp ðən sɪgə'rets. ai ɪŋk ə

pipe of good tobacco is better than cigarettes or cigars.
paɪp əv gʊd tə'bækou ɪz bɛtə ðən sɪgə'rets ɔ: sɪ'gɑ:z.

And here are to-day's newspapers if you have not read
ænd hɪə ə: tə'deɪz nju:speɪpəz if ju: hæv nɒt red

them yet. I think they will be the last newspapers we
ðəm jet. ai ɪŋk ðeɪ wɪl bi: ðə la:st nju:speɪpəz wi:

shall read in our own language for the next fortnight.
ʃəl ri:d ɪn aʊər oun læŋgwɪdʒ fə ðə nekst fɔ:tnaɪt.

To-morrow you must try to read a little in the English
tə'mɒrəʊ ju: mʌst traɪ tə ri:d ə lɪtl ɪn ði ɪŋglɪʃ

newspapers. I don't think you will be able to under-
nju:speɪpəz. ai daʊnt ɪŋk ju: wɪl bi: eɪbl tu ʌndə-

stand much of them to begin with, but it will be good
'stænd mʌtʃ əv ðəm tə bɪ'ɡɪn wɪð, bʌt ɪt wɪl bi: gʊd

for you to read them together every day, and I will
fɔ: ju: tə ri:d ðəm tə'geðə evri deɪ, ænd ai wɪl

explain the many new and difficult words to you."
ɪks'pleɪn ðə meni nju: ænd dɪfɪkəlt wə:dz tə ju:."

Storm (looking out of the window): "How fine the
stɔ:m (lʊkɪŋ aʊt əv ðə wɪndəʊ): "haʊ faɪn ðə

weather is now! When I got up this morning, there
wedəz ɪz naʊ! hwen ai gɒt ʌp ðɪs mɔ:nɪŋ, ðeə

were many clouds in the sky, and I thought we were
wə: meni klaudz in ðə skai, ənd ai þɔ:t wi: wə:
 going to have rain, but now the sun is shining, and the
ɡoʊɪŋ tə hæv rein, bət nau ðə sʌn iz ʃaɪnɪŋ, ənd ðə
 sky is blue again, without any clouds.”
skai iz blu. ə'geɪn, wið'aʊt eni klaudz.”

Mr. Miller: “I hope we shall have dry weather as long
mɪstə mɪlə: “aɪ hoʊp wi: ʃəl hæv draɪ weðər əz lɔŋ

as we are in England. But we cannot be sure. It very
əz wi: a:r in ɪŋɡlənd. bət wi: kənət bi: suə. ɪt veri

often rains over there, and in winter they sometimes
ɔ:fən reɪnz oʊvə ðeə, ənd in wɪntə ðeɪ sʌmtaɪmz

have fogs. Sometimes when you walk in the streets
hæv fɔgz. sʌmtaɪmz hwen ju: wɔ:k in ðə stri:t

of London, there is such a fog that you cannot see your
əv lʌndən, ðeər iz sʌtʃ ə fɔɡ ðət ju: kənət si: jɔ:

hand before you. And a London fog is not white or
hænd bi'fɔ: ju:. ənd ə lʌndən fɔɡ iz nɔt hwaɪt ɔ:

grey like the fogs in our own country, but dirty yellow.”
ɡreɪ laɪk ðə fɔgz ɪn ʌʊər ʌn kʌntri, bət dɜ:ti ʒeləʊ.”

Storm: “What does yellow mean?” Mr. Miller: “Yellow
stɔ:m: “hwɔt dʌz ʒeləʊ mi:n?” mɪstə mɪlə: “ʒeləʊ

is the colour of butter, for example.”
ɪz ðə kʌləər əv bʌtə, fər ɪɡ'zɑ:mpl.”

Storm: “Hurrah, in ten minutes we shall be on board
stɔ:m: “hʊ'rɑ:, ɪn ten mɪnɪts wi: ʃəl bi: ɔn bɔ:d

the steamer for England. I can see the water now.”
ðə sti:mə fər ɪŋɡlənd. aɪ kən si: ðə wɔ:tə nau.”



It **shines**, it **shone**,
 it has **shone** [*ʃaɪnz*,
ʃɔn, ʃɔn].

Brown: "Well, that is good. I hope we can get a good
braun: "wel, ðæt iz gud. ai houþ wi: kən get ə gud

lunch on board the steamer, for I am very hungry."
lʌnf ɔn bɔ:d ðə sti:mə, fər ai əm veri haŋgri."

All the others: "And so am I!" Mr. Miller: "Then let
ɔ:l ði ʌðəz: "ænd sou əm ai!" mistə milə: "ðen let

us have our lunch as soon as we get on board."
ʌs hæv ʌʊə lʌnf əz su:n əz wi: get ɔn bɔ:d."

EXERCISE A.

When Brown had — his luggage, his mother asked him whether he wanted her to come — with him, or whether he would — go alone. Brown asked the — to drive —, because he would be late for his train if the driver — too —. Before Brown — the train, he said good-bye to his mother and — her on the mouth. In the train they — a hurrah and sang so — that almost everybody in the carriage could — them. The train went at a high —, 70 — an hour. When the sun is —, the — is blue, but when it is raining, the sky is full of —. The train in which they were travelling was a very — one with modern —. Mr. Miller would — smoke a — than —. Brown wanted to —, but he had no —. Mr. Miller explained to them that the fog in London is not white or grey, but dirty —. They decided to have lunch as — as they got on board the steamer.

EXERCISE B.

What was Brown doing just before he started on the trip? ... How did Brown and his mother get to the rail-

WORDS:

at length

pack

finish

luggage

railway

station

rather

driver

drive

drove

driven

fast

slow

nervous

arrive

way station? ... Did the driver drive fast enough? ... Why was Brown nervous? ... Did Brown arrive in time? ... What did Wood's sister say when she kissed him good-bye? ... How loud did they sing in the train? ... What song did they sing? ... What did Mr. Miller smoke? ... What was the weather like when Storm got up that morning? ... Where does the rain come from? ... What is the colour of the London fog? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'who', 'whom', or 'whose'.

Who is John? Answer ... Question ...? The farmer is Mr. Smith's brother. Who took the children to the cinema? Answer ... Question ...? Mrs. Smith's friend Daisy gave the birthday party. Whom did Mr. Smith give a watch? Answer ... Question ...? Aunt Jane gave John and Helen the shilling. Whom did Mr. Smith ask to go with him to the lake? Answer ... Question ...? In the picture 'Wee Willie Winkie' they saw Shirley Temple. From whom did Mrs. Smith get a letter? Answer ... Question ...? Mrs. Smith got the twelve pounds from her husband. With whom are the young men going to England? Answer ... Question ...? Brown had exchanged holidays with one of the young ladies at the shop. Whose sister had come along to the station? Answer ... Question ...? Brown's manager paid him a month's extra salary. Whose were the cigarettes that Brown smoked? Answer ... Question ...? It was in Mr. Miller's house that they came together to study English.

be late
enter
shout
hurrah
loud
sing
sang
sung
song
voice
emperor
kilometre
speed
soon
cigarette
smoke
match
tobacco
pipe
cigar
cloud
sky
shine
shone
rain (verb)
fog
yellow
on board
kiss
everybody
along
carriage
get up
so
mile

ON BOARD THE STEAMER

As soon as our three young friends and their teacher
 əz su:n əz auə pri: jʌŋ frendz ənd. ðəə ti:tʃə

had got on board the steamer which was to take them
 həd gɒt ɒn bɔ:d ðə sti:mə hwɪtʃ wəz tə teɪk ðəm

to England, they went down to their cabin with their
 tu ɪŋɡlənd, ðei wɛnt daʊn tə ðəə kæbɪn wɪð ðəə

luggage. They had got a cabin for four in the third
 lʌɡɪdʒ. ðei həd gɒt ə kæbɪn fə fɔ: ɪn ðə þɜ:d

class, so that they were going to have it all to them-
 kla:s, sɔʊ ðæt ðei wə: ɡəʊɪŋ tə hæv ɪt ɔ:l tə ðəm-

selves. When they came up on deck again, they went to
 'selvz. hwɛn ðei keɪm ʌp ɒn dek ə'ɡeɪn, ðei wɛnt tə

look at people waving their handkerchiefs and shouting
 lʊk ət pi:pl weɪvɪŋ ðəə hæŋkətʃɪfz ənd ʃaʊtɪŋ

good-bye to their friends. Storm: "Now the steamer
 ɡʊd'baɪ tə ðəə frendz. stɔ:m: "naʊ ðə sti:mə

has begun to sail."

həz bɪ'ɡʌn tə seɪl."

Mr. Miller: "The weather is not so fine; there is a strong
 mɪstə mɪlə: "ðə weðə ɪz nɒt sɔʊ faɪn; ðə ɪz ə strɒŋ

wind blowing now. It is strong enough to blow our
 wɪnd bləʊɪŋ naʊ. ɪt ɪz strɒŋ ɪ'nʌf tə bləʊ əʊə

hats into the water, so I think we should go down before
 hæts ɪntə ðə wɔ:tə, sɔʊ aɪ θɪŋk wi: ʃʊd ɡəʊ daʊn bɪ'fɔ:r

waving their
handkerchiefs =
who were
waving their
handkerchiefs

It blows, it blew,
it has blown
[blouz, blu:, bloun].

it is too late, and have our lunch with a cup of strong
it iz tu: leit, and hæv auə lʌnf wið ə kʌp əv strɔŋ

tea. With such a strong wind blowing, it is very possible
ti: wið sʌf ə strɔŋ wiנד blouɪŋ, it iz veri pɔsəbl

that we shall be seasick before we get to England. And
ðæt wi: ʃəl bi: si:sik bi'fɔ: wi: get tu ɪŋɡlənd. and

from other trips I have made by steamer, I know that
fɾəm ʌðə trips ai hæv meɪd baɪ sti:mə, ai nou ðæt

it is better to have eaten something and had something
it iz betə tə hæv i:tn sʌmʃɪŋ and hæd sʌmʃɪŋ

to drink before the seasickness begins.”
tə driŋk bi'fɔ: ðə si:siknis bi'ɡɪnz.”

Storm: “I do not think it is possible for me to get
stɔ:m: “ai du: nɒt ʃɪŋk it iz pɔsəbl fə mi: tə get

seasick. I have been on the sea many times, and I never
si:sik. ai hæv bi:n ɒn ðə si: meni taɪmz, and ai nevə

was seasick, so I do not think I shall get seasick this
wəz si:sik, sou ai du: nɒt ʃɪŋk ai ʃəl get si:sik ðɪs

time. But I must say that the wind is very strong,
taɪm. bʌt ai mʌst seɪ ðæt ðə wiנד iz veri strɔŋ,

and the waves of the sea are very big.”
and ðə weɪvz əv ðə si: a: veri biɡ.”

Wood: “Oh, that is nothing to speak of. Wait until
wu:d: “ou, ðæt iz nəθɪŋ tə spi:k əv. weɪt ʌn'tɪl

we get farther out to sea, then you are going to see
wi: get fɑ:ðər aʊt tə si:, ðen ju: a: ɡəʊɪŋ tə si:

waves.”
weɪvz.”

with such a strong
 wind blowing =
 when such a strong
 wind is blowing

It is possible =
 it can be done.



far
 farther
 farthest

via = by the
route of

When they came down, they sat down at a table and
hwen ðei keim daun, ðei sæt daun æt ə teibl ənd
 began to eat. Brown: "Which is the most important
bi'gæn tu i:t. braun: "hwiʃ iz ðə moust im'pɔ:tənt
 route for Europeans to England, Mr. Miller?" Mr.
ru:t fə juərə'pi:ənz tu iŋglənd, mistə milə?" mistə
 Miller: "It is difficult to say which is the most important.
milə: "it iz difikəlt tə sei hwiʃ iz ðə moust im'pɔ:tənt.
 There are many different routes, and I have tried
ðeər a: meni difrənt ru:ts, ənd ai hæv traɪd
 several of them. I think the three most important are:
sevrəl əv ðəm. ai θɪŋk ðə θri: moust im'pɔ:tənt a: :
 Esbjerg-Harwich, The Hook of Holland-Harwich, and
ezbjə:g-hæridʒ, ðə huk əv hɔlənd-hæridʒ, ənd
 Calais-Dover. The Esbjerg-Harwich route is used
kælei-douvə. ði ezbjə:g-hæridʒ ru:t iz ju:zd
 especially by travellers coming from the north of
is'peʃəli baɪ trævələz kʌmɪŋ frəm ðə nɔ:θ əv
 Europe. It is a very long route. Travellers coming
juərəp. it iz ə veri lɔŋ ru:t. trævələz kʌmɪŋ
 from Central Europe, from Germany, for example, go
frəm sentrəl juərəp, frəm dʒə:məni, fər ig'zɑ:mpl, ɡoʊ
 via The Hook of Holland-Harwich. The shortest one
vaɪə ðə huk əv hɔlənd-hæridʒ. ðə ʃɔ:tɪst wʌn
 is the Calais-Dover route. It does not take more than
iz ðə kælei-douvə ru:t. it dʌz nɔt teɪk mɔ: ðən
 an hour and a quarter to get to England by that route.
ən aʊər ənd ə kwɔ:tə tə get tu iŋglənd baɪ ðæt ru:t.

Perhaps you think that there is no time to get seasick
pə'hæps ju: ɪŋk ðæt ðeər ɪz nou taɪm tə get si:sɪk

on that route, but the trip is sometimes an hour and
ɒn ðæt ru:t, bʌt ðə trɪp ɪz sʌmtaɪmz ən aʊər ənd

a quarter too long when the wind is blowing hard.
ə kwɔ:tə tu: lɒŋ hwen ðə wɪnd ɪz bləʊɪŋ hɑ:d.

Especially travellers from the south of Europe go
ɪs'peʃəli trævələz frəm ðə saʊθ əv juərəp gou

via Calais-Dover. Then there are several other routes,
vaɪə kəleɪ-dəʊvə. ðen ðeər a: severəl ʌðə ru:ts,

but they are not so much used as these three.”

bʌt ðeɪ a: nɒt sou mʌtʃ ju:zd əz ði:z ˈθri:.”

While they were eating and talking, the steamer got
hwaɪl ðeɪ wə:r ɪ:tiŋ ənd tɔ:kiŋ, ðə sti:mə ɡɒt

far out from land, and here the wind was blowing
fɑ:r aʊt frəm lænd, ənd hɪə ðə wɪnd wəz bləʊɪŋ

harder than before they began to sail. People began
hɑ:də ðən bɪ'fɔ: ðeɪ bɪ'ɡæn tə seɪl. pi:pl bɪ'ɡæn

to leave their tables to go to their cabins. Their faces
tə li:v ðeə teɪblz tə gou tə ðeə kæbɪnz. ðeə feɪsɪz

were very pale. Storm's and Wood's faces looked
wə: veri peɪl. stɔ:mz ənd wudz feɪsɪz lʊkt

especially pale; they were almost white. “You look
ɪs'peʃəli peɪl; ðeɪ wə:r ɔ:lmoʊst hwaɪt. “ju: lʊk

a little pale,” said Mr. Miller; “wouldn't it be better
ə lɪtl peɪl,” sed mɪstə mɪlə; “wʊdnt ɪt bi: betə

for you to go up on deck to get some fresh air?”
fɔ: ju: tə gou ʌp ɒn dek tə get sʌm freʃ eə?”

while they were
 eating = during
 the time they
 were eating

quickly = fast

It is impossible =
it cannot be done.
impossible = not
possible

Storm: "Yes, I think some fresh air would do me good.
stɔ:m: "jes, ai piŋk sʌm freʃ ə wʊd du: mi: gud.

The air is very hot down here, isn't it?" Wood: "I think
ði ɛər iz veri hot daʊn hiə, iznt it?" wʊd: "ai piŋk

I will go out into the air with you. I like fresh air
ai wil ɡoʊ aʊt intə ði ɛə wið ju:. ai laik freʃ əə

when I have been in a hot room for some time." They
hæʊən ai həv bi:n in ə hot ru:m fə sʌm taɪm." ðei

went up on deck very quickly.
went ʌp ɔn dek veri kwɪkli.

It is twenty minutes before the steamer gets to England.
it iz twenti minits bi'fɔ: ðə sti:mə gets tu ɪŋɡlənd.

The teacher and his three pupils are now all on
ðə ti:tʃər ænd hiz θri: pju:plz a: naʊ ɔ:l ɔn

the deck of the steamer, looking at the land which
ðə dek əv ðə sti:mə, lʊkiŋ ət ðə lænd hwɪtʃ

they can see.
ði kən si:.

Storm: "I thought it impossible for me to get seasick.
stɔ:m: "ai θɔ:t it ɪm'pɔsəbl fə mi: tə get si:sɪk.

I was not very well when the wind was blowing its
ai wəz nɒt veri wel hwen ðə wɪnd wəz bləʊɪŋ ɪts

hardest and the waves were so big, but now I am all
hɑ:dist ænd ðə weɪvz wə: sɒu bɪɡ, bʌt naʊ ai əm ɔ:l

right again." Brown, smiling: "Nothing is impossible
raɪt ə'ɡeɪn." braʊn, smaɪlɪŋ: "nʌθɪŋ ɪz ɪm'pɔsəbl

in this world."
ɪn ðɪs wɜ:ld."

Mr. Miller: "Now we shall be in England in a short
mistə milə: "nau wi: ʃəl bi: in ɪŋɡlənd in ə ʃɔ:t

time. Before we arrive I want to talk to you about
taɪm. bi'fɔ: wi: ə'raɪv ai wɒnt tə tɔ:k tə ju: ə'baut

something important. I have a good friend in London.
səm'piŋ ɪm'pɔ:tənt. ai hæv ə gud frend in lɒndən.

When I go to England, I always bring a box of fifty (50)
hwen ai ɡəʊ tu ɪŋɡlənd, ai ɔ:lweɪz briŋ ə bɒks əv fɪfti

cigars along for him." Wood: "Why don't you buy
si'ɡa:z ə'lɒŋ fɔ: him." wud: "hwaɪ daʊnt ju: baɪ

the box of cigars in London?" Mr. Miller: "Because
ðə bɒks əv si'ɡa:z in lɒndən?" mistə milə: "bi'kɔz

cigars are very expensive in England. You can get
si'ɡa:z a: veri ɪks'pensɪv in ɪŋɡlənd. ju: kən ɡet

a cigar for a shilling, but then it is not very good;
ə si'ɡa: fər ə ʃɪlɪŋ, bʌt ðen ɪt ɪz nɒt veri gud;

if you want a good cigar you have to pay two shillings.
ɪf ju: wɒnt ə gud si'ɡa: ju: hæv tə peɪ tu: ʃɪlɪŋz.

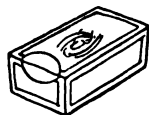
Now, a person must not take more than twenty-five (25)
nau, ə pə:sən mʌst nɒt teɪk mɔ: ðən twenti'faɪv

cigars with him through the Customs into England.
si'ɡa:z wɪð him þru: ðə kʌstəmz ɪntu ɪŋɡlənd.

If you want to take more with you, you must pay duty
ɪf ju: wɒnt tə teɪk mɔ: wɪð ju:, ju: mʌst peɪ dʒu:ti

on them. There is a high duty on tobacco in England,
ɒn ðəm. ðeər ɪz ə haɪ dʒu:ti ɒn tə'bækəʊ in ɪŋɡlənd,

so even cigars from our country would be too expensive
səʊ i:vən si'ɡa:z frəm ʌə kəntri wʊd bi: tu: ɪks'pensɪv



box

expensive = dear

one [wʌn]
two [tu:]
three [θri:]
four [fɔ:]
five [faɪv]
six [sɪks]
seven [sevn]
eight [eɪt]
nine [naɪn]
ten [ten]
eleven [ɪ'levn]
twelve [twelv]
thirteen [θɜ:'ti:n]
fourteen [fɔ:'ti:n]
fifteen [fɪf'ti:n]
sixteen [sɪks'ti:n]
seventeen
[sevn'ti:n]

Chapter Twenty-Seven (27).

eighteen ['ei'ti:n]
 nineteen ['naɪn'ti:n]
 twenty [twenti]
 thirty [θə:ti]
 forty [fɔ:ti]
 fifty [fifti]
 sixty [siksɪ]
 seventy [sevti]
 eighty [eiti]
 ninety [naɪnti]
 a hundred
 [ə haʊdrəd]
 a thousand
 [ə haʊzənd]
 a million [ə miljən]

if I had to pay duty on them in England. This time
if ai hæd tə pei dju:ti ɒn ðəm in ɪŋɡlənd. ðis taɪm

I have brought seventy-five (75) cigars along; fifty of
ai hæv brɔ:t sevti'faɪv si'ga:z ə'lɔŋ; fifti ɒv

them are for my friend, and twenty-five are for myself,
ðəm a: fə maɪ frend, ənd twenti'faɪv a: fə maɪ'self,

for the two weeks we are going to stay in England.
fə ðə tu: wi:kz wi: a: ɡoʊɪŋ tə steɪ in ɪŋɡlənd.

Now I will give each of you twenty cigars to take
nəʊ ai wɪl ɡɪv i:tʃ əv ju: twenti si'ga:z tə teɪk

through the Customs. I know you have brought no
θru: ðə kʌstəmz. ai nəʊ ju: hæv brɔ:t nəʊ

cigars yourselves, as you only smoke cigarettes."
si'ga:z ʤɔ:'selvz, əz ju: ɒnli sməʊk sigə'rets."

Wood: "I am not sure what is meant by the words duty
wʊd: "ai əm nɒt ʃʊə hwət ɪz ment baɪ ðə wə:dz dju:ti

and Customs." Mr. Miller: "When you want to take
ənd kʌstəmz." mɪstə mɪlə: "hwən ju: wənt tə teɪk

things like cigars or silk stockings into a foreign
θɪŋz laɪk si'ga:z ɔ: sɪlk stɒkɪŋz ɪntu ə fəɪrɪn

country, you have to pay some money before they will
kʌntri, ju: hæv tə pei sʌm mʌni bɪ'fɔ: ðeɪ wɪl

let you take them with you. That is called to pay duty.
let ju: teɪk ðəm wɪð ju:. ðæt ɪz kɔ:ld tə pei dju:ti.

The place or the office where the duty is paid by the
ðə pleɪs ɔ: ði ɔfɪs hwɛə ðə dju:ti ɪz peɪd baɪ ðə

travellers is called the custom-house. You will under-
trævləz ɪz kɔ:ld ðə kʌstəmhaʊs. ju: wɪl ʌndə-

stand that you cannot get into a foreign country without
'stænd ðæt ju: kænɒt get intu ə fɔːrɪn kʌntri wɪð'aʊt

going through a custom-house or 'going through the
gəʊɪŋ θru: ə kʌstəmhaʊs ɔ: 'gəʊɪŋ θru: ðə

Customs' as it is called. That is easy to understand,
kʌstəmz' əz ɪt ɪz kɔːld. ðæt ɪz iːzi tu ʌndə'stænd,

isn't it?" Wood: "Oh yes, now I see what the words
ɪznt ɪt?" wʊd: "əʊ jɛs, naʊ aɪ si: hʌwɪt ðə wɔːdz

mean."

mi:n."

EXERCISE A.

When people get on board a steamer, they first go down to their — with their —. Then they go up on — again to — good-bye with their handkerchiefs to their friends. At sea there is often a strong — blowing. When the wind is blowing —, many people get —. It is best to have eaten something before the — begins.

There are three — routes to England. — from the — of Europe especially go via Esbjerg-Harwich. Most — from the — of Europe go by the Calais-Dover —. When Storm got seasick, his face — very —. He said that he needed some —. When travellers arrive in England, they have to go through the —. They must pay — on cigars if they have more than twenty-five each. Why did Mr. Miller want to take a — of cigars

WORDS:

cabin
deck
wave (verb)
sail
wind
blow
blew
blown
strong
hard
possible
impossible
seasick
seasickness
sea

wave
farther
farthest
route
important
especially
traveller
central
via
south
pale
fresh
air
quickly
box
Customs
custom-house
duty
expensive
seventy-five
class
while
Holland

with him into England? Because cigars are very — in England. When do people get —? When the wind is — hard. Was it — for Storm to — seasick? Yes, it was, although he had thought it was —. Which is the shortest — to England? The route — Calais-Dover is the shortest.

EXERCISE B.

Was the weather fine when our four travellers started to sail for England? ... Why did they want to have their lunch at once? ... Why did Storm think that it was impossible for him to get seasick? ... How long does it take to go to England via the Calais-Dover route? ... Was the wind blowing harder on land than farther out at sea? ... How was it possible to tell that the wind was blowing harder farther out at sea? ... By what travellers is the Esbjerg-Harwich route especially used? ... Did Mr. Miller know all the different routes to England? ... What is understood by paying duty? ... Did Mr. Miller have to pay duty on the cigars he had brought along with him to England? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'what'.

What is white? Answer ... Question ...? The colour of a leaf is green. What is the name of the Smith boy? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith's brother is a farmer. What day is Friday? Answer ... Question ...? Sunday is a holiday. What time is it now?

Answer ... Question ...? It was ten minutes past three when I came. What did George's parents buy for him? Answer ... Question ...? They gave him a pair of skates for Christmas. What stockings did Mrs. Smith give Daisy on her birthday? Answer ... Question ...? We have pears, apples, and berries in our gardens. What do children write with at school? Answer ... Question ...? We get butter from cream. What do people drink wine from? Answer ... Question ...? Knives are used for cutting meat.

IN THE TRAIN TO LONDON

Mr. Miller and the three friends were going ashore
mɪstə mɪlə ænd ðə ˈfriː frendz wəː ɡoʊɪŋ əʃɔː

from the steamer. Just before the travellers left the
fɹəm ðə stiːmə. dʒʌst bɪfɔː ðə trævələz left ðə

a great many =
 very many



porter

to each other =
 one to the other

steamer, a great many porters came on board to take
stiːmə, ə greɪt meni ˈpɔːtəz keɪm ɔn bɔːd tə teɪk

the travellers' luggage ashore. Some of them were
ðə trævələz ˈlʌɡɪdʒ əʃɔː. sʌm əv ðəm wəː

speaking together.

spiːkɪŋ tə'geðə.

Brown: "I heard the porters talk English to each
braʊn: "aɪ hæd ðə ˈpɔːtəz tɔːk ɪŋɡlɪʃ tu iːtʃ

other; I wonder why I did not understand a word of
ʌðə; aɪ wʌndə hwaɪ aɪ dɪd nɒt ʌndə'stænd ə wɜːd əv

what they said." Mr. Miller: "I don't wonder. It
hwɒt ðeɪ sed." mɪstə mɪlə: "aɪ daʊnt wʌndə. ɪt

would have been a wonder if you had understood what
wʊd həv biːn ə wʌndə ɪf juː həd ʌndə'stʊd hwɒt

they said. I can tell you that these porters are not
ðeɪ sed. aɪ kən tel juː ðæt ðiːz ˈpɔːtəz aː nɒt

bad = not good

very good at speaking English. Their English is bad;
veri ɡʊd ət spiːkɪŋ ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ðeər ɪŋɡlɪʃ ɪz bæd;

that is why you did not understand them. An
ðæt ɪz hwaɪ juː dɪd nɒt ʌndə'stænd ðəm. ən

Englishman who speaks his language well, you would
ɪŋɡlɪʃmən hu: spi:ks hɪz læŋɡwɪdʒ wɛl, ju: wʊd

understand better."

ʌndə'stænd bɛtə."

Brown: "Are you still feeling bad, Wood? You look

braun: "a: ju: stɪl fi:lɪŋ bæd, wʊd? ju: lʊk

a little pale still. I think that the very best thing for

ə lɪtl peɪl stɪl. aɪ θɪŋk ðæt ðə vɛrɪ bɛst θɪŋ fə

you to do would be to sleep a little in the train."

ju: tə du: wʊd bi: tə sli:p ə lɪtl ɪn ðə treɪn."

Wood: "No, I am already feeling much better."

wʊd: "nəʊ, aɪ əm ɔ:l'redɪ fi:lɪŋ mʌtʃ bɛtə."

They were all glad to get ashore from the steamer.

ðeɪ wə:r ɔ:l glæd tə get ə'ʃɔ: frəm ðə sti:mə.

Brown asked Mr. Miller what they would have to do

braun a:skt mɪstə mɪlə hwɒt ðeɪ wʊd hæv tə du:

now, and he answered that first they would have to

nəʊ, ənd hi: ə:nsəd ðæt fə:st ðeɪ wʊd hæv tə

go to the custom-house to get their luggage through

ɡoʊ tə ðə kʌstəmhaʊs tə get ðeə lʌɡɪdʒ θru:

the Customs. When they got to the custom-house, they

ðə kʌstəmz. hwen ðeɪ ɡɒt tə ðə kʌstəmhaʊs, ðeɪ

were asked, "Have you anything to declare?" and at

wə:r a:skt, "hæv ju: enɪθɪŋ tə dɪ'kleə?" ənd ət

the same time they were shown a list of things on

ðə seɪm taɪm ðeɪ wə: ʃəʊn ə lɪst əv θɪŋz ɒn

which duty must be paid. Brown: "Mr. Miller, what

hwɪtʃ dʒu:ti mʌst bi: peɪd. braun: "mɪstə mɪlə, hwɒt

very good
much better
very best

The boy is **very good** at speaking English.

His brother is **much better** at it.

Their father is the **very best** at it.

He **may**, he **might**
[*mei, mait*].

We are through =
we have finished.

passport = a piece
of paper or a small
book that shows
who you are

does the word 'declare' mean?" Mr. Miller: "It means
dʌz ðə wə:d 'di'kleə' mi:n?" *mistə milə: "it mi:nz*

to tell whether you have anything to pay duty on, and
tə tel hweðə ju: hæv eniθiŋ tə pei dʒu:ti ɒn, ənd

on that piece of paper is a list of all the things on which
ɒn ðæt pi:s əv peipə iz ə list əv ɔ:l ðə θiŋz ɒn hwɪtʃ

duty must be paid." All four: "We have nothing to
dʒu:ti mʌst bi: peɪd." *ɔ:l fɔ:: "wi: hæv nʌθiŋ tə*

declare." "All right, then you may go through."
di'kleə." *"ɔ:l rait, ðen ju: mei gou þru:."*

When they came out, Mr. Miller said, "We are not
hwen ðei keɪm aʊt, mistə milə sed, "wi: a: nɒt

through yet; now we must go to the passport office. If
þru: yet; naʊ wi: mʌst gou tə ðə pɑ:spɔ:t ɔfis. if

they find our passports all right there, we may go on
ðei faɪnd aʊə pɑ:spɔ:ts ɔ:l rait ðeə, wi: mei gou ɒn

into England." As soon as they entered the office, a
intu ɪŋɡlənd." *əz su:n əz ðei entəd ði ɔfis, ə*

man took their passports and looked at them. Then he
mæn tuk ðeə pɑ:spɔ:ts ənd lʊkt æt ðəm. ðen hi:

asked, "Why have you come to England?" Mr. Miller:
a:skt, "hwaɪ hæv ju: kʌm tu ɪŋɡlənd?" mistə milə:

"We have come here for a fortnight's holidays." "Where
"wi: hæv kʌm hiə fər ə fɔ:tnaɪts hɒlɪdɪz." "hweə

are you going to?" Mr. Miller: "We are going to
a: ju: ɡoʊɪŋ tu?" mistə milə: "wi: a: ɡoʊɪŋ tə

London." "And where are you going to live?" Mr.
lʌndən." "ənd hweə a: ju: ɡoʊɪŋ tə liv?" mistə

Miller shows him a letter from which it may be seen
 milə ʃəʊz him ə letə frəm hwiʃ it mei bi: si:n

that he has ordered rooms for four at a hotel in London.
 ðæt hi: hæs ɔ:dəd ru:mz fə fɔ: ət ə haʊtel in lʌndən.

"Thank you, you may go through."

"þæŋk ju:, ju: mei ɡəʊ þru:."

As soon as they had left the passport office, they went
 əz su:n əz ðei həd left ðə pɑ:spɔ:t ɔfis, ðei went

to the train which was to take them to London. Wood:
 tə ðə treɪn hwiʃ wəz tə teɪk ðəm tə lʌndən. wʊd:

"I do not think there is so much room in this train as
 "aɪ du: nɒt þɪŋk ðeər ɪz səʊ mʌʃ ru:m in ðɪs treɪn əz

in ours at home." Mr. Miller: "No, you are right;
 in ɔʊəz ət haʊm." mɪstə milə: "nəʊ, ju: ɑ: raɪt;

the English trains are narrower than those of most
 ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ treɪnz ɑ: nəʀəʊə ðən ðəʊz əv mʌst

other countries." Storm: "But they go very fast, much
 ʌðə kʌntri:z." stɔ:m: "bʌt ðei ɡəʊ veri fɑ:st, mʌʃ

faster than ours at home." Brown: "Yes, of all the
 fɑ:stə ðən ɔʊəz ət haʊm." braʊn: "jes, əv ɔ:l ðə

trains in Europe the English go fastest, I think. At
 treɪnz in jʊərəp ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ ɡəʊ fɑ:stɪst, aɪ þɪŋk. ət

this speed we shall be in London in a short time."
 ðɪs spi:d wi: ʃəl bi: in lʌndən in ə ʃɔ:t taɪm."

Wood: "That is fine, for the steamer went very
 wʊd: "ðæt ɪz faɪn, fə ðə sti:mə went veri

slowly."

sləʊli."

fast
 faster
 fastest

The train goes
 fast.

It goes **faster** than
 ours at home.

The trains in Eng-
 land go **fastest**.

Chapter Twenty-Eight (28).

slowly
more slowly
most slowly

The steamer went **slowly**.

It went **more slowly** than last time.

It went **most slowly** twelve years ago.

very fast
very slowly
much faster
much more slowly

The trains go **very fast**.

The steamer went **very slowly**.

The trains go **much faster** than at home.

The steamer went **much more slowly** than last time.

all over = in
every place

They live on the grass = they get no other food than the grass.

Mr. Miller: "Yes, it went much more slowly than last
mistə milə: "jes, it went mʌtʃ mɔ: sləuli ðən la:st

time I came to England. But it went most slowly
taim ai keim tu ɪŋɡlənd. bʌt it went maʊst sləuli

when once, twelve years ago, I was coming to England.
hwen wʌnz, twelv jɪəz ə'ɡəʊ, ai wəz kʌmɪŋ tu ɪŋɡlənd.

Then the wind was the very strongest and the waves
ðen ðə wɪnd wəz ðə veri strɒŋɡɪst ænd ðə weɪvz

the very biggest I ever saw on a trip to England."
ðə veri bɪɡɪst ai evə sɔ: ɔn ə trɪp tu ɪŋɡlənd."

Storm: "What large fields of grass they have in this
stɔ:m: "hʌʊt la:dʒ fi:ldz əv ɡrɑ:s ðei hæv in ðis

country! And how many there are of them! Three
kʌntri! ænd haʊ meni ðeər a: əv ðəm! θri:

fields out of four have grass! And there are a great
fi:ldz aʊt əv fɔ: hæv ɡrɑ:s! ænd ðeər a: ə ɡreɪt

many sheep in some of them."
meni ʃi:p in sʌm əv ðəm."

Mr. Miller: "Yes, the English have large fields of grass
mistə milə: "jes, ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ hæv la:dʒ fi:ldz əv ɡrɑ:s

all over the country, and in many places there are sheep
ɔ:l ɒvə ðə kʌntri, ænd ɪn meni pleɪsɪz ðeər a: ʃi:p

which live on the grass." Storm: "But what about corn?
hwi:ʃ liv ɔn ðə ɡrɑ:s." stɔ:m: "bʌt hʌʊt ə'bʌʊt kɔ:n?

The people in this country cannot live on the corn
ðə pi:pl ɪn ðis kʌntri kənɒt liv ɔn ðə kɔ:n

they have in their fields. I have seen some fields
ðei hæv ɪn ðeə fi:ldz. ai hæv si:n sʌm fi:ldz

of corn from the train, but there cannot be enough for
æv kɔ:n frəm ðə treɪn, bʌt ðeə kænɒt bi: i'nʌf fə

45,000,000 people.”
fɔ:tɪ'faɪv mɪljən pi:pl.”

Mr. Miller: “When I was in England years ago, I think
mɪstə mɪlə: “hwen aɪ wəz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd jɪəz ə'ɡəʊ, aɪ ʃɪŋk

that nine fields out of ten had grass. There are now
ðət naɪn fi:ldz aʊt əv ten hæd ɡrɑ:s. ðeər a: naʊ

many more fields with corn than before. But, as you
meni mɔ: fi:ldz wɪð kɔ:n ðən bi'fɔ:. bʌt, əz ju:

say, there is not enough corn for 45,000,000 people.
seɪ, ðeər ɪz nɒt i'nʌf kɔ:n fə fɔ:tɪ'faɪv mɪljən pi:pl.

The English get much of their corn from foreign
ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ ɡet mʌtʃ əv ðeə kɔ:n frəm fɔrɪn

countries. And not only corn, but butter, eggs, and
kʌntrɪz. ənd nɒt ɒnli kɔ:n, bʌt bʌtə, eɡz, ənd

meat as well.” Wood: “But why did they have nine
mɪ:t əz wel.” wʊd: “bʌt hwaɪ dɪd ðeɪ hæv naɪn

fields out of ten with grass?”
fi:ldz aʊt əv ten wɪð ɡrɑ:s?”

Mr. Miller: “For many years, much of the land was
mɪstə mɪlə: “fə meni jɪəz, mʌtʃ əv ðə lænd wəz

in the hands of only a few people, and they were not
ɪn ðə hændz əv ɒnli ə fju: pi:pl, ənd ðeɪ wə: nɒt

much interested in growing corn. They went out
mʌtʃ ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ɡrəʊɪŋ kɔ:n. ðeɪ went aʊt

hunting in the fields and in the woods. But nowadays,
haʊntɪŋ ɪn ðə fi:ldz ənd ɪn ðə wʊdz. bʌt naʊədeɪz,

He **grows**, he **grew**,
 he has **grown**
 [ɡrəʊz, ɡru:, ɡrəʊn].

nowadays = at the
 present time

There are more people who own the land = the land is in the hands of more people.



wood

there are more people who own the land. Many of
ðeər a: mɔ: pi:pl hu: ʊn ðə lænd. meni əv

these people are interested in growing corn instead of
ði:z pi:pl a:r intristɪd ɪn ɡrəʊɪŋ kɔ:n ɪn'sted əv

having fields of grass, so there are more fields of corn
hæviŋ fi:ldz əv ɡra:s, sɔ ðeər a: mɔ: fi:ldz əv kɔ:n

than there were at one time. Then there is another
ðən ðeə wə:r ət wʌn taɪm. ðen ðeər ɪz ə'nʌðə

thing, too. From the year 1939 until the
θɪŋ, tu:. frəm ðə jɪə naɪnti:n þə:ti'nain ʌntɪl ðə

year 1945, it was very difficult for England
jɪə naɪnti:n fɔ:ti'faɪv, ɪt wəz veri dɪfɪkəlt fər ɪŋɡlənd

to get corn from other countries. It was important
tə ɡet kɔ:n frəm ʌðə kʌntriz. ɪt wəz ɪm'pɔ:tənt

for England to grow more corn, so that many of the
fər ɪŋɡlənd tə ɡrəʊ mɔ: kɔ:n, sɔ ðæt meni əv ðə

fields that had grass at one time, now have corn instead
fi:ldz ðæt həd ɡra:s ət wʌn taɪm, naʊ hæv kɔ:n ɪn'sted

of grass."

əv ɡra:s."

Wood: "Have they any woods in England?" Mr. Miller:
wʊd: "hæv ðeɪ eni wʊdz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd?" mɪstə mɪlə:

"Yes, they have a great many woods, some of them
"jes, ðeɪ hæv ə ɡreɪt meni wʊdz, sʌm əv ðəm

owned by rich people. But before 1939,
aʊnd baɪ rɪtʃ pi:pl. bʌt bɪ'fɔ: naɪnti:n þə:ti'nain,

they did not make much use of the trees in their woods.
ðeɪ dɪd nɒt meɪk mʌtʃ ju:s əv ðə tri:z ɪn ðeə wʊdz.

From 1939 to 1945 it was im-
frəm nainti:n þə:ti'nain tə nainti:n fɔ:ti'faiv it wəz im-

possible to get things from Sweden and Finland. In
'pɔsəbl tə get þɪŋz frəm swi:dn and fi'nlənd. in

those years the English had to make more use of their
ðəuz jɪəz ði ɪŋglɪʃ hæd tə meɪk mɔ: ju:s əv ðeə

own trees. I think that the English are more interested
əʊn tri:z. aɪ þɪŋk ðæt ði ɪŋglɪʃ a: mɔ:r ɪntrɪstɪd

in shooting birds and other animals in their woods."
ɪn ʃu:tiŋ bə:dz ənd əðər æniməlz ɪn ðeə wudz."

Storm: "What do they shoot with? I don't know that
stɔ:m: "hweɪt du: ðeɪ ʃu:t wið? aɪ daʊnt nəʊ ðæt

word in English." Mr. Miller: "It is called a gun. The
wɔ:d ɪn ɪŋglɪʃ." mɪstə mɪlə: "ɪt ɪz kɔ:ld ə ɡʌn. ði

English are also very interested in hunting foxes, but
ɪŋglɪʃ a:r ɔ:lsoʊ vɛrɪ ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn hantɪŋ fɔksɪz, bʌt

they do not shoot the foxes with guns."
ðeɪ du: nɒt ʃu:t ðə fɔksɪz wið ɡʌnz."

Wood: "No, I have heard that rich English people like
wud: "nəʊ, aɪ hæv hæ:d ðæt rɪtʃ ɪŋglɪʃ pi:pl laɪk

fox-hunting very much, and that they hunt the foxes
fɔkshantɪŋ vɛrɪ mʌtʃ, ənd ðæt ðeɪ hʌnt ðə fɔksɪz

on horseback with hounds, as the dogs are called which
ɒn hɔ:sbæk wið haʊndz, əz ðə dɔgz a: kɔ:ld hwi:tʃ

they use for this. They ride on their horses after the
ðeɪ ju:z fə ðɪs. ðeɪ raɪd ɒn ðeə hɔ:sɪz a:ftə ðə

fox, and the hounds run after it, too. The fox tries
fɔks, ənd ðə haʊndz rʌn a:ftər ɪt, tu:. ðə fɔks traɪz



bird

He shoots, he
shot, he has shot
[ʃu:ts, ʃɒt,
ʃɒt].



gun



fox

on horseback =
on the back of a
horse



dog

hound = dog used
for hunting

He rides, he rode,
he has ridden
[raɪdz, raʊd, rɪdn].

Chapter Twenty-Eight (28).

He **runs**, he **ran**,
he has **run**
[rʌnz, rən, rʌn].

to run away, but it cannot run so fast as the horses
tə rʌn ə'wei, bʌt it kənɒt rʌn sɒʊ fɑːst əz ðə hɔːsɪz

and the hounds, and at last it must give up running,
ænd ðə haʊndz, ænd æt lɑːst it mʌst gɪv ʌp rʌnɪŋ,

and the hounds get it."

ænd ðə haʊndz get it."

Mr. Miller: "Yes, that is right. And don't forget that
mɪstə mɪlə: "jes, ðæt ɪz raɪt. ænd daʊnt fə'get ðæt

it is only the dogs used for hunting which are called
ɪt ɪz ɒnli ðə dɒgz juːzd fə hʌntɪŋ hwiːtʃ aː kɔːld

hounds. You will find that many Englishmen like to
haʊndz. juː wɪl faɪnd ðæt meni ɪŋglɪʃmən laɪk tə

go out shooting. They go out with their guns to shoot
ɡoʊ aʊt ʃuːtɪŋ. ðeɪ ɡoʊ aʊt wɪð ðeə ɡʌnz tə ʃuːt

birds and other animals. But people go out shooting
bɜːdz ænd ʌðər ænɪməlz. bʌt piːpl ɡoʊ aʊt ʃuːtɪŋ

in every country. I have sometimes shot birds at home
ɪn evri kʌntri. aɪ hæv sʌmtaɪmz ʃɒt bɜːdz æt haʊm

myself."

maɪ'self."

Storm: "That may be so; but instead of that I would
stɔːm: "ðæt meɪ biː sɒ; bʌt ɪn'sted əv ðæt aɪ wʊd

rather take a good walk in the woods and look at the
rəːðə teɪk ə ɡʊd wɔːk ɪn ðə wʊdz ænd lʊk æt ðə

trees and the many beautiful birds."

triːz ænd ðə meni bjuːtəfʊl bɜːdz."

EXERCISE A.

When the steamer arrived in England, the travellers went —. The luggage was taken — by the —. Most of the — in England speak very — English. Storm had been — bad when the — were high out at sea, but now he was — better. Our four travellers did not have anything to — at the Customs. Before they could get into England, they had to show their — at the — office. The man at the passport office asked them several —. After they had — these, he said to them, “You — go through.”

Can the people in England — on the — from their corn fields? No, they have to get corn as well as —, —, and — from — countries. What do the English have in their fields — — corn? They have — in their fields. How do rich Englishmen go —? They ride on — and have —. The fox tries to — away, but the horses and the hounds run — than the fox. Do these Englishmen also like to go —? Yes, they — birds and other animals with their —. Had Mr. Miller — any birds himself? Yes, he sometimes went — himself, but Storm would — take a good — in the —.

EXERCISE B.

What was Brown wondering at when he heard the English porters talk to each other? ... Whom did Mr. Miller say that they would have understood better? ...

WORDS:

ashore
a great many
porter
each other
wonder (verb)
wonder
anything
bad
declare
list
may
might
on
passport office
passport
live on
grow
grew
grown
hunt
fox-hunting
fox
wood
own (verb)
nowadays
instead of
on horseback
dog
hound
ride
rode
ridden

run
ran
shoot
shot
gun
bird
room
very
all over
why
look (verb)
Englishman

Did the English trains look like those of their own country? ... What might be seen from the letter which Mr. Miller showed to the man at the passport office? ... Are there many people who own land nowadays in England? ... What do the English often use their woods for? ... Why don't the English have more corn on their land? ... What animals live on the grass of the fields? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'which'.

Which of the months of the year is the first? Answer ...
Question ...? Saturday is the last day of the week.
Which is the oldest person of our four travellers?
Answer ... Question ...? Baby is the youngest person
in the Smith family. In which of the rooms do we
take our meals? Answer ... Question ...? We get milk
from the cows, not from the sheep. Which of the four
travellers got seasick? Answer ... Question ...? John
and Helen go to school. Which do you like better, to
travel by steamer or to travel by train? Answer ...
Question ...? I like to read better than I like to write.
Which route is the shortest to England? Answer ...
Question ...? Esbjerg-Harwich, The Hook of Holland-
Harwich, and Calais-Dover are the most important
routes.

IN LONDON

Wood: "It seems to me that there are so many trains

wud: "it si:mz tə mi: ðət ðeər a: sou meni treinz

now. Every minute a train goes past us." Storm:

nau. evri minit ə trein gouz pɑ:st ʌs." stɔ:m:

"Yes, it seems that we are near London now." Mr.

"jes, it si:mz ðət wi: a: niə lʌndən nau." mistə

Miller: "We are not only near London; we are in Greater

milə: "wi: a: nɒt ounli niə lʌndən; wi: a:r in greitə

London." Brown: "I have never seen so many trains

lʌndən." braun: "aɪ hæv nevə si:n sou meni treinz

before. It seems as if there is no end to them. And

bɪ'fɔ: it si:mz əz ɪf ðeər ɪz nou end tə ðəm. ʌnd

all the trains which go in the opposite direction are

ɔ:l ðə treinz hwiʃ gou in ði ɔpəzɪt dɪ'reksən a:

so filled with people that many of them cannot find

sou fɪld wið pi:pl ðət meni əv ðəm kənɒt faɪnd

any seats and have to stand on their feet, but in the

eni si:ts ʌnd hæv tə stænd ɒn ðeə fi:t, bʌt in ðə

trains going in the same direction as we go there are

treinz goʊɪŋ in ðə seɪm dɪ'reksən əz wi: gou ðeər a:

so few people that they are almost empty."

sou fju: pi:pl ðət ðei a:r ɔ:lməʊst ɛmti."

Mr. Miller: "Yes, and no wonder! The trains going

mɪstə milə: "jes, ʌnd nou wʌndə! ðə treinz goʊɪŋ

Greater London =
London itself to-
gether with the
places near the
town

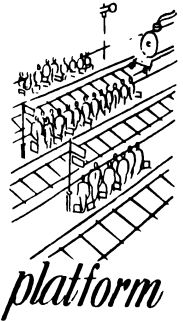
filled with =
full of

He **stands**, he
stood, he has **stood**
[stændz, stʊd, stʊd].

the trains **going**
in the same direc-
tion = the trains
which go in the
same direction

way (here) =
direction

the main stations
= the most im-
portant stations



started counting =
started to count

in the opposite direction come from London, and all
in ði ɔpəzɪt dɪ'rekʃən kʌm frəm lʌndən, ʌnd ɔ:l

the people in them are going home from work. Re-
ðə pi:pl in ðəm a: ɡoʊɪŋ haʊm frəm wə:k. ri-

member it is past five o'clock now. At this time of
'membə ɪt ɪz pɑ:st faɪv ə'klɒk naʊ. ət ðɪs taɪm əv

the day every one is leaving London, and no one is
ðə dei evri wʌn ɪz li:vɪŋ lʌndən, ʌnd noʊ wʌn ɪz

going the opposite way. That is why all the trains
ɡoʊɪŋ ði ɔpəzɪt weɪ. ðæt ɪz hwaɪ ɔ:l ðə treɪnz

going up to London are almost empty."
ɡoʊɪŋ ʌp tə lʌndən a:r ɔ:lmoʊst ɛmti."

A little later they arrived at one of the main stations
ə lɪtl leɪtə ðei ə'raɪvd ət wʌn əv ðə meɪn steɪʃənz

of London. It was a very large building. A great
əv lʌndən. ɪt wəz ə veri la:dʒ bɪldɪŋ. ə ɡreɪt

many people were standing on the platforms, waiting
meni pi:pl wə: stændɪŋ ɔn ðə plʌtʃɔ:mz, weɪtɪŋ

for their trains.
fə ðeə treɪnz.

Wood: "How many platforms do you think there are?"
wʊd: "hau meni plʌtʃɔ:mz du: ju: ʃɪŋk ðeər a:?"

Storm: "Let us try to count them." They all started
stɔ:m: "let ʌs traɪ tə kaʊnt ðəm." ðei ɔ:l sta:tɪd

counting.
kaʊntɪŋ.

Storm: "What a great number! I counted twenty-
stɔ:m: "hweɪt ə ɡreɪt nʌmbə! ɪ kaʊntɪd twenti-

four (24).” Wood: “Then you must add one to your
ˈfɔː.” *wud:* “ðen ju: mast æd wʌn tə ʃɔː

number, for I counted twenty-five (25).”
nʌmbə, fər ai kauntɪd twentiˈfaɪv.”

Storm: “Well, Brown, tell us the right number now.
stɔːm: “wel, braʊn, tel əs ðə raɪt nʌmbə naʊ.

How many did you count?” Brown: “You must add one
haʊ meni dɪd ju: kaʊnt?” *braʊn:* “ju: mast æd wʌn

to Wood’s number. I think there are twenty-six (26).”
tə wʊdz nʌmbə. ai ɪŋk ðəər a: twentiˈsɪks.”

Mr. Miller: “Well, we know that there are between
mɪstə mɪlə: “wel, wi: nəʊ ðæt ðəər a: biˈtwiːn

twenty (20) and thirty (30). Some of the main stations
twenti and þəːti. sʌm əv ðə meɪn steɪʃənz

of London — and there are eleven or twelve of them —
əv lʌndən — and ðəər a: ɪˈlevn ɔː twelv əv ðəm —

have between twenty (20) and thirty (30) platforms.”
hæv biˈtwiːn twenti and þəːti plætˈfɔːmz.”

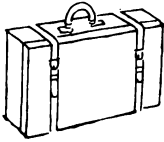
Many porters were very busy, working on the platforms.
meni pɔːtəz wəː veri bɪzi, wəːkɪŋ ɒn ðə plætˈfɔːmz.

As soon as a train stopped at a platform, some of them
əz suːn əz ə treɪn stɒpt at ə plætˈfɔːm, sʌm əv ðəm

were ready to take the travellers’ luggage, and already
wəː redi tə teɪk ðə trævələz lʌɡɪdʒ, and ɔːlˈredi

before the train of our four travellers had stopped, one
bɪˈfɔː ðə treɪn əv ʌʊə fɔː trævələz həd stɒpt, wʌn

had got into it. He came up to them and asked them if
həd ɡɒt ɪntu ɪt. hiː keɪm ʌp tə ðəm and ɑːskt ðəm ɪf



bag

off = down from

He **builds**, he **built**,
he has **built** [*bildz*,
bilt, *bilt*].

he might help them to carry their luggage.

hi: mait help ðəm tə kəri ðeə lʌɡɪdʒ.

Mr. Miller: "No, thank you, we have only one bag each,
mɪstə mɪlə: "nou, θæŋk ju:, wi: hæv ounli wʌn bæɡ i:tʃ,

so we can easily carry them without your help." When
sou wi: kən i:zɪli kəri ðəm wið'aʊt jɔ: help." hwen

they had got off the train, Mr. Miller said, "Now we
ðei həd ɡɒt ɔ:f ðə treɪn, mɪstə mɪlə sed, "naʊ wi:

will go by an Underground train to the part of London
wɪl ɡoʊ baɪ ən ʌndəɡraʊnd treɪn tə ðə pɑ:t əv lʌndən

where our hotel is." Wood: "Underground? What does
hwɛər aʊə hoʊ'tel ɪz." wʊd: "ʌndəɡraʊnd? hwɒt dʌz

that mean?"

ðæt mi:n?"

Mr. Miller: "The Underground is a railway which is
mɪstə mɪlə: "ði ʌndəɡraʊnd ɪz ə reɪlweɪ hwɪtʃ ɪz

built under the streets and buildings of London. You
bɪlt ʌndə ðə stri:tɪz ænd bɪldɪŋz əv lʌndən. ju:

can go to many places in London by Underground."
kən ɡoʊ tə menɪ pleɪsɪz ɪn lʌndən baɪ ʌndəɡraʊnd."

Wood: "Isn't it a wonder to think that they can build
wʊd: "ɪznt ɪt ə wʌndə tə θɪŋk ðæt ðei kən bɪld

railways under the streets and buildings of a large city?"
reɪlweɪz ʌndə ðə stri:tɪz ænd bɪldɪŋz əv ə la:dʒ sɪti?"

Just then a train arrived at the Underground station.
dʒʌst ðen ə treɪn ə'raɪvd ət ði ʌndəɡraʊnd steɪʃən.

Wood: "There is a train. Let us run." He began to
wʊd: "ðeər ɪz ə treɪn. let ʌs rʌn." hi: bɪ'ɡæn tə

run along the platform, but it was too late. Just before
ran ə'ləŋ ðə plətfɔ:m, bʌt ɪt wəz tu: leɪt. dʒʌst bɪ'fɔ:

he got to the door, it closed, and off the train went.
hi: gɒt tə ðə dɔ:, ɪt kləʊzd, ənd ɔ:f ðə treɪn wɛnt.

Wood: "Oh, I am sorry that we were late for it; now
wʊd: "ou, aɪ əm sɔ:ri ðæt wi: wə: leɪt fər ɪt; naʊ

we must wait for the next train." Mr. Miller: "You
wi: mʌst weɪt fə ðə nekst treɪn." mɪstə mɪlə: "ju:

need not be sorry about that. We shall not have to
ni:d nɒt bi: sɔ:ri ə'baʊt ðæt. wi: ʃəl nɒt hæv tə

wait very long." Two minutes later another train
weɪt veri lɔŋ." tu: mɪnɪts leɪtə ə'nʌðə treɪn

arrived. When they had got into it, Brown tried to
ə'raɪvd. hwen ðeɪ həd gɒt ɪntu ɪt, braʊn traɪd tə

close the door, but Mr. Miller said, "You need not close
kləʊz ðə dɔ:, bʌt mɪstə mɪlə sed, "ju: ni:d nɒt kləʊz

it; the doors close of themselves." The train was so
ɪt; ðə dɔ:z kləʊz əv ðəm'selvz." ðə treɪn wəz sʊ

filled with people that there were no seats empty.
fɪld wɪð pi:pl ðæt ðeə wə: nəʊ si:ts ɛmptɪ.

Mr. Miller and the three young men had to stand, but
mɪstə mɪlə ənd ðə θri: jʌŋ men həd tə stænd, bʌt

it was only for a few minutes. They soon arrived at
ɪt wəz ɒnli fər ə fju: mɪnɪts. ðeɪ su:n ə'raɪvd ət

Tottenham Court Road Station, where they got off the
tɒtnəm kɔ:t rəʊd steɪʃən, hweə ðeɪ gɒt ɔ:f ðə

train. As the hotel was only five minutes from the
treɪn. əz ðə həʊ'tel wəz ɒnli faɪv mɪnɪts frəm ðə

station, they decided to walk. While they were walking
steifən, ðei di'saidid tə wɔ:k. hwail ðei wə: wɔ:kiŋ

along, the three young men told Mr. Miller that now
ə'lɔŋ, ðə ˈpri: jʌŋ men tould mistə milə ðət naʊ

they found that they understood much of the language.
ðei faʊnd ðət ðei ʌndə'stud mʌtʃ əv ðə læŋgwidʒ.

While they were standing in the Underground train,
hwail ðei wə: stændiŋ in ði ʌndəgraʊnd treɪn,

they had heard some people from an office talking
ðei həd hə:d sʌni pi:pl frəm ən ɔfis tɔ:kiŋ

together, and they had understood most of what they
tə'geðə, ənd ðei həd ʌndə'stud mʌʊst əv hwɔt ðei

said. Mr. Miller: "That was what I told you. Many
sed. mistə milə: "ðæt wəz hwɔt ai tould ju:. meni

porters speak bad English, and that is very difficult
pɔ:təz spi:k bæd ɪŋglɪʃ, ənd ðæt iz veri difɪkəlt

as spoken = in the
way in which it is
spoken

for you to understand, but English as spoken by people
fə ju: tu ʌndə'stænd, bʌt ɪŋglɪʃ əz spəʊkən baɪ pi:pl

working in an office, for example, will not be so difficult.
wə:kiŋ in ən ɔfis, fə ɪg'zɑ:mpl, wɪl nɒt bi: sʊ difɪkəlt.

You will soon find that you can understand very much
ju: wɪl su:n faɪnd ðət ju: kən ʌndə'stænd veri mʌtʃ

of what they say."
əv hwɔt ðei sei."

EXERCISE A.

It — to Wood that a train went — them every minute. The trains which went in the same — as theirs were almost —, but the ones which went in the — direction were — with people. The trains were so full of people that there were not — enough for all, so that many had to — on their feet. The train arrived at one of the — stations of London. When they tried to — the platforms, they got different —. The porters helped people to carry their luggage, but Mr. Miller and the three young men had only one — each, so they did not need any —. The — is a railway which is — under the streets and buildings of London. The doors of the Underground trains — of themselves. Why did Wood run — the platform? Because a train had just —, and he wanted to get into the train. What were the young men talking to Mr. Miller about — they were walking to the hotel? They were talking about the way in which English is — by different people.

EXERCISE B.

Are there many people going up to London after five o'clock? ... Did they arrive at a small station in London? ... What do porters do? ... Did the young men and their teacher need any help with their luggage? ... How did they get from the main station to their hotel? ... What was Wood sorry to find? ... Why did they not have to close the doors of the Underground train? ... Why did they all have to stand in the Underground

WORDS:

seem
past
opposite
direction
filled
seat
stand
stood
main
platform
count
number
add
stop
help (verb)
help
bag
carry
Underground
along
close
sorry
no one
off
building
build
built
under

train? ... Is English as spoken by the English porters easy to understand? ... Where is the Underground built? ... How many platforms were there at the main station where they arrived? ... How did the young men find out the number of platforms? ...

EXERCISE C.

**How to ask and answer questions with 'what'
or 'which'.**

What was the idea that Brown got when he was walking home from his work? Answer ... Question ...? The idea that Mr. Miller had been thinking of was to speak English always when they were together. Which did Brown smoke, a pipe or a cigarette? Answer ... Question ...? July is the best month to go to England. What did John and Helen take along to the lake? Answer ... Question ...? John's parents gave him a book and a football for his birthday. Which of the shirts did George get, the ones with broad stripes or the ones with narrow stripes? Answer ... Question ...? The younger children write with pencils. What museum were they going to see? Answer ... Question ...? Mrs. Smith was going to put on her new frock for Daisy's birthday-party. Which of the people they heard spoke bad English, the porters or the people working in offices? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Miller and the three young men had to stand. In what way did they get from the Underground to the hotel? Answer ... Question ...? They got off the Underground train at Tottenham Court Road Station.

AT THE HOTEL

Mr. Miller: "We are now in the street where our hotel
mistə milə: "wi: a: nau in ðə stri:t hweər auə hau'tel

is. All the buildings we have passed the last three or
iz. ɔ:l ðə bildiŋz wi: hæv pɑ:st ðə la:st θri: ɔ:

four minutes, are hotels. This part of the town is well
fɔ: minits, a: hau'telz. ðis pɑ:t əv ðə taun iz wel

known for its many cheap hotels. It is called Blooms-
noun fər its meni tʃi:p hau'telz. it iz kɔ:ld blu:mz-

bury and is situated between the West End and the
bəri ænd iz sitʃueitid bi'twi:n ðə west end ænd ðə

City. It is an advantage for travellers to live at a
siti. it iz ən əd'vɑ:ntidʒ fə trævələz tə liv at ə

hotel in this part of London, because they can get to
hou'tel in ðis pɑ:t əv lʌndən, bi'kɔ:z ðei kən get tə

the big shops and the cinemas and theatres of the West
ðə big ʃɔ:pz ænd ðə siniməz ænd θiətəz əv ðə west

End quickly, and they also have the advantage of being
end kwikli, ænd ðei ɔ:lsoʊ hæv ði əd'vɑ:ntidʒ əv bi:ɪŋ

able to get to the offices in the City easily. That was
eibl tə get tə ði ɔ:fisiz in ðə siti i:zili. ðæt wəz

why I chose this hotel the first time I came to London.
hwaɪ ai tʃəʊz ðis hau'tel ðə fə:st taim ai keɪm tə lʌndən.

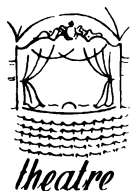
I had to choose between several hotels, situated in
ai hæd tə tʃu:z bi'twi:n sevrəl hau'telz, sitʃueitid in

to pass = to go
past

it is situated =
its place is

the City = the
central part of
London

It is an advantage
for you = it is
better for you.



the advantage of
being able = the
advantage **to be**
able

He **chooses**, he
chose, he has
chosen [tʃu:ziz,
tʃəʊz, tʃəʊzn].

Chapter Thirty (30).

a good friend of
mine

a good friend of
yours

a good friend of
ours, etc.

to reply = to
answer

I reply,
he replies,
he replied,
but: replying.

different parts of the town, and I thought this the best
difrənt pɑ:ts əv ðə taʊn, ənd aɪ þɔ:t ðɪs ðə best

one to choose. A good friend of mine had recommended
wʌn tə tʃu:z. ə gud frend əv maɪn həd rekə'mendɪd

it very much, and since then I have recommended it
ɪt veri mʌtʃ, ənd sɪns ðen aɪ həv rekə'mendɪd ɪt

myself to people who were going to England, as it is
maɪ'self tə pi:pl hu: wə: ɡəʊɪŋ tu ɪŋɡlənd, əz ɪt ɪz

a good hotel, and very cheap, too. In this way I have
ə gud həʊ'tel, ənd veri tʃi:p, tu:. ɪn ðɪs weɪ aɪ həv

become good friends with the hotel-keeper. But here
bɪ'kʌm gud frendz wɪð ðə həʊ'telki:pə. bʌt hɪə

you see the hotel."

ju: si: ðə həʊ'tel."

They went inside, and the hotel-keeper, who was sitting
ðeɪ went 'ɪn'saɪd, ənd ðə həʊ'telki:pə, hu: wəz sɪtɪŋ

in his office, greeted Mr. Miller, saying, "Good evening,
ɪn hɪz ɔfɪs, ɡri:tɪd mɪstə mɪlə, seɪɪŋ, "ɡud i:vniŋ,

Mr. Miller, I am glad to see you in London." Then he
mɪstə mɪlə, aɪ əm ɡlæd tə si: ju: ɪn lʌndən." ðen hɪ:

greeted the three young men with the words, "How
ɡri:tɪd ðə þri: jʌŋ men wɪð ðə wə:dz, "haʊ-

do you do, gentlemen, I am glad to see you, too."
dʒu'du:, dʒentlmən, aɪ əm ɡlæd tə si: ju:, tu:."

To Mr. Miller's question about their rooms he replied,
tə mɪstə mɪləz kwestʃən ə'baut ðeə ru:mz hɪ: rɪ'plaɪd,

"Your two rooms are ready, Mr. Miller, a single room
"jɔ: tu: ru:mz a: redɪ, mɪstə mɪlə, ə sɪŋɡl ru:m

for you, and a double room for your three friends.
fə ju:, ənd ə dʌbl ru:m fə jɔ: pri: frendz.

single room =
room for one person

I have put an extra bed into the double room, as you
aɪ hæv put ən ekstrə bed intə ðə dʌbl ru:m, əz ju:

double room =
room for two persons

asked me to.” To the three others he explained,
a:skt mi: tu.” tə ðə pri: ʌðəz hi: ɪks'pleɪnd,

“Mr. Miller wanted me to make it as cheap as possible,
“mɪstə mɪlə wɒntɪd mi: tə meɪk ɪt əz tʃi:p əz pɒsəbl,

and because we are good friends, I agreed to put you
ənd bɪ'kɔ:z wi: a: gud frendz, aɪ ə'grɪ:d tə put ju:

all in a double room and then give you a cheaper price.
ɔ:l ɪn ə dʌbl ru:m ənd ðen gɪv ju: ə tʃi:pə praɪs.

I have never agreed to do that before; therefore I must
aɪ hæv nevər ə'grɪ:d tə du: ðæt bɪ'fɔ:; ðeəfɔ:r aɪ mʌst

to agree to = to
say 'yes' to

ask you not to speak about it to other people.”
a:sk ju: nɒt tə spi:k ə'baʊt ɪt tu ʌðə pi:pl.”

Mr. Miller: “We had better go to our rooms now to
mɪstə mɪlə: “wi: həd betə ɡoʊ tu ʌʊə ru:mz naʊ tə

wash, and then we should like to have something to eat.
wɒʃ, ənd ðen wi: ʃʊd laɪk tə hæv sʌmθɪŋ tu i:t.

When is dinner?”
hwen ɪz dɪnə?”

Hotel-keeper: “Dinner is served between seven and
hou'telki:pə: “dɪnər ɪz sə:vɪd bɪ'twi:n sevn ənd

eight-thirty (8.30). While we are speaking of meals,
'eɪt'θɜ:ti. hwaɪl wi: a: spi:kɪŋ əv mi:lz,

breakfast is served between eight and ten, and lunch
brekfəst ɪz sə:vɪd bɪ'twi:n eɪt ənd ten, ənd ʌnʃ

is served from twelve to two. If you would like a cup
iz sə:vəd frəm twelv tə tu: . if ju: wud laik ə kʌp
of tea early in the morning when you get up, you can
əv ti: ə:li in ðə mɔ:nɪŋ hwen ju: get ʌp, ju: kən
easily have one. But perhaps you do not want to
i:zili hæv wʌn. bʌt pə'hæps ju: du: nɒt wɒnt tə
get up early while you are here? What do you say,
get ʌp ə:li hwail ju: a: hiə? hwɒt du: ju: sei,
gentlemen, do you want to get up early or late in the
dʒentlmən, du: ju: wɒnt tə get ʌp ə:li ɔ: leɪt in ðə
morning?"
mɔ:nɪŋ?"

Mr. Miller: "We want to see as much as possible while
mɪstə mɪlə: "wi: wɒnt tə si: əz mʌʃ əz pɒsəbl hwail
we are here; therefore we shall get up early in the
wi: a: hiə; ðəfɔ: wi: ʃəl get ʌp ə:li in ðə
morning." Hotel-keeper: "Then you can have an early
mɔ:nɪŋ." hɒu'telki:pə: "ðen ju: kən hæv ən ə:li
cup of tea if you like. Many Englishmen like to have
kʌp əv ti: if ju: laik. meni ɪŋglɪʃmən laik tə hæv
that." Brown: "That would be a good idea. We should
ðæt." braʊn: "ðæt wud bi: ə gud aɪ'diə. wi: ʃʊd
like to live as far as possible as the English do."
laɪk tə li:v əz fɑ:r əz pɒsəbl əz ði ɪŋglɪʃ du:."
Hotel-keeper: "All right, now I will call the porter and
hɒu'telki:pə: "ɔ:l rait, naʊ aɪ wɪl kɔ:l ðə pɔ:tə ənd
tell him to take your bags up to your rooms."
tɛl hɪm tə teɪk jɔ: bægz ʌp tə jɔ: ru:mz."

They were glad to see that they had got a nice large
ðei wə: glæd tə si: ðæt ðei həd gɒt ə naɪs la:dʒ

double room with hot and cold running water. Wood:
dʌbl ru:m wið hɒt ænd kəʊld rʌnɪŋ wɔ:tə. wud:

"Well, this is going to be our home for the next two
"wel, ðis ɪz ɡəʊɪŋ tə bi: əʊə haʊm fə ðə nekst tu:

weeks. It is nice here, isn't it?"
wi:ks. ɪt ɪz naɪs hɪə, ɪznt ɪt?"

Storm: "Yes, and a nice hotel-keeper, too. I think it
stɔ:m. "jes, ænd ə naɪs haʊtelki:pə, tu:. aɪ θɪŋk ɪt

very nice of him to give us a cheaper price, because we
veri naɪs əv hɪm tə ɡɪv ʌs ə tʃi:pə praɪs, bɪ'kɔ:z wi:

are all three in one room, when he has never agreed
a:r ɔ:l θri: ɪn wʌn ru:m, hwen hi: həz nevə ə'ɡri:d

to that before."
tə ðæt bɪ'fɔ:."

Brown went to the window and was surprised when
braʊn went tə ðə wɪndəʊ ænd wəz sə'praɪzd hwen

he looked out of it. "Well, one would not think this
hi: lʊkt aʊt əv ɪt. "wel, wʌn wʊd nɒt θɪŋk ðis

was London. I thought that we should have had a
wəz lʌndən. aɪ θɔ:t ðæt wi: ʃʊd hæv həd ə

view from our window of streets full of people, and
vju: frəm əʊə wɪndəʊ əv stri:tʃ fʊl əv pi:pl, ænd

that there would be high buildings in all directions.
ðæt ðeə wʊd bi: haɪ bɪldɪŋz ɪn ɔ:l dɪ'rekʃənz.

Come and have a look at it." Wood: "Yes, I must say
kʌm ænd hæv ə lʊk ət ɪt." wʊd: "jes, aɪ mʌst sei

this is very surprising. How beautiful the view is!"
ðis iz veri sə'praiziŋ. hau bju:təful ðə vju: iz!"

It is no wonder that the three friends were surprised
it iz nou wʌndə ðət ðə pri: frendz wə: sə'praizd

at the view from their window. It was a garden with
ət ðə vju: frəm ðeə windou. it wəz ə ɡa:dn wið

tall trees, and everything was so quiet that it was
tɔ:l tri:tz, ənd evriθiŋ wəz sou kwaɪət ðət it wəz

difficult for them to understand that they were in
dɪfɪkəlt fə ðəm tu ʌndə'stænd ðət ðei wə:r in

London, the largest city in the world.

lʌndən, ðə lɑ:dʒɪst sɪti in ðə wɜ:ld.

Brown: "I think we shall sleep well to-night. It is so
braʊn: "aɪ θɪŋk wi: ʃəl sli:p wel tə'naɪt. it iz sou

When you work
much, you get
tired.

quiet here, and I must say that I am a little tired after
kwaɪət hiə, ənd aɪ mʌst sei ðət aɪ əm ə lɪtl taɪəd ɑ:ftə

having travelled all day."

hæviŋ trævld ɔ:l dei."

When you have
not slept for a
long time, you get
sleepy.

Storm: "Yes, I am both tired and sleepy. Wouldn't it
stɔ:m: "jes, aɪ əm boʊp taɪəd ənd sli:pi. wʊdnt it

be a good idea to go to bed shortly after dinner, and
bi: ə ɡʊd aɪ'diə tə ɡəʊ tə bed ʃɔ:tli ɑ:ftə dɪnə, ənd

then get up early to-morrow morning? I think Mr. Miller
ðen ɡet ʌp ɜ:li tə'mɒrəʊ mɔ:nɪŋ? aɪ θɪŋk mɪstə mɪlə

will agree with us in that."

wɪl ə'ɡri: wið ʌs in ðæt."

And he was right. An hour and a half later they were
ənd hi: wəz raɪt. ən aʊər ənd ə hɑ:f leɪtə ðei wə:r

all in their beds, happy, but tired.

ɔ:l in ðeə bedz, hæpi, bʌt taɪəd.

EXERCISE A.

On their way to the hotel Mr. Miller and his pupils — many buildings, all of them —. Their hotel was — between the West End and the —. Mr. Miller had — that hotel because it was good and —. In the West End there are many cinemas and —. The hotel-keeper — Mr. Miller, saying, “Good evening, I am — to — you in London.” What did the — reply when Mr. Miller asked about their rooms? He — that a — room was ready for Mr. Miller and a — room for his friends. Did the hotel-keeper tell them when the meals were —? Yes, and he said that they might have a cup of tea — in the morning if they liked. Was it a — large room that the three young men got? Yes, and they had a beautiful — from their window. Were they — and sleepy after having — all day? Yes, and therefore they — to go to bed — after dinner.

EXERCISE B.

Where was the hotel situated? ... What is Bloomsbury known for? ... Why is it an advantage to live at a hotel in Bloomsbury? ... Who had recommended the hotel to Mr. Miller? ... When was dinner served? ... Why were they surprised at the view from their window? ... What did they do after dinner? ... Where are the biggest shops in London situated? ... How had

WORDS:

pass
situated
advantage
theatre
choose
chose
chosen
recommend
hotel-keeper
greet
single
double
reply
agree
serve
early
nice
surprise
view
tired
therefore
sleepy
shortly

Mr. Miller become good friends with the hotel-keeper? ... Where was the hotel-keeper when Mr. Miller and the three young men arrived at the hotel? ... What rooms did Mr. Miller and his friends get? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'who', 'whom', 'whose', or 'which'.

Who is John's uncle? Answer ... Question ...? The sister of Helen's mother is her aunt. Which is the oldest person in the Smith family? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Miller is the cleverest at English of our four travellers. Who lives in the country? Answer ... Question ...? The French live in France. Which of the girls in the Smith family is ten years old? Answer ... Question ...? The boy John fell through the ice. Whom did Mr. Smith give a football on his last birthday? Answer ... Question ...? Mrs. Smith gave Daisy a pair of silk stockings on her birthday. Which of you will bring me to-day's newspaper? Answer ... Question ...? I will give you a cigar. Whose house was situated in the country? Answer ... Question ...? Mr. Smith's house was situated in the town.

SHOPPING IN LONDON

The next morning when they were having their break-
ðə nekst mɔ:nɪŋ hwen ðei wə: hæviŋ ðeə brek-

fast, they discussed what to do on their first day.
fast, ðei dis'kʌst hwɒt tə du: ɔn ðeə fə:st dei.

When they had discussed the question for some time,
hwen ðei həd dis'kʌst ðə kwestʃən fə sʌm taɪm,

they agreed to take a long walk through the streets
ðei ə'gri:d tə teɪk ə lɔŋ wɔ:k þru: ðə stri:t

of the West End to look at the shops and perhaps go
əv ðə west end tə luk ət ðə ʃɒps ənd pə'hæps ɡoʊ

shopping themselves. They walked down Charing
ʃɒpiŋ ðəm'selvz. ðei wɔ:kt daʊn tʃəriŋ

to shop = to go
 buying things in
 shops

Cross Road, a street which is well known for its many
krɒs rəʊd, ə stri:t hwɪtʃ ɪz wel nəʊn fər ɪts menɪ

second-hand book-shops.

sekəndhænd bukfɒps.

"You understand," Mr. Miller explained to them,
"ju: ʌndə'stænd," mɪstə mɪlə ɪks'pleɪnd tə ðəm,

"that you can only buy books second-hand in these
"ðæt ju: kən ɔnli baɪ buks 'sekənd'hænd ɪn ði:z

book-shops. The books have already been bought once
bukfɒps. ðə buks həv ɔ:l'redi bi:n bɔ:t wʌnz

and read by people, and then sold by them to these
ənd red baɪ pi:pl, ənd ðen səʊld baɪ ðəm tə ði:z

second-hand book-shops. People are only able to get
sekandhænd bukʃɔps. pi:pl a:r ounli eibl tə get

a very low price when they sell second-hand books in
a veri lou prais hwen ðei sel sekandhænd buks in
 this way to a book-shop.”
ðis wei tu ə bukʃɔp.”

They stopped to look at some of the books which had
ðei stɔpt tə luk ət sam əv ðə buks hwɪtʃ həd
 been put into large boxes outside the shops, and were
bi:n put intə la:dʒ bɔksɪz 'aʊt'saɪd ðə ʃɔps, ənd wə:

pleased = glad

pleased to find some in their own language.
pli:zd tə faɪnd sam in ðeər oun læŋgwidʒ.

special = great
and important

The shops with foreign stamps, of which there are a
ðə ʃɔps wɪð fɔrɪn stæmps, əv hwɪtʃ ðeər a: ə
 great number, were of special interest to Wood and
greɪt nʌmbə, wə:r əv speʃəl ɪntrɪst tə wʊd ənd

Storm, who had collected stamps for several years.
stɔ:m, hu: həd kə'lektɪd stæmps fə severəl jɪəz.

“When I started collecting stamps,” said Wood, “I had
“hwen ai stɑ:tɪd kə'lektɪŋ stæmps,” sed wʊd, “ai həd

at first a collection of about a hundred. Since then
ət fɜ:st ə kə'lektʃən əv ə'baut ə haʊdrəd. sɪns ðen

it has grown from year to year, and now I have a
ɪt hæz grəʊn frəm jɪə tə jɪə, ənd naʊ ai hæv ə

collection of about 8,000 stamps. However, I do
kə'lektʃən əv ə'baut eɪt ʃaʊzənd stæmps. haʊ'evə, ai du:

not think it will grow very much during the next few
nɒt θɪŋk ɪt wɪl grəʊ veri mʌtʃ dʒuərɪŋ ðə nekst fju:



stamp

however = but

years, because I shall not have so much time to spend
jɪəz, bi'kɔ:z ai ʃəl nɒt hæv sɔʊ mʌtʃ taɪm tə spænd

on it. During my first few years as a stamp collector,
ɒn ɪt. dʒuəriŋ maɪ fə:st fju: jɪəz əz ə stæmp kə'lektə,

I spent a great part of my time looking at my old
ai spent ə greɪt pɑ:t əv maɪ taɪm lʊkɪŋ ət maɪ ould

stamps and going to the stamp shops for new ones;
stæmps ænd goʊɪŋ tə ðə stæmp ʃɒps fə nju: wʌnz;

and, therefore, my collection grew very rapidly.

ænd, ðeəfɔ:, maɪ kə'leksən gru: veri ræpɪdli.

rapidly = quickly

“At school, two of my schoolfellows and I were so

“ət sku:l, tu: əv maɪ sku:l'feləʊz ænd ai wə: sɔʊ

interested in our foreign stamps that we almost forgot

ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn əʊə fɔ:ɪn stæmps ðət wi: ɔ:l'məʊst fə'ɡɒt

our school work. In the afternoon we three school-

əʊə sku:l wə:k. ɪn ðɪ 'a:ftə'nu:n wi: θri: sku:l-

fellows used to go to the shops near our homes to look

feləʊz ju:st tə ɡəʊ tə ðə ʃɒps niə əʊə haʊmz tə lʊk

He used to go =
he often went.

at the latest foreign stamps and buy as many as we

ət ðə leɪtɪst fɔ:ɪn stæmps ænd baɪ əz meni əz wi:

could afford. But now I cannot spend so much time

kʊd ə'fɔ:d. bʌt naʊ ai kənɒt spænd sɔʊ mʌtʃ taɪm

on my collection, although I am still a very interested

ɒn maɪ kə'leksən, ɔ:l'ðəʊ ai əm stɪl ə veri ɪntrɪstɪd

collector. I see they have the latest stamps from

kə'lektə. ai si: ðeɪ hæv ðə leɪtɪst stæmps frəm

our country in this shop, but the prices are higher

əʊə kʌntri ɪn ðɪs ʃɒp, bʌt ðə praɪsɪz a: haɪə



Piccadilly = a street in the West End

consequently = therefore

than at home.”
ðən at haʊm.”

When they had walked for some time, they came to
hwen ðei həd wɔ:kt fə sʌm taɪm, ðei keɪm tə

Shaftesbury Avenue, a road running both ways from
ʃa:ftsbəri ævɪnju:, ə rəʊd rʌnɪŋ bəʊb weɪz frəm

Charing Cross Road. Wood: “Shall we turn to the
tʃærɪŋ krɒs rəʊd. wʊd: “ʃəl wi: tə:n tə ðə

left here, down this street?”
left hiə, daʊn ðɪs stri:t?”

Mr. Miller: “No, I think we will turn to the right.
mɪstə mɪlə: “nəʊ, aɪ θɪŋk wi: wɪl tə:n tə ðə raɪt.

Both the street on our left and the street on our right
bəʊb ðə stri:t ɒn əʊə left ænd ðə stri:t ɒn əʊə raɪt

are parts of Shaftesbury Avenue. If we turn to the
ɑ: pɑ:ts əv ʃa:ftsbəri ævɪnju:. ɪf wi: tə:n tə ðə

left, we shall soon get back to the hotel again. There-
left, wi: ʃəl su:n get bæk tə ðə haʊ'tel ə'geɪn. ðeə-

fore we will turn to the right, which will take us to
fɔ: wi: wɪl tə:n tə ðə raɪt, hwɪtʃ wɪl teɪk əs tə

Piccadilly.”
pɪkə'dɪli.”

Consequently, they now turned to the right, down
kɒnsɪkwəntli, ðei naʊ tə:nd tə ðə raɪt, daʊn

Shaftesbury Avenue. In this part of the town they
ʃa:ftsbəri ævɪnju:. ɪn ðɪs pɑ:t əv ðə taʊn ðei

noticed that they passed cinema after cinema, and
nəʊtɪst ðæt ðei pɑ:st sɪnɪmə ɑ:ftə sɪnɪmə, ænd

Mr. Miller told his pupils that this part of the town
mɪstə mɪlə təʊld hɪz ˈpjuːplz ðæt ðɪs ˈpɑːt əv ðə taʊn

is so full of cinemas and theatres that the Londoners
ɪz səʊ fʊl əv sɪnɪməs ənd ˈθiətəz ðæt ðə ˈlʌndənəz

often call it theatre-land.

ɔːfn kɔːl ɪt ˈθiətələnd.

When they got to Piccadilly, they noticed one shop
hwen ðeɪ ɡɒt tə ˈpɪkəˈdɪli, ðeɪ nəʊtɪst wʌn ʃɒp

after another with shirts, ties, socks, etc. They spent
ɑːftər əˈnʌðə wɪð ʃəːts, taɪz, sɒks, ɪˈsetrə. ðeɪ spent

a long time going from window to window, looking at
ə lɔŋ taɪm ɡəʊɪŋ frəm wɪndəʊ tə wɪndəʊ, lʊkɪŋ ət

all the different articles.

ɔːl ðə dɪfrənt ɑːtɪklz.

Storm: "What nice things they have in these shops!"

stɔːm: "hʌwət naɪs θɪŋz ðeɪ hæv ɪn ðiːz ʃɒps!"

Have you noticed that shirt over there, Brown; how

hæv juː nəʊtɪst ðæt ʃəːt ɒvə ðeə, braʊn; haʊ

do you like it? I think I will go in and buy it."

duː juː laɪk ɪt? aɪ θɪŋk aɪ wɪl ɡəʊ ɪn ənd baɪ ɪt."

Mr. Miller: "No, you had better not, Storm. Money

mɪstə mɪlə: "nəʊ, juː həd bɛtə nɒt, stɔːm. mʌni

for buying shirts is not included in the fifteen pounds

fə baɪɪŋ ʃəːts ɪz nɒt ɪnˈkluːdɪd ɪn ðə fɪftiːn paʊndz

we are going to spend in England. These shirts, and

wɪː aː ɡəʊɪŋ tə spend ɪn ɪŋɡlənd. ðiːz ʃəːts, ənd

all the other articles you see in the shops in Piccadilly,

ɔːl ðɪ ʌðər ɑːtɪklz juː siː ɪn ðə ʃɒps ɪn ˈpɪkəˈdɪli,

a Londoner = a
 person living in
 London

articles = things
 in a shop

You had better not
 do it = it is better
 for you not to do
 it.

are very expensive.”

a: veri iks'pensiv.”

Some time later Brown asked whether they were near

sam taim leita braun a:skt hwedə dei wə: niə

Bond Street, as, he said, he took a special interest in

bond stri:t, əz, hi: sed, hi: tuk ə spesəl intrist in

seeing that street.

si:ɪŋ ðæt stri:t.

Mr. Miller: “Well, Bond Street was not included in

mistə milə: “wel, bond stri:t wəz nɒt in'kludid in

our plans for to-day, but we can pass through it to

auə plænz fə tə'dei, bʌt wi: kən pɑ:s þru: it tu

Oxford Street.”

ɒksfəd stri:t.”

The three friends were surprised to see the shops in

ðə θri: frendz wə: sə'praɪzd tə si: ðə ʃɒps in

Bond Street. Many of them were tailors' shops. Mr.

bond stri:t. meni əv ðəm wə: teɪləz ʃɒps. mistə

Miller: “This is a street especially for men's shopping.

milə: “ðis ɪz ə stri:t ɪs'peʃəli fə menz ʃɒpɪŋ.

The best tailors in London have their shops in this

ðə best teɪləz in lʌndən hæv ðeə ʃɒps in ðis

street. But you will notice that no prices are shown

stri:t. bʌt ju: wɪl nəʊtɪs ðæt nəʊ praɪsɪz a: ʃəʊn

on the suits of clothes you see in the windows, and I

ɒn ðə sju:t əv kləʊðz ju: si: in ðə wɪndəʊz, ənd aɪ

will tell you the reason. If you buy a suit of clothes at

wɪl tel ju: ðə ri:zn. ɪf ju: baɪ ə sju:t əv kləʊðz ət



a tailor's in Bond Street, you will have to pay him
a teiləz in bɒnd stri:t, ju: wil hæv tə pei him

about twenty guineas for it. 'Out of the twenty guineas
ə'baʊt twenti ɡɪniz fɔ:r it. aʊt əv ðə twenti ɡɪniz

ten, I think, will pay for the suit itself; the other ten
ten, ai ɪŋk, wil pei fə ðə sju:t ɪt'self; ði ʌðə ten

you pay for the name of 'Bond Street'. You see that
ju: pei fə ðə neɪm əv 'bɒnd stri:t'. ju: si: ðæt

there are good reasons why you should not buy your
ðeər a: ɡʊd ri:znz hwaɪ ju: ʃʊd nɒt baɪ jɔ:

clothes here. However, you must not think that most
kləʊðz hiə. haʊ'evə, ju: mʌst nɒt ɪŋk ðæt mʌst

Londoners buy their clothes at a Bond Street tailor's;
lɒndənəz baɪ ðeə kləʊðz ət ə bɒnd stri:t teɪləz;

only people with lots of money go shopping here. But
əʊnli pi:pl wið lɒts əv mʌni ɡoʊ ʃɒpɪŋ hiə. bʌt

now I will take you to Selfridge's, one of the biggest
nəʊ ai wil teɪk ju: tə selfrɪdʒɪz, wʌn əv ðə bɪɡɪst

shops in the world. They have lots of different articles
ʃɒps ɪn ðə wɜ:ld. ðeɪ hæv lɒts əv dɪfrənt ɑ:tɪklz

there, so that people can buy everything from a pin
ðeə, səʊ ðæt pi:pl kən baɪ evrɪθɪŋ frəm ə pɪn

to an elephant, as the saying goes, and there you will
tʊ ən ɛləfənt, əz ðə seɪɪŋ ɡoʊz, ænd ðeə ju: wil

be able to get something for your money."
bi: eɪbl tə ɡet sʌmθɪŋ fə jɔ: mʌni."

Our four travellers spent an hour or two in Selfridge's,
əʊə fɔ: trævələz spent ən aʊər ɔ: tʊ: ɪn selfrɪdʒɪz,

a guinea = 21
shillings

a lot = a great
many

/
pin

as the saying goes
= as people say


elephant



You **see** a person
smile.

You **hear** a person
laugh.

WORDS:

discuss
pleased
stamp
second-hand
collect
collection
collector
grow
rapidly
schoolfellow

buying sticks, handkerchiefs, and cigarettes. When they
baiiŋ stiks, hæŋkatʃifs, ænd sigə'rets. hwen ðei

came out again, Wood said to Storm, "How do you like
keim aut ə'gein, wud sed tə stɔ:m, "hau du: ju: laik

my new stick? With this in my right hand, I feel that
mai nju: stik? wið ðis in mai rait hænd, ai fi:l ðæt

I could walk to the end of the world." He saw Mr.
ai kud wɔ:k tə ði end əv ðə wə:ld." hi: sɔ: mistə

Miller smile, and then heard him laugh, saying: "I am
milə smail, ænd ðen hæ:d him la:f, seiŋ: "ai əm

sure you could. However, I think we have bought
ʃʊə ju: kud. hau'evə, ai þiŋk wi: hæv bɔ:t

enough for to-day. Now let us go home through Oxford
i'nʌf fə tə'dei. nau let əs ɡoʊ hoʊm θru: ɔksfəd

Street; a cup of tea would do us good."
stri:t; ə kʌp əv ti: wud du: əs ɡud."

EXERCISE A.

The first morning our four friends were in London they decided to go — in the West End. Charing Cross Road is well known for its many — book-shops and shops with foreign —. These shops were of great — to Storm and Wood, who were both stamp —. Wood's first — of stamps was only small, but it has — from year to year to about 8,000 stamps, because he has — much time on it together with two of his old —. When they came to Shaftesbury Avenue, they — to the —. If they had — to the —, they would have got back to the hotel again.

Londoners often call the part of the town near Shaftesbury Avenue —, because there are so many cinemas and — there. In Piccadilly they — that there were many men's shops, and there were many of the different — in the windows that they would — to buy, but Mr. Miller told them that money for that was not — in their fifteen pounds. The — why they should not buy their clothes at a Bond Street — shop was that half of the price was for the name, Mr. Miller explained. It is only people with — of money who go shopping here.

EXERCISE B.

What did Mr. Miller and his pupils discuss the first morning in London? ... What did they agree to do? ... What is a second-hand book-shop? ... Why were the stamp shops of special interest to Wood and Storm? ... What is theatre-land? ... Why did Mr. Miller tell Storm that he had better not buy the shirt he liked so well? ... What shops do you especially find in Bond Street? ... What is the reason why prices are not shown in the Bond Street tailors' windows? ... What people go shopping in Bond Street? ... What is Selfridge's? ... What do people say about Selfridge's? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'is, are, was, were, has, have, had'.

Are you English? Answer ... Question ...? Yes, Mr. Miller is the teacher of the three young men. Has Mr.

turn
right
left
notice
include
tailor
reason
guinea
lot
pin
elephant
stick
interest
cross
consequently
article
shop (verb)
however
special
avenue
Londoner
saying
laugh
over
book-shop

Miller a son? Answer ... Question ...? No, the young men have no wives to think of. Was Mrs. Smith the only guest at Daisy's birthday party? Answer ... Question ...? No, Mrs. Miller and the boy were not with them in England. Had John a watch? Answer ... Question ...? No, they had not enough money for the trip. Was Mrs. Miller ever in England? Answer ... Question ...? Yes, they were at Selfridge's, a big shop where they bought several things. Has Mr. Miller had the young men as his pupils before? Answer ... Question ...? Yes, Mr. and Mrs. Miller have had rooms at the same hotel where the young men are now. Had Mr. Miller's boy been at his grandparents' home before? Answer ... Question ...? Yes, the young men had been at school together as boys. Had Mrs. Smith had her watch for a long time? Answer ... Question ...? Yes, they had had breakfast when they started on their shopping trip.

A TRIP UP THE RIVER

The next day Mr. Miller proposed a trip up the river
ðə nekst dei mistə milə prə'pəuzd ə tri:p ʌp ðə rɪvə

Thames to Hampton Court Palace. "We can go down
temz tə hæmtən kɔ:t pælis. "wi: kən gou daʊn

to Westminster Bridge," he said, "and take the boat
tə westmɪnstə brɪdʒ," hi: sed, "ænd teɪk ðə baʊt

from there. Westminster Bridge is one of the many
fɹəm ðeə. westmɪnstə brɪdʒ ɪz wʌn əv ðə meni

bridges that go across the river and connect North
brɪdʒɪz ðæt gou ə'krɔs ðə rɪvə ænd kə'nekt nɔ:θ

London with South London. We can go across the
lʌndən wɪð saʊθ lʌndən. wi: kən gou ə'krɔs ðə

river to look at that part of the town some other day."
rɪvə tə luk æt ðæt pɑ:t əv ðə taʊn sʌm ʌðə dei."

When they got on board, they noticed a board on which
hwen ðei gɒt ɔn bɔ:d, ðei nəʊtɪst ə bɔ:d ɔn hwaɪf

were given the names of the different places where the
wə: gɪvən ðə neɪmz əv ðə dɪfrənt pleɪsɪz hweə ðə

boat was going to. They walked across to read the
baʊt wəz gouɪŋ tu. ðei wɔ:kt ə'krɔs tə ri:d ðə

notice on the board, and Brown noticed that the boat
nəʊtɪs ɔn ðə bɔ:d, ænd braʊn nəʊtɪst ðæt ðə baʊt

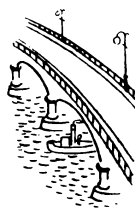
was going to Oxford, the town in which the great
wəz gouɪŋ tu ɔksfəd, ðə taʊn ɪn hwaɪf ðə greɪt



palace



boats



bridge



board

the notice = that
 which was written
 on the board

English university is situated.

ɪŋɡlɪʃ ʃʊni'vɜ:sɪti ɪz sɪtʃueɪtɪd.

Mr. Miller explained to them that there are thousands

mɪstə mɪlər ɪks'pleɪnd tə ðəm ðæt ðeər a: ʰaʊzənz

of students from all over the world who study at this

əv stju:dənts frəm ɔ:l ɒvə ðə wə:ld hu: stadi æt ðɪs

old university, and that they are taught by a great

əʊld ʃʊni'vɜ:sɪti, ænd ðæt ðeɪ a: tɔ:t baɪ ə greɪt

many professors. After having read the notice, he

meni prə'fesəz. æftə hævɪŋ red ðə nɒtɪs, hi:

said, "It seems that every day during the spring and

sed, "ɪt si:mz ðæt evri dei dʒuərɪŋ ðə sprɪŋ ənd

summer there is a boat to Oxford." "It must be a

samə ðeər ɪz ə bəʊt tu ɔksfəd." "ɪt mʌst bi: ə

lovely trip up the river," Wood said, "I propose that

lʌvli trɪp ʌp ðə rɪvə," wʊd sed, "aɪ prə'pəʊz ðæt

we try the trip. It isn't very far to Oxford, is it?"

wɪ: traɪ ðə trɪp. ɪt ɪznt veri fa: tu ɔksfəd, ɪz ɪt?"

"No, it isn't far to Oxford; a train will take you there

"nəʊ, ɪt ɪznt fɑ: tu ɔksfəd; ə treɪn wɪl teɪk ju: ðeə

in an hour and a half, and yet by boat the trip takes

ɪn ən aʊər ənd ə hɑ:f, ənd jet baɪ bəʊt ðə trɪp teɪks

two days. The train goes in an almost straight line,

tu: deɪz. ðə treɪn ɡəʊz ɪn ən ɔ:lməʊst streɪt laɪn,

while the river makes many bends, as most rivers do.

hwaɪl ðə rɪvə meɪks meni bendz, əz məʊst rɪvəz du:.

Although London is connected with Oxford by the river,

ɔ:l'dəʊ lʌndən ɪz kə'nektɪd wɪð ɔksfəd baɪ ðə rɪvə,

a straight line



a line with bends

yet it is mostly tourists who make the trip to Oxford
jet it iz moustli tuəristz hu: meik ðə tri:p tu ɔksfəd

by boat. The steamer goes so slowly that they have
baɪ bəʊt. ðə sti:mə ɡəʊz səʊ sləʊli ðæt ðeɪ hæv

time to see everything, and at night the boat stops at
taɪm tə si: evriθɪŋ, ænd ət naɪt ðə bəʊt stɒps ət

a town, and the tourists go ashore to sleep at a hotel."
ə taʊn, ænd ðə tuəristz ɡəʊ əʃɔ: tə sli:p ət ə haʊtel."

The first thing they noticed when the boat had started,
ðə fə:st θɪŋ ðeɪ nəʊtɪst hwen ðə bəʊt həd stɑ:tɪd,

was a big palace on the right bank of the river. "What
wəz ə bɪɡ pælɪs ɒn ðə raɪt bæŋk əv ðə rɪvə. "hwaɪt

palace is that?" asked Storm. "Does the King or
pælɪs ɪz ðæt?" ɑ:skt stɔ:m. "dʌz ðə kɪŋ ɔ:

some other person of the royal family live there?" "No,
səm ʌðə pə:sn əv ðə rɔɪəl fæmɪli liv ðeə?" "nəʊ,

it is not used by the royal family. It is called Lambeth
ɪt ɪz nɒt ju:zd baɪ ðə rɔɪəl fæmɪli. ɪt ɪz kɔ:ld læmbəθ

Palace."
pælɪs."

A little farther up the river, just after a bend, they
ə lɪtl fɑ:ðər ʌp ðə rɪvə, dʒʌst ɑ:ftər ə bend, ðeɪ

passed under Putney Bridge, and Mr. Miller told them
pɑ:st ʌndə pʌtneɪ brɪdʒ, ænd mɪstə mɪlə təʊld ðəm

about the great boatrace which takes place every year
ə'baʊt ðə ɡreɪt baʊtreɪs huwɪʃ teɪks pleɪs evri jɪə

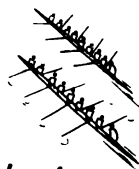
between students from the universities of Oxford and
bɪ'twi:n stju:dənts frəm ðə ju:nɪ'və:sɪtɪz əv ɔksfəd ænd

mostly = most
often



king

the royal family =
the king's family



boatrace

Saxons = the name of some of the people who lived in England a thousand years ago

Cambridge. The boats start at Putney Bridge and go
keimbridʒ. ðə bəʊts stɑ:t ət pʌtneɪ brɪdʒ ænd ɡoʊ

as far as Mortlake, which is about $4\frac{1}{2}$ miles
əz fa: r əz mɔ: tleɪk, hwɪtʃ ɪz ə'baʊt fɔ: r ænd ə ha:f maɪl

farther up the river. The men in each boat do all they
fɑ:ðər ʌp ðə rɪvə. ðə men ɪn i:tʃ bəʊt du: ɔ:l ðeɪ

can to make their boat get there first. The young men
kæn tə meɪk ðeə bəʊt get ðeə fə:st. ðə jʌŋ men

were very surprised to hear that the boatrace takes
wə: veri sə'praɪzd tə hiə ðæt ðə bəʊtreɪs teɪks

only about twenty minutes.

əʊnli ə'baʊt twenti mɪnɪts.

Some time later they came to Kingston-on-Thames.

səm taɪm leɪtə ðeɪ keɪm tə kɪŋstən ɒn temz.

"It is a very old town, and as the name tells us, it has

"it ɪz ə veri ould taʊn, ænd əz ðə neɪm telz ʌs, ɪt hæz

something to do with kings; it means the king's town.

səmʃɪŋ tə du: wɪð kɪŋz; ɪt mi:nz ðə kɪŋz taʊn.

About twelve hundred years ago, the old Saxon kings

ə'baʊt twelvə handrəd jɪəz ə'ɡoʊ, ði ould sæksn kɪŋz

were crowned here," Mr. Miller said to the young men.

wə: kraʊnd hiə," mɪstə mɪlə sed tə ðə jʌŋ men.

"Do you know where the English kings are crowned

"du: ju: nəʊ hwɛə ði ɪŋglɪʃ kɪŋz ɑ: kraʊnd

nowadays?" he asked. "Oh, yes, we know that all

naʊədeɪz?" hi: ə:skt. "əʊ, jɛs, wi: nəʊ ðæt ɔ:l

right," they all replied; "it is at Westminster Abbey.

raɪt," ðeɪ ɔ:l rɪ'plaɪd; "ɪt ɪz ət westmɪnstə əbi.

The last time an English king was crowned there, we
ðə la:st taɪm ən ɪŋglɪʃ kɪŋ wəz kraʊnd ðeə. ʔi:

read all about it in the newspapers, and from the many
red ɔ:l ə'baʊt ɪt ɪn ðə nju:speɪpəz, ənd frəm ðə meni

pictures that were taken we were able to see how it
pɪktʃəz ðæt wə: teɪkn wi: wə:r eɪbl tə si: haʊ ɪt

was done. It was very interesting to see all the people
wəz dʌn. ɪt wəz veri ɪntrɪstɪŋ tə si: ɔ:l ðə pi:pl

in their fine silk clothes, some of them with crowns
ɪn ðeə faɪn sɪlk kləʊðz, sʌm əv ðəm wɪð kraʊnz

upon their heads. One would think that they were
ə'pɒn ðeə hedz. wʌn wʊd θɪŋk ðæt ðeɪ wə:

pictures from very old times, and not pictures of
pɪktʃəz frəm veri ɔʊld taɪmz, ənd nɒt pɪktʃəz əv

something taking place in modern times.”

sʌmθɪŋ teɪkɪŋ pleɪs ɪn mɒdən taɪmz.”

They had now got past Kingston. On their way up the
ðeɪ həd naʊ gɒt pɑ:st kɪŋstən. ɒn ðeə weɪ ʌp ðə

river they passed many small boats from which people
rɪvə ðeɪ pɑ:st meni smɔ:l bəʊts frəm hwi:ʃ pi:pl

were fishing in the river, and on the banks of the river
wə: fɪʃɪŋ ɪn ðə rɪvə, ənd ɒn ðə bæŋks əv ðə rɪvə

they also saw many people fishing. Every time the
ðeɪ ɔ:lsoʊ sɔ: meni pi:pl fɪʃɪŋ. ɛvri taɪm ðə

steamer passed one of the boats, the man in the boat
sti:mə pɑ:st wʌn əv ðə bəʊts, ðə mæn ɪn ðə bəʊt

looked up and shouted angry words at them.

lʊkt ʌp ənd ʃaʊtɪd æŋɡrɪ wə:dz æt ðəm.



picture



CROWN

one **fish**
many **fish**
two **fish**, or two
fishes

He **catches**, he
caught, he has
caught [kætʃɪz,
kɔ:t, kɔ:t].

“Why are they so angry?” Wood asked. “I can see
“hʷai a: ðei sou æŋgri?” wud a:skt. “ai kən si:

that you have never been fishing,” Brown said to him.
ðət ju: hæv nevə bi:n fiʃɪŋ,” braʊn sed tə him.

“When a boat like this passes, all the fish go away,
“hwen ə bout laik ðis pa:sɪz, ɔ:l ðə fiʃ gou ə'wei.

and then the men in the boats do not catch any fish.
ænd ðen ðə men in ðə bouts du: nɒt kætʃ eni fiʃ.

— Do they catch many fish here?” he asked Mr. Miller.

— du: ðei kætʃ meni fiʃ hiə?” hi: a:skt mistə milə.

“No, I don’t think so; there are fish enough in the river,
“nou, ai daʊnt þɪŋk sou; ðeər a: fiʃ i'nʌf in ðə rɪvə,

but there are too many boats passing up and down
bʌt ðeər a: tu: meni bouts pa:sɪŋ ʌp ænd daʊn

the river all the time. But I don’t understand why
ðə rɪvə ɔ:l ðə taɪm. bʌt ai daʊnt ʌndə'stænd hʷai

they get so angry; they must know that there are
ðei get sou æŋgri; ðei mʌst nou ðət ðeər a:

steamers going up and down the river all day, so that
sti:məz goʊɪŋ ʌp ænd daʊn ðə rɪvə ɔ:l dei, sou ðət

there is nothing to be so angry about. They had better
ðeər ɪz nʌθɪŋ tə bi: sou æŋgri ə'baut. ðei həd betə

go to a quieter place to fish. I once did some fishing
gou tu ə kwaɪətə pleɪs tə fiʃ. ai wʌns dɪd sʌm fiʃɪŋ

here with a friend. We spent a whole day on the river,
hiə wɪð ə frend. wi: spent ə haʊl dei ɔn ðə rɪvə,

and at the end of the day I had caught only one small
ænd ət ði end əv ðə dei ai həd kɔ:t ɒnli wʌn smɔ:l

fish, three inches long!"

fɪʃ, θri: ɪnʃɪz lɔŋ!"

They arrived at Hampton Court after a short time

ðei ə'raɪvd ət hæmtən kɔ:t ɑ:ftər ə ʃɔ:t taɪm

and went up to look at the palace. It is situated very

ænd went ʌp tə lʊk ət ðə pælɪs. ɪt ɪz sɪtʃueɪtɪd veri

beautifully in some gardens. They stood for a long

bju:təfʊli ɪn sʌm gɑ:dnz. ðei stʊd fər ə lɔŋ

time looking at the lovely flowers, and especially at

taɪm lʊkɪŋ ət ðə lʌvli flauəz, ænd ɪs'pɛsəli ət

a long straight walk with many beautiful flowers on

ə lɔŋ streɪt wɔ:k wɪð meni bju:təfʊl flauəz ɔn

both sides. In some parts of the palace people may

bəʊθ saɪdz. ɪn sʌm pɑ:ts əv ðə pælɪs pi:pl meɪ

go in and look at the rooms and all that is in them.

ɡəʊ ɪn ænd lʊk ət ðə ru:mz ænd ɔ:l ðæt ɪz ɪn ðəm.

Everything is left just as it was hundreds of years ago.

evriθɪŋ ɪz left dʒʌst əz ɪt wəz haʊndrədz əv jɪəz ə'ɡəʊ.

Most of the things in the palace are connected with

məʊst əv ðə θɪŋz ɪn ðə pælɪs ɑ: kə'nektɪd wɪð

the Tudor and Stuart kings and queens, especially with

ðə tju:dər ænd stjuət kɪŋz ænd kwi:nz, ɪs'pɛsəli wɪð

Queen Anne, the great Stuart queen of England. One

kwi:n æn, ðə greɪt stjuət kwi:n əv ɪŋɡlənd. wʌn

of the things which interested them very much was

əv ðə θɪŋz hwɪtʃ ɪntrɪstɪd ðəm veri mʌtʃ wəz

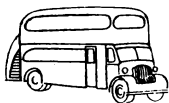
Queen Anne's bedroom. "You can see," Wood said

kwi:n ænz bedrʊm. "ju: kən si:," wʊd sed

Tudor } = the fa-
Stuart } mily names of
several English
kings and queens



queen



bus

to the others, "that women were the same then as
tə ði ʌðəz, "ðæt wimin wə: ðə seim ðen əz

now," and he showed them all the things that the
nau," ənd hi: ʃəʊd ðəm ɔ:l ðə þɪŋz ðæt ðə

Queen had used to make herself beautiful.

kwi:n həd ju:zd tə meɪk hæ:'self bju:təfʊl.

When it was time to go home, Mr. Miller proposed
hwen ɪt wəz taɪm tə ɡəʊ hoʊm, mɪstə mɪlə prə'pəʊzd

taking a bus straight back to London, as far as
teɪkɪŋ ə bʌs streɪt bæk tə lʌndən, əz fɑ:r əz

Wimbledon. From Wimbledon they could go by tram
wɪmblɒn. frəm wɪmblɒn ðeɪ kʊd ɡəʊ baɪ træn

to Westminster Bridge. "If we go that way," he said,
tə westmɪnstə brɪdʒ. "ɪf wi: ɡəʊ ðæt weɪ," hi: sed,

"we shall be able to see much of South London from
"wi: ʃəl bi: eɪbl tə si: mʌtʃ əv saʊθ lʌndən frəm

the windows." They all thought this a good idea, and
ðə ˈwɪndəʊz." ðeɪ ɔ:l θɔ:t ðɪs ə ɡʊd aɪ'dɪə, ənd

consequently they went back by bus and tram as Mr.
kɒnsɪkwəntli ðeɪ went bæk baɪ bʌs ənd træn əz mɪstə

Miller proposed.

mɪlə prə'pəʊzd.

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Miller — that they should go on a trip to Hampton
 Court —. They would go by boat from West-
 minster —. This bridge goes — the Thames and —

North London with South London. The four travellers thought of going by — to Oxford, where the great English — is situated. At Oxford — there are many — to teach the students. Lambeth Palace is situated on the right — of the river. Kingston-on-Thames is a town where the Saxon — were — many years ago.

Did Mr. Miller — many fish the day when he was out fishing? No, he only — one small fish. Who lived at Hampton Court — many years ago? — Anne lived there, and her — may still be seen in the palace. Did Mr. Miller — going home by boat? No, he — going home by —.

EXERCISE B.

How did the four travellers get to Hampton Court? ... Is it far from London to Oxford? ... Do most tourists go by train to Oxford? ... Where does the boatrace between the universities of Oxford and Cambridge start from? ... What is Kingston-on-Thames? ... Are the English kings crowned at Kingston nowadays? ... Why do the people fishing in the river get angry when steamers pass them? ... Do they catch many fish? ... Did Mr. Miller ever go fishing in the Thames? ... What did they see at Hampton Court Palace? ...

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'do' or 'does'.

Does Mr. Smith's brother live in town? Answer ...
Question ...? No, Mr. Smith lives in town. Does

WORDS:

propose
palace
bridge
across
notice
board
boat
university
straight
line
tourist
bank
bend
royal
boatrace
connect
king
queen
crown
crown (verb)
abbey
picture
fish (verb)
angry
catch
caught
walk
bus
yet
Saxon
professor
student
way

John go to school every day? Answer ... Question ...?
No, Mr. Smith does not go to town on Sundays. Do
you have coffee for breakfast? Answer ... Question ...?
Yes, I often have soup and meat for dinner. Does Helen
swim as well as her brother? Answer ... Question ...?
No, her father sings better than she does. Does it suit
you to pay the money now? Answer ... Question ...?
No, English does not seem difficult to me. Do any
of the young men collect stamps? Answer ... Question
...? Yes, tourists often take bus trips right through
London. Do the English like tea better than coffee?
Answer ... Question ...? Yes, the three young men get
shorter holidays than their teacher. Do John and Helen
stay in the house when it is cold? Answer ... Question
...? Yes, John and Helen come when their father
calls them.

LONDON FROM WEST TO EAST

Mr. Miller and his three young friends were having
mɪstə mɪlə ənd hɪz ʒriː ʃʌŋ ʃrendz wəː hæviŋ

breakfast at the hotel.

brekfəst ət ðə hau'tel.

Wood: "We have now been here for several days, long
wudː "wi hæv nau biːn hiə ʃə sevərəl deɪz, lɔŋ

enough at least to have got an impression of London.

i'nʌf ət liːst tə hæv ɡɒt ən im'preʃən əv lʌndən.

It seems, however, that there is no end to this big town.

ɪt siːmz, hau evə, ðət ðeər ɪz nou end tə ðɪs bɪɡ taʊn.

It is very difficult to get a full impression of it."

ɪt ɪz veri dɪfɪkəlt tə ɡet ə ful im'preʃən əv ɪt."

Mr. Miller: "Yes, you are right. Everybody has that

mɪstə mɪləː "jes, juː ɑː raɪt. evrɪbɒdi hæz ðæt

feeling the first time he is in London. I should like

ʃiːlɪŋ ðə ʃəːst taɪm hiː ɪz ɪn lʌndən. aɪ ʃʊd laɪk

feeling = that
which one feels

to propose a trip which few tourists make. Let us go

tə prə'pəʊz ə trɪp hwaɪf ʃjuː tuəɪsts meɪk. let ʌs ɡoʊ

by Underground to the western part of London, and

bai ʌndəɡraʊnd tə ðə westən pɑːt əv lʌndən, ənd

western = which
is to the west

from there we will have a bus ride right through

frəm ðeə wiː wɪl hæv ə bʌs raɪd raɪt θruː

right (here) =
straight

London from west to east. On this trip we can see

lʌndən frəm west tu iːst. ɒn ðɪs trɪp wiː kən siː

Chapter Thirty-Three (33).

suburbs = the parts of a town that are farthest away from the central part

the western and the eastern suburbs of London." "I
ðə westən ənd ði i:stən sʌbə:bz əv lʌndən." "ai

think that is a very good idea," said Wood, and the
piŋk ðæt iz ə veri gud aɪ'diə," sed wud ənd ði

others agreed with him.

ʌðəz ə'gri:d wið him.

As soon as they had had their breakfast, they went
əz su:n əz ðei həd həd ðeə brekfəst, ðei went

by Underground to Ealing, a suburb in the west of
baɪ ʌndəgraʊnd tu i:liŋ, ə sʌbə:b in ðə west əv

London with a great number of small houses. Having
lʌndən wið ə greɪt nʌmbə əv smɔ:l haʊziz. hæviŋ

arrived at Ealing, they got on a bus going to Barking
ə'raɪvd ət i:liŋ, ðei gɒt ɒn ə bʌs goʊiŋ tə bɑ:kiŋ

in East London. After they had passed through the
in i:st lʌndən. ɑ:ftə ðei həd pɑ:st ʃru: ðə

western suburbs of London and got an impression of
westən sʌbə:bz əv lʌndən ənd gɒt ɒn im'prefən əv

them, Brown said to the teacher, "Each suburb seems
ðəm, braʊn sed tə ðə ti:tfə, "i:tf sʌbə:b si:mz

to be much like a town, with a High Street or a High
tə bi: mʌtʃ laɪk ə taʊn, wið ə haɪ stri:t ɔ:r ə haɪ

Road where the biggest and best shops, the theatres,
raʊd hwɛə ðə bi:ɡɪst ənd best ʃɒps, ðə piətəz,

and the cinemas are to be found."

ənd ðə siniməz ɑ: tə bi: faʊnd."

Storm: "I have noticed that some of the shops in the
stɔ:m: "ai həv nəʊtɪst ðæt sʌm əv ðə ʃɒps in ðə

suburbs are just as big as those we have seen in the
sʌbə:bz a: dʒʌst əz biɡ əz ðəʊz wi: hæv si:n in ðə

West End, and some of the cinemas are even bigger.”
west end, ənd sʌm əv ðə siniməz a:r i:vən biɡə.”

Wood: “What long rows of small houses they have in
wud: “hʊt lɔŋ rouz əv smɔ:l haʊziz ðei hæv in

the suburbs!” Mr. Miller: “Yes, that is what the Lon-
ðə sʌbə:bz!” mistə milə: “jes, ðæt iz hʊt ðə lʌn-

doners like. Instead of living in flats in big buildings
dənəz laik. in'sted əv liviŋ in flæts in biɡ bildiŋz

in the centre of the town, they prefer to live in their
in ðə sentər əv ðə taʊn, ðei pri'fə: tə liv in ðeər

centre = central
part

own houses in the suburbs. That's why you see those
oun haʊziz in ðə sʌbə:bz. ðæts hʊai ju: si: ðəʊz

long rows of small houses, street upon street of them.”
lɔŋ rouz əv smɔ:l haʊziz, stri:t ə'pɒn stri:t əv ðəm.”

street upon street
= one street after
another

Wood: “I do not wonder that the Londoners like small
wud: “ai du: nɒt wʌndə ðæt ðə lʌndənəz laik smɔ:l

houses. I should also prefer a small house of my own
haʊziz. ai ʃud ə:lsoʊ pri'fə:r ə smɔ:l haʊs əv mai oun

to prefer... to =
to like... better
than

to a flat in a big building. Besides, they have their
tu ə flæt in ə biɡ bildiŋ. bi'saidz, ðei hæv ðeər

own gardens with trees and flowers.”
oun ɡa:dnz wið tri:z ənd flauəz.”

Now they began to get near the centre of London; the
nau ðei bi'ɡæn tə ɡet niə ðə sentər əv lʌndən; ðə

bus went along Oxford Street, and before long they
bʌs went ə'lɔŋ ɒksfəd stri:t, ənd bi'fɔ: lɔŋ ðei

Chapter Thirty-Three (33).

the middle = the
centre

were in the City. Mr. Miller: "Now we are in the
wə:r in ðə siti. mistə milə: "nau wi: a:r in ðə

middle of London." Brown: "Then we have only
midl əv lʌndən." *braun: "ðen wi: həv ounli*

travelled half-way from west to east. It gives us a good
trævlɪd hæ:fwei frəm west tu i:st. it givz ʌs ə gud

impression of how large London is."

im'prefən əv hau la:dʒ lʌndən iz."

Mr. Miller: "Yes, but look at the streets now. They are
mistə milə: "jes, bʌt luk ət ðə stri:ts nau. ðei a:

much narrower than in the suburbs. We are in the old
mʌtf nærouə ðən in ðə sʌbə:bz. wi: a:r in ði ould

part of London. That building over there is the Bank
pɑ:t əv lʌndən. ðæt bildiŋ ouwə ðeə iz ðə bæŋk

of England. It is the greatest bank in the country; a
əv iŋglənd. it iz ðə greitist bæŋk in ðə kʌntri; ə

lot of money passes through it every year, but I think
lɒt əv mʌni pɑ:siz pru: it evri jiə, bʌt ai piŋk

you have already heard of the Bank of England many
ju: həv ɔ:l'redi hə:d əv ðə bæŋk əv iŋglənd meni

times at home."

taimz ət haʊm."

motor-car = car



bicycle

Storm: "What a lot of traffic there is here! There are
stɔ:m: "hwɒt ə lɒt əv træfɪk ðeər iz hiə! ðeər a:

large numbers of people, motor-cars, and buses, but I
la:dʒ nʌmbəz əv pi:pl, moutəka:z, ənd bʌsɪz, bʌt ai

see very few bicycles."

si: veri fju: baɪsaɪklz."

Wood: "Yes, the bus can hardly get through the traffic,
wud: "jes, ðə bʌs kən ha:dli get pru: ðə træfɪk,

and it must be very difficult to ride a bicycle in all
and it mʌst bi: veri dɪfɪkəlt tə raɪd ə baɪsɪkl ɪn ɔ:l

this traffic."
ðɪs træfɪk."

Mr. Miller: "It is hardly ever possible to get through
mɪstə mɪlə: "ɪt ɪz ha:dli evə pɒsəbl tə get pru:

the traffic here quickly. The Bank is one of the two
ðə træfɪk hɪə kwɪkli. ðə bæŋk ɪz wʌn əv ðə tu:

places in London at which the traffic is greatest. All
pleɪsɪz ɪn lʌndən ət hwɪtʃ ðə træfɪk ɪz greɪtɪst. ɔ:l

the buildings in the City are office buildings, and
ðə bɪldɪŋz ɪn ðə sɪti a:r ɒfɪs bɪldɪŋz, ənd

hardly any one lives here, so that this part of the town
ha:dli ɛni wʌn lɪvz hɪə, sʊ ðæt ðɪs pɑ:t əv ðə taʊn

is almost empty at night. In the evening, all who work
ɪz ɔ:lmʌst ɛmtɪ ət naɪt." ɪn ðɪ i:vɪnɪŋ, ɔ:l hu: wɔ:k

in the City want to go home almost at the same time.
ɪn ðə sɪti wɒnt tə ɡəʊ hoʊm ɔ:lmʌst ət ðə seɪm taɪm.

Consequently, the streets are just full of people at
kɒnsɪkwəntli, ðə stri:ts a: dʒʌst fʊl ɒf pi:pl ət

that time."
ðæt taɪm."

Brown: "I have noticed that there are no trams to be
braʊn: "aɪ hæv nəʊtɪst ðæt ðeər a: nəʊ træmz tə bi:

seen in the City."
sɪ:n ɪn ðə sɪti."

hardly = almost
not

the Bank = the
Bank of England

Chapter Thirty-Three (33).

neither in the City
nor in the West
End = not in the
City and not in the
West End

no trams at all =
not a single tram

the very houses =
even the houses

Mr. Miller: "No, they are used neither in the City
mistə milə: "nou, ðei a: ju:zd naiðər in ðə siti

nor in the West End, and you can see for yourselves
nɔ:r in ðə west end, ənd ju: kən si: fə ʃə:'selvz

that in these narrow streets it would hardly be possible
ðæt in ði:z nærou stri:ts it wud hɑ:dlɪ bi: pɒsəbl

to have any trams at all. In four or five years, I
tə hæv ɛni træmz ət ɔ:l in ʃɔ:r ɔ: ʃaɪv ʃiəz, ai

think, there will be no trams at all in London. They
piŋk, ðeə wil bi: nou træmz ət ɔ:l in lʌndən. ðei

are neither very fast nor easy to drive. Instead, they
a: naiðə veri ʃa:st nɔ:r i:zi tə draɪv. ɪn'sted, ðei

will have either more buses or more Underground rail-
wil hæv aɪðə mɔ: bʌsɪz ɔ: mɔ:r ʌndəgraʊnd reɪl-

ways. That is just the same as in Paris."
weɪz. ðæt ɪz dʒʌst ðə seɪm əz ɪn pæris."

After leaving the City, they passed through the East
a:ftə li:viŋ ðə siti, ðei pɑ:st ʃru: ði i:st

End, and Mr. Miller said, "Many poor people live in
end, ənd mistə milə sed, "meni puə pi:pl liv ɪn

this part of the town. You can see from the very
ðis pɑ:t əv ðə taʊn. ju: kən si: frəm ðə veri

houses that the people living in them must be poor,
haʊzɪz ðæt ðə pi:pl li:viŋ ɪn ðəm mʌst bi: puə,

that is, they have very little money."
ðæt ɪz, ðei hæv veri lɪtl mʌni."

Some time later, after passing through many other
sʌm taɪm leɪtə, a:ftə pɑ:sɪŋ ʃru: meni ʌðə

parts of London, they arrived at Barking, a suburb in
pa:ts əv lʌndən, ðei ə'raɪvd ət bɑ:kɪŋ, ə sʌbə:b ɪn

the east of London. They found that the suburbs of
ði i:st əv lʌndən. ðei faʊnd ðæt ðə sʌbə:bz əv

East London were just like those of West London;
i:st lʌndən wə: dʒʌst laɪk ðəʊz əv west lʌndən;

consequently, after a short time, they returned by
kənsɪkwəntli, a:ftər ə ʃɔ:t taɪm, ðei rɪ'tə:nd baɪ

to return = to go
back

Underground to their hotel.

ʌndəgraʊnd tə ðeə həʊ'tel.

EXERCISE A.

The three young men have got a good — of how large London is. However, they have the — that they do not know the city yet. Mr. Miller — a trip from west to — right — London. They went by — to one of the — in the west of London. In each — there is a — Street or High — where most of the big shops and the — are to be —.

The Londoner does not like to live in a —. He — his own house. There are long — of such houses in the — of London. In the City the streets are much — than in the suburbs, and there is a lot of — in the streets. There are many — to be seen in the streets of the City, but not many —. It is very difficult to — a bicycle in all that —. It is — possible to get through the — quickly. There are no — in the narrow streets of the City, and in a few years there will be no trams — in London.

WORDS:

impression

western

west

eastern

east

ride

right

suburb

High Street

row

flat

prefer

centre

middle

bank

traffic

motor-car

bicycle

hardly

any one

neither . . . nor

either . . . or

no . . . at all

poor

return

feeling

very

half-way

EXERCISE B.

Where did Mr. Miller and the three young men have their breakfast on the morning of the day when they went right through London by bus? . . . How did they start their trip? . . . What did they find that each suburb looked like? . . . What was there to be found in each suburb? . . . Why does the Londoner not like to live in a flat? . . . What are the streets like in the centre of London? . . . Is it easy to ride on a bicycle in the streets of the City? . . . What people live in the East End of London? . . . Were the suburbs of East London different from those of West London? . . . What did the four travellers do when they arrived at Barking? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'did'.

Did Brown go alone to the railway station when he left his home to travel to England? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, Wood's sister went along with him to the station. Did the driver drive fast enough when going to the station? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, the others waited for him at the station. Did you think that there would be so much traffic in London that the buses could hardly get through? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, they noticed that the streets got narrower when they came back to the centre of London. Did they stop at any of the second-hand bookshops? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, they turned to the right when they came to Shaftesbury Avenue. Did the young men pay for their tickets themselves?

Answer . . . Question . . .? No, they did not buy anything in Bond Street. Did the four travellers visit any palaces on their trip up the river? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, they saw Lambeth Palace from the boat. Did they find the old town of Kingston very interesting? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, they saw many people fishing on the banks of the river.

THE PARKS OF LONDON



At lunch the next day, they discussed the buildings
ət lʌnf ðə nekst dei, ðei dis'kʌst ðə bɪldɪŋz

they had seen in London. "We have now got an im-
ðei həd si:n in lʌndən. "wi: həv nau got ən im-

pression of the buildings of London, but we should also
'prefən əv ðə bɪldɪŋz əv lʌndən, bʌt wi: ʃud ɔ:lsou

like to see its many fine and big parks," said Wood.
laɪk tə si: ɪts meni faɪn ənd bɪg pɑ:kz," sed wud.

"We have often read about them in the newspapers,
"wi: həv ɔ:fən red ə'baʊl ðəm ɪn ðə nju:spɛɪpəz,

and sometimes we have seen pictures of them, too;
ənd sʌmtaɪnz wi: həv si:n pɪktʃəz əv ðəm, tu:;

but a picture does not give a real impression of them, I
bʌt ə pɪktʃə dʌz nɒt gɪv ə riəl ɪm'prefən əv ðəm, ɪ

think. One must see them in reality to get the right
θɪŋk. wʌn mʌst si: ðəm ɪn ri'ælɪti tə get ðə raɪt

impression." "Yes," answered Mr. Miller, "that would
ɪm'prefən." "jes," ɑ:nsəd mɪstə mɪlə, "ðæt wud

be a good idea for to-day's trip. But you speak of the
bɪ: ə gu:d aɪ'diə fə tə'deɪz tri:p. bʌt ju: spi:k əv ðə

parks of London as if you could see them all in a day.
pɑ:kz əv lʌndən əz ɪf ju: kʊd si: ðəm ɔ:l ɪn ə dei.

You really can't see more than one, or two at the most,
ju: riəli kɑ:nt si: mɔ: ðən wʌn, ɔ: tu: ət ðə maʊst,

in one day. I propose that we go to Regent's Park first.
in wʌn dei. ai prə'pouz ðæt wi: gou tə ri:dʒənts pɑ:k fə:st.

From there we can go through Baker Street and Ox-

ford Street to Hyde Park, and while we are on our

way, we might stop and have some tea somewhere in

Oxford Street.”
ɒksfəd stri:t.”

They did as Mr. Miller proposed and took a bus to

Regent's Park. In this park are the well-known Zoo-

logical Gardens of London. They went in to look at

the animals. Mr. Miller told the young men that Lon-

doners call the Zoological Gardens the 'Zoo', for short.

They stood for a long time watching the monkeys play-

ing with each other. “They are so funny,” said Brown,

“that I could watch them for hours.” Suddenly, one of

the monkeys put out his hand and took an umbrella

somewhere = at
 some place or
 other

for short = to
 make it shorter



monkey

suddenly =
 quickly and
 surprisingly



umbrella

near by = near



as = when

from a little girl who was standing near by. The
fɾəm ə litl gə:l hu: wəz stændiŋ niə baɪ. ði

umbrella was not open, but a few minutes later, the
ʌm'brelə wəz nɒt oupən, bʌt ə fju: minits leɪtə, ðə

monkey had got it opened. It was so funny to see the
mʌŋki həd gɒt ɪt oupənd. ɪt wəz sou ʃʌni tə si: ðə

monkey running about with the umbrella that all the
mʌŋki rʌniŋ ə'baʊt wið ði ʌm'brelə ðæt ɔ:l ðə

people who watched it had to laugh, except the little
pi:pl hu: wɒtʃt ɪt həd tə lɑ:f, ɪk'sept ðə litl

girl.

gə:l.

They also went to see the snakes, which interested
ðei ɔ:lsou went tə si: ðə sneɪks, hwɪtʃ ɪntrɪstɪd

Wood very much, and after having seen the other
wʊd veri mʌtʃ, ənd ɑ:ftə hæviŋ si:n ði ʌðə

animals, they left Regent's Park and went to a restau-
æniməlz, ðei left ri:dʒənts pɑ:k ənd went tu ə restə-

rant in Oxford Street for tea. "What a big place this
rənt ɪn ɒksfəd stri:t fə ti:. "hwɒt ə big pleɪs ðɪs

is!" the young men said as they entered the restau-
ɪz!" ðə jʌŋ men sed əz ðei ɛntəd ðə restə-

rant. "It is the largest we have ever seen. What is the
rɔ:ŋ. "ɪt ɪz ðə lɑ:dʒɪst wi: həv evə si:n. hwɒt ɪz ðə

name of it?" "The Marble Arch Corner House," Mr.
neɪm əv ɪt?" "ðə mɑ:bl ɑ:tʃ kɔ:nə haus," mɪstə

Miller answered. "Yes, it is a long name," he said,
mɪlə ɑ:nsəd. "jes, ɪt ɪz ə lɒŋ neɪm," hi: sed,

laughing at the look of surprise on the young men's
la:fiŋ æt ðə luk əv sə'praiz ɔn ðə jʌŋ menz

faces. "I'll explain it to you, while we are having our
feisiz. "ail iks'plein it tə ju:, hwail wi: a: hæviŋ auə
 tea."
ti:."

When the tea had been served, he explained, "This is
hwen ðə ti: həd bi:n sə:vd, hi: iks'pleind, "ðis iz

one of the many restaurants and tea-rooms which the
wʌn əv ðə meni restərɔ:ŋz ənd ti:rumz hwitʃ ðə

big firm of 'Lyons' has all over England. In London
big fə:m əv 'laiənz' hæz ɔ:l ouvər iŋglənd. in lʌndən

alone there are hundreds of them, and each one is
ə'loun ðeər a: hʌndrədz əv ðəm, ənd i:ʃ wʌn iz

called a 'Lyons'. The very first big one was in a corner
kɔ:ld ə 'laiənz'. ðə veri fə:st big wʌn wəz in ə kɔ:nə

house, that is, a house built where two streets cross
haus, ðæt iz, ə haus bilt hwɛə tu: stri:ts krɔs

to cross = to go
 across

each other. The restaurant was therefore called a
i:ʃ ʌðə. ðə restərɔ:ŋ wəz ðeəfɔ: kɔ:ld ə

Corner House, and now the four or five biggest 'Lyons'
kɔ:nə haus, ənd nau ðə fɔ:r ɔ: faiv bigist 'laiənz'

restaurants are called Corner houses, even if they are
restərɔ:ŋz a: kɔ:ld kɔ:nə haʊziz, i:vən if ðei a:

not situated at corners. You will be surprised, perhaps,
nɒt sitʃueitid æt kɔ:nəz. ju: wil bi: sə'praizd, pə'hæps,

to hear that one or two of the Corner Houses never
tə hiə ðæt wʌn ɔ: tu: əv ðə kɔ:nə haʊziz nevə



corner



arch



stones

to move = to take
from one place to
another

nobody = no one

close, but have rooms that are open day and night.
klouz, bʌt hæv ru:mz ðæt a:r ɒpən dei ænd naɪl.

Now you know what a 'Corner House' is. This one
nau ju: nou hʊət ə 'kɔ:nə haus' iz. ðis wʌn

is called the Marble Arch Corner House, because it is
iz kɔ:ld ðə ma:bl a:tʃ kɔ:nə haus, bi'kɔz ɪt iz

only one or two minutes from Marble Arch, a big
ɒnli wʌn ɔ: tu: minɪts frəm ma:bl a:tʃ, ə bɪg

arch built of marble, situated just outside the entrance
a:tʃ bɪlt əv ma:bl, sɪtʃueɪtɪd dʒʌst 'aʊt'saɪd ði entrəns

to Hyde Park. Marble is a very expensive and beauti-
tə haɪd pa:k. ma:bl iz ə veri ɪkspensɪv ænd bju:tə-

ful stone, which is often shining and white. Marble
ful stəʊn, huɪtʃ iz ɔ:fn ʃaɪnɪŋ ænd hwaɪt. ma:bl

Arch was built for King George IV as an entrance
a:tʃ wəz bɪlt fɜ kiŋ dʒɔ:dʒ ðə ʃɔ:p əz ən entrəns

to Buckingham Palace, but after it had been built,
tə bʌkɪŋəm pælɪs, bʌt a:ftər ɪt həd bi:n bɪlt,

they found that it was too narrow for the King's
ðei faʊnd ðæt ɪt wəz tu: nərou fɜ ðə kiŋz

carriage to pass through it. In 1851 it was moved
kærɪdʒ tə pa:s prʊ: ɪt. ɪn eɪti:n fɪfti wʌn ɪt wəz mu:vɪd

from Buckingham Palace to this corner of Hyde Park. It
frəm bʌkɪŋəm pælɪs tə ðɪs kɔ:nər əv haɪd pa:k. ɪt

cost £ 80,000 to build. Now it just stands there,
kɒst eɪti paʊzənd paʊndz tə bɪld. nau ɪt dʒʌst stændz ðeə,

and nobody uses it; it is even closed, so that you can't
ænd nəʊbədi ju:zɪz ɪt; ɪt ɪz i:vən kləʊzd, sʊ ðæt ju: kɑ:nt

get through it, but have to go round it. But the Londoners like it, and tourists go to see it. There is always much traffic round Marble Arch, and at night when the lights are on, it is beautiful to look at. There are always people standing round it, selling different things: newspapers, fruit, chocolate, etc. It has really become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

doners like it, and tourists go to see it. There is always much traffic round Marble Arch, and at night when the lights are on, it is beautiful to look at. There are always people standing round it, selling different things: newspapers, fruit, chocolate, etc. It has really become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

much traffic round Marble Arch, and at night when the lights are on, it is beautiful to look at. There are always people standing round it, selling different things: newspapers, fruit, chocolate, etc. It has really become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

the lights are on, it is beautiful to look at. There are always people standing round it, selling different things: newspapers, fruit, chocolate, etc. It has really become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

the lights are on
= the lights are
shining

always people standing round it, selling different things: newspapers, fruit, chocolate, etc. It has really become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

things: newspapers, fruit, chocolate, etc. It has really become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

become part of London, a part which the Londoners like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

like very much. But if you have finished your tea, we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

we might walk round it before entering the Park, so that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

that you may see it from all sides. I will pay the bill while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

while you finish your bread and butter, Wood. You seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

seem to eat a lot," the teacher said, laughing, "because you are always the last of us to finish."

cause you are always the last of us to finish."

They crossed Oxford Street and entered the Park, and

just inside they found a lot of people standing round
dʒʌst 'in'saɪd ðeɪ faʊnd ə lɒt əv pi:pl stændɪŋ raʊnd

a speaker who had got up on a soap-box to speak.
ə spi:kə hu: həd ɡɒt ʌp ɒn ə soʊpbɒks tə spi:k.

They listened to him and tried to understand what he
ðeɪ lisnd tə him ʌnd traɪd tu ʌndə'stænd hwət hi:

was saying, but could hear very little. "This is a thing
wəz seɪɪŋ, bʌt kʊd hiə veri lɪl. "ðɪs ɪz ə pɪŋ

which you will find in many places in England," said
hwɪlf ju: wɪl faɪnd ɪn menɪ pleɪsɪz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd," sed

Mr. Miller. "If a man wants to speak about something,
mɪstə mɪlə. "ɪf ə mæn wɒnts tə spi:k ə'baut sʌmpɪŋ,

he can bring a box to stand on and say what he likes.
hi: kæn brɪŋ ə bɒks tə stænd ɒn ʌnd seɪ hwət hi: laɪks.

Nobody will stop him, and there will always be some
nəʊbɒdi wɪl stɒp hɪm, ʌnd ðeə wɪl ɔ:lwəz bi: sʌm

one out walking who stops on his way to listen to his
wʌn aʊt wɔ:kiŋ hu: stɒps ɒn hɪz wei tə lɪsn tə hɪz

talk or laugh at him."

tɔ:k ɔ: la:f ət hɪm."

On their way through the Park they came to the
ɒn ðeə wei þru: ðə pa:k ðeɪ keɪm tə ðə

Serpentine, a long lake which looks like a snake or a
sə:pəntaɪn, ə lɒŋ leɪk hwɪlf luks laɪk ə sneɪk ɔ:r ə

serpent = snake

serpent, and in which people may bathe. "In the
sə:pənt, ʌnd ɪn hwɪlf pi:pl meɪ beɪð. "ɪn ðɪ

evenings in summer," Mr. Miller told them, "there
i:vənɪŋz ɪn sʌmə," mɪstə mɪlə təʊld ðəm, "ðeər

are bands or orchestras playing in the Park, and there
a: bændz ɔ:r ɔ:kistrəz pleiɪŋ in ðə pa:k, ənd ðeər

are always many people who come to listen to them.
a:r ɔ:lweɪz meni pi:pl hu: kʌm tə lɪsn tə ðəm.

But we cannot stop to-night; perhaps we can come
bʌt wi: kænɒt stɒp tə'naɪt; pə'hæps wi: kən kʌm

this way some other evening and hear one of the bands
ðɪs wei sʌm ʌðər i:vniŋ ənd hiə wʌn əv ðə bændz

play. Look!" he said suddenly and stopped them. "Now
plei. luk!" hi: sed sʌdnli ənd stɒpt ðəm. "nau

I will show you something funny, which I think will
aɪ wɪl ʃəʊ ju: sʌmpɪŋ fʌni, hwɪtʃ aɪ ʔɪŋk wɪl

surprise you." They looked and saw — a flock of
sə'praɪz ju:." ðeɪ lukɪd ənd sɔ: — ə flɒk əv

sheep! "Is this really a flock of sheep in the centre
ʃi:p! "ɪz ðɪs riəli ə flɒk əv ʃi:p in ðə sentər

of London?" they shouted in surprise. "Yes, sheep,"
əv lʌndən?" ðeɪ ʃaʊtɪd in sə'praɪz. "jes, ʃi:p,"

their teacher replied, "real sheep! They move about
ðeə ti:lfə ri'plaɪd, "riəl ʃi:p! ðeɪ mu:v ə'baʊt

the Park to eat the grass, so that it does not get too
ðə pa:k tu i:t ðə gra:s, səʊ ðət ɪt dʌz nɒt get tu:

long."

lɒŋ."

They finished their walk through the Park at Hyde
ðeɪ fɪnɪʃt ðeə wɔ:k þru: ðə pa:k ət haɪd

Park Corner, and Mr. Miller told them that it is the
pa:k kɔ:nə, ənd mɪstə mɪlə təʊld ðəm ðət ɪt ɪz ðə



place which has the most traffic in the whole world.
pleis hwitʃ hæz ðə moust træfɪk ɪn ðə haʊl wə:ld.

It was not difficult for them to understand this, be-
it wəz nɒt dɪfɪkəlt fə ðəm tu ʌndə'stænd ðɪs, bi-
 cause it was several minutes before they were able to
'kɔz ɪt wəz severəl minɪts bi'fɔ: ðei wə:r eɪbl tə
 cross to the other side of the street.
krɒs tə ði ʌðə saɪd əv ðə stri:t.

WORDS:

park
 real
 reality
 really
 Zoological
 Gardens
 Zoo
 monkey
 funny
 suddenly
 umbrella
 open
 open (verb)
 as
 corner
 marble
 arch
 entrance
 round
 speaker

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Miller proposed that their next trip should be to some of the great — of London. They had often seen pictures of them at home, but they wanted to see them in — to get a — impression of them. In Regent's Park are the — Gardens of London, which the Londoners call the —. In the Zoo they — a — playing with an — which it had taken from a little girl standing near by. All the people watching it had to —, except the girl. She did not think it —. The big 'Lyons' restaurants are called — Houses, even if they are not situated at —. Marble Arch was first built as an — to Buckingham Palace, but as it was too narrow for the King's —, they — it to this corner of Hyde Park. It is not used as an entrance here, but there is much traffic — it. Mr. Miller thought that Wood ate a —, because he was always the last of them to —. In Hyde Park they saw a — standing on a soap-box. There were many people there listening to what he was —. In the Park there is a long lake called the —, because it looks like a snake or —. While they were walking

in the Park, Mr. Miller — stopped them and showed them a — of sheep.

EXERCISE B.

What did they decide to see the day after they had been out to see the buildings of London? . . . Where had they got their first impression of the parks of London? . . . What is the Zoo? . . . Why did the people who were watching the monkeys laugh? . . . Why was the restaurant called a Corner House? . . . Where was Marble Arch first built? . . . Why was it moved? . . . Why were people standing round the man on the soap-box in Hyde Park? . . . Why is the lake in Hyde Park called the Serpentine? . . . What can you hear on summer evenings in the Park? . . . What did the young men see in the Park, which surprised them very much? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'has, have, or had'.

Has Mr. Miller seen other countries than England? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, many things have changed since Mr. Miller was in England some years ago. Has Wood collected stamps for a long time? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, the young men have never visited England before. Have they all travelled by steamer before this trip? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, Mrs. Miller has not come along with them on the trip. Has Storm spent his holidays in town? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, they have not seen everything they want to see in London yet. Had they dined before

snake
serpent
orchestra
band
play
flock
move
listen
nobody
some one
surprise
for short
somewhere
stone
cross (verb)
eighty
bathe
look
tea-room

they got on board the steamer? Answer . . . Question . . . ? Yes, every evening when they were together before the trip, they had talked about the things they were going to see in England. Had Mr. Miller found a good hotel for them in London? Answer . . . Question . . . ? Yes, Storm's firm had paid the whole trip for him. Had they planned to buy many things in London? Answer . . . Question . . . ? No, they had not been able to understand the language which the porters spoke. Had they brought much luggage with them to England? Answer . . . Question . . . ? No, they had carried their own bags.

PARLIAMENT

One morning the hotel-keeper came in to have a
wən mɔːniŋ ðə ˈhouːtelkiːpə keɪm ɪn tə hæv ə

word with our four travellers. "I hope you are enjoying
wɜːd wið ɔːr fɔː trævəlɜː. "aɪ ˈhoʊp juː ɑːr ɪnˈdʒɔɪɪŋ

yourselves in London," he said.

jɔːˈselvz ɪn lʌndən," hiː sed.

Mr. Miller: "We are having a lovely time, thank
mɪstə mɪlɜː "wiː ɑː hæviŋ ə lʌvli taɪm, ˈpæŋk

you." Wood: "Yes, we have enjoyed ourselves very
juː." wudː "jes, wiː hæv ɪnˈdʒɔɪd ɔːsəˈselvz veri

much all the time we have been here, and we have
mʌtʃ ɔːl ðə taɪm wiː hæv biːn hiə, ænd wiː hæv

seen a lot of things. Now we wish to see the King
siːn ə lɒt əv ˈθɪŋz. naʊ wiː wɪʃ tə siː ðə kiŋ

and the Queen, but how is that done?"

ænd ðə kwiːn, bʌt haʊ ɪz ðæt dʌn?"

Hotel-keeper: "That will be very difficult just now,
ˈhouːtelkiːpəː "ðæt wɪl biː veri dɪfɪkəl dʒʌst naʊ,

because the King and the Queen are spending part of
bɪˈkɔːz ðə kiŋ ænd ðə kwiːn ɑː ˈspendɪŋ pɑːt əv

the summer at Balmoral Castle in Scotland, a castle
ðə sʌmər ət bælmərəl kɑːsl ɪn skɒtlənd, ə kɑːsl

situated in a very beautiful part of the country, where
sɪtʃueɪtɪd ɪn ə veri bjuːtɪfʊl pɑːt əv ðə kʌntri, hwɛə

I am enjoying
myself = I am
having a good
time.

to wish = to want



castle

the King and Queen spend some of their time every
ðə kiŋ ənd kwi:n spend sʌm əv ðeə taɪm evri
 year. Many travellers who come to England wish to
jiə. meni trævələz hu: kʌm tu ɪŋɡlənd wɪʃ tə
 see the King and Queen.
si: ðə kiŋ ənd kwi:n.

"Speaking for myself, I have never seen the present
"spi:kiŋ fə maɪ'self, aɪ hæv nevə si:n ðə preznt

King; the only time I have seen a king was when I
kiŋ; ði ounli taɪm aɪ hæv si:n ə kiŋ wəz hwen aɪ

went to see George V, who was the father of our
went tə si: dʒɔ:dʒ ðə fɪfθ, hu: wəz ðə ʃa:ðər əv əʊə

present King, George VI. The real reason why I went
preznt kiŋ, dʒɔ:dʒ ðə sɪksθ. ðə riəl ri:zn hwaɪ aɪ went

was not so much to see the King himself as to see the
wəz nɒt sʌʊ mʌʃ tə si: ðə kiŋ hɪm'self əz tə si: ðə

horses which drew his carriage, and also the many
hɔ:sɪz hwiʃ drʊ: hɪz kærɪdʒ, ənd ɔ:lsoʊ ðə meni

men in uniforms. His carriage was drawn by eight
men ɪn ju:nɪfɔ:mz. hɪz kærɪdʒ wəz drɔ:n baɪ eɪt

horses, and after it came a long row of men in fine
hɔ:sɪz, ənd ɑ:ftər ɪt keɪm ə lɔŋ rəʊ əv men ɪn faɪn

uniforms. I know that people say that the English
ju:nɪfɔ:mz. aɪ nəʊ ðæt pi:pl sei ðæt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

are very interested in the King and Queen and speak
ɑ: veri ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðə kiŋ ənd kwi:n ənd spi:k

of nothing else. But nearly every week when I look
əv nʌθɪŋ els. bʌt niəli evri wi:k hwen aɪ lʊk

He **draws**, he
drew, he has
drawn [drɔ:z, dru:,
 drɔ:n].



uniform

nothing else = no
 other thing

nearly = almost

at the pictures in foreign papers, I notice that people
ət ðə piktʃəz in ʃərin peɪpəz, ai nouʔlɪs ðət pi:pl

everywhere go to see the different kings and queens,
evrihwɛə gou tə si: ðə dɪfrənt kɪŋz ənd kwi:nz,

everywhere = at
all places

and if a country has no king, then I see pictures of
ənd ɪf ə kʌntri hæz nou kɪŋ, ðen ai si: piktʃəz əv

people that go to see the president. So I think that
pi:pl ðət gou tə si: ðə prezɪdənt. sou ai piŋk ðət

people in other countries are just as interested in these
pi:pl in ʌðə kʌntriz a: dʒʌst əz ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ði:z

things as we English are. You only have to think of
piŋz əz wi: ɪŋɡlɪʃ a:. ju: ounli hæv tə piŋk əv

the King's visit to President Roosevelt of the United
ðə kɪŋz vɪzɪt tə prezɪdənt rouzəvɛl əv ðə ju:'naɪtɪd

States in the spring of 1939."

steɪts ɪn ðə sprɪŋ əv naɪnti:n þə:ti'nain."

Although the King and Queen were not staying in
ə:l'dou ðə kɪŋ ənd kwi:n wə: nɒt steɪɪŋ ɪn

London, our four friends went to look at Buckingham
lʌndən, auə ʃɔ: frɛndz wɛnt tə luk ət bʌkɪŋəm

Palace. Mr. Miller: "As you see, it is built of grey
pælis. mɪslə mɪlə: "əz ju: si:, ɪt ɪz bɪlt əv greɪ

stone. How do you like it?" Wood: "Well, I don't
stəʊn. hau du: ju: laɪk ɪt?" wud: "wel, ai daʊnt

think there is anything unusual about it. It looks like
piŋk ðeə ɪz enɪpiŋ' ʌn'ju:ʒuəl ə'baʊt ɪt. ɪt luks laɪk

all other palaces."

ə:l ʌðə pælisɪz."

Storm: "I have heard so much about Buckingham
stɔ:m: "ai həv hə:d sou mʌtf ə'baʊt bʌkiŋəm

Palace that I thought that the place where the King
pælis ðæt ai þɔ:t ðæt ðə pleis hwɛə ðə kiŋ

and Queen of England lived must be a very unusual
ænd kwi:n əv iŋɡlənd livd mʌst bi: ə veri ʌn'ju:ʒuəl

building, but I like many of our palaces at home
bildiŋ, bʌt ai laik meni əv auə pælisiz æt hoʊm

better."
betə."

From Buckingham Palace they walked through a park
fɾəm bʌkiŋəm pælis ðei wɔ:kt pru: ə pa:k

to the Houses of Parliament. Mr. Miller: "Here you
tə ðə haʊziz əv pa:ləmənt. mistə milə: "hiə ju:

see the building where Parliament, that is, the men
si: ðə bildiŋ hwɛə pa:ləmənt, ðæt iz, ðə men

who are chosen by the people to decide what is best
hu: a: tʃouzn bai ðə pi:pl tə di'said hwɔt iz best

for the country, comes together. Altogether there are
fə ðə kʌntri, kʌmz tə'geðə. ɔ:ltə'geðə ðeər a:

between 1300 and 1400 people who
bi'twi:n 'pə:'ti:n hʌndrəd ænd 'fɔ:'ti:n hʌndrəd pi:pl hu:

sit in Parliament, or are members of the two Houses
sit in pa:ləmənt, ɔ:r a: membəz əv ðə tu: haʊziz

of Parliament. Of these members, 640
əv pa:ləmənt. əv ði:z. membəz, siks hʌndrəd ænd fɔ:ti

are chosen by the people; they make up one of the
a: tʃouzn bai ðə pi:pl; ðei meik ʌp wʌn əv ðə

two parts of Parliament and are called the House of
tu: pa:ts əv pa:ləmənt ənd a: kɔ:ld ðə haus əv

Commons. The other part, the House of Lords, has
kəmənz. ði ʌðə pa:t, ðə haus əv lɔ:dz, hæz

about 750 members, made up of men
ə'baʊt sevn hʌndrəd ənd fifti membəz, meɪd ʌp əv men

who are the heads of either very old or very rich
hu: a: ðə hedz əv aɪðə veri ould ɔ: veri rɪtʃ

head (here) =
most important
person

families. Since old times such men have had the right
fæmiliz. sɪns ould taimz sʌtʃ men hæv hæd ðə raɪt

to be members of the House of Lords. The two Houses
tə bi: membəz əv ðə haus əv lɔ:dz. ðə tu: haʊzɪz

together make up Parliament. The British Parliament
tə'geðə meɪk ʌp pa:ləmənt. ðə brɪtɪʃ pa:ləmənt

is the oldest in the world. It is so old that nobody
ɪz ði ouldɪst ɪn ðə wɜ:ld. ɪt ɪz sʌʊ ould ðæt nəʊbɔ:di

really knows when it first started."
rɪəli nəʊz hwen ɪt fɜ:st stɑ:tɪd."

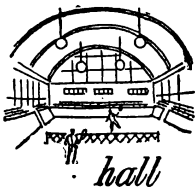
Storm: "The building where Parliament sits is a very
stɔ:m: "ðə bɪldɪŋ hwɛə pa:ləmənt sɪts ɪz ə veri

old one, too, isn't it?" Mr. Miller: "No, most people think
ould ʌn,tu:, ɪznt ɪt?" mɪstə mɪlə: "nəʊ, mʌst pi:pl piŋk

that the building must be very old; but it is only
ðæt ðə bɪldɪŋ mʌst bi: veri ould; bʌt ɪt ɪz ɔʊnli

about a hundred years old. It was built from 1840
ə'baʊt ə hʌndrəd jɪəz ould. ɪt wəz bɪlt frəm eɪti:n jɜ:ti

to 1852." As it was Saturday, they were allowed
tu eɪti:n fifti'tu:." əz ɪt wəz sætədi, ðeɪ wə:r ə'laʊd



to go in and look at the whole building, including the
tə gou in ənd luk ət ðə houl bildiŋ, in'klu:diŋ ðə

hall where the House of Commons comes together.
hɔ:l hwεə ðə haus əv kɔmənz kʌmz tə'geðə.

"It is the only day that people are allowed to go almost
"it iz ði ounli dei ðæt pi:pl a:r ə'laud tə gou ə:lmoust

everywhere inside," Mr. Miller explained; "on all
evrihwεə 'in'said," mistə milə iks'pleind; "ən ə:l

other days they do not allow people to go round every-
ʌðə deiz ðei du: nɔt ə'lau pi:pl tə gou raund evri-

where." Storm, Wood, and Brown were very surprised
hwεə." stɔ:m, wud, ənd braun wə: veri sə'praizd

at the smallness of some of the rooms. They first went
ət ðə smɔ:lnis əv sʌm əv ðə ru:mz. ðei fə:st went

to the House of Lords. Brown: "This place looks very
tə ðə haus əv lɔ:dz. braun: "ðis pleis luks veri

small. There cannot be room for 750
smɔ:l. ðεə kænɔt bi: ru:m fə sevn hʌndrəd ənd fifti

people here."
pi:pl hiə."

does not matter =
 is not important

Mr. Miller, laughing: "That does not matter, because
mistə milə, la:fiŋ: "ðæt dʌz nɔt mætə, bi'kɔz

one third = $\frac{1}{3}$
 one half = $\frac{1}{2}$

it would be very unusual if more than one third or
it wud bi: veri ʌn'ju:zuəl if mɔ: ðən wʌn þə:d ə:

one half of the members were present at the same
wʌn ha:f əv ðə membəz wə: preznt ət ðə seim

usually = most
 often

time. Usually, only about one hundred of the mem-
taim. ju:zuəli, ounli ə'baut wʌn hʌndrəd əv ðə mem-

bers are present, so you see it does not matter much
bəz a: preznt, sou ju: si: it dʌz nɒt mætə mʌtʃ

that the room is small. I must tell you, however, that
ðət ðə ru:m iz smɔ:l. ai mʌst tel ju:, hau'evə, ðət

after the Germans were over London between 1940
ɑ:ftə ðə dʒə:mənz wə:r ouvə lʌndən bi'twi:n naɪnti:n fɔ:ti

and 1945, many buildings, including the
ænd naɪnti:n fɔ:ti faɪv, meni bɪldɪŋz, ɪn'klu:diŋ ðə

House of Commons, cannot be used. At the present
haus əv kəmənz, kænɒt bi: ju:zd. ət ðə preznt

time this hall is used by the members of the House of
taɪm ðɪs hɔ:l iz ju:zd baɪ ðə membəz əv ðə haus əv

Commons. The members of the House of Lords come
kəmənz. ðə membəz əv ðə haus əv lɔ:dz kʌm

together in another hall. We will now go and look at
tə'geðər ɪn ə'nʌðə hɔ:l. wi: wɪl naʊ ɡo ænd luk ət

the place where the House of Commons was situated."
ðə pleɪs huɛə ðə haus əv kəmənz wəz sɪtʃueɪtɪd."

When they got there, Mr. Miller continued to explain,
hwen ðei ɡɒt ðeə, mɪstə mɪlə kən'tɪnju:d tu ɪks'pleɪn,

"You see that this room was also very small. It was
"ju: si: ðət ðɪs ru:m wəz ɔ:lsoʊ veri smɔ:l. ɪt wəz

impossible for all the members to find seats here at the
ɪm'pɒsəbl fər ɔ:l ðə membəz tə faɪnd si:ts hɪə ət ðə

same time, so that when anything unusual was to be
seɪm taɪm, sou ðət hwen enɪθɪŋ ʌn'ju:ʒuəl wəz tə bi:

discussed, and all the members wished to be present,
dɪs'kʌst, ænd ɔ:l ðə membəz wɪʃt tə bi: preznt,



a Norman = a man from Normandy (the north-western part of France)

a member had to come very early to get a seat." When
ə membə hæd tə kʌm veri ə:li tə get ə si:t." hwen

they came out again, the teacher pointed with his
ðei keim aul ə'gein, ðə ti:tʃə pointid wið hiz

stick to one of the towers of the Houses of Parliament,
stik tə wʌn əv ðə tauəz əv ðə haʊziz əv pɑ:ləmənt,

saying, "If Parliament is sitting, that is, if the members
seiiŋ, "if pɑ:ləmənt iz sitiŋ, ðæt iz, if ðə membəz

are present in the building, a flag is to be seen at the
ɑ: preznt in ðə bildiŋ, ə flæg iz tə bi: si:n ət ðə

top of that tower." A little later he continued, "Now
tɒp əv ðæt tauə." ə litt leiə hi: kən'tinju:d, "nau

we will go to another building which I wish to show
wi: wil gu tu ə'nʌðə bildiŋ hwitʃ ai wiʃ tə ʃəʊ

you to-day; it is the Tower, a very old castle situated
ju: tə'dei; it iz ðə tauə, ə veri ould kɑ:sl sitʃueitid

in the central part of London. They went to have
in ðə sentrəl pɑ:t əv lʌndən." ðei went tə hæv

a look at it, and on the way Mr. Miller continued to
ə luk ət it, ənd ɒn ðə wei mistə milə kən'tinju:d tu

explain, "The Tower was built by William the Con-
iks'plein, "ðə tauə wəz bilt bai wiljəm ðə kɔŋ-

queror, a Norman who became King of England, and
kərə, ə nɔ:mən hu: bi'keim kiŋ əv iŋglənd, ənd

it is nearly 900 years old. After the time of
it iz niəli naɪn haʊdrəd jɪəz ould. ɑ:ftə ðə taim əv

William the Conqueror, the English kings continued
wiljəm ðə kɔŋkərə, ði iŋglif kiŋz kən'tinju:d

to live there for many years. Then they built other
tə liv ðeə fə meni jɪəz. ðen ðei bɪlt ʌðə

castles to live in, and now the Tower has not been
kɑːslz tə liv ɪn, ənd naʊ ðə taʊə hæz nɒt biːn

used by any king for hundreds of years. It has got its
juːzd baɪ eni kɪŋ fə hʌndrədz əv jɪəz. ɪt hæz gɒt ɪts

name from one of the towers of the building that is
neɪm frəm wʌn əv ðə taʊəz əv ðə bɪldɪŋ ðæt ɪz

called 'the White Tower'."

kɔːld 'ðə hwaɪt taʊə'."

EXERCISE A.

The hotel-keeper asked the travellers if they had — themselves in London. The King and Queen had gone to Balmoral — in Scotland. In the United States they have no king, but a —. The Tower is — 900 years old. After the time of William the Conqueror the English kings — to live there for many years. Buckingham Palace is built of grey —. The two parts of Parliament are called the House of — and the House of —. The House of Commons has 640 — Were our travellers — to go inside the Houses of Parliament? Yes, they were allowed to go almost —, because it was Saturday. How many members of the House of Lords are usually — at a time? — there are only about one hundred of the members present. Was it possible for all 640 — of the House of Commons to find seats at a time? No, if they — to find — they had to come very early.

WORDS:

enjoy
 wish
 castle
 present
 draw
 drew
 drawn
 uniform
 else
 everywhere
 president
 visit
 usually
 unusual
 Parliament
 member

House of

Commons

House of Lords

right

allow

smallness

matter

point

third

half

tower

flag

continue

nearly

United States

altogether

make up

hall

Conqueror

EXERCISE B.

Why was it not possible to see the King and Queen? . . .
What was the real reason why the hotel-keeper went
to see the King? . . . Do they have a king in the United
States? . . . What is Buckingham Palace built of? . . .
What are the names of the two Houses of Parliament?
. . . Are the members of the House of Lords chosen by
the people? . . . Is the Parliament building very old? . . .
When are people allowed to go almost everywhere
inside the Houses of Parliament? . . . Why cannot all
the members of the House of Commons find seats at
a time? . . . What is to be seen at the top of one of the
towers of the Houses of Parliament when Parliament
is sitting? . . . Who built the Tower? . . . Where is the
Tower situated? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'will'.

Will John be fourteen years old on his next birthday?
Answer . . . Question . . .? No, Mr. Miller will not go
to France this year, but to England. Will the four
travellers visit places outside London? Answer . . .
Question . . .? Yes, they will spend some time at the
British Museum. Will Mr. Miller have to look after
his child while Mrs. Miller is away? Answer . . .
Question . . .? Yes, they will have to work very much
at their studies until summer. Will they wait for
Brown at the station? Answer . . . Question . . .? No,
the boy will not wake up if they are quiet. Will
it suit Mr. Miller to go to England in the first half of

July? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, it will cost Storm more than eight pounds to go to England. Will the English King and Queen stay at Balmoral Castle the whole summer? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, John and Helen will not play in the garden in winter. Will the three young men be able to speak English this summer? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, they will be able to understand the porters, too, when they have been there for some time.

THE EARLY HISTORY OF ENGLAND

The same evening they were having coffee after
ðə seim i:vniŋ ðei wə: hæviŋ kəfi a:ftə

dinner at the hotel, and talking about the Tower,
dinər ət ðə hau'tel, ənd tɔ:kiŋ ə'baut ðə taʊə,

which they had seen in the afternoon, and about the
hwɪlf ðei həd si:n in ði 'a:ftə'nu:n, ənd ə'baut ðə

king who built it. While they were discussing these
kiŋ hu: bɪlt ɪt. hwail ðei wə: dɪs'kʌsiŋ ði:z

none = no one

things, they found that none of them knew very much
piŋz, ðei faʊnd ðət nʌn əv ðəm nju: veri maʌf

about the history of England before the time of William
ə'baut ðə histəri əv iŋglənd bi'fɔ: ðə taɪm əv wɪljəm

the Conqueror. "Won't you tell us something about
ðə kɔŋkərə. "wəʊnt ju: tel ʌs sʌmpɪŋ ə'baut

the early history of England to-night, Mr. Miller?"
ði ə:li histəri əv iŋglənd tə'nait, mɪstə mɪlə?"

the young men asked the teacher. "It's raining now,
ðə jʌŋ men ɑ:skt ðə ti:tfə "ɪts reɪniŋ naʊ,

and we are tired after having walked so much this
ənd wi: ɑ: taɪəd a:ftə hæviŋ wɔ:kt sou maʌf ðɪs

afternoon, so if you are not too tired to talk, we should
'a:ftə'nu:n, sou ɪf ju: ɑ: nɒt tu: taɪəd tə tɔ:k, wi: fʊd

like very much to stay at home this evening and hear
laɪk veri maʌf tə steɪ ət haʊm ðɪs i:vniŋ ənd hiə

something about England and the English before the
sʌmpɪŋ ə'baʊt ɪŋɡlənd ənd ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ bi'fɔː ðə

time of William the Conqueror." "No, only my feet
taɪm əv wɪljəm ðə kɒŋkərə." "nou, ounli mai fɪ:t

are tired, not my head. It is tiring to walk about
aː taɪəd, nɒt mai hed. ɪt ɪz taɪərɪŋ tə wɔːk ə'baʊt

town on a hot day like to-day, so it will be nice to
taʊn ən ə hɒt dei laɪk tə'dei, sou ɪt wɪl biː naɪs tə

have a quiet evening at the hotel. Well, let us start
hæv ə kwaɪət iːvniŋ ət ðə hau'tel. wel, let ʌs sta:t

at the beginning, as far back as history can take us.
ət ðə bi'ɡɪnɪŋ, əz faː bæk əz hɪstəri kən teɪk ʌs.

We must go back about 2,000 years, to the time
wɪː mʌst ɡoʊ bæk ə'baʊt tuː paʊzənd jɪəz, tə ðə taɪm

when Cæsar, the Roman general, sailed to England
hwen siːzə, ðə roumən dʒenərəl, seɪld tu ɪŋɡlənd

with an army of Roman soldiers. At that time the
wɪð ən aːmi əv roumən souldʒəz. ət ðæt taɪm ðə

country was named Britain, and the people living in
kʌntri wəz neɪmd brɪtən, ənd ðə piːpl lɪvɪŋ ɪn

it were called Britons or Celts."

ɪt wəː kɔːld brɪtənz ɔː kelts."

Brown: "When did the country get the name of Eng-
braʊn: "hwen dɪd ðə kʌntri ɡet ðə neɪm əv ɪŋ-

land?"

ɡlənd?"

Mr. Miller: "It was not named England until several
mɪstə mɪləː "ɪt wəz nɒt neɪmd ɪŋɡlənd ʌn'tɪl sevərəl



soldier

Chapter Thirty-Six (36).

a nation = the
people of a coun-
try

He **fights**, he
fought, he has
fought [faɪts, fɔ:t,
fɔ:t].

hundred years later. Rome in Italy, where the Romans
hʌndrəd jɪəz leɪtə. rəʊm ɪn ɪtəli, huweə ðə rəʊmənz

came from, had conquered many of the nations of
keɪm frəm, həd kɔŋkəd meni əv ðə neɪʃənz əv

Europe at that time, and in the year 54 B. C.
juərəp ət ðæt taɪm, ənd ɪn ðə jɪə fɪfti'fɔ: bi: si:

(before Christ) they had got as far as the Channel
(bi'fɔ: kraɪst) ðei həd ɡɒt əz ʃa:r əz ðə tʃænl

between England and France. In that year, Cæsar
bɪ'twi:n ɪŋɡlənd ənd fra:ns. ɪn ðæt jɪə, si:zə

sailed across the Channel to Britain with an army of
seɪld ə'krəs ðə tʃænl tə brɪtən wɪð ən a:mɪ əv

Roman soldiers to fight the Britons. An army of
rəʊmən souldʒəz tə faɪt ðə brɪtənz. ən a:mɪ əv

Britons, under their general Cassivelaunus, was waiting
brɪtənz, ʌndə ðeə dʒenərəl kæsɪvi'lə:nəs, wəz weɪtɪŋ

for them, and a great battle was fought near the river
ʃə ðəm, ənd ə greɪt bætl wəz fɔ:t nɪə ðə rɪvə

Thames between the two armies. The Roman soldiers
temz bɪ'twi:n ðə tu: a:mɪz. ðə rəʊmən souldʒəz

were far too good for the Britons; but some time after
wə: ʃa: tu: ɡʊd ʃə ðə brɪtənz; bʌt sʌm taɪm a:ftə

the battle the Romans returned to their own country.
ðə bætl ðə rəʊmənz rɪ'tə:nd tə ðeər oun kʌntri.

About a hundred years later, however, a large part of
ə'baʊt ə hʌndrəd jɪəz leɪtə, haʊ'evə, ə la:dʒ pɑ:t əv

Britain was conquered by the Romans.
brɪtən wəz kɔŋkəd baɪ ðə rəʊmənz.

"For about 350 years, Rome continued to
"fər ə'baʊt pri: hʌndrəd ənd fifti jɪəz, rəʊm kən'tɪnju:d tə

send soldiers to Britain, and it was not long before the
send souldʒəz tə brɪtən, ənd ɪt wəz nɒt lɒŋ bi'fɔ: ðə

Britons and their conquerors became quite good
brɪtənz ənd ðeə kən'kweərəz bi'keɪm kwaɪt gud

quite = very

friends." Storm: "They brought many new ideas to
frendz." stɔ:m: "ðei brɔ:t meni nju: aɪ'diəz tə

Britain, too, didn't they?" Mr. Miller: "Yes, Britain,
brɪtən, tu:, dɪdn't ðei?" mɪstə mɪlə: "jes, brɪtən,

as you know, is an island, that is, a piece of land with
əz ju: nəʊ, ɪz ən aɪlənd, ðæt ɪz, ə pi:s əv lænd wɪð

water on all sides, and the Britons, therefore, had lived
wɔ:tər ɒn ɔ:l saɪdz, ənd ðə brɪtənz, ðeəfɔ:, həd lɪvd

quite alone and had not learned all the new things
kwaɪt ə'ləʊn ənd həd nɒt læ:nd ɔ:l ðə nju: pɪŋz

which had come from the East. But now the Romans
hwɪtʃ həd kʌm frəm ði i:st. bʌt nəʊ ðə rəʊmənz

taught them many modern things. They made good
tɔ:t ðəm meni mɒdən pɪŋz. ðei meɪd gud

roads through the country, and built bridges across the
rəʊdz θru: ðə kʌntri, ənd bɪlt brɪdʒɪz ə'krɒs. ðə

rivers. But at last the Romans had to leave the country.
rɪvəz. bʌt ət la:st ðə rəʊmənz həd tə li:v ðə kʌntri.

Rome itself was in difficulties, and consequently the
rəʊm ɪt'self wəz ɪn dɪfɪkəltɪz, ənd kən'sɪkwəntli ðə

difficulty =
 that which is
 difficult

soldiers were called back."
souldʒəz wə: kɔ:ld bæk."

a tribe = a very small nation, especially in old times

an enemy = the opposite of a friend

one enemy
two enemies

He **sets**, he **set**, he has **set** [*sets, set, set*].



Storm: "And then the Britons could enjoy all the
stɔ:m: "ænd ðen ðə britənz kud in'dʒɔi ɔ:l ði
advantages the Romans had brought them, without
əd'vɑ:nɪdʒɪz ðə rəʊmənz həd brɔ:t ðəm, wið'aʊt
having foreign soldiers in the country!"
hæviŋ ʃəɪn səʊldʒəz in ðə kʌntri!"

Mr. Miller: "No, for as soon as the Romans had left
mɪstə mɪlə: "nou, ʃər əz su:n əz ðə rəʊmənz həd left
the country, the Britons began to have difficulties with
ðə kʌntri, ðə britənz bɪ'gæn tə hæv dɪfɪkəltɪz wið
the Picts and Scots, two tribes who lived in the north.
ðə pɪkts ænd skɒts, tu: traɪbz hu: lɪvd in ðə nɔ:p.

These two tribes had always been the enemies of the
ði:z tu: traɪbz həd ɔ:lwəz bi:n ði enɪmɪz əv ðə

Britons, but as long as the Romans were there, the
britənz, bʌt əz lɔŋ əz ðə rəʊmənz wə: ðeə, ðə

Picts and the Scots had lived in peace with the Britons.
pɪkts ænd ðə skɒts həd lɪvd in pi:s wið ðə britənz.

Now they would not let them live in peace any longer.
nəʊ ðeɪ wʊd nɒt let ðəm lɪv in pi:s enɪ lɔŋgə.

They sent armies down to fight with the Britons; they
ðeɪ sent a:mɪz daʊn tə ʃaɪt wið ðə britənz; ðeɪ

set fire to their towns and took their children away
set ʃaɪə tə ðeə taʊnz ænd tuk ðeə ɪ'fɪldrən ə'wei

from them. The Britons could not fight them alone,
frəm ðəm. ðə britənz kud nɒt ʃaɪt ðəm ə'ləʊn,

because they had not done any fighting while the
bɪ'kɔz ðeɪ həd nɒt dʌn enɪ ʃaɪtɪŋ hwaɪl ðə

Romans were in Britain, and things went badly for
roumənz wə:r in britən, ənd piyz went bædli fə:

them.” Wood: “Couldn’t they get any help?”
ðəm.” wud: “kudnt ðei get eni help?”

Mr. Miller: “Yes, they sent word to three tribes living
mistə milə: “jes, ðei sent wə:d tə pri: traibz liviŋ

in northern Europe, asking them to come and help
in nɔ:ðən juərəp, a:skiŋ ðəm tə kʌm ənd help

them fight their enemies. The three tribes were the
ðəm faɪt ðeər enimiz. ðə pri: traibz wə: ðə

Jutes, the Saxons, and the Angles. The Angles were
dʒu:ts, ðə sæksnz, ənd ði æŋɡlz. ði æŋɡlz wə:

the largest tribe, and from their name they all got the
ðə la:dʒɪst traib, ənd frəm ðeə neim ðei ɔ:l gɒt ðə

name of ‘English’. The English liked the island of
neim əv ‘iŋɡlɪʃ’. ði iŋɡlɪʃ laɪkt ði aɪlənd əv

Britain so well that they stayed there after the war
britən sou wel ðət ðei steɪd ðeə a:ftə ðə wɔ:

with the Picts and the Scots was over.” Storm: “I can
wɪð ðə pikts ənd ðə skɒts wəz ouvə.” stɔ:m: “aɪ kən

well understand that. I should like to stay a little longer
wel ʌndə'stænd ðæt. aɪ ʃʊd laɪk tə steɪ ə lɪl lɔŋɡə

myself!” Mr. Miller: “Me too! Well, for the next
maɪ'self!” mistə milə: “mi: tu:! wel, fə ðə nekst

70 years Angles and Saxons continued to come to
sevnti jɪəz æŋɡlz ənd sæksnz kən'tɪnju:d tə kʌm tu

England, as Britain is now called, from the Continent.
iŋɡlənd, əz britən ɪz naʊ kɔ:ld, frəm ðə kɒntɪnənt.

to send word = to
 send a letter, or to
 send a person to
 tell something

war = fighting

continent

Africa is a conti-
 nent, Europe is a
 continent.

Chapter Thirty-Six (36).

the greater part
(of only two
parts); the
greatest part (of
more than two
parts)



mountains

the Continent =
the European con-
tinent = all the
countries of
Europe together,
except England,
Wales, Scotland,
and Ireland

ship = big boat

They conquered the greater part of the country from
ðei kɔŋkəd ðə greitə pa:t əv ðə kʌntri frəm

the Britons, whom they had come to help, and the
ðə britənz, hu:m ðei həd kʌm tə help, ənd ðə

Welsh, as the English called the Britons or Celts, had
welf, əz ði iŋɡlif kɔ:ld ðə britənz ɔ: kelts, həd

to go to the mountains in Wales to be able to live in
tə gou tə ðə mauntinz in weilz tə bi: eibl tə liv in

peace. The tribes that came from the Continent had at
pi:s. ðə traibz ðət keim frəm ðə kɔntinənt həd ət

first several kings, but in 825 Egbert
fə:st sevərə kiŋz, bʌt in eit haʌdrəd ənd twenti'faiv eɡbə:t

became king of all England. While he was king, the
bi'keim kiŋ əv ɔ:l iŋɡlənd. hwail hi: wəz kiŋ, ðə

Vikings from Norway and Denmark began to come to
vaikiŋz frəm nɔ:wei ənd denma:k bi'gæn tə kʌm tu

England. For 200 years the English and the
iŋɡlənd. fə tu: haʌdrəd jɪəz ði iŋɡlif ənd ðə

Vikings were at war with each other, and the Vikings
vaikiŋz wə:r ət wɔ: wið i:tʃ ʌðə, ənd ðə vaikiŋz

came nearly every summer in their long ships. They
keim niəli evri sʌmə in ðeə lɔŋ ʃips. ðei

set fire to the towns of the English and sailed back
set faɪə tə ðə taunz əv ði iŋɡlif ənd seild bæk

with their ships full of the fine things they had taken
wið ðeə ʃips ful əv ðə faɪn þiŋz ðei həd teɪkn

from them." Brown: "Did the Vikings ever conquer
frəm ðəm." braun: "did ðə vaikiŋz evə kɔŋkər

England?"
iŋglənd?"

Mr. Miller: "Yes, they did, and from 1016 until
mislə milə: "jes, ðei did, ənd frəm ten 'siks'ti:n ʌn'til
 1042 there were even Danish kings in England.
ten ʃɔ:ti'tu: ðeə wə:r i:vən deiniʃ kiŋz in iŋglənd.

In 1066 the Normans, who were Vikings that
in ten siks'ti'siks ðə nɔ:mənz, hu: wə: vaikiŋz ðət

had conquered the north of France and learned to
həd kɔŋkəd ðə nɔ:θ əv frɑ:ns ənd lə:nd tə

speak French, conquered England, and William, who
spi:k frɛnf, kɔŋkəd iŋglənd, ənd wiljəm, hu:

was now called the Conqueror, was made king. That
wəz nau kɔ:ld ðə kɔŋkərə, wəz meid kiŋ: ðæt

was the last time that an army from the European
wəz ðə la:st taim ðət ən a:mi frəm ðə juərə'pi:ən

continent conquered Britain. Many other countries
kəntinənt kɔŋkəd britən. meni ʌðə kʌntriz

have made war against England; Spain sent a large
həv meid wɔ:r ə'geinst iŋglənd; spein sent ə la:dʒ

number of ships against her, but neither the Spaniards
nʌmbər əv ʃips ə'geinst hə:, bʌt naiðə ðə spænjədz

the Spaniards =
 the people living
 in Spain

nor any other nations have ever conquered her after
nɔ:r eni ʌðə neifənz həv evə kɔŋkəd hə: a:ftə

the Battle of Hastings in 1066.
ðə bætl əv heistiŋz in ten siks'ti'siks.

"In our time we can see how the different conquerors
"in əuə taim wi: kən si: hau ðə difrənt kɔŋkərəz

Anglo-Saxon =
the language spo-
ken by the Angles
and the Saxons

of Britain have left their impression on the country,
əv brɪtən hæv left ðeər ɪm'presən ən ðə kʌntri,
 on its people and its language. In the north and east
ən ɪts pi:pl ənd ɪts læŋɡwɪdʒ. ɪn ðə nɔ:p ənd i:st
 of England, there are many towns with Danish and
əv ɪŋɡlənd, ðeər a: meni taunz wɪð deɪnɪf ənd
 Norwegian names, for example, Derby and Grimsby,
nɔ:'wi:dʒən neɪmz, fər ɪɡ'za:mpl, da:bi ənd grɪmzbi,
 and the people use many old Danish and Norwegian
ənd ðə pi:pl ju:z meni ould deɪnɪf ənd nɔ:'wi:dʒən
 words. In the English language we find many words
wə:dʒ. ɪn ði ɪŋɡlɪf læŋɡwɪdʒ wɪ: faɪnd meni wə:dʒ
 which the English have borrowed from the Normans,
hwɪtʃ ði ɪŋɡlɪf hæv bərəʊd frəm ðə nɔ:mənz,
 and just as the language is a mixture of French and
ənd dʒʌst əz ðə læŋɡwɪdʒ ɪz ə mɪkstʃər əv frɛnʃ ənd
 Anglo-Saxon, the people, too, mixed with their con-
'æŋɡləʊ'sæksn, ðə pi:pl, tu:, mɪkst wɪð ðeə kəŋ-
 querors. And the mixture is a good one, I think. But
kərəz. ənd ðə mɪkstʃər ɪz ə gud wʌn, aɪ piŋk. bʌt
 the Welsh, who went to the mountains in the west,
ðə wɛlf, hu: wɛnt tə ðə maʊntɪnz ɪn ðə wɛst,
 did not mix so much with the different conquerors of
dɪd nɒt mɪks sʊ mʌʃ wɪð ðə dɪfrənt kəŋkərəz əv
 Britain. The enemies could not cross the mountains
brɪtən. ði ɪnɪmɪz kʊd nɒt krɒs ðə maʊntɪnz
 and, therefore, had to leave them in peace, so that
ənd, 'ðeəfɔ:, hæd tə li:v ðəm ɪn pi:s, sʊ ðæt

to-day we find people in Wales who are quite different
tə'dei wi: ʃaɪnd pi:pl in weilz hu: a: kwait difrənt

from the usual English people. They are darker, they
fɾəm ðə ju:ʒuəl ɪŋɡlɪʃ pi:pl. ðei a: da:kə, ðei

like very much to sing and to play, and they all feel
laɪk veri mʌʃ tə sɪŋ ənd tə pleɪ, ənd ðei ɔ:l ʃi:l

that they are Welsh, not English. But for several
ðæt ðei a: welʃ, nɒt ɪŋɡlɪʃ. bʌt fə severəl

hundred years the three peoples, the Welsh, the Scotch,
hʌndrəd jɪəz ðə pri: pi:plz, ðə welʃ, ðə skɒʃ,

and the English, have lived in peace with each other
ənd ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ, həv livd in pi:s wið i:lʃ ʌðə

in Great Britain. I should explain, however, that the
in greɪt brɪtən. aɪ ʃʊd ɪks'pleɪn, haʊ'evə, ðæt ðə

Scotch do not like to be called Scotch. They themselves
skɒʃ du: nɒt laɪk tə bi: kɔ:ld skɒʃ. ðei ðəm'selvz

always use the word 'Scots'."

ɔ:lwəz ju:z ðə wə:d 'skɒts'."

Storm: "It has been very interesting to learn all this,
stɔ:m: "ɪt hæz bi:n veri ɪntrɪstɪŋ tə lə:n ɔ:l ðɪs,

and it has given us a greater understanding of the
ənd ɪt hæz ɡɪvən ʌs ə greɪtər ʌndə'stændɪŋ əv ðə

country we are visiting. It was a good thing that we
kʌntri wi: a: vɪzɪtɪŋ. ɪt wəz ə ɡʊd ʃɪŋ ðæt wi:

stayed at home to-night."

steɪd ət haʊm tə'naɪt'."

the Scotch = the
 Scots

WORDS:

none
history
tiring
beginning
Roman
Rome
general
soldier
name (verb)
nation
the Channel
Christ
B. C.
battle
army
quite
difficulty
Briton
Britain
Celt
Pict
Scot
Scotch
tribe
enemy
peace
set
fire
fight
fought

EXERCISE A.

The three young men did not know much about the — of England before William the Conqueror. —, they asked their teacher to tell them — about early times in England. They had been — so much in the afternoon that they had all got very —. The teacher told them about the Roman — who had sailed to England with his —. He also told them about the — that was fought between the — of Cæsar and that of Cassivelaunus.

Long after the battle the Romans — a large — of the country. Did the Romans and the Britons continue to be —? No, it was not long before the Britons and their — became — good friends. Why had the Britons continued to live — alone, so that they had not — the many new things from the —? Because Britain is an — with water on all —. Why did the Romans have to — the country again? Because — itself was in —. What two — from the north began to — with the Britons after the Romans had —? The Picts and the Scots sent — down to — with the Britons. Whom did the Britons ask to come and — them against their enemies? They sent word to three tribes — in northern — to come and — them. Is there — between the different people living in Britain now? No, the —, the —, and the English all live together in — now.

EXERCISE B.

What were the travellers talking about while they were having coffee after dinner? ... What was the

weather like that evening? . . . How far back did they start their view of the history of England? . . . What nation had conquered many of the European nations about the year 50 B.C.? . . . For how long did Rome continue to send soldiers to Britain? . . . What good did the Romans do to the Britons? . . . Why could the Britons not fight their enemies alone after the Romans had left? . . . Whose ships began to come to England while Egbert was king? . . . What did the Vikings want in England? . . . Who was made king after the Normans had conquered England? . . . Has England had wars with other nations since then? . . . What is the name of the people who live in Wales? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with do, does, did, have, has, had'.

Does it blow harder at sea than ashore? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, it only rains very little in London during the month of July. Did snow ever fall in the country where the four travellers came from? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, there did not seem to be any end to London. Has any snow fallen in your town during the last six months? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, it has not rained to-day. Do you wash yourself every morning? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, the Smith baby does not wash itself; it is too young for that. Did the four travellers enjoy themselves in London? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, Mrs. Smith washed herself before she went to the birthday-party. Have you not made yourself ready yet? Answer . . .

fighting
northern
Jute
Saxon
Angle
Welsh
war
mountain
Viking
continent
island
against
Spain
Spaniard
Norman
Anglo-Saxon
mixture
mix
usual
ship
nice
Italy
conquer

Question . . .? Yes, I have washed myself in hot water.
Had the young men walked until they had become
tired? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, they had often
talked themselves sleepy in the evenings in their own
country.

ENGLISH INSTITUTIONS

One day our four friends passed a hospital. Outside
wʌn dei auə ʃɔ: frendz pa:st ə həspɪl. 'aʊt'saɪd

they saw a placard or poster, on which was written
ðei sɔ: ə plækɑ:d ɔ: pəʊstə, ɒn hwiɪf wəz rɪtɪn

in big letters: £ 10,000 still needed to pay for
ɪn bɪg letəz: ten paʊzənd paʊndz stɪl ni:did tə peɪ ʃə

last year.

la:st jɪə.

Brown: "What is the meaning of the placard? Would
braʊn: "hʊəl ɪz ðə mi:nɪŋ əv ðə plækɑ:d? wʊd

you be kind enough to explain that to us, Mr. Miller?"
ju: bi: kaɪnd i'nʌf tu ɪks'pleɪn ðæt tu ʌs, mɪstə mɪlə?"

Mr. Miller: "Yes, that means that the hospital still
mɪstə mɪlə: "jes, ðæt mi:nz ðæt ðə həspɪl stɪl

needs £ 10,000 to be able to pay its bills
ni:dz ten paʊzənd paʊndz tə bi: eɪbl tə peɪ ɪts bɪlz

for last year. Many of the big hospitals in England
ʃə la:st jɪə. mæni əv ðə bɪg həspɪtlz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd

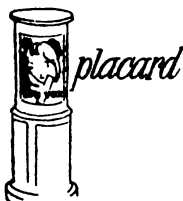
are private, that is, neither the State nor the towns
ɑ: praɪvət, ðæt ɪz, naɪðə ðə steɪt nɔ: ðə taʊnz

in which they are situated have anything to do with
ɪn hwiɪf ðei ɑ: sɪtʃueɪtɪd hæv ɛnɪθɪŋ tə du: wɪð

them, so that they do not get any money from the
ðəm, səʊ ðæt ðei du: nɒt ɡet ɛni mʌni frəm ðə



poster = placard



state = nation

towns or from the State to pay for their work." Brown:
taunz ɔ: frəm ðə steit tə pei fə ðeə wə:k. braun:

"How do they get money, then?"

"*hau du: ðei get mʌni, ðen?*"

Mr. Miller: "It is given to them by private people.
mistə milə: "it iz givn tə ðəm bai praɪvɪt pi:pl.

Money for the hospitals is often collected on special
mʌni fə ðə həspɪtlz iz ɔ:fən kə'lektɪd ɒn speʃəl

days in the year. There is, for example, a special
deɪz ɪn ðə - jɪə. ðeər iz, fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl, ə speʃəl

Saturday called Hospital Saturday on which a lot of
sætədi kɔ:ld həspɪtl sætədi ɒn hwɪtf ə lɒt əv

money is collected for the hospitals in the streets, at
mʌni iz kə'lektɪd fə ðə həspɪtlz ɪn ðə stri:ts, ət

the doors, etc. And as you have seen just now, posters
ðə dɔ:z, ɪt'setɹə. ənd əz ju: həv si:n dʒʌst nau, pəʊstəz

tell people all the year round that the hospitals need
tɛl pi:pl ɔ:l ðə jɪə raʊnd ðæt ðə həspɪtlz ni:d

money. In some countries, most of the hospitals,
mʌni. ɪn sʌm kʌntrɪz, mɔ:st əv ðə həspɪtlz,

schools, and churches are paid for either by the State
sku:lz, ənd ɪfə:tfɪz a: peɪd fɔ: aɪðə baɪ ðə steɪt

or by the towns. They are what we call public and get
ɔ: baɪ ðə taunz. ðei a: hwət wi: kɔ:l pʌblɪk ənd get

public help; but in England this is not always so. Here
pʌblɪk help; bʌt ɪn ɪŋɡlənd ðɪs ɪz nɒt ɔ:lweɪz səʊ. hɪə

those three institutions are often private. I have
ðəʊz θri: ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃənz a:r ɔ:fən praɪvɪt. aɪ həv



church

already mentioned one of them, the hospitals.

ɔ:l'redi menfənd wʌn əv ðəm, ðə həspɪlɪz.

to mention = to speak of

“Now I will tell you a little about the schools. They

“nau ai wil tel ju: ə lɪl ə'baut ðə sku:lz. ðei

may be divided into higher and lower schools. Most

mei bi: dɪ'vaɪdɪd ɪntə haɪər ənd laʊə sku:lz. mɒst

to divide = to make into parts

lower schools are paid for by the towns. They are open

laʊə sku:lz a: peɪd fɔ: baɪ ðə taʊnz. ðei a:r ɒpən

to everybody, and nobody has to pay anything for

tu evrɪbɒdi, ənd nəʊbɒdi hæz tə peɪ enɪθɪŋ fə

sending his children to one of the lower schools. The

sendɪŋ hɪz ɪfɪldrən tə wʌn əv ðə laʊə sku:lz. ðə

pupils enter the lower schools, which are also called

pju:plz ɛntə ðə laʊə sku:lz, hwɪtʃ a:r ɔ:lsoʊ kɔ:ld

primary = first

the Primary or Elementary Schools, at the age of

ðə praɪməri ɔ:r ɛlɪmentəri sku:lz, ət ði eɪdʒ əv

What is his age?
= How old is he?

five. When they are about eleven years old, they pass

fəɪv. hwen ðei a:r ə'baut ɪ'levn jɪəz ould, ðei pa:s

they pass on to = they are moved to

on to the higher or Secondary Schools, which they

ɒn tə ðə haɪər ɔ: sekəndəri sku:lz, hwɪtʃ ðei

do not leave until they are between sixteen and

du: nɒt li:v ʌn'tɪl ðei a: bɪ'twi:n sɪksti:n ənd

secondary = second

eighteen years of age. Most of the higher or Secondary

eɪti:n jɪəz əv eɪdʒ. mɒst əv ðə haɪər ɔ: sekəndəri

Schools are paid for by the towns. It does not cost

sku:lz a: peɪd fɔ: baɪ ðə taʊnz. ɪt dʌz nɒt kɒst

anything to send children to these schools. However,

enɪθɪŋ tə send ɪfɪldrən tə ði:z sku:lz. haʊ'evə,

	<p>there is also a large number of private Secondary <i>ðeər iz ɔ:lsoʊ ə ʃla:dʒ nʌmbər əv praɪvɪt sekəndəri</i></p> <p>Schools. <i>sku:lz.</i></p> <p>“The third institution I mentioned is the Church. <i>“ðə þə:d ɪnstɪ'tʃu:fən aɪ menʃənd iz ðə tʃə:tʃ.</i></p> <p>People usually think that the English are very religious. <i>pɪ:pl ju:ʒuəli þɪŋk ðæt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ a: veri rɪ'lɪdʒəs.</i></p>
a foreigner = a person from another country	<p>Foreigners have the idea that all Englishmen go to <i>ʃə'reɪnəz hæv ði aɪ'dɪə ðæt ɔ:l ɪŋɡlɪʃmən ɡoʊ tə</i></p> <p>church very often, so I think you will be surprised to <i>tʃə:tʃ veri ɔ:fən, soʊ aɪ þɪŋk ju: wɪl bi: sə'praɪzd tə</i></p> <p>hear that the Church of England is not a State church. <i>hiə ðæt ðə tʃə:tʃ əv ɪŋɡlənd iz nɒt ə steɪt tʃə:tʃ.</i></p>
though = although	<p>It is called the Church of England, but though it has <i>ɪt iz kɔ:ld ðə tʃə:tʃ əv ɪŋɡlənd, bʌt ðəʊ ɪt hæz</i></p> <p>this name, it is not a State church, because it does <i>ðɪs neɪm, ɪt iz nɒt ə steɪt tʃə:tʃ, bɪ'kɔz ɪt dʌz</i></p> <p>not get any money from the State. We may, however, <i>nɒt ɡet enɪ mʌni frəm ðə steɪt. wɪ: meɪ, haʊ'evə,</i></p>
national = of the whole nation	<p>say that it is a national church, because more Eng- <i>seɪ ðæt ɪt iz ə næʃənəl tʃə:tʃ, bɪ'kɔz mɔ:r ɪŋ-</i></p> <p>lishmen are members of this church than of any other <i>ɡlɪʃmən a: mɛmbəz əv ðɪs tʃə:tʃ ðən əv enɪ ʌðə</i></p> <p>church in England. <i>tʃə:tʃ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd.</i></p> <p>“You see, therefore, that some institutions which are <i>“ju: si:, ðeəʃə:, ðæt sʌm ɪnstɪ'tʃu:fənz hwɪlf a:</i></p>

usually public in other countries are very often private
ju:zuəli pʌblik in ʌðə kʌntriz a: veri ɔ:fɪn praɪvɪt

in England."
in ɪŋɡlənd."

Storm: "Yes, and those are not the only things in
stə:m: "jes, ənd ðəʊz a: nɒt ði ounli þɪŋz in

which the English are different from the people in
hwɪtʃ ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ a: dɪfrənt frəm ðə pi:pl in

most other countries. I think that England and Sweden
məʊst ʌðə kʌntriz. aɪ þɪŋk ðæt ɪŋɡlənd ənd swɪ:dn

are the only two countries where the traffic keeps to
a: ði ounli tu: kʌntriz hwɛə ðə træfɪk ki:ps tə

the left. If you come from a country where the traffic
ðə left. ɪf ju: kʌm frəm ə kʌntri hwɛə ðə træfɪk

keeps to the right, it is important when you cross a
ki:ps tə ðə raɪt, ɪt ɪz ɪm'pɔ:tənt hwen ju: krɒs ə

street always to look in both directions. It is not a
stri:t ɔ:lweɪz tə luk ɪn bəʊp dɪ'rekʃənz. ɪt ɪz nɒt ə

good thing to take chances. Why do England and
ɡʊd þɪŋ tə teɪk tʃa:nsɪz. hwai du: ɪŋɡlənd ənd

Sweden keep to the left, when most other nations in
swɪ:dn ki:p tə ðə left, hwen məʊst ʌðə neɪʃənz ɪn

the world keep to the right?"
ðə wɜ:ld ki:p tə ðə raɪt?"

Mr. Miller: "I am afraid I can't answer that question.
mɪstə mɪlə: "aɪ əm ə'freɪd aɪ kɑ:n't ɑ:nsə ðæt kwestʃən.

However, when foreigners come to England, it only
haʊ'evə, hwen ʃɒrɪnəz kʌm tu ɪŋɡlənd, ɪt ounli

He **keeps**, he **kept**,
he has **kept** [ki:ps,
kept, kept].

monetary =
which has to do
with money

equal to = the
same as

takes them a short time to get used to it. There are
teiks ðəm ə ʃɔ:t taim tə get ju:st tu it. ðeər a:

many other things in which the English are different
meni ʌðə þiŋz in hwitʃ ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ a: dɪfrənt

from other nations. As an example I might mention
frəm ʌðə -neɪʃənz. əz ən ɪɡ'zɑ:mpl ai maɪt menʃən

the English monetary system. Most countries in the
ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ mʌnɪtəri sistəm. mʌst kʌntrɪz ɪn ðə

world now use the decimal system. The decimal
wɜ:ld naʊ ju:z ðə desɪməl sistəm. ðə desɪməl

system, as you know, is built upon figures which may
sistəm, əz ju: nou, ɪz bɪlt ə'pɒn fɪɡəz hwɪtʃ meɪ

be divided by ten. But the English continue to use
bi: dɪ'vaɪdɪd baɪ ten. bʌt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ kən'tɪnju: tə ju:z

their pounds, shillings, and pence.
ðeə paʊndz, ʃɪlɪŋz, ənd pens.

"Their weights and measures, too, are different from
"ðeə weɪts ənd meʒəz, tu:, a: dɪfrənt frəm

those of other countries. In some countries they still
ðəʊz əv ʌðə kʌntrɪz. ɪn sʌm kʌntrɪz ðeɪ stɪl

have a weight called a pound, which is equal to
hæv ə weɪt kɔ:ld ə paʊnd, hwɪtʃ ɪz ɪ:kwəl tə

500 grammes (or half a kilogramme), but in Eng-
faɪv haʊdrəd græmz (ɔ: ha:f ə kɪləgræm), bʌt ɪn ɪŋ-

land one pound (1 lb) is equal to 454
glənd wʌn paʊnd ɪz ɪ:kwəl tə ʃɔ: haʊdrəd ənd fɪfti'fɔ:

grammes. While other countries speak of kilometres,
græmz. hwəɪl ʌðə kʌntrɪz spi:k əv kɪləmi:təz,

metres, and centimetres, the English have such
mi:təz, ənd sentimi:təz, ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ hæv sʌtʃ

measures as miles and yards. The length of a mile is
meɪəz əz maɪlz ənd ja:dz. ðə leŋθ əv ə maɪl ɪz

equal to 1.61 kilometres, and the
i:kwəl tə wʌn pɔɪnt sɪks wʌn kɪləmi:təz, ənd ðə

point = .

length of a yard is equal to 0.91 metre.
leŋθ əv ə ja:d ɪz i:kwəl tə nɔ:t pɔɪnt naɪn wʌn mi:tə.

naught [nɔ:t] = 0

A yard has 36 inches.
ə ja:d hæz þə:ti'sɪks ɪnfɪz.

“The main reason why the English do not change their
“ðə meɪn ri:zn hwaɪ ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ du: nɔt tʃeɪndʒ ðeə

weights and measures is that they like to keep to the
weɪts ənd meɪəz ɪz ðæt ðeɪ laɪk tə ki:p tə ði

old things, and the most important reason for this is,
əʊld þɪŋz, ənd ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt ri:zn fə ðɪs ɪz,

perhaps, that England is an island, cut off by the sea
pə'hæps, ðæt ɪŋɡlənd ɪz ən aɪlənd, kʌt ɔ:f baɪ ðə si:

from the other countries of the world. When the
fɾəm ði ʌðə kʌntrɪz əv ðə wɜ:ld. hwen ði

English cross the Channel, they seem to feel that they
ɪŋɡlɪʃ krɒs ðə tʃænl, ðeɪ si:m tə fi:l ðæt ðeɪ

enter quite another world, different from their own,
entə kwəɪt ə'nʌðə wɜ:ld, dɪfrənt fɾəm ðeər oun,

and mostly they do not like what they see in other
ənd maʊstli ðeɪ du: nɔt laɪk hwət ðeɪ si: ɪn ʌðə

countries so well as they do their own things.”
kʌntrɪz sou wel əz ðeɪ du: ðeər oun þɪŋz.”

WORDS:

hospital
placard
poster
private
public
state
church
institution
mention
divide
elementary
primary
secondary
age
religious
though
national
keep
kept
system
decimal
monetary
weight
measure
length
pound (lb)
equal
gramme
kilogramme
metre

EXERCISE A.

One day the young men saw a — or poster on which they read that a — needed money to pay its bills. The hospitals are not all paid for by the towns or the —; many of them are —. In some countries the hospitals, schools, and — are all —. English schools are — into higher and lower schools. The children enter the lower schools at the — of five. The Church of England is not a State church, but it may be called a — church. In England and Sweden traffic — to the left. The English — system is different from that of most other countries, too. In some countries they still have a — called a —, which is — to 500 grammes. The English — is — to 454 grammes. Instead of kilometres, metres, and centimetres, the English — are —, —, and inches. The — of a mile is — to 1.61 kilometres.

EXERCISE B.

What does it mean that an institution is public? . . . What three institutions in England do you know that are mostly private? . . . How do many hospitals get money to pay for their work? . . . At what age do the children begin school? . . . Where do the children pass on to from the Primary or Elementary Schools? . . . Why do we call the Church of England a national church? . . . Why must foreigners look in both directions when they cross streets in London? . . . To which side of the street does the English traffic keep? . . . What is the English monetary system like? . . . What are the English measures? . . . What is the length of a yard? . . . What is the main reason why the English keep to their old systems? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'can, could, may, might'.

Can Mr. Miller speak English? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, the young men can understand most of what they hear now. Can Brown afford to buy his clothes in Bond Street? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, you can buy many things at Selfridge's; the Londoners say: everything from a pin to an elephant. May you take any cigars along with you into England without paying duty? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, you may not get into England without a passport. May people see the inside of Parliament? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, you may drive on the left side of the streets of London, because in England all traffic keeps to the left. Could the young men hear what the speaker in the park was saying? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, the King's carriage could not pass through Marble Arch, because it was too narrow. Could the young men get their holidays at the same time? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, they could not see the King and Queen, because they were in Scotland. Might our friends swim in the Serpentine if they wanted to? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, he might take the seventy-five cigars into England without paying duty, because each of the four men took some of them through the Customs. Might they see any part of Hampton Court Palace? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, the speakers in Hyde Park might say what they wanted to; nobody stopped them

centimetre
yard
foreigner
naught
point

A VISIT TO AN ENGLISH FAMILY

branch = part of
a firm, situated at
another place than
the main firm

Before they started on the trip, Storm's manager had
bɪ'fɔ: ðei stɑ:tɪd ɒn ðə trɪp, stɔ:mz mænɪdʒə həd

asked him to go one day to the manager of the London
ɑ:skt him tə ɡoʊ wʌn dei tə ðə mænɪdʒər əv ðə lʌndən

branch of the firm. It would interest the young man,
brɑ:nʃ əv ðə ʃə:m. ɪt wʊd ɪntrɪst ðə jʌŋ mæn,

he thought, to see the work in a big English office,
hi: þɔ:t, tə si: ðə wɜ:k ɪn ə bɪɡ ɪŋɡlɪʃ ɔfɪs,

and he would learn something which might be useful
ænd hi: wʊd lə:n sʌmpɪŋ hwɪtʃ maɪt bi: ju:sfʊl

to him later on in his work at home.

tə him leɪtər ɒn ɪn hɪz wɜ:k ət hoʊm.

So one day during the last week of their stay in
sou wʌn dei 'dʒuəriŋ ðə lɑ:st wi:k əv ðeə steɪ ɪn

London, Storm went to pay a visit to the London
lʌndən, stɔ:m went tə peɪ ə vɪzɪt tə ðə lʌndən

office. Mr. Edwards, the manager, greeted him very
ɔfɪs. mɪstər edwədz, ðə mænɪdʒə, ɡri:tɪd him veri

kindly. "How do you do," he said; "your manager
kaindli. "haʊdʒu'du:," hi: sed; "jɔ: mænɪdʒə

wrote and told me that you were coming, so I have
rəʊt ænd təʊld mi: ðæt ju: wə: kʌmɪŋ, sou aɪ həv

been expecting you. But come into my private office
bi:n ɪks'pektɪŋ ju:. bʌt kʌm ɪntə maɪ praɪvət ɔfɪs

and tell me what you have been doing. Your manager
and tel mi: hwɔt ju: həv bi:n du:iŋ. jɔ: mænɪdʒər

and I are old friends, you know. He was over here
and ai a:r ould frendz, ju: nou. hi: wəz ouvə hiə

to study the business when I was a young man in
tə stʌdi ðə biznis hwen ai wəz ə jʌŋ mæn in

this same office, so we know each other very well. I
ðis seim ɔfis, sou wi: nou i:tʃ ʌðə veri wel. ai

shall be glad to show you round the place.”
ʃəl bi: glæd tə ʃou ju: raund ðə pleis.”

A little later, when they were walking round, Mr.
ə litt leɪtə, hwen ðei wə: wɔ:kiŋ raund, mɪstər

Edwards showed him several modern machines that
edwədz ʃəʊd him sevərəl mɒdən mə'fi:nz ðət

they had just bought. “Come and have a look at this
ðei həd dʒʌst bɔ:t. “kʌm and həv ə luk ət ðis

one,” he said, showing him an adding machine. “It
wʌn,” hi: sed, ʃəʊɪŋ him ən ædɪŋ mə'fi:n. “it

is a very useful machine, which saves us a lot of time.
iz ə veri ju:sfʊl mə'fi:n, hwɪtʃ seɪvz ʌs ə lɒt əv taɪm.

Before we got it, we had a man who sat all day adding
bɪ'ɔ: wi: ɡɒt ɪt, wi: həd ə mæn hu: sæt ɔ:l dei ædɪŋ

figures; now the same man does the same work in less
fiɡəz; naʊ ðə seɪm mæn dʌz ðə seɪm wɜ:k in les

than three hours with his machine. That means more
ðən θri: aʊəz wɪð hi:z mə'fi:n. ðæt mi:nz mɔ:

than five hours saved every day.” Storm was shown
ðən faɪv aʊəz seɪvd evri dei.” stɔ:m wəz ʃəʊn

round (here) =
about



a conversation =
a talk between
two or more
persons



dinner-jacket

some other modern things that are useful in an office,
sʌm ʌðə mɒdən piŋz ðət a: ju:sfʊl in ən əfɪs,

and then they went back to the manager's private
ænd ðen ðei went bæk tə ðə mænɪdʒəz praɪvət

office. After Storm had told the manager what they
əfɪs. ɑ:f tə stɔ:m hæd təʊld ðə mænɪdʒə hwət ðei

had seen and done during their stay in England, Mr.
hæd si:n ænd dʌn dʒuəriŋ ðeə steɪ in ɪŋɡlənd, mɪstər

Edwards said, "I know what it is like to be in a for-
edwədz sed, "aɪ nou hwət ɪt ɪz laɪk tə bi: in ə fɔ-

eign country as a tourist. You do not get into con-
rɪn kʌntri əz ə tuərɪst. ju: du: nɒt get ɪntə kən-

versation with Englishmen as much as you would like
və'seɪʃən wɪð ɪŋɡlɪʃmən əz mʌʃ əz ju: wʊd laɪk

to. So if you would like to come and dine with us to-
tu. sɒ ɪf ju: wʊd laɪk tə kʌm ænd daɪn wɪð ʌs tə-

night, all four of you, my wife and I would be very
naɪt, ɔ:l fɔ:r əv ju:, maɪ waɪf ænd aɪ wʊd bi: veri

pleased. Could you come at half past seven?" "Thank
pli:zd. kʊd ju: kʌm ət ha:f pa:st sevən?" "θæŋk

you very much, that is very kind of you!" Storm
ju: veri mʌʃ, ðæt ɪz veri kaɪnd əv ju:!" stɔ:m

answered, "but I am afraid that we have not brought
ɑ:nsəd, "bʌt aɪ əm ə'freɪd ðət wi: hæv nɒt brɔ:t

the right clothes for that. We took as little luggage
ðə raɪt kləʊðz fɔ ðæt. wi: tuk əz lɪl lʌɡɪdʒ

as possible, and none of us have brought our dinner-
əz pɒsəbl, ænd nən əv ʌs hæv brɔ:t əʊə daɪnə-

jackets. We didn't expect an invitation to dinner, you
dʒækits. wi: didnt iks'pekt ən invi'teifən tə dinə, ju:

know." At this reply Mr. Edwards laughed, saying,
nou." ət ðis ri'plai mistər edwədz lɑ:ft, seiɪŋ,

"My dear boy, what a funny idea that it would be
"mai diə bɔi, hwət ə ʃʌni ai'diə ðət it wud bi:

necessary for you to wear a dinner-jacket! I am
nesisəri ʃə ju: tə weər ə dinədʒækɪt! ai əm

afraid that it is an idea that many foreigners have. I
ə'freɪd ðət it ɪz ən ai'diə ðət meni ʃɔrinəz hæv. ai

know that some English writers give that impression
nou ðət sʌm ɪŋɡlɪʃ raɪtəz gɪv ðæt im'presən

in their books. Kipling, for example, gives the im-
in ðeə buks. kipliŋ, ʃər ɪg'zɑ:mpl, gɪvz ði im-

pression that Englishmen wear dinner-jackets for
'presən ðət ɪŋɡlɪʃmən weə dinədʒækits ʃə

dinner every evening. But this may only be said of
dinə evri i:vniŋ. bʌt ðis mei ounli bi: sed əv

some people of the upper classes. The Englishman of
sʌm pi:pl əv ði ʌpə kla:sɪz. ði ɪŋɡlɪʃmən əv

the middle classes wears his usual clothes for dinner,
ðə mɪdl kla:sɪz weəz hɪz ju:ʒuəl kləʊðz ʃə dinə,

and he is not so much interested in the clothes that
ænd hi: ɪz nɒt səʊ mʌʃ ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðə kləʊðz ðət

people wear as in the people wearing them. Speaking
pi:pl weə əz ɪn ðə pi:pl weəriŋ ðəm. spi:kiŋ

for myself, it has not been necessary for me to wear
ʃə mai'self, ɪt hæz nɒt bi:n nesisəri ʃə mi: tə weər

necessary = which
must be done

He **wears**, he **wore**,
he has **worn**
[weəz, wɔ:, wɔ:n].

upper = higher

a dinner-jacket for six months, and the last time I
 ə dɪnədʒækɪt fə sɪks mʌnθs, ənd ðə la:st taɪm aɪ
 wore mine it was only because it was necessary to
 wə: maɪn ɪt wəz ɒnli bɪ'kəʊz ɪt wəz nɛsɪsəri tə
 give it some fresh air. May we expect you to dinner,
 gɪv ɪt sʌm freʃ ɛə. meɪ wi: ɪks'pekt ju: tə dɪnə,
 then?" Storm: "Yes, thank you, we shall be very pleased
 ðen?" stɔ:m: "jes, þæŋk ju:, wi: fəl bi: veri pli:zd
 to come."
 tə kʌm."

When Storm told his friends about the invitation,
 huən stɔ:m təʊld hɪz frendz ə'baut ði ɪnvi'teɪʃən,
 they were all very pleased at the chance of speaking
 ðeɪ wə:r ɔ:l veri pli:zd ət ðə tʃɑ:ns əv spi:kɪŋ
 to an Englishman and his family in their home. They
 tu ən ɪŋɡlɪʃmən ənd hɪz fæmɪli ɪn ðeə haʊm. ðeɪ
 arrived at Mr. Edwards's a little before 7.30 and
 ə'raɪvd ət mɪstər edwədʒɪz ə lɪl bɪ'ʃɔ: sevn þə:ti ənd
 were shown into the sitting-room. They found Mr.
 wə: ʃəʊn ɪntə ðə sɪtɪŋrʊm. ðeɪ faʊnd mɪstər
 Edwards with his wife, and he introduced Storm to
 edwədʒ wɪð hɪz waɪf, ənd hi: ɪntrə'dju:st stɔ:m tə
 his wife with the words, "My dear, may I introduce
 hɪz waɪf wɪð ðə wə:dz, "maɪ diə, meɪ aɪ ɪntrə'dju:s
 Mr. Storm to you? Mr. Storm, this is my wife." Storm
 mɪstə stɔ:m tə ju:? mɪstə stɔ:m, ðɪs ɪz maɪ waɪf." stɔ:m
 greeted her, saying, "How do you do, Mrs. Edwards,"
 ɡri:tɪd hæ:, seɪɪŋ, "haʊdju'du:, mɪsɪz edwədʒ,"

and then he introduced his friends, "This is Mr. Miller,
ænd ðen hi: intrə'dju:st hiz frendz, "ðis iz mistə milə,
 our teacher, and these are my two friends, Mr. Wood
auə ti:tfə, ænd ði:z a: mai tu: frendz, mistə wud
 and Mr. Brown."
ænd mistə braun."

Mr. Miller thanked Mr. and Mrs. Edwards for their
mistə milə þəŋkt mistər ænd misiz edwədz fə ðeə
 kindness in asking three strangers — three men whom
kaindnis in a:skiŋ pri: streindʒəz — pri: men hu:m

they did not know — to dinner. After a glass of wine
ðei did nɒt nou — tə dinə. a:ftər ə gla:s əv wain

Mr. Edwards said to Mr. Miller, Brown, and Wood,
mistər edwədz sed tə mistə milə, braun, ænd wud,

"May Mr. Storm and I leave you for a few minutes?
"mei mistə stɔ:m ænd ai li:v ju: fər ə fju: minits?

There is something I want to speak to Mr. Storm
ðeər iz sʌmpŋ ai wɒnt tə spi:k tə mistə stɔ:m

about before dinner. — Will you fill the gentlemen's
ə'baʊt bi'fɔ: dinə. — wil ju: fil ðə dʒentlmənz

glasses again, my dear," he said to his wife, "while
gla:siz ə'gein, mai diə," hi: sed tə hiz waif, "hwail

Mr. Storm and I go into my study?"
mistə stɔ:m ænd ai gou intə mai stʌdi?"

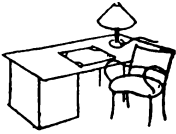
Mr. Edwards's study was a nice large room with book-
mistər edwədziz stʌdi wəz ə nais la:dʒ ru:m wið buk-

shelves along two walls, a fire-place, in front of which
felvz ə'ləŋ tu: wɔ:lz, ə faɪəpleis, in frʌnt əv hwɪf

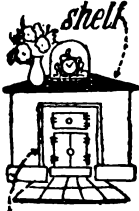


book-shelf

one shelf
 two shelves



writing-table



fire-place

stay on = stay

to be taken ill =
to become ill

there were some big chairs, and a large writing-table
ðeə wə: sʌm biɡ tʃeəz, ənd ə la:dʒ raɪtɪŋleɪbl

with many papers and books. Over the fire-place was
wɪð meni peɪpəz ənd buks. oʊvə ðə ˈfaɪəpleɪs wəz

a shelf, on which there was a fine old clock. "Sit down
ə ʃelf, ɒn hwɪlf ðeə wəz ə ˈfaɪn ould klɒk. "sɪt daʊn

in that chair, Storm," said Mr. Edwards, "I will take
ɪn ðæt tʃeə, stɔ:m," sed mɪstə edwədz, "aɪ wɪl teɪk

this one." He then began, "How would you like to
ðɪs wʌn." hi: ðen bɪˈɡæn, "haʊ wʊd ju: laɪk tə

stay on here a few months longer, Storm? You see,
steɪ ɒn hɪə ə fju: mʌnθs lɒŋɡə, stɔ:m? ju: si:,

one of my young men at the office was taken ill last
wʌn əv maɪ jʌŋ men ət ðɪ ɒfɪs wəz teɪkn ɪl la:st

week, and he will not be able to start work again
wi:k, ənd hi: wɪl nɒt bi: eɪbl tə stɑ:t wə:k əˈɡeɪn

until the beginning of next year. He has been doing
ʌnˈtɪl ðə bɪˈɡɪnɪŋ əv nekst jɪə. hi: həz bi:n du:ɪŋ

all our foreign correspondence; most of it is with
ɔ:l əʊə ˈfɔrɪn kɔrɪsˈpɒndəns; mɔ:st əv ɪt ɪz wɪð

your country, you know. He writes your language
jɔ: kʌntri, ju: nəʊ. hi: raɪts jɔ: læŋɡwɪdʒ

quite well and knows something of several other
kwaɪt wel ənd nəʊz sʌmˈpɪŋ əv severəl ʌðə

languages besides. I might get another young man
læŋɡwɪdʒɪz bɪˈsaɪdz. aɪ maɪt ɡet əˈnʌðə jʌŋ mæn

to take his position, but it may be difficult, as it is
tə teɪk hɪz pəˈzɪʃən, bʌt ɪt meɪ bi: dɪfɪkəlt, əz ɪt ɪz

only for six months. You see, I told him that he could
ounli fə siks mʌnθs. ju: si:, ai tould him ðæt hi: kud

have his position back when he is well again. But tell
hæv hiz pə'zifən bæk hwen hi: iz wel ə'geɪn. bʌt tel

me now what work you are used to, and whether you
mi: nau hwət wə:k ju: a: ju:st tu, ənd hweðə ju:

think you would be able to fill the position." Storm
piŋk ju: wud bi: eibl tə fil ðə pə'zifən." stɔ:m

told him then that he was quite used to business
tould him ðen ðæt hi: wəz kwait ju:st tə biznis

correspondence; he had written all the letters for his
kɔris'pɒndəns; hi: həd ritn ɔ:l ðə letəz fə hiz

manager for some time, and he was used to all office
mænɪdʒə fə sʌm taɪm, ənd hi: wəz ju:st tu ɔ:l əfɪs

work. "I should like very much to stay on over here,
wə:k. "ai fud laɪk veri mʌʃ tə steɪ ɒn ɔvə hiə,

but don't you think it will be difficult for my manager
bʌt dɒnt ju: piŋk ɪt wɪl bi: dɪfɪkəlt fə maɪ mænɪdʒə

to find somebody to fill my position so suddenly?
tə faɪnd sʌmbədi tə fil maɪ pə'zifən sɒ sʌdnli?

somebody = some
one

What will he say to it? It is for him to decide."
hwət wɪl hi: sei tu ɪt? ɪt ɪz fə him tə dɪ'saɪd."

"I will send him a telegram and ask him about it.
"ai wɪl send him ə telɪgræm ənd ɑ:sk him ə'baut ɪt.

If he sends a quick reply by telegram, which is so
ɪf hi: sendz ə kwɪk ri'plai baɪ telɪgræm, hwɪʃ ɪz sɒ

much quicker than a letter, the whole thing can be
mʌʃ kwɪkə ðən ə letə, ðə həʊl piŋ kən bi:

decided in a day or two.”
dɪ'saɪdɪd ɪn ə deɪ ɔː tuː.”

When they had finished their conversation, they went
hwen ðeɪ həd fɪnɪʃt ðeə kənʋə'seɪʃən, ðeɪ went
 in to have dinner with the others.
ɪn tə hæv dɪnə wɪð ði ʌðəz.

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:
 branch
 useful
 stay
 conversation
 pay a visit
 expect
 machine
 save
 dinner-jacket
 writer
 wear
 wore
 worn
 upper classes
 middle classes
 introduce
 kindness
 stranger
 fill
 study
 shelf
 book-shelf

Storm went to pay a — to the London — of his firm.
 The manager had — him for some days. He showed
 Storm some modern — which he had bought. One of
 them was an — machine. The manager said that the
 machines — much time. Some English — give the
 impression that Englishmen wear — for dinner every
 day. Most of the English, however, are more interested
 in people themselves than in the clothes they —.
 When the four travellers got to the manager's house,
 he — Storm to his wife. He and Storm went to his —
 to talk together. Did Storm think that he could fill
 the —? Yes, he said that he was used to business —.
 Why are adding machines so —? Because they — so
 much time.

EXERCISE B.

Where had Storm's manager asked him to go? . . . Why
 had Mr. Edwards expected Storm? . . . What did he
 show him in his office? . . . Had any of the four men
 brought their dinner-jackets along? . . . Do the English
 usually wear dinner-jackets for dinner? . . . Into which
 room did Mr. Edwards and Storm go to talk together?
 . . . What was over the fire-place in Mr. Edwards's

study? . . . Did Storm think that he would be able to fill the position? . . . What did they send to Storm's manager to ask if Storm might take the position? . . . Why didn't Mr. Edwards get another Englishman to fill the position? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'am, is, are, was, were, has been, have been, had been' and verbs in -ing.

Is John coming home for dinner now? Answer . . .
 Question . . .? Yes, I am going to town next week.
 Are the four travellers having a good time in England? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, they are thinking of a trip up the Thames. Was Mr. Edwards expecting Storm when he visited his office? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, the business people were leaving their offices when our four travellers arrived in London. Were Mr. Miller and the three young men standing on deck when the steamer started on the trip to England? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, Mr. Miller, Storm, and Wood were waiting at the railway station when Brown arrived. Has Wood been working at the office for a year? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, the three friends have not been studying English for so very long. Had John been skating on the lake in the afternoon? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, Helen had been learning to swim all the summer. Had the young men been planning their trip to England for a long time? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, this time Mrs. Miller had been staying at the farm all the time her husband was in England.

fire-place
 writing-table
 correspondence
 position
 somebody
 quick
 telegram
 interest (verb)
 reply
 necessary
 over
 round
 adding machine

AN ENGLISH HOUSE

When dinner was over, Mr. Edwards offered to show
hwen dinə wəz ouvə, mistər edwədz ɔfəd tə fou

his guests the house. "You haven't seen the inside of
hiz gests ðə haus. "ju: hævnt si:n ði insaid əv

an English home, have you?" he asked them. "Perhaps
ən ɪŋglɪʃ hoʊm, hæv ju:?" hi: ɑ:skt ðəm. "pə'hæps

it might interest you to see ours. It is a little larger
ɪt maɪt ɪntrɪst ju: tə si: əuəz. ɪt ɪz ə lɪl lɑ:dʒə

than what we might call 'the typical English house'.
ðən hwət wi: maɪt kɔ:l 'ðə tɪpɪkəl ɪŋglɪʃ haus'.

The typical English house, I should say, has five rooms.
ðə tɪpɪkəl ɪŋglɪʃ haus, aɪ ʃʊd sei, hæz faɪv ru:mz.

Four fifths (4/5) of all the small houses that you have
fɔ: fɪfθs əv ɔ:l ðə smɔ:l haʊzɪz ðæt ju: hæv

seen on your trips about London have been of that
si:n ɒn jɔ: trɪps ə'baʊt lʌndən hæv bi:n əv ðæt

type, and it is not only in London that this type is
taɪp, ənd ɪt ɪz nɒt ɒnli ɪn lʌndən ðæt ðɪs taɪp ɪz

common = usual

common, but all over England.
kəmən, bʌt ɔ:l ɒvər ɪŋɡlənd.

"Now, we have three rooms on the ground floor. You
"naʊ, wi: hæv θri: ru:mz ɒn ðə graʊnd flɔ:. ju:

have seen two of them, and I will show you the study
hæv si:n tu: əv ðəm, ənd aɪ wɪl ʃəʊ ju: ðə stʌdi

now," he added, opening the door to his study. "This
nau," *hi:* *ædid,* *oupəniŋ* *ðə* *dɔ:* *tə* *hiz* *stʌdi.* "*ðis*

is my room, where I can have my books and papers
iz *mai* *ru:m,* *hwɛər* *ai* *kən* *hæv* *mai* *buks* *ænd* *peipəz*

in peace. The maid comes in here about once a week
in *pi:s.* *ðə* *meid* *kʌmz* *in* *hiə* *ə'baʊt* *wʌnz* *ə* *wi:k*

to clean the room, and on that day I can never find
tə *kli:n* *ðə* *ru:m,* *ænd* *ɒn* *ðæt* *dei* *ai* *kən* *nevə* *faɪnd*

any of my things. She has been here to-day, I think,
eni *əv* *mai* *þiŋz.* *ʃi:* *həz* *bi:n* *hiə* *tə'dei,* *ai* *þiŋk,*

for I can't see my cigars anywhere. Well, they must
fər *ai* *ka:nt* *si:* *mai* *sɪ'ga:z* *enihwɛə.* *wel,* *ðei* *mʌst*

be somewhere, so I'll see if I can find them." He
bi: *sʌmhwɛə,* *sou* *aɪl* *si:* *ɪf* *ai* *kən* *faɪnd* *ðəm."* *hi:*

looked round the room, found the box of cigars at last
lʊkt *raʊnd* *ðə* *ru:m,* *faʊnd* *ðə* *bɒks* *əv* *sɪ'ga:z* *ət* *la:st*

on one of the book-shelves, and then offered one to
ɒn *wʌn* *əv* *ðə* *bʊkʃelvz,* *ænd* *ðen* *ə'fəd* *wʌn* *tu*

each of his guests.

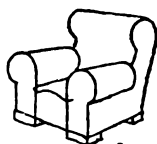
i:tʃ *əv* *hiz* *gests.*

"These arm-chairs in front of the fire-place look very
"ði:z *a:mtʃeəz* *in* *fɹʌnt* *əv* *ðə* *faɪəpleɪs* *lʊk* *veri*

comfortable," said Wood, and Mr. Edwards replied,
kʌmfətəbl," *sed* *wʊd,* *ænd* *mɪstər* *edwədz* *rɪ'plaɪd,*

"Yes, they are very nice to sit in. I have tried to
"jes, *ðei* *a:* *veri* *nais* *tə* *sɪt* *in.* *ai* *həv* *traɪd* *tə*

make my house as comfortable as possible, for it is so
meɪk *mai* *haus* *əz* *kʌmfətəbl* *əz* *pɒsəbl,* *fər* *ɪt* *ɪz* *sou*



arm-chair

to cook = to
make food ready
for eating

the ground floor =
the floor nearest
to the ground

nice, when you come home after a long day's work, to
nais, huən ju: kʌm hoʊm a:ftər ə lɔŋ deɪz wə:k, tə
sit in a big, comfortable chair, reading the paper or
sɪt ɪn ə bɪɡ, kʌmfə'təbl ɪʃeə, rɪ:diŋ ðə peɪpə ɔ:r
a good book. But come along and see the other rooms
ə ɡʊd bu:k. bʌt kʌm ə'lɔŋ ənd si: ði ʌðə ru:mz
of the house. The kitchen, where the food is cooked,
əv ðə haʊs. ðə kɪtʃɪn, huweə ðə ʃu:d ɪz kʊkt,
is not very interesting to men; it is here at the back
ɪz nɒt veri ɪntrɪstɪŋ tə men; ɪt ɪz hɪə ət ðə bæk
of the house; but next to the kitchen is a small room
əv ðə haʊs; bʌt nekst tə ðə kɪtʃɪn ɪz ə smɔ:l ru:m
which is typical of an English house. It is called the
hwɪlf ɪz tɪpɪkəl əv ən ɪŋɡlɪʃ haʊs. ɪt ɪz kɔ:ld ðə
scullery, and it is used for the washing up and for the
skʌləri, ənd ɪt ɪz ju:zd ʃə ðə wɔʃɪŋ ʌp ənd ʃə ðə
dirty part of the cooking, such as cleaning potatoes
dɜ:li pɑ:t əv ðə kʊkɪŋ, sʌtʃ əz kli:nɪŋ pə'teɪtəʊz
and vegetables." After having shown them the ground
ənd vedʒɪtəblz." a:ftə hævɪŋ ʃaʊn ðəm ðə ɡraʊnd
floor, Mr. Edwards took them upstairs to the first
flɔ:, mɪstər edwədz tu:k ðəm 'ʌp'steəz tə ðə ʃə:st
floor. "Upstairs we have all the bedrooms and the
flɔ:. "'ʌp'steəz wi: hæv ɔ:l ðə bedrʊmz ənd ðə
bathroom. This big one is our own room; here is one
bɑ:prʊm. ðɪs bɪɡ wʌn ɪz ʌʊər ʌʊn ru:m; hɪər ɪz wʌn
for the maid, and this is my daughter's room. She is
ʃə ðə meɪd, ənd ðɪs ɪz maɪ dɔ:təz ru:m. ʃi: ɪz

not at home to-night; these young people are never
nɒt ət haʊm tə'naɪt; ði:z jʌŋ pi:pl a: nevər

at home! She has gone out with some friends to see
ət haʊm! ʃi: hæz ɡɒn aʊt wɪð sʌm frɛndz tə si:

a picture. That room used to be my son's, but he is
ə pɪktʃə. ðæt ru:m ju:st tə bi: maɪ sʌnz, bʌt hi: ɪz

now married to the daughter of an old friend of mine
nau mə'ɪrɪd tə ðə dɔ:tər əv ən ould frɛnd əv maɪn

and has his own home. It is nice to have an extra
ænd hæz hɪz ʌn haʊm. ɪt ɪz naɪs tə hæv ən ɛkstrə

room. Since my son married two years ago, we have
ru:m. sɪns maɪ sʌn mə'ɪrɪd tu: jɪəz ə'ɡəʊ, wi: hæv

often used the room for guests. Well, shall we go
ɔ:fən ju:zd ðə ru:m fə ɡɛsts. wel, ʃəl wi: ɡəʊ

downstairs again? I think you have seen all there is
'daʊn'steəz ə'ɡeɪn? aɪ θɪŋk ju: hæv si:n ɔ:l ðeər ɪz

to be seen upstairs and downstairs now. Perhaps you
tə bi: si:n 'ʌp'steəz ænd 'daʊn'steəz nau. pə'hæps ju:

would like to see the garden, too. You know that, like
wʊd laɪk tə si: ðə ɡɑ:dn, tu:. ju: nou ðət, laɪk

most Englishmen, I love my garden. I love to work
məʊst ɪŋɡlɪʃmən, aɪ lʌv maɪ ɡɑ:dn. aɪ lʌv tə wɜ:k

in it in the evening after sitting in the office most of
ɪn ɪt ɪn ði i:vnɪŋ ɑ:ftə sɪtɪŋ ɪn ði ɔfɪs məʊst əv

the day. On Sunday mornings I get a lot of work done
ðə dei. ən sʌndi mɔ:nɪŋz aɪ ɡet ə lɒt əv wɜ:k dʌn

in the garden. I am hardly ever ill, and I think it
ɪn ðə ɡɑ:dn. aɪ əm hɑ:dli evər ɪl, ænd aɪ θɪŋk ɪt

to love = to like
 very much



rose



lawn

is my love of garden work that does this. Work like
iz mai lʌv əv ɡɑ:dn wə:k ðæt dʌz ðis. wə:k laik

this is necessary for a business man to keep him well.
ðis iz nesisəri fər ə biznis mæn tə ki:p him wel.

I am especially interested in roses. Over here on the
ai əm is'pefəli intristid ,in rouziz. ʊvə hiə ən ðə

south side of the house and along the garden wall, I
saʊp saɪd əv ðə haʊs ænd ə'lɔŋ ðə ɡɑ:dn wɔ:l, ai

have my rose-bushes. Aren't they beauties?
hæv mai rouzbʊfiz. a:nt ðei bjʊ:tiz?

"You see that we have a big lawn. Most English people
"ju: si: ðæt wi: hæv ə big lɔ:n. moust iŋɡlɪʃ pi:pl

like to have a piece of ground with grass in their
laik tə hæv ə pi:s əv ɡraʊnd wið ɡrɑ:s in ðeə

gardens. As you can see, the lawn goes right up to the
ɡɑ:dnz. əz ju: kən si:, ðə lɔ:n ɡəʊz raɪt ʌp tə ðə

house, so that looking out of the windows, we almost
haʊs, sʊ ðæt lʊkiŋ aʊt əv ðə wi:ndəʊz, wi:ɔ:lmaʊst

feel that we are in the garden. The lawns of many
fi:l ðæt wi: a:r in ðə ɡɑ:dn. ðə lɔ:nz əv meni

large old English country-houses are famous all over
la:dʒ ould iŋɡlɪʃ kʌntrihaʊziz a: feɪməs ɔ:l ʊvə

the world. These old lawns are so famous and well
ðə wɜ:ld. ði:z ould lɔ:nz a: sʊ feɪməs ænd wel

known that, when people want to say that a lawn is
nəʊn ðæt, hwen pi:pl wənt tə sei ðæt ə lɔ:n iz

really beautiful, they say it is a 'real English lawn'.
riəli bjʊ:təfʊl, ðei sei it iz ə 'riəl iŋɡlɪʃ lɔ:n'.

Some of them are several hundred years old.

sʌm əv ðəm a: sevrəl hʌndrəd jɪz ould.

"At the back of the garden are my fruit trees, and we

"ət ðə bæk əv ðə ga:dən a: mai fru:t tri:z, ənd wi:

also have a small kitchen-garden with a few vegetables.

ə:lsou hæv ə smɔ:l kitʃinga:dən wið ə fju: vedʒitəblz.

It isn't of very much use to us, but I get lots of fun

it iznt əv veri mʌʃ ju:s tu ʌs, bʌt ai get lɒts əv ʃʌn

out of working in it." On their way back to the house

aʊt əv wə:kiŋ in it." ɒn ðeə wei bæk tə ðə haus

Mr. Edwards showed them the garage and opened the

mɪstər edwədz ʃəʊd ðəm ðə ɡæra:ʒ ənd ɒpənd ðə

door so that they might see his car. It was a beauty,

dɔ: sou ðət ðei maɪ si: hɪz kɑ:. ɪt wəz ə bjʊ:ti,

and quite new. "It is a small Morris," he said. "I

ənd kwaɪt nju:. "ɪt ɪz ə smɔ:l mɔ:ris," hi: sed. "ai

think you know Morris cars in your country, too. It

θɪŋk ju: nou mɔ:ris kɑ:z in jɔ: kʌntri, tu:. ɪt

is quite famous in other countries for its low price and

ɪz kwaɪt feɪməs in ʌðə kʌntriz ʃər ɪts ləʊ praɪs ənd

for being cheap to run. I have had other cars before,

ʃər bi:ɪŋ tʃi:p tə rʌn. ai hæv həd ʌðə kɑ:z bɪ'fɔ:,

larger ones, but now that we are only three, this one

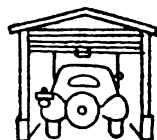
lɑ:dʒə wʌnz, bʌt naʊ ðət wi: a:r ɒnli θri:, ðɪs wʌn

is big enough, and, nowadays, cheapness is something

ɪz bɪɡ i'nʌf, ənd, naʊədeɪz, tʃi:pnis ɪz sʌmpɪŋ

one must think of, too. It runs many miles for a few

wʌn mʌst θɪŋk əv, tu:. ɪt rʌnz meni maɪlz ʃər ə fju:



garage

to run (here) =
to drive

rosy = like a rose

wavy hair = hair
with waves in it

shillings." There was a door from the garage into the
filiŋz." *ðeə wəz ə dɔː frəm ðə ɡæraːʒ intə ðə*
 hall, and they returned to the house by this door. Miss
hɔːl, ʌnd ðei ri'təːnd tə ðə haʊs baɪ ðɪs dɔː. mɪs
 Edwards had now returned and was introduced to the
edwədz həd naʊ ri'təːnd ʌnd wəz ɪntrə'djuːst tə ðə
 guests by her father, who said, "This is my daughter
ɡests baɪ hɜː fɑːðə, huː sed, "ðɪs ɪz maɪ dɔːtə
 Marion. Marion, this is Mr. Miller, who is staying in
mæriən. mæriən, ðɪs ɪz mɪstə mɪlə, huː ɪː steɪɪŋ ɪn
 England with his pupils, Mr. Storm, Mr. Wood, and
ɪŋɡlənd wɪð hɪz pjuːplz, mɪstə stɔːm, mɪstə wʊd, ʌnd
 Mr. Brown." Miss Edwards was a lovely young girl,
mɪstə braʊn." *mɪs edwədz wəz ə lʌvli jʌŋ ɡəːl,*
 a typical English beauty, with a rosy face, blue eyes,
ə tɪpɪkəl ɪŋɡlɪʃ bjuːti, wɪð ə rouzi feɪs, bluː aɪz,
 and brown, wavy hair. They sat for some hours talking
ʌnd braʊn, weɪvi heə. ðei sæt fə sʌm aʊəz tɔːkɪŋ
 in front of the fire in the study. Mr. Edwards was able
ɪn frʌnt əv ðə faɪə ɪn ðə stʌdi. mɪstə edwədz wəz eɪbl
 to tell them about many interesting things in London,
tə tel ðəm ə'baʊt mæni ɪntrɪstɪŋ ʃɪŋz ɪn lʌndən,
 which he said they must see before leaving, and when
hwɪtʃ hiː sed ðei mʌst siː bɪ'fɔː liːvɪŋ, ʌnd hwen
 at last it was time for them to take their leave, they
ət lɑːst ɪt wəz taɪm fə ðəm tə teɪk ðeə liːv, ðei
 all thanked Mr. and Mrs. Edwards as well as Miss
ɔːl ˈθæŋkt mɪstə ʌnd mɪsɪz edwədz əz wel əz mɪs

Edwards for the pleasant evening they had spent in
edwədz fə ðə plezn̩t i:vniŋ ðei həd spent in

their home. They said that they would never forget
ðeə haʊm. ðei sed ðæt ðei wʊd nevə fə'get

the kindness that had been shown them when they
ðə kaɪndnɪs ðæt həd bi:n ʃaʊn ðəm huən ðei

came as strangers to their home, and they added that
keɪm əz streɪndʒəz tə ðeə haʊm, ənd ðei ə'dɪd ðæt

they would write them a letter when they got back
ðei wʊd raɪt ðəm ə letə huən ðei ɡɒt bæk

to their own country.

tə ðeər oun kʌntri.

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Edwards said that the — English house has five rooms. He could not find his cigars —, because the maid had just been in to — his room. At last he found them on one of the —. Mr. Edwards liked a — chair to sit in when he came home from his office work. The food is — in the —, but the washing up is done in the —. Mr. and Mrs. Edwards had a son who was — to the daughter of an old friend of theirs. The daughter was not at home; she had gone to see a — with some friends. She returned later and was — to the guests by her father.

In the garden was a big — with beautiful grass. There were also many beautiful flowers, especially —. Mr. Edwards called his rose-bushes —. After they had seen the garden, they went to the — and had a look at Mr. Edwards's car. He said that it was famous for its low

WORDS:

offer
inside
typical
type
clean
anywhere
arm-chair
comfortable
cook
cooking
scullery
washing up
upstairs
downstairs
married

marry
love
love (verb)
rose
rose-bush
rosy
beauty
lawn
famous
fun
ground
garage
car
run
cheapness
wavy
common
leave
Miss
fifth

price and for being — to run, not only in England, but also in other countries. When at last they took their —, they thanked Mr. and Mrs. Edwards for the — evening.

EXERCISE B.

How many rooms did the Edwards family have downstairs, and how many upstairs? . . . How many times a week did the maid get into the study to clean the room? . . . What did Mr. Edwards offer his guests after he had shown them his study? . . . What is the scullery used for in a typical English house? . . . What did Mr. and Mrs. Edwards use the extra room for after their son had married? . . . What good did Mr. Edwards get out of his love of garden work? . . . Where did he have his roses? . . . Where were the fruit trees to be found? . . . Why did the family have such a small car now? . . . How did Mr. Edwards introduce his daughter to the guests? . . .

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'am, is, are, was, were, has been, have been, had been, will be' and verbs in -ed, etc.

Is Mr. Edwards's study cleaned every day? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, I am often invited to my manager's home for dinner. Were the guests introduced to Mrs. Edwards? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, all the rooms in the house were shown to the guests. Are the lawns of English country-houses known all over the world? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, money for hospital

work is collected on special days. Was Storm greeted kindly by Mr. Edwards when he paid him a visit at his office? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, his friends were also invited to dinner at Mr. Edwards's house. Was William called the Conqueror before or after he came to England? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, Egbert became king of all England. Has England been conquered by any nation since the Battle of Hastings? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, the two other young men have not been asked to stay in England for another six months. Had the travellers been shown the inside of an English home before they were invited to dinner at Mr. and Mrs. Edwards's? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, cigars had not been offered to the guests before they entered the study. Will Storm be allowed by his manager to stay in England for another six months, do you think? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, the question about his stay will be decided very quickly, I think.

THE DEPARTURE

The next few days Storm woke up every morning
ðə nekst fju: deiz stɔ:m wʊk ʌp evri mɔ:niŋ

expecting a telephone call from Mr. Edwards, and at
iks'pektiŋ ə telifoun kɔ:l frəm mistər edwədz, and ət

last, when Storm had almost given up hope, Mr. Ed-
la:st, hwen stɔ:m həd ɔ:lmoust givn ʌp houp, mistər ed-

wards called him on the telephone, "Hallo, this is
wədz kɔ:ld him ɔn ðə telifoun, "hə'lou, ðis iz

Edwards speaking. Is Mr. Storm there?"

edwədz spi:kiŋ. iz mistə stɔ:m ðeə?"

"Just a minute, Mr. Edwards, and I will call him to
"dʒʌst ə minit, mistər edwədz, and ai wil kɔ:l him tə

the telephone," replied Brown, who had answered the
ðə telifoun," ri'plaid braun, hu: həd a:nsəd ðə

telephone. Storm came to the telephone and was told
telifoun. stɔ:m keim tə ðə telifoun and wəz tould

some very good news. His manager had thought it was
sʌm veri gud nju:z. hiz mænɪdʒə həd þɔ:t it wəz

a good idea and was very pleased that one of his young
ə gud aɪ'diə and wəz veri pli:zd ðæt wʌn əv hiz jʌŋ

men should have this chance of studying English
men ʃud hæv ðis tʃɑ:ns əv stʌdiŋ ɪŋglɪʃ

method = the way
to do things

business methods. It would be very useful for the firm
bɪznɪs meθədz. ɪt wud bi: veri ju:sfʊl fə ðə ʃə:m

to have a man whose knowledge of English was good,
tə hæv ə mæn hu:z nəlidʒ əv ɪŋɡlɪʃ wəz gud,

knowledge = that
 which a man
 knows

and who also had some knowledge of the English
ænd hu: əlsou hæd sʌm nəlidʒ əv ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

method of doing business.

mɛpəd əv du:ɪŋ bɪznɪs.

During the last two or three days they were in London,
dʒuəriŋ ðə la:st tu: ə pri: deɪz ðei wə:r ɪn lʌndən,

they were very busy, because there was not much time
ðei wə: veri bɪzi, bi'kɔz ðeə wəz nɒt mʌʃ taɪm

before their departure, and there were so many things
bɪ'fɔ: ðeə dɪ'pa:tʃə, ænd ðeə wə: sou meni þɪŋz

departure = going
 away

they wanted to see before they left. On the very last
ðei wəntɪd tə si: bɪ'fɔ: ðei left. ɒn ðə veri la:st

day, they went out to buy some small presents for
dei, ðei went aʊt tə baɪ sʌm smɔ:l preznts fə

their relations and friends at home. Wood had promised
ðeə rɪ'leɪʃənz ænd frendz ət haʊm. wʊd həd prəmɪst

relations
 Father, mother,
 sisters, brothers,
 uncles, aunts, etc.,
 are relations.

his sister to bring something nice home for her. He
hɪz sɪstə tə brɪŋ sʌmpɪŋ naɪs haʊm fɔ: hə: hi:

had not forgotten his promise, but as he was not used
həd nɒt fə'ɡɒtən hɪz prəmɪs, bʌt əz hi: wəz nɒt ju:st

to buying presents for young ladies, the other three went
tə baɪɪŋ preznts fə jʌŋ leɪdɪz, ði ʌðə pri: went

along with him to help him. They knew Selfridge's,
ə'ləŋ wɪð hɪm tə help hɪm. ðei nju: selfrɪdʒɪz,

where they had bought sticks, handkerchiefs, and
hwɛə ðei həd bɔ:t stɪks, hæŋkətʃɪz, ænd

a saleswoman = a woman who sells things at a shop

cigarettes, so they went there again. In the part of the
sigə'rets, sou ðei went ðeər ə'geɪn. ɪn ðə pa:t əv ðə

shop where women's things are sold, they looked at
ʃɒp huəə wɪmɪnz ʃɪŋz a: sould, ðei lʊkt ət

all sorts of articles, but could not decide what to buy.
ɔ:l sɔ:ts əv a:tɪklz, bʌt kud nɒt dɪ'saɪd hwət tə baɪ.

At last they asked one of the young ladies to help them.
ət la:st ðei a:skt wʌn əv ðə jʌŋ leɪdɪz tə help ðəm.

She first asked what sort of things the young lady
ʃi: fɜ:st a:skt hwət sɔ:l əv ʃɪŋz ðə jʌŋ leɪdi

would be interested in. "Oh, something to wear, I
wud bi: ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn. "ou, sʌmpɪŋ tə weə, aɪ

should think," said Wood. "What size clothes does she
fud ʃɪŋk," sed wud. "hwət saɪz kləʊðz dʌz ʃi:

take?" Wood had no idea of the size of his sister's
teɪk?" wud hæd nou aɪ'diə əv ðə saɪz əv hɪz sɪstəz

clothes. "Well, perhaps you can tell me whether the
kləʊðz. "wel, pə'hæps ju: kən tel mi: huweðə ðə

young lady is big or small, then," said the saleswoman.
jʌŋ leɪdi ɪz bɪg ɔ: smɔ:l, ðen," sed ðə seɪlzwʊmən.

"She is neither big nor small; she is just like most
"ʃi: ɪz naɪðə bɪg nɔ: smɔ:l; ʃi: ɪz dʒʌst laɪk mʊst

other girls." That did not help very much to give the
ʌðə ɡɜ:lz." ðæt dɪd nɒt help vɛrɪ mʌʃ tə ɡɪv ðə

saleswoman an idea of Miss Wood's size, so she said,
seɪlzwʊmən ən aɪ'diə əv mɪs wudz saɪz, sou ʃi: sed,

"I don't think that you should buy clothes for her, if
"aɪ daʊnt ʃɪŋk ðæt ju: fud baɪ kləʊðz ʃə: hæ:, ɪf

you don't know the size. She wouldn't be pleased if
ju: dount nou ðə saiz. fi: wudnt bi: pli:zd if

you bought something which was either too small or
ju: bɔ:t sʌmpɪŋ hwɪlf wəz aɪðə tu: smɔ:l ɔ:

too big for her, because then she would not be able
tu: biɡ fɔ: hɜ:, bi'kɜz ðen fi: wʊd nɒt bi: eɪbl

to wear it. But we have many other things, hand-
tə weər ɪt. bʌt wi: hæv mæni ʌðə piŋz, hænd-

bags, for example. We have some very fine leather
bægz, fɜr ɪɡ'zɑ:mpl. wi: hæv sʌm veri faɪn leðə

bags here." "What sort of leather is this?" Wood
bægz hiə." "hwɒt. sɔ:t əv leðər iz ðis?" wʊd

asked, when he was shown the bags. "It is goatskin,"
ɑ:skt, hwɛn hi: wəz ʃaʊn ðə bægz. "ɪt iz ɡoʊtskɪn,"

the saleswoman answered; "the bags cost only forty
ðə seɪlzwʊmən ɑ:nsəd; "ðə bægz kɒst ɔʊnli ʃɔ:ti

shillings apiece."
ʃɪlɪŋz ə'pi:s."

"That is quite cheap," Wood said to the others. "At
"ðæt iz kwɪt tʃi:p," wʊd sed tə ði ʌðəz. "ət

home we shouldn't be able to get bags of goatskin as
həʊm wi: ʃʊdnt bi: eɪbl tə ɡet bægz əv ɡoʊtskɪn əz

cheap as that. Goatskin is a very fine sort of leather
tʃi:p əz ðæt. ɡoʊtskɪn iz ə veri faɪn sɔ:t əv leðə

and is usually very expensive. I once bought a bag
ænd iz ju:ʒʊəli veri ɪks'pensɪv. aɪ wʌnz bɔ:t ə bæɡ

for an aunt or some other relation at home, and that
fɜr ən ɑ:nt ɔ: sʌm ʌðə ri'leɪʃən ət həʊm, ænd ðæt



goat

goatskin = the
skin of goats

apiece = for each

to take leave of =
to say good-bye to

fare = price of
ticket

was much more expensive. Bags of this sort would
wəz mʌtʃ mɔːr ɪks'pensɪv. bægz əv ðɪs sɔːt wʊd
cost at least sixty shillings apiece. I think I will take
kɒst ət liːst sɪks'ti ʃɪlɪŋz ə'piːs. aɪ ɪŋk aɪ wɪl teɪk
one of them."
wʌn əv ðəm."

The hour of their departure from England had arrived.
ði aʊər əv ðeə dɪ'pɑːtʃə frəm ɪŋɡlənd həd ə'raɪvd.

The other three were sorry to take leave of Storm, for
ði ʌðə θriː wəː sɔːri tə teɪk liːv əv stɔːm, fə

they had had such a lovely time together. Wood said
ðei həd həd sʌtʃ ə lʌvli taɪm tə'geðə. wʊd sed

that he was jealous of his friend. "I wish I was the
ðæt hiː wəz dʒeləs əv hɪz frɛnd. "aɪ wɪʃ aɪ wəz ðə

one to stay over here for another six months," he said,
wʌn tə steɪ ɔʊvə hiə fər ə'nʌðə sɪks mʌnθs," hiː sed,

"you seem to be getting all the fun. First, your firm
"juː siːm tə biː ɡetɪŋ ɔːl ðə fʌn. fəːst, jɔː fəːm

pays your fare to England, and the ticket from our
peɪz jɔː feə tu ɪŋɡlənd, ənd ðə tɪkɪt frəm ʌʊə

home town to London is not cheap; and now they let
haʊm taʊn tə lʌndən ɪz nɒt tʃiːp; ənd naʊ ðei let

you stay here for another six months. I wish I
juː steɪ hiə fər ə'nʌðə sɪks mʌnθs. aɪ wɪʃ aɪ

worked for a firm that would have paid my fare, then
wɜːkt fər ə fəːm ðæt wʊd həv peɪd maɪ feə, ðen

I should not have had to think of the ticket!"
aɪ ʃʊd nɒt həv həd tə θɪŋk əv ðə tɪkɪt!"

But Storm knew that his friend was not really jealous
bʌt stɔ:m nju: ðæt hiz frend wəz nɒt riəli dʒeləs

of him, but only pleased that this chance should have
ʌv him, bʌt ounli pli:zd ðæt ðis tʃa:ns ʃʊd hæv

been offered him. Storm went with them to the station
bi:n əʃəd him. stɔ:m went wið ðəm tə ðə steɪʃən

to wish them a pleasant trip back. On the way they
tə wiʃ ðəm ə pleznɪ trip bæk. ɒn ðə wei ðei

spoke of all the things they had seen and of the places
spəʊk əv ɔ:l ðə piŋz ðei həd si:n ənd əv ðə pleɪsɪz

they had not yet been to.

ðei həd nɒt jət bi:n tu.

"You know," said Mr. Miller, "there are many people
"ju: nou," sed mɪstə mɪlə, "ðeər a: meni pi:pl

who think that when they have seen the capital of a
hu: piŋk ðæt hwen ðei hæv si:n ðə kæpɪtəl əv ə

country, they have seen everything the country has to
kʌntri, ðei hæv si:n evripiŋ ðə kʌntri hæz tə

show them. We have visited London, the capital of
ʃəʊ ðəm. wi: hæv vɪzɪtɪd lʌndən, ðə kæpɪtəl əv

England, but we must not think that this is the whole
ɪŋɡlənd, bʌt wi: mʌst nɒt piŋk ðæt ðis ɪz ðə haʊl

of England. There are many other large cities of great
əv ɪŋɡlənd. ðeər a: meni ʌðə la:dʒ sɪtɪz əv greɪl

importance in England, such as Birmingham, Sheffield,
ɪm'pɔ:təns ɪn ɪŋɡlənd, sʌʃ əz bæ:mɪŋəm, ʃeɪfɪld,

Manchester, and Newcastle. All these towns are very
mæntfɪstə, ənd nju:kɑ:sl. ɔ:l ðɪ:z taʊnz a: veri

important and would be very interesting to visit. You
im'pɔ:tənt ənd wud bi: veri intristɪŋ tə vɪzɪt. ju:

all know why they are of such great importance?"
ɔ:l nou hwaɪ ðei a:r əv sʌtʃ greɪt im'pɔ:təns?"

"Birmingham and Sheffield are famous for their metal
"bɜ:mɪŋgəm ənd ʃefi:ld a: feɪməs fə ðeə mell

articles," said Wood. "We have some knives at home
a:tɪklz," sed wud. "wi: hæv sʌm naɪvz ət haʊm

made of Sheffield steel."
meɪd əv ʃefi:ld sti:l."

"Yes," said Mr. Miller, "steel is a very hard metal, and
"jes," sed mɪstə mɪlə, "sti:l ɪz ə veri hɑ:d mell, ənd

the best knives are always made of steel. The best
ðə best naɪvz a:r ɔ:lwəz meɪd əv sti:l. ðə best

trains, machines, bicycles, steamers, etc., are made of
treɪnz, mə'ʃi:nz, baɪsɪklz, sti:məz, ɪt'setṛə, a: meɪd əv

steel. Sometimes, however, it would be too expensive
sti:l. sʌmtaɪmz, haʊ'evə, ɪt wud bi: tu: ɪks'pensɪv

to use steel to make these things, so iron is used
tə ju:z sti:l tə meɪk ði:z pɪŋz, sou aɪən ɪz ju:zd

instead. Steel is really iron, but iron that has been
ɪn'sted. sti:l ɪz riəli aɪən, bʌt aɪən ðət hæz bi:n

made very hard. That is the reason why steel is more
meɪd veri hɑ:d. ðæt ɪz ðə ri:zn hwaɪ sti:l ɪz mɔ:r

expensive.
ɪks'pensɪv.

"In nearly all English houses there are fire-places. In
"ɪn niəli ɔ:l ɪŋɡlɪʃ haʊzɪz ðeər a: ʃaɪəpleɪsɪz. ɪn

winter it is very comfortable to sit in front of the fire.
wintə it iz veri kʌm/fətəbl tə sit in frʌnt əv ðə faɪə.

The English nearly always use coal for their fires.
ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ niəli ə:lweɪz ju:z koul fə ðeə faɪəz.

Usually, they have had more than enough coal for their
ju:ʒuəli, ðei hæv həd mɔ: ðən i'nʌf koul fə ðeər

own houses, trains, steamers, etc., so that they have been
ʌn haʊzɪz, treɪnz, sti:məz, i'setɹə, sʌ ðət ðei hæv bi:n

able to export coal to other countries. Newcastle is a
eɪbl tu eks'pɔ:t koul tu ʌðə kʌntrɪz. nju:kɑ:sl iz ə

very important coal town, from which much coal has
veri im'pɔ:tənt koul taʊn, frəm hwɪlf mʌf koul həz

been exported to foreign countries. Newcastle, however,
bi:n eks'pɔ:tɪd tə fɔrɪn kʌntrɪz. nju:kɑ:sl, haʊ'evə,

is also a very important town for the building of ships.
iz ə:lsoʊə veri im'pɔ:tənt taʊn fə ðə bɪldɪŋ əv ʃɪps.

Manchester, as you will all remember, is famous for
mæntfɪstə, əz ju: wɪl ə:l rɪ'membə, iz feɪməs fɔr

its cotton articles, and many things made of cotton are
ɪts kɒtn ɑ:tɪklz, ənd menɪ pɪŋz meɪd əv kɒtn ɑ:r

exported to the whole world. In our shops at home it
eks'pɔ:tɪd tə ðə haʊl wɔ:ld. ɪn ʌʊə ʃɒps ət haʊm ɪt

is also possible to buy cotton articles made in Man-
iz ə:lsoʊə pɒsəbl tə baɪ kɒtn ɑ:tɪklz meɪd ɪn mæn-

chester. You will all understand, then, that there is
ʃɪstə. ju: wɪl ə:l ʌndə'stænd, ðen, ðət ðeər iz

much more to be seen in England. But we have been
mʌf mɔ: tə bi: si:n ɪn ɪŋɡlənd. bʌt wi: hæv bi:n

to export = to sell
to a foreign coun-
try

to remember (here)
= to mention

busy every second of our visit, and I think it is the
bizi evri sekənd əv auə vizit, ənd ai piŋk it iz ðə

hope of all of us to be able to return to England some
houp əv ɔ:l əv ʌs tə bi: eibl tə ri'tə:n tu iŋglənd sʌm

other time. Now I see that it is time for the train
ʌðə taim. nau ai si: ðət it iz taim fə ðə trein

to start, so we shall have to say good-bye to Storm."
tə sta:t, sou wi: fəl hæv tə sei gud'bai tə stɔ:m."

They shouted together, "Good-bye, Storm!"
ðei faʊtɪd tə'geðə, "gud'bai, stɔ:m!"

Storm: "Good-bye, a pleasant trip, and remember me
stɔ:m: "gud'bai, ə pleznt trip, ənd ri'membə mi:

to your families at home!"
tə jɔ: fæmiliz ət haʊm!"

Storm waved to his friends as long as he could see
stɔ:m weɪvd tə hiz frendz əz lɔŋ əz hi: kud si:

them. Then he left the station with mixed feelings.
ðəm. ðen hi: left ðə steɪʃən wɪð mɪkst fi:lɪŋz.

He was sorry that his friends had gone, and yet at
hi: wəz sɔri ðət hiz frendz həd gɒn, ənd jət ət

the same time he was very happy to be able to stay
ðə seɪm taim hi: wəz veri hæpi tə bi: eibl tə steɪ

on for some time in England. He returned slowly to
ɒn fə sʌm taim in iŋglənd. hi: ri'tə:nd sləʊli tə

the hotel, thinking of his friends and of his relations
ðə haʊ'tel, piŋkiŋ əv hiz frendz ənd əv hiz ri'leɪʃənz

at home.
ət haʊm.

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Edwards called Storm on the — to tell him some good news. On the day of their — from London, they went out to buy some presents for their friends and — at home, and especially for Wood's sister. Wood had — her some nice present. When the saleswoman asked what — of thing he wanted, he said that something to — would be best; but as he did not know what — — his sister took, he decided to buy a bag of — for her. Goatskin is a very fine sort of — which is usually very expensive. The bags which she showed him cost forty shillings —.

Many people think that when they have seen the — of a country, they have seen the — country, but England has many other big towns of great —. The best knives are made of —, because steel is such a hard —. Steel is really — which has been made hard.

EXERCISE B.

Why was Storm's manager pleased that Storm had been offered a position in the London branch of the firm? . . . What was the promise that Wood had made to his sister? . . . What did he buy for her? . . . Why did Wood say that he was jealous of Storm? . . . What is the capital of England? . . . What English towns do you know that are famous for their metal articles? . . . What is steel? . . . What do the English mostly use for their fires? . . . What is exported from Newcastle? . . . What is Manchester famous for? . . . Did Storm take leave of his friends at the hotel? . . . What was the last thing that Storm said to his friends before the train left? . . .

WORDS:

telephone
call
hope
departure
relation
promise (verb)
promise
sort
size
saleswoman
hand-bag
leather
goat
goatskin
skin
apiece
jealous
fare
capital
importance
metal
steel
iron
coal
export
knowledge
method
hard
remember

EXERCISE C.

How to ask and answer questions with 'must'
or 'have to'.

Must Mrs. Miller always stay at home? Answer . . .
Question . . .? Yes, when you go to England, you must
pay duty on such things as wine or silk. Do you have
to show your passports to get into England? Answer
. . . Question . . .? Yes, you have to cross the sea to get
to England. Did the young men have to do much work
at their studies before they went to England? Answer . . .
Question . . .? No, Storm did not have to pay his own
fare. Has Wood had to take extra work in the evenings
to get money for the trip? Answer . . . Question . . .? No,
Mrs. Miller has not had to stay at home every time
Mr. Miller has been to England; only this year, because
their son is so small. Will Storm have to return home
with his friends? Answer . . . Question . . .? Yes, the
others will have to go back when their holidays are
over. Would Wood have had to stay at home if he
had not got a rise? Answer . . . Question . . .? No, if
her son had been older, Mrs. Miller would not have
had to stay at home. Must English children go to
school when they are four years old? Answer . . .
Question . . .? No, English children do not have to go
to school after they are fifteen years old. Must all
French children learn English at school? Answer . . .
Question . . .? No, not all children have to write with
pens and ink at school; the small children write with
pencils.

THE FIRST DAY AT THE OFFICE

The morning after the departure of his friends, Storm
ðə mɔːniŋ aːftə ðə diˈpɑːtʃər əv hiːz ˈfrendz, stɔːm

went by bus to his new office, where he was at once
went baɪ bʌs tə hiːz njuː ɔːfɪs, hweə hiː wəz ət wʌns

taken in to see the manager. "Good morning, sir,"
teɪkən ɪn tə siː ðə mænɪdʒə. "gud mɔːniŋ, sɜː,"

Storm said as he entered the manager's office: "It is
stɔːm sed əz hiː ɛntəd ðə mænɪdʒəz ɔːfɪs. "ɪt ɪz

really a great pleasure to me to start working here."
riəli ə greɪt pleʒə tə miː tə staːt wɜːkiŋ hiə."

It is a great
 pleasure to me =
 I am very pleased.

"Good morning, Storm," answered the manager, "it is
"gud mɔːniŋ, stɔːm," aːnsəd ðə mænɪdʒə, "ɪt ɪz

also a pleasure to us to have you work for us." "I am
əːlsou ə pleʒə tu ʌs tə hæv juː wɜːk fər ʌs." "aɪ əm

not only pleased to start here, but I am glad to remain
nɒt ounli pliːzd tə staːt hiə, bət aɪ əm glæd tə riːmeɪn

remain = stay

in London. There are still so many things that I wish
ɪn lʌndən. ðeə stɪl sou meni piŋz ðæt aɪ wɪʃ

to see, and now that I am going to remain here for
tə siː, ənd naʊ ðæt aɪ əm ɡoʊɪŋ tə riːmeɪn hiə fər

another five or six months, it will be possible for me to
əˈnʌðə ˈfaɪv ə sɪks mʌnθs, ɪt wɪl biː pɒsəbl fər miː tə

see them all," Storm continued. "I think you said it
siː ðəm əːl," stɔːm kənˈtɪnjuːd. "aɪ piŋk juː sed ɪt

	<p>was your first visit to a foreign country. Don't you <i>wəz jɔ: fə:st vɪzɪt tu ə ʃɒrɪn kʌntri. daʊnt ju:</i></p> <p>think that you will miss many things that you were <i>piŋk ðæt ju: wil mis meni piŋz ðæt ju: wə:</i></p> <p>used to at home?" asked the manager. "Yes," said <i>ju:st tu ət haʊm?" a:skt ðə mænɪdʒə. "jes," sed</i></p> <p>Storm, "there are some things at home that I shall <i>stɔ:m, "ðəə sʌm piŋz ət haʊm ðæt ai ʃəl</i></p> <p>miss in England. There will, perhaps, also be things <i>mis in ɪŋɡlənd. ðəə wil, pə'hæps, ə:lsoʊ bi: piŋz</i></p> <p>that will seem strange to me, because they are different <i>ðæt wil si:m streɪndʒ tə mi:, bi'kɔz ðei a: dɪfrənt</i></p> <p>from what I am used to. But it will be very interesting <i>fɾəm hwət ai əm ju:st tu. bət ɪt wil bi: veri ɪntrɪstɪŋ</i></p> <p>to see things that are different, things that are strange <i>tə si: piŋz ðæt a: dɪfrənt, piŋz ðæt a: streɪndʒ</i></p> <p>to me." <i>tə mi:."</i></p>
matter = thing	<p>"There is another matter that I should like to mention," <i>"ðəz ə'nʌðə mətə ðæt ai ʃəd laɪk tə menʃən,"</i></p>
receive = get	<p>said the manager. "You will not receive your salary <i>sed ðə mænɪdʒə. "ju: wil nɒt rɪ'si:v jɔ: sæləri</i></p> <p>until the end of the month. If you have to wait four <i>ʌn'tɪl ði end əv ðə mʌnθ. ɪf ju: hæv tə weɪt ʃɔ:</i></p>
before receiving (here) = before you receive	<p>weeks before receiving any money, will you have <i>wi:ks bi'ʃɔ: rɪ'si:vɪŋ enɪ mʌni, wil ju: hæv</i></p> <p>enough?" "No," said Storm, "I must find a room, and <i>ɪ'nʌf?" "nou," sed stɔ:m, "ai məst faɪnd ə ru:m, ənd</i></p>

it will be necessary to pay for it in advance when I
it wil bi: nesisəri tə pei fər it in əd'va:ns hwen ai

take it." "There will be other things, too," said the
teik it." "ðeə wil bi: ʌðə piŋz, tu:," sed ðə

manager, "so it will be necessary for you to have some
mænɪdʒə, "sou it wil bi: nesisəri fə ju: tə hæv səm

money. If you like, you may have part of your salary
mʌni. ɪf ju: laɪk, ju: mei hæv pa:t əv jɔ: sæləri

in advance, and you might just as well have the money
in əd'va:ns, ənd ju: maɪt dʒʌst əz wel hæv ðə mʌni

now." "It is very kind of you, sir, to make me this offer.
nau." "ɪt ɪz veri kaɪnd əv ju:, sə:, tə meɪk mi: ðɪs ɔfə.

I shall be very glad to accept it. I never had much
ai ʃəl bi: veri glæd tu ək'sept ɪt. ai nevə hæd mʌtʃ

accept = agree
to take

money, and after a fortnight's holiday one hasn't got
mʌni, ənd a:ftər ə fɔ:tnaɪts həlɪdi wʌn hæznt gɒt

very much money."
veri mʌtʃ mʌni."

The manager laughed, saying, "I can very well under-
ðə mænɪdʒə la:ft, seɪɪŋ, "ai kən veri wel ʌndə-

stand that you haven't got very much money after a
'stænd ðət ju: hævnt gɒt veri mʌtʃ mʌni a:ftər ə

fortnight's holiday. I am glad that you will accept my
fɔ:tnaɪts həlɪdi. ai əm glæd ðət ju: wil ək'sept maɪ

offer. And while we are speaking of this matter, you
ɔfə. ənd hwaɪl wi: a: spi:kɪŋ əv ðɪs mætə, ju:

had better tell me how much money you require."
həd betə tel mi: hau mʌtʃ mʌni ju: ri'kwaɪə."

require = need

send for = send a
person to call

six feet = 1.83
metres (one foot
= 12 inches =
0.305 metre)

Storm said that he didn't know the prices in England
stɔ:m sed ðæt hi: didnt nou ðə praisiz in ɪŋɡlənd

yet, so that it was a little difficult for him to say how
jet, sou ðæt it wəz ə lɪl dɪfɪkəlt fə him tə sei hau

much he would require. At last, however, they agreed
mʌtʃ hi: wəd rɪ'kwaɪə. ət la:st, hau'veə, ðei ə'ɡri:d

to make the advance ten pounds.

tə meɪk ði əd'vɑ:ns ten paundz.

The manager now sent for a young Englishman by the
ðə mænɪdʒə nau sent fər ə jʌŋ ɪŋɡlɪʃmən baɪ ðə

name of Marshall and asked him to introduce Storm
neɪm əv mɑ:fəl ænd ɑ:skt him tu ɪntrə'dju:s stɔ:m

to everybody in the office, and also to tell him about
tu evrɪbɒdi ɪn ði ɔfɪs, ænd ɔ:lsou tə tel him ə'baut

his work. Storm was six feet tall, and he noticed that
hɪz wə:k. stɔ:m wəz sɪks fi:t tə:l, ænd hi: nəʊtɪst ðæt

the Englishman was also about six feet tall, so that the
ði ɪŋɡlɪʃmən wəz ɔ:lsou ə'baut sɪks fi:t tə:l, sou ðæt ðə

two young men were of about the same height. Many
tu: jʌŋ men wə:r əv ə'baut ðə seɪm haɪt. meni

Englishmen are tall; their height is greater than that
ɪŋɡlɪʃmən ɑ: tə:l; ðeə haɪt ɪz greɪtə ðən ðæt

of people in many foreign countries. Marshall said that
əv pi:pl ɪn meni fɔrɪn kʌntrɪz. mɑ:fəl sed ðæt

he would lead the way, and he went in front, telling
hi: wəd li:d ðə wei, ænd hi: went ɪn frʌnt, telɪŋ

Storm to follow him. "All right," replied Storm, "if
stɔ:m tə fɔləʊ him. "ɔ:l raɪt," rɪ'plaɪd stɔ:m, "ɪf

you will lead, I will follow you."

ju: wil li:d, ai wil fəlou ju:."

Marshall asked Storm how long he had worked for

ma:fəl a:skt stɔ:m hau lɔŋ hi: həd wə:kt fə

the firm at home and learnt that he had worked for

ðə fə:m ət haʊm ənd lə:nt ðət hi: həd wə:kt fə

the firm for five years, so that he had had five years'

ðə fə:m fə faɪv jɪəz, sou ðət hi: həd həd faɪv jɪəz

experience. "I have only worked for the firm for four

iks'piəriəns. "ai həv ounli wə:kt fə ðə fə:m fə fɔ:

years," Marshall said. "I have less experience than

jɪəz," ma:fəl sed. "ai həv les iks'piəriəns ðən

you. How long have you been learning English?"

ju:. hau lɔŋ həv ju: bi:n lə:nɪŋ ɪŋglɪf?"

"About nine months," said Storm, "but although I can

"ə'baut nain mʌnθs," sed stɔ:m, "bət ɔ:l'ðou ai kən

say many things, I can't express myself as well as I

sei meni piŋz, ai kɑ:nt iks'pres mai'self əz wel əz ai

should like to. But now I shall get as much practice and

fəd laɪk tu. bət nau ai fəl get əz mʌʃ præktɪs ənd

experience in speaking your language as I could wish."

iks'piəriəns ɪn spi:kiŋ fɔ: læŋɡwɪdʒ əz ai kəd wɪʃ."

"You express yourself quite well in English, and as you

"ju: iks'pres fɔ:'self kwaɪt wel ɪn ɪŋglɪf, ənd əz ju:

will be speaking nothing but English from now on,

wɪl bi: spi:kiŋ nʌθɪŋ bət ɪŋglɪf frəm nau ɒn,

you will soon get great practice in expressing yourself.

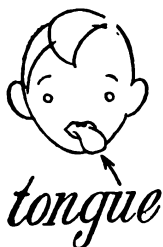
ju: wil su:n get greɪt præktɪs ɪn iks'presɪŋ fɔ:'self.

lead the way = go
in front and show
the way

He **leads**, he **led**,
he has **led**
[li:dz, led, led].

pronounce a word
= say a word as
it should be said

suppose = think



so far = until now

Do you find that English words are difficult to
du: ju: faɪnd ðæt ɪŋɡlɪʃ wə:dz a: dɪfɪkəl tə

pronounce?" "Sometimes," Storm answered, "your
prə'naʊns?" "sʌmtaɪmz," stɔ:m a:nsəd, "jɔ:

words are difficult for my tongue to pronounce, but I
wə:dz a: dɪfɪkəl fə maɪ tʌŋ tə prə'naʊns, bət aɪ

suppose that after a time my mouth and my tongue
sə'pəʊz ðæt a:ftər ə taɪm maɪ maʊθ ənd maɪ tʌŋ

will get used to the English pronunciation." "Yes, I
wɪl get ju:st tə ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ prənʌnsi'eɪʃən." "jes, aɪ

suppose they will. I am quite sure that the pronunci-
sə'pəʊz ðeɪ wɪl. aɪ əm kwaɪtʃ suə ðæt ðə prənʌnsi-

ation of the words in your language would be very
'eɪʃən əv ðə wə:dz ɪn jɔ: læŋɡwɪdʒ wəd bi: veri

difficult to me at first. The manager told me this is
dɪfɪkəl tə mi: ət fə:st. ðə mænɪdʒə təʊld mi: ðɪs ɪz

your first visit to England. Do you like what you have
jɔ: fə:st vɪzɪt tu ɪŋɡlənd. du: ju: laɪk hwət ju: həv

seen of England?"

sɪ:n əv ɪŋɡlənd?"

Storm told him that so far he had enjoyed his stay
stɔ:m təʊld hɪm ðæt sou fə: hi: həd ɪn'dʒɔɪd hɪz steɪ

in England very much, and that although he had
ɪn ɪŋɡlənd veri mʌʃ, ənd ðæt ə:l'dəʊ hi: həd

learned about England at school, he was glad to see for
lənd ə'baʊt ɪŋɡlənd ət sku:l, hi: wəz glæd tə si: fə

himself what the country was really like. He said that
hɪm'self hwət ðə kʌntri wəz riəli laɪk. hi: sed ðæt

the things you read about a foreign country are not
ðə piŋz ju: ri:d ə'baʊt ə ʃərin kʌntri a: nɒt

always the real facts. If you want to know what another
ɔ:lwəz ðə riəl fæktz. if ju: wɒnt tə nou hwɒl ə'nʌðə

country is like, it is necessary for you to visit it your-
kʌntri iz laɪk, it iz nesɪsəri fə ju: tə vɪzɪt ɪt ʃə:-

self. It is a fact that books do not always give you the
'self. ɪt iz ə fækt ðæt buks du: nɒt ɔ:lwəz ɡɪv ju: ðə

right impression.

raɪt ɪm'preʃən.

The firm was divided into five different departments,
ðə ʃə:m wəz dɪ'vaɪdɪd ɪntə faɪv dɪfrənt dɪ'pa:tmənts,

each with its own work to take care of. In order that
i:tf wið ɪts oun wə:k tə teɪk keər əv. ɪn ɔ:də ðæt

in order that =
so that

Storm might see everything, Marshall took him round
stɔ:m maɪt si: evriθɪŋ, mɑ:fəl tuk hɪm raʊnd

to each of the five departments of the firm. "It is my
tu i:tf əv ðə faɪv dɪ'pa:tmənts əv ðə ʃə:m. "ɪt iz maɪ

experience," said Marshall, "that the men in the
ɪks'piəriəns," sed mɑ:fəl, "ðæt ðə men ɪn ðə

different departments all think that the work they take
dɪfrənt dɪ'pa:tmənts ɔ:l piŋk ðæt ðə wə:k ðeɪ teɪk

care of is the most important. I think you will have
keər əv ɪz ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt. aɪ piŋk ju: wɪl hæv

the same experience. We'll begin by going to the
ðə seɪm ɪks'piəriəns. wi:l bɪ'ɡɪn baɪ ɡoʊɪŋ tə ðə

factory where the different goods are made." Marshall
fæktəri hwɛə ðə dɪfrənt ɡʊdz a: meɪd." mɑ:fəl



later on = later

Scotchman = Scot

led the way to the factory, and one of the men working
led ðə wei tə ðə ʃæktəri, and wʌn əv ðə men wə:kiŋ

there explained to Storm that this was the place where
ðeə iks'pleind tə stɔ:m ðæt ðis wəz ðə pleis hwɛə

the goods were made. "We produce the goods, that is,
ðə gudz wə: meɪd. "wi: prə'dju:s ðə gudz, ðæt iz,

we make the goods here. The other departments may
wi: meɪk ðə gudz hiə. ði ʌðə di'pɑ:tmənts mei

be useful, but remember that we produce the things."
bi: ju:sfʊl, bʊt ri'membə ðæt wi: prə'dju:s ðə ʃɪŋz."

Later on, they went into the department where the
leɪtər ɒn, ðei wɛnt ɪntə ðə di'pɑ:tmənt hwɛə ðə

books were kept. Here they were told the same thing
bʊks wə: keɪpt. hiə ðei wə: təʊld ðə seɪm ʃɪŋ

as in the factory: the department that keeps the books
əz ɪn ðə ʃæktəri: ðə di'pɑ:tmənt ðæt ki:ps ðə bʊks

and gets the money for the goods that have been
ænd gets ðə mʌni fə ðə gudz ðæt hæv bi:n

produced and sold, must be the most important. The
prə'dju:st ænd sould, məst bi: ðə mʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt. ðə

man to whom they spoke in this department told Storm
mæn tə hu:m ðei spəʊk ɪn ðis di'pɑ:tmənt təʊld stɔ:m

that he was a Scot and not an Englishman. He showed
ðæt hi: wəz ə skɒt ænd nɒt ən ɪŋɡlɪʃmən. hi: ʃəʊd

Marshall a big book, saying to him, "Everybody that
mɑ:ʃəl ə bɪɡ bʊk, seɪɪŋ tə hɪm, "evrɪbɒdi ðæt

buys from us has an account in this book, in order that
baɪz frəm ʌs hæz ən ə'kaʊnt ɪn ðis bʊk, ɪn ɔ:ðə ðæt

we may know how much money he owes us, that is,
wi: mei nou hau mʌlf mʌni hi: ouz ʌs, ðæt iz,

how much money he has to pay us. You can see that
hau mʌlf mʌni hi: hæz tə pei ʌs. ju: kən si: ðæt

there are hundreds of accounts in this book, and I am
ðeə hʌndrədz əv ə'kaunts in ðis buk, and ai əm

sure you'll agree that it is very important to collect
fʊə ju:l ə'gri: ðæt it iz veri im'pɔ:tənt tə kə'lekt

the money that people owe us as quickly as possible.
ðə mʌni ðæt pi:pl ou ʌs əz kwikli əz pɒsəbl.

That is my work. I am a book-keeper, and I take care
ðæt iz mai wə:k. ai əm ə bukki:pə, and ai teik keər

of the book-keeping." Marshall told Storm that the
əv ðə bukki:piŋ." mɑ:fəl tould stɔ:m ðæt ðə

London branch of the firm had been established in the
lʌndən brɑ:nʃ əv ðə fə:m həd bi:n is'tæbliʃt in ðə

year 1909, and that this Scotchman, or Scot as
jiə nainti:n ou nain, and ðæt ðis skɒtʃmən, ɔ: skɒt əz

he called himself, had started working for the firm in
hi: kɔ:ld him'self, həd stɑ:tɪd wə:kiŋ fə ðə fə:m in

the same year; he had worked for it ever since it was
ðə seim jiə; hi: həd wə:kt fəɪt evə sins it wəz

established. Storm asked Marshall what a man who
is'tæbliʃt. stɔ:m ɑ:skt mɑ:fəl hwɒt ə mæn hu:

works in an office is called, and learned that he is
wə:ks in ən ɒfis iz kɔ:ld, and lə:nd ðæt hi: iz

called a clerk. "You and I are clerks, then," said Storm.
kɔ:ld ə kla:k. "ju: and ai ɑ: kla:ks, ðen," sed stɔ:m.

collect money =
 ask for and get
 the money people
 owe one

post = mail

attend to = take
care of

"I have never heard the word 'clerk' before."

"ai hæv nevə hæ:d ðə wə:d 'kla:k' bi'fɔ:."

After visiting the other departments, they went to their
a:ftə vizitiŋ ði ʌðə di'pa:tmənts, ðei wɛnt tə ðeər

own, the correspondence department. Marshall now told
oun, ðə kəris'pɒndəns di'pa:tmənt. mɑ:fəl nau təʊld

Storm about his work. "We receive all the foreign post,
stɔ:m ə'baʊt hiz wə:k. "wi: ri'si:v ɔ:l ðə ʃɒrɪn pəʊst,

or foreign mail as we usually call it," he said, "and
ɔ: ʃɒrɪn meɪl əz wi: ju:ʒuəli kɔ:l ɪt," hi: sed, "ænd

first of all we open the letters, after which we take
fɜ:st əv ɔ:l wi: ɒpən ðə letəz, a:ftə hwɪtʃ wi: teɪk

them to the different departments in order to get the
ðəm tə ðə dɪfrənt di'pa:tmənts ɪn ɔ:də tə get ði

answers. When you open the letters, there is a very
ɑ:nʌz. hwen ju: ɒpən ðə letəz, ðəz ə veri

good chance of getting some foreign stamps if you're
ɡʊd tʃɑ:ns əv getɪŋ səm ʃɒrɪn stæmps ɪf juər

interested in collecting stamps. Later in the day, we
ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn kə'lektɪŋ stæmps. leɪtər ɪn ðə dei, wi:

have to see that all the foreign letters are written and
hæv tə si: ðæt ɔ:l ðə ʃɒrɪn letəz ɑ: rɪtən ənd

the mail sent off. These are the matters that we attend
ðə meɪl sent ɔ:f. ði:z ɑ: ðə mætəz ðæt wi: ə'tend

to in this department. You may be sure that it is quite
tu ɪn ðɪs di'pa:tmənt. ju: meɪ bi: ʃuə ðæt ɪt ɪz kwaɪt

enough to attend to, for the foreign mail is very big."
ɪ'nʌf tu ə'tend tu, ʃə ðə ʃɒrɪn meɪl ɪz veri bɪɡ."

"Thank you very much for all the useful information
"pæŋk ju: veri maɪf ʃər ɔ:l ðə ju:sfʊl ɪnfə'meɪʃən

you have given me," said Storm. "If I want any more
ju: hæv gɪvən mi:," sed stɔ:m. "ɪf aɪ wənt enɪ mɔ:r

information about my work or other things here, I
ɪnfə'meɪʃən ə'baʊt maɪ wə:k ɔ:r ʌðə ʔɪŋz hɪə, aɪ

hope I may come to you for it."

haʊp aɪ meɪ kʌm tə ju: ʃər ɪt."

EXERCISE A.

It was a — to Storm to be able to — in London for another six months, although he might — his family. The manager made him the — that he might — part of his salary in —. He — the offer, because he had not very much —, but he had not had — enough with prices in England to know how much money he would —. Storm — that he and Marshall were of the same —; they were both six —. In — that Storm might learn to — himself well in English and to — the words right, he would require a lot of —. His — must get used to the English —. A — is a man who — the books of a firm and takes — of the many hundreds of — which show how much money people — the firm. Marshall — the way to the different — of the firm, and Storm — him from one department to another. Every — in the office and every man in the — where the — were produced, thought that the work he — to was the most important. Marshall gave Storm the — that his work would be to receive and take care of the foreign —. Storm — that he might come to Marshall

WORDS:

pleasure
 remain
 miss
 offer
 receive
 advance
 in advance
 accept
 experience
 require
 strange
 height
 foot
 in order
 express
 pronounce
 pronunciation
 practice
 tongue

book-keeper
book-keeping
keep books
care
account
owe
lead
led
department
follow
clerk
factory
goods
produce
attend to
information
post
suppose
matter
establish
fact
Scotchman
collect
mail
later on
learn

if there were other — that he wanted information about. The firm had been — in the year 1909. It is a — that book-keepers think that their work, —, is the most important. The book-keeper of the firm was a —.

EXERCISE B.

Write about your holidays last summer or some other year. The exercise should have a length of 200—300 words. Tell us when you had your holidays, whether you went away from home during the holidays, how you travelled, where you went, what you did, and anything else that you remember. Use your own words as well as you can. If you cannot always remember the right words, try to explain what you mean in some other way.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

If you have started the study of "English by the Nature Method" only in order to be able to speak to and understand an Englishman as well as to read a newspaper or a good book in the English language, you need not work at this exercise. But if you want to go on with the study of English after you have finished reading these chapters, for example, in order to become a teacher of English, or because you are interested in the language itself, it will be necessary for you to go through Exercise C. It tells you something about the different sorts of words of which the English language is made up, and how to use them, in other words, it teaches you English grammar in English.

Language is made up of words. When we speak, we put the words together into sentences [sentənsɪz]. Man, woman, teacher, always, are words. "He is a good man", is a sentence [sentəns]; the words: he, is, a, good, man, have been put together to make a sentence. Grammar [græmə] teaches us how to use the different words of a language and how to make sentences of them. We are now going to have some short exercises in English grammar.

The names of the things or the people that we speak about in our sentences are called nouns [naʊnz]. Man is a noun [naʊn], woman is a noun, Storm is a noun, London is a noun. Here are some more nouns: boy, cow, ice, book, train, paper, day, month, year, office, firm, teacher, experience, fact, department. These are all nouns, that is, they are names of people or of things that we can tell something about.

When a noun tells us of one thing or one person only, we call it a singular [sɪŋɡjʊlə] noun, or we say that the noun is in the singular. Man, woman, boy, book, horse, are all singular nouns. Only one man, one woman, etc., is mentioned.

When a noun tells us of two or more things or persons, we call it a plural [plʊərəl] noun, or we say that the word is in the plural. Men, women, boys, books, horses, are all in the plural; they are plural nouns, because they mention more than one man, more than one woman, etc. Most English nouns add -s in the plural, for instance: girl, house, room, tree, person, animal.

When we speak of more than one of these, we say: girls, houses, rooms, trees, persons, animals.

Some English nouns, however, have no -s in the plural, for instance: man, woman, child. The plurals of these three nouns are: men, women, children. We are going to hear more about this in the next chapter.

Questions:

What are sentences made of? ... What do we call the sort of words which give the names of the things or the people that we speak of? ... Write some examples of such words. ... What do we call a noun which tells us of only one thing or one person? ... Write a few examples of such nouns. ... Explain what a plural noun is. ... How can you tell whether a noun is in the singular or in the plural? ... Do you know any English nouns that do not end in -s in the plural? ...

A KIND OFFER

Marshall now showed Storm the desk at which he was
ma:fəl nau foud stɔ:m ðə desk ət huɪlf hi: wəz

desk = writing
table

to sit when working. At both sides of the desk there
tə sit huwen wə:kiŋ. ət boup saɪdz əv ðə desk ðeə

were four or five drawers. "We keep a good supply of
wə: fɔ:r ə faɪv drɔ:əz. "wi: ki:p ə gud sə'plai əv

paper, ink, pens, pencils, etc., in the drawers. Then it
peɪpə, ɪŋk, penz, penslz, ɪ'setɹə, ɪn ðə drɔ:əz. ðen ɪt

is unnecessary to go out and buy things of that sort
ɪz ʌn'nesɪsəri tə gou aʊt ənd baɪ pɪŋz əv ðæt sɔ:t

every day. You see, for instance, the supply of pencils
evri dei. ju: si:, fər ɪnstəns, ðə sə'plai əv penslz

in this drawer; that will last for three months and
ɪn ðɪs drɔ:ə; ðæt wɪl la:st fə pri: mʌnθs ənd

means that we shall not have to buy any more pencils
mi:nz ðæt wi: fəl nɒt hæv tə baɪ ɛni mɔ: penslz

for a long time. In the same way, the paper supply will
fər ə lɔŋ taɪm. ɪn ðə seɪm weɪ, ðə peɪpə sə'plai wɪl

last for one month. We use a lot of thin paper for
la:st fə wʌn mʌnθ. wi: ju:z ə lɒt əv pɪn peɪpə fə

copies, as we take a copy of every letter that we write.
kɒpɪz, əz wi: teɪk ə kɒpi əv evri letə ðæt wi: raɪt.

Sometimes we even take several copies of a letter when
sʌmtaɪmz wi: i:vən teɪk sevərə kɒpɪz əv ə letə huwen

it is a very important one."

it iz ə veri im'pɔ:tənt wʌn."

"You noticed," Marshall continued, "that when we
"ju: noutist," *ma:fəl kən'tinju:d*, "ðət hwen wi:

visited the different departments to see how the work
vizitid ðə difrənt di'pɑ:tmənts tə si: hau ðə wə:k

was organised, we went from one floor to another by
wəz ɔ:gənaizd, wi: went frəm wʌn flɔ: tu ə'nʌðə baɪ

the stairs. Instead we might have used the lift, which
ðə steəz. in'sted wi: maɪt hæv ju:zd ðə lift, hwɪtʃ

goes all the way from the ground floor to the top floor
gəʊz ɔ:l ðə wei frəm ðə graʊnd flɔ: tə ðə tɒp flɔ:

and stops at all floors. There is one lift for persons,
ənd stɒps ət ɔ:l flɔ:z. ðəz wʌn lift fə pə:snz,

and another lift for goods. The lift that is used for
ənd ə'nʌðə lift fə gudz. ðə lift ðət iz ju:zd fə

goods can easily lift as many pounds as the weight of
gudz kən i:zili lift əz meni paʊndz əz ðə weiɪt əv

twenty big men. The one for persons is smaller; it
twenti big men. ðə wʌn fə pə:snz iz smɔ:lə; ɪt

takes three persons at a time." "Fine!" Storm said,
teɪks ʒri: pə:snz ət ə taɪm." "fain!" *stɔ:m sed,*

"if I have to go up to the fourth floor, you may be
"if ai hæv tə ɡəʊ ʌp tə ðə fɔ:θ flɔ:, ju: mei bi:

sure that I shall take the lift. Now that I have seen
fʊə ðət ai ʃəl teɪk ðə lift. naʊ ðət ai hæv si:n

all the different departments, I must say that I am
ɔ:l ðə difrənt di'pɑ:tmənts, ai mʌst sei ðət ai əm

really surprised at the size of this branch of the firm.
riəli sə'praizd ət ðə saiz əv ðis brɑ:nf əv ðə fə:m.

Everything is bigger than I expected it to be." "One
evriþiŋ iz biɡə ðən ai iks'pektid it tə bi:." "ΛΛΛ

reason for this," said Marshall. "is that the manager
ri:zn fə ðis," sed mɑ:fəl, "iz ðət ðə mænidʒə

is a very good business man. All the departments work
iz ə veri gud biznis mæn. ɔ:l ðə di'pɑ:tmənts wə:k

well together, even in the smallest things. All the work
wel tə'geðə, i:vən in ðə smɔ:liŋ piŋz. ɔ:l ðə wə:k

of the firm is very well organised. I don't think I ever
əv ðə fə:m iz veri wel ɔ:gənaizd. ai daʊnt piŋk ai evə

saw a firm with more system and organisation in its
sə: ə fə:m wið mɔ: sistim ənd ɔ:gənai'zeifən in its

work, but then I haven't seen a great many yet. But
wə:k, bət ðen ai hævnt si:n ə greit meni jet. bət

to speak of something quite different: Where are you
tə spi:k əv sʌmpɪŋ kwail difrənt: hwær a: ju:

staying?" "I have been staying at a hotel in Blooms-
steiŋ?" "ai hæv bi:n steiŋ ət ə hou'tel in blu:mz-

bury," answered Storm, "but I shall have to find some-
bəri," a:nsəd stɔ:m, "bət ai fəl hæv tə faɪnd sʌm-

thing cheaper." "The manager told me that he thought
piŋ tʃi:pə." "ðə mænidʒə təʊld mi: ðət hi: þɔ:t

you would be wanting a room, and I have an offer to
ju: wəd bi: wɔntiŋ ə ru:m, ənd ai hæv ən ɔfə tə

make you. We have a bedroom at home which we never
meɪk ju:. wi: hæv ə bedrum ət haʊm hwɪtʃ wi: nevə

use. It was my sister's, but she is married now. Would
ju:z. it wəz mai sistəz, bət fi: iz mærid nau. wəd

you like to come and live with us? I live alone with
ju: laik tə kʌm ənd liv wið ʌs? ai liv ə'loun wið

my parents, as all my brothers and sisters are married,
mai peərənts, əz ɔ:l mai brʌðəz ənd sistəz a: mærid,

and I should be glad to have some company." "Thank
ənd ai ʃəd bi: glæd tə hæv səm kʌmpəni." "pæŋk

you very much, it is very kind of you. I shall be glad
ju: veri mʌtʃ, it iz veri kaɪnd əv ju:. ai ʃəl bi: glæd

to accept your kind offer, especially as it will mean
tu ək'sept jɔ: kaɪnd əfə, ɪs'peʃəli əz it wil mi:n

that I shall have pleasant company."
ðət ai ʃəl hæv pleznt kʌmpəni."

"I think it will be an advantage for you to live with
"ai piŋk it wil bi: ən əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ fə ju: tə liv wið

us," said Marshall. "There are many things you will
ʌs," sed mɑ:ʃəl. "ðeə meni piŋz ju: wil

want to see, and I might be your guide and show you
wɒnt tə si:, ənd ai maɪt bi: jɔ: gaɪd ənd ʃəu ju:

the most interesting things." "Thank you, it would be
ðə maʊst ɪntrɪstɪŋ piŋz." "pæŋk ju:, it wəd bi:

fine to have you as a guide to show me the town." "As
ʃaɪn tə hæv ju: əz ə gaɪd tə ʃəu mi: ðə taʊn." "əz

soon as we finish at the office this afternoon, we can
sʊ:n əz wi: fɪnɪʃ ət ði əfɪs ðɪs ɑ:ftə'nu:n, wi: kən

go to your hotel and pay the bill and then go straight
gəʊ tə jɔ: həu'tel ənd peɪ ðə bɪl ənd ðen gəʊ streɪt

down to my home. Have you got many bags?" "No,"
daun tə mai houn. həv ju: ɡət meni bægz? "nou,"

said Storm, "I have only one bag, and there are so
sed stɔ:m, "ai həv ounli wʌn bæɡ, ənd ðeə sou

few things in it that it is not heavy to carry. I am glad
fju: piŋz in it ðət it iz nɒt hevi tə kæri. ai əm glæd

of this, for the weather is very hot, and it would not be
əv ðis, fə ðə weðər iz veri hɒt, ənd it wəd nɒt bi:

very pleasant to carry a heavy weight in such a heat."
veri pleznt tə kæri ə hevi weɪt in sʌtʃ ə hi:t."

Having got Storm's bag, the two young men went to
hæviŋ ɡɒt stɔ:mz bæɡ, ðə tu: jʌŋ men went tə

the Underground. In the streets the heat was still very
ði ʌndəgraʊnd. in ðə stri:tʃ ðə hi:t wəz stil veri

great, but in the Underground train the air was quite
ɡreɪt, bʌt in ði ʌndəgraʊnd treɪn ði eə wəz kwaɪt

cool. After having got so hot, they were glad to feel
ku:l. a:ftə hæviŋ ɡɒt sou hɒt, ðeɪ wə: glæd tə fi:l

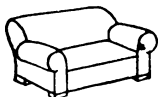
cool again. Storm found the house of Marshall's parents
ku:l ə'geɪn. stɔ:m faʊnd ðə haʊs əv mɑ:fəlz peərənts

to be a typical English house with five rooms. He was
tə bi: ə ti:pikəl ɪŋɡlɪʃ haʊs wið faɪv ru:mz. hi: wəz

introduced to Mr. and Mrs. Marshall, after which Mrs.
ɪntrə'dju:st tə mɪstər ənd mɪsɪz mɑ:fəl, a:ftə hwɪlf mɪsɪz

Marshall took him upstairs to his bedroom. He saw
mɑ:fəl tuk him 'ʌp'steɪz tə hɪz bedrʊm. hi: sɔ:

that there was a nice comfortable bed, a large table,
ðət ðeə wəz ə naɪs kʌmfərtəbl bed, ə la:dʒ teɪbl,



sofa



chest of drawers

linen (here) =
shirts, handker-
chiefs, underwear,
etc. (which are
made of linen)

He **hangs**,
he **hung**,
he has **hung**
[hæŋz, hʌŋ, hʌŋ].



photograph

an armchair, a sofa, a chest of drawers, a wardrobe,
ən 'ɑ:m'tʃɛə, ə soufə, ə tʃest əv drɔ:əz, ə wɔ:droub,

and some other pieces of furniture. He was very happy
ənd səm ʌðə pi:siz əv fə:nitʃə. hi: wəz veri hæpi

to see so much furniture, much more than there had
tə si: sou mʌtʃ fə:nitʃə, mʌtʃ mɔ: ðən ðeə həd

been in the hotel room.

bi:n in ðə hau'tel ru:m.

Storm opened his bag and took out some shirts, hand-
stɔ:m oupənd hiz bæɡ ənd tuk aʊt səm ʃə:ts, hæŋ-

kerchiefs, etc., and went to the chest of drawers and
kətʃi:z, i'tsetrə, ənd went tə ðə tʃest əv drɔ:əz ənd

opened one of the drawers. As he had come to England
oupənd wʌn əv ðə drɔ:əz. əz hi: həd kʌm tu ɪŋɡlənd

for a fortnight only, he had brought very little linen
fɔr ə fɔ:tnait ounli, hi: həd brɔ:t veri lɪl linɪn

and would have to buy some more in London. There
ənd wəd hæv tə baɪ səm mɔ:r in lʌndən. ðeə

were some pictures on the walls, but Mrs. Marshall
wə: səm pɪktʃəz ɔn ðə wɔ:lz, bʊt mɪsɪz mɑ:ʃəl

said that perhaps he would like to hang up some
sed ðæt pə'hæps hi: wəd laɪk tə hæŋ ʌp səm

pictures of his own or some photographs of relations
pɪktʃəz əv hiz oun ɔ: səm fəʊtəgrɑ:fz əv rɪ'leɪʃənz

or friends. Storm replied that he had no pictures to
ɔ: frɛndz. stɔ:m rɪ'plaɪd ðæt hi: həd nou pɪktʃəz tə

hang up, but he had a photograph of his father. He
hæŋ ʌp, bʊt hi: həd ə fəʊtəgrɑ:f əv hiz fa:ðə. hi:

told Mrs. Marshall that he had no father now; his
tould misiz ma:fəl ðət hi: hæd nou fa:ðə nau; hiz

father was dead. "I am very sorry," said Mrs. Marshall,
fa:ðə wəz ded. "ai əm veri səri," sed misiz ma:fəl,

"to hear that your father is not alive. How long has
"tə hiə ðət jɔ: fa:ðər iz nət ə'laiv. hau lɔŋ hæz

he been dead?" "Let me see," answered Storm, "he
hi: bi:n ded?" "let mi: si:," a:nsəd stɔ:m, "hi:

was alive until shortly after I became a clerk, so he
wəz ə'laiv ʌn'til fɔ:lli a:ftər ai bi'keim ə kla:k, sou hi:

has been dead for five years."
hæz bi:n ded fə faiv jɪəz."

Mrs. Marshall now showed Storm some hooks in a
misiz ma:fəl nau fəʊd stɔ:m səm huks in ə

corner of the room, upon which he could hang some
kɔ:nər əv ðə ru:m, ə'pɒn hwɪlf hi: kəd hæŋ sʌm

of his clothes. He took one or two things out of his bag
əv hiz kləʊðz. hi: tuk wʌn ə tu: þɪŋz aʊt əv hiz bæŋ

and hung them on hooks, and the rest he hung in the
ænd hʌŋ ðəm ɒn huks, ænd ðə rest hi: hʌŋ in ðə

wardrobe. She also pointed to the door, which had a
wɔ:droub. ʃi: ə'lsəʊ pɔɪntɪd tə ðə dɔ:, hwɪlf hæd ə

key in the lock, and told Storm that she would give
ki: in ðə lɒk, ænd tould stɔ:m ðət ʃi: wəd giʋ

him a key to the front door, too. He thanked Mrs.
him ə ki: tə ðə frʌnt dɔ:, tu:. hi: ʒæŋkt misiz

Marshall for thinking of all these things, but said,
ma:fəl fə þɪŋkɪŋ əv ɔ:l ði:z þɪŋz, bət sed,

the rest — the
 other things



key



lock



button

come of =
fall off

He **sews**,
he **sewed**,
he has **sewn**
[souz, soud, soun].

extremely = very



thumb

however, that he didn't think it necessary to lock his
hau'evə, ðət hi: didnt piŋk it nesisəri tə lək hiz

bedroom door.

bedrum dɔ:.

Mrs. Marshall told Storm that if a button should come
misiz ma:fəl tould stɔ:m ðət if ə bʌtn fəd kʌm

off his coat, she would be glad to sew it on again.
ɔ:f hiz kəʊt, fi: wəd bi: glæd tə sou it ɔn ə'geɪn.

"Such things," she said, "are not difficult for a woman
"sʌtʃ piŋz," fi: sed, "a: nɒt dɪfɪkəlt fər ə wʊmən

to do; they're quite simple, because we do them so
tə du:; ðeə kwaɪt sɪmpl, bi'kəz wi: du: ðəm sou

often, but they're not always simple for men." "That
ɔ:fən, bət ðeə nɒt ɔ:lweɪz sɪmpl fər men." "ðæt

is extremely kind of you, Mrs. Marshall. Once, when I
ɪz ɪks'tri:mli kaɪnd əv ju:, misiz ma:fəl. wʌns, huwen aɪ

was in the country on holiday, I sewed on some buttons
wəz ɪn ðə kʌntri ɔn həlɪdi, aɪ səʊd ɔn səm bʌtnz

which had come off, but the next day they came off
hwɪlf həd kʌm ɔ:f, bət ðə nekst dei ðei keɪm ɔ:f

again; they were so badly sewn on. Although I really
ə'geɪn; ðei wə: sou bædli soun ɔn. ɔ:l'dəʊ aɪ riəli

have only one thumb on each hand, as soon as I start
hæv ounli wʌn þʌm ɔn i:tʃ hænd, əz su:n əz aɪ stɑ:t

sewing, I feel as if all five fingers were thumbs." "I
səʊɪŋ, aɪ fi:l əz ɪf ɔ:l faɪv fiŋgəz wə: þʌmz." "aɪ

think there is only one more thing to ask you about,"
piŋk ðəz ounli wʌn mɔ: piŋ tu ɑ:sk ju: ə'baut,"

said Mrs. Marshall, "after which I will leave you with
sed misiz ma:fəl, "a:ftə hwitf ai wil li:v ju: wið

my son. At what time would you like to get up in the
mai sʌn. ət hwət taim wəd ju: laik tə get ʌp in ðə

morning, early or late?" "At home," Storm answered,
mɔ:nɪŋ, ə:li ə leɪt?" "ət hɒm," stɔ:m a:nsəd,

"I usually get up about seven o'clock in the morning."
"ai ju:ʒuəli get ʌp ə'baʊt sevn ə'klɒk in ðə mɔ:nɪŋ."

"That suits us very well. My son usually gets up a
"ðæt sju:ts ʌs veri wel. mai sʌn ju:ʒuəli gets ʌp ə

little later, so you can have the bathroom first. There
lɪtl leɪtə, sou ju: kən hæv ðə bɑ:prʊm fə:st. ðeə

will be a special hook there for you to hang your
wil bi: ə speʃəl huk ðeə fə ju: tə hæŋ jɔ:

things on."
pɪŋz ɒn."

Mrs. Marshall now left the room, and the two young
misiz ma:fəl nau left ðə ru:m, ənd ðə tu: jʌŋ

men sat down to have a talk. Storm sat down in the
men sæt daʊn tə hæv ə tɔ:k. stɔ:m sæt daʊn in ði

armchair, while Marshall lay down on the sofa and
'a:m'tʃeə, hwail ma:fəl lei daʊn ɒn ðə soufə ənd

made himself comfortable. This was not difficult, for
meid him self kʌmfətəbl. ðɪs wəz nɒt dɪfɪkəlt, fə

there were two or three very good cushions on it. "I
ðeə wə: tu: ə pri: veri gud kʊʃənz ɒn ɪt. "ai

am afraid I shall fall asleep," said Marshall. "Yester-
əm ə'freɪd ai ʃəl fɔ:l ə'sli:p," sed ma:fəl. "jestə-

He lies, he lay,
he has lain
[laiz, lei, leɪn].



cushion

feel like = want



day, I lay down after dinner, and before long I was
di, ai lei daun a:ftə dinə, ənd bi'fɔ: lɔŋ ai wəz

asleep. When you lie down on the sofa after a day's
ə'sli:p. hwen ju: lai daun ɔn ðə soufə a:ftər ə deiz

work and a nice dinner, you feel like a good sleep. But
wə:k ənd ə nais dinə, ju: fi:l laik ə gud sli:p. bət

perhaps you would like me to help you to hang up the
pə'hæps ju: wəd laik mi: tə help ju: tə hæŋ ʌp ðə

photograph? When we moved into this house, I put in
fəʊtəgrɑ:f? hwen wi: mu:vɪd intə ðis haʊs, ai put in

the nails for all the pictures. I will go downstairs to
ðə neilz fər ɔ:l ðə pɪktʃəz. ai wil ɡəʊ 'daʊn'steəz tə

get a nail for your photograph. It will be a good thing
ɡet ə neil fə jɔ: fəʊtəgrɑ:f. it wil bi: ə gud piŋ

to get it hung up at once; then the room will begin to
tə ɡet it hʌŋ ʌp ət wʌns; ðen ðə ru:m wil bi'ɡin tə

look a little like home to you." Storm wanted to hang
lʊk ə litt laik haʊm tə ju:." stɔ:m wəntɪd tə hæŋ

the photograph over the chest of drawers, and as it was
ðə fəʊtəgrɑ:f ɒvə ðə tʃest əv drɔ:əz, ənd əz it wəz

too high for them to reach, Marshall stood on a chair.
tu: haɪ fə ðəm tə ri:tʃ, mɑ:fəl stʊd ɔn ə tʃeə.

He was then able to reach the place where it was to
hi: wəz ðen eɪbl tə ri:tʃ ðə pleɪs hwɛər it wəz tə

hang, and before long the nail was in the wall and
hæŋ, ənd bi'fɔ: lɔŋ ðə neil wəz in ðə wɔ:l ənd

Storm's photograph put up.
stɔ:mz fəʊtəgrɑ:f put ʌp.

EXERCISE A.

In the — of the desk the office keeps a — of pens, ink, paper, etc., which is large enough to — for several months, so that it is — to go out and buy more every day. An example of the good — and system of the firm is that a — is taken of every letter written at the office. The — on which goods are taken from the ground floor to the top floor can — goods which have the same — as twenty big men. Storm said that it would be a great advantage for him to live at Marshall's home, as he would have — in the evenings instead of being alone, and a — to show him the town. On the way home Storm noticed that although the sun was shining and there was a great — in the streets, the air in the Underground was quite —. There was a lot of furniture in Storm's room, for instance, a — with some — which Marshall put under his head when he — down on it. Storm moved his things from his bag to the — of drawers, and put handkerchiefs, shirts, etc., in one —. He had brought very little — and would have to buy some more in London. He then — his coat upon a — in a corner of the room, and on a — over the chest of drawers he hung a — of his father, who was no longer —; he had been — for five years. There was a — in the — of the door, but Storm said that he would have no use for it. Before she went down, Mrs. Marshall offered to — on a — if one should come off. "That is so — for a woman to do, while a man feels as if he has ten — on his hands when he has to do a thing like that."

WORDS:

drawer
supply
last (verb)
unnecessary
organisation
copy
lift
lift (verb)
heavy
company
guide
heat
cool
furniture
sofa
cushion
stay
lie
lay
lain
chest
linen
hung
hook
nail
photograph
alive
dead

reach
key
lock
lock (verb)
sew
sewed
sewn
button
simple
thumb
desk
organise
wardrobe
rest
extremely
badly

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences, but not necessarily with the real facts:

Do you live in a town or in the country? ... Do you live with your parents? ... What is your work? ... What do you like to do when you are not working? ... How do you get to and from your work? ... How old are you? ... How many persons are there in your family? ... Have you ever been outside your own country? ... When did you begin to study English? ... Which do you like best of the languages that you know? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Every word is made up of sounds [*saundz*]. It is the sounds that we hear when a word is pronounced. A word is written with letters. The word 'height' has six letters, but it is pronounced with only four sounds: *hait*. We see, therefore, that the letters and the sounds of a word are not always the same. The sounds of a word are put together into syllables [*siləblz*]. The word 'height' has only one syllable [*siləbl*], but the word 'follow' has two, and the word 'establish' has three syllables.

We heard last time that most English nouns add an -s in the plural, which is used when we speak of more than one person or thing. For instance, book — books, dog — dogs, pen — pens, river — rivers. If the word ends [*endz*] in an s-sound, which means that the last sound is either *s*, *z*, *f*, or *ʒ*, the plural ends in -es [pronounced -*iz*] For instance, church — churches [*tʃə:tʃ — tʃə:tʃiz*], box — boxes [*bɒks — bɒksiz*], dish —

dishes [*dif* — *difiz*], glass — glasses [*gla:s* — *gla:siz*]. Some words are written with an -e after the s-sound in the singular. Then only -s is added, but the -s together with the -e is pronounced as an extra syllable: *iz*. For instance, experience — experiences [*iks'piəriəns* — *iks'piəriənsiz*], bridge — bridges [*bridʒ* — *bridʒiz*], horse — horses [*hɔ:s* — *hɔ:siz*].

Some words that end in -o in the singular, add -es in the plural, for instance, potato — potatoes [*pə'teitou* — *pə'teitouz*].

Most words that end in -y in the singular, change -y into -i in the plural and add -es. For instance, enemy — enemies [*enimi* — *enimiz*], lady — ladies [*leidi* — *leidiz*], city — cities [*siti* — *sitiz*], baby — babies [*beibi* — *beibiz*], sky — skies [*skai* — *skaiz*].

But if one of the letters a, e, o, u goes before -y in the singular, the -y remains in the plural. For instance, boy — boys [*bɔi* — *bɔiz*], day — days [*dei* — *deiz*], key — keys [*ki:* — *ki:z*].

Questions:

Is a sound and a letter always the same thing? . . . What do we call the parts into which we can divide words? . . . What nouns add -es in the plural? . . . When is the -y at the end of some nouns changed into -i? . . . And what nouns ending in -y do not change this -y into an -i in the plural? . . .

THE FOUR PEOPLES OF THE BRITISH ISLES

"I noticed that one of the men to whom I was introduced to-day explained that he was a Scotchman, not 'dju:st tə'dei iks'pleind ðət hi: wəz ə skɒtʃmən, nɒl an Englishman. Wasn't that rather a strange thing to ən iŋɡlɪʃmən. wəznt ðæt rɑ:ðər ə streɪndʒ piŋ tə say?" asked Storm. "You may think so, but that is sei?" ə:skt stə:m. "ju: mei piŋk sou, bət ðæt iz only because you're a stranger. People in foreign ounli bi'kəz juər ə streɪndʒə. pi:pl in fɔrɪn countries speak about this country as England and the kʌntriz spi:k ə'baʊt ðis kʌntri əz iŋɡlənd ənd ðə people as English, and know nothing about the existence pi:pl əz iŋɡlɪʃ, ənd nou nʌpiŋ ə'baʊt ði ig'zɪstəns of other nations in the British Isles, but there are əv ʌðə neɪʃənz in ðə brɪtɪʃ aɪlz, bət ðeə really four different countries, England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland, with four different nations, the land, ənd aɪələnd, wɪð fɔ: dɪfrənt neɪʃənz, ði English, the Welsh, the Scotch, and the Irish. In Wales, iŋɡlɪʃ, ðə wɛlʃ, ðə skɒtʃ, ənd ði aɪərɪʃ. in weɪlz,

isle = island



Scotland, and Ireland you will find the Celts, the people
skøllənd, ənd aɪələnd ju: wil faɪnd ðə kelts, ðə pi:pl

to whom all four countries used to belong before the
tə hu:m ə:l fɔ: kʌntriz ju:st tə bi'lɒŋ bi'fɔ: ðə

Romans and, later on, the Saxons came to England."
roumənz ənd, leɪtər ɒn, ðə sæksnz keɪm tu ɪŋɡlənd."

Storm: "I remember our teacher telling us that the
stɔ:m: "aɪ ri'membər auə ti:tʃə teliŋ ʌs ðət ðə

country belonged to the Celts until their enemies took
kʌntri bi'lɒŋd tə ðə kelts ʌn'tɪl ðeər enɪmɪz tuk

it away from them; but I must say that I never knew
ɪt ə'wei frəm ðəm; bət aɪ məst seɪ ðət aɪ nevə nju:

that the Celts exist as a nation, or rather, as three
ðət ðə kelts ɪɡ'zɪst əz ə neɪʃən, ɔ: rə:ðə, əz ʒri:

exist = be

nations." "You had better never say that to a Celt," said
neɪʃənz." "ju: həd betər nevə seɪ ðæt tu ə kelt," sed

Marshall, laughing, "for he would not like to hear that
mɑ:fəl, lɑ:ʃɪŋ, "fə hi: wəd nɒt laɪk tə hiə ðət

anybody, even a stranger, did not know of the existence
enɪbədi, i:vən ə streɪndʒə, dɪd nɒt nəʊ əv ði ɪɡ'zɪstəns

of the Celts. All Celts are rather proud that they are
əv ðə kelts. ə:l kelts a: rə:ðə praʊd ðət ðeɪ a:

Celts. The Scotchman to whom you spoke to-day was
kelts. ðə skɒtʃmən tə hu:m ju: spəʊk tə'deɪ wəz

proud that he was a Scotchman; that was the reason
praʊd ðət hi: wəz ə skɒtʃmən; ðæt wəz ðə ri:zn

why he mentioned that he was a Scotchman, and not
hwaɪ hi: menʃənd ðət hi: wəz ə skɒtʃmən, ənd nɒt

but little = very
little

anything else =
any other thing

an Englishman." "I am afraid," said Storm, "that I
ən ɪŋɡlɪʃmən." "ai əm ə'freɪd," *sed stɔ:m, "ðæt ai*

know but little about Scotland. I have read many
nou bət lɪl ə'baʊt skɒtlənd. ai hæv red meni

funny stories about Scotchmen, but the stories that I
fʌni stɔ:rɪz ə'baʊt skɒtʃmən, bət ðə stɔ:rɪz ðæt ai

know about them do not tell me anything about
nou ə'baʊt ðəm du: nɒt tel mi: enɪpɪŋ ə'baʊt

Scotland."
skɒtlənd."

"The stories will not tell you anything about the
"ðə stɔ:rɪz wɪl nɒt tel ju: enɪpɪŋ ə'baʊt ðə

Scotch either," Marshall replied, "for most of those
skɒtʃ aɪðə," mɑ:fəl rɪ'plaɪd, "fə mɔst əv ðəʊz

stories give the idea that the Scotch love money more
stɔ:rɪz gɪv ði aɪ'diə ðæt ðə skɒtʃ lʌv mʌni mɔ:

than anything else in the world. You're told that they
ðən enɪpɪŋ els ɪn ðə wɜ:ld. juə təʊld ðæt ðeɪ

will do anything to get money, and that they don't like
wɪl du: enɪpɪŋ tə get mʌni, ənd ðæt ðeɪ daʊnt laɪk

spending it. This, however, is not so. The Scotchman
spendɪŋ ɪt. ðɪs, haʊ'evə, ɪz nɒt səʊ. ðə skɒtʃmən

takes good care of his money; he is very careful with
teɪks gud keə əv hɪz mʌni; hi: ɪz veri keəfʊl wɪð

money; but that is all. I think there must be many
mʌni; bət ðæt ɪz ɔ:l. ai ɪŋk ðeə mʌst bi: meni

other people who are careful with their money, and
ʌðə pi:pl hu: a: keəfʊl wɪð ðeə mʌni, ənd

who look twice at a penny before spending it. I myself
hu: luk twais ət ə peni bi'ʃə: spendiŋ it. ai mai'self

do not waste money, spending it unnecessarily, and I
du: nɒt weɪst mʌni, spendiŋ it ʌn'nesisərili, ənd ai

am sure that you don't waste your money either."
əm fʊə θət ju: daʊnt weɪst jə: mʌni aiðə."

Storm: "No, I am rather careful with my money. —
stɔ:m: "nou, ai əm rə:ðə keəfʊl wið mai mʌni. —

I should like to hear a little about these three nations.
ai ʃəd laɪk tə hiə ə litl ə'baut ði:z pri: neɪʃənz.

Will you tell me about them?" "I shall be only too
wɪl ju: tel mi: ə'baut ðəm?" "ai ʃəl bi: ounli tu:

pleased to do so," Marshall replied. "To begin with
pli:zd tə du: sou," mɑ:ʃəl ri'plaid. "tə bi'ɡɪn wið

Wales, it has had English kings for about 700
weɪlz, ɪt həz hæd ɪŋɡlɪʃ kɪŋz fər ə'baut sevn hʌndrəd

years. When the country was conquered by Edward
jiəz. huwen θə kʌntri wəz kɔŋkəd baɪ edwəd

the First, who was then king of England, the Welsh
ðə ʃə:st, hu: wəz ðen kɪŋ əv ɪŋɡlənd, θə welf

told him that they would never accept a king who had
təʊld hɪm θət ðei wəd nevər ək'sept ə kɪŋ hu: həd

not been born in their own country and did not speak
nɒt bi:n bɔ:n ɪn ðeər oun kʌntri ənd dɪd nɒt spi:k

their language. So Edward called the most important
ðeə læŋɡwɪdʒ. sou edwəd kɔ:ld ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt

men of Wales to the Castle of Carnarvon and told them
mɛn əv weɪlz tə ðə kɑ:sl əv kə'nɑ:vən ənd təʊld ðəm

She bears,
 she bore,
 she has **born**
 [beəz, bɔ:, bɔ:n].

be born = come
 into the world

Chapter Forty-Three (43).

prince = son of
the king

old, older, oldest
but: old, elder,
eldest (about
sisters and
brothers)

harmony = peace

that he would with pleasure give them a king who had
ðæt hi: wəd wið pleʒə giv ðəm ə kiŋ hu: həd
 been born in Wales and could not speak one word of
bi:n bɔ:n in weilz ənd kud nɒt spi:k wʌn wəd əv
 English. They were very pleased with this and promised
iŋɡliʃ. ðei wə: veri pli:zd wið ðis ənd prəmɪst
 to accept such a king. Their surprise, however, was
tu ək'sept sʌtʃ ə kiŋ. ðeə sə'praɪz, haʊ'evə, wəz
 great when Edward's first-born son, who had been born
ɡreɪt huwen edwədʒ fə:stbɔ:n sʌn, hu: həd bi:n bɔ:n
 at the castle a few days before, and who was to be
ət ðə kɑ:sl ə fju: deɪz bɪ'fɔ:, ənd hu: wəz tə bi:
 king after Edward, was brought in to them. But they
kiŋ a:ftər edwəd, wəz brɔ:t in tə ðəm. bət ðei
 had to agree with the King that he had kept his
həd tu ə'ɡri: wið ðə kiŋ ðæt hi: həd keɪpt hɪz
 promise, as the little prince really had been born in
prəmɪs, əz ðə lɪl prɪns riəli həd bi:n bɔ:n in
 Wales and could not speak one word of English, and
weilz ənd kud nɒt spi:k wʌn wəd əv iŋɡliʃ, ənd
 so they accepted him. Since that time the eldest son
sou ðei ək'septɪd hɪm. sɪns ðæt taɪm ði eldɪst sʌn
 of the English king has always been called the Prince
əv ði iŋɡliʃ kiŋ həz ɔ:lwəz bi:n kɔ:ld ðə prɪns
 of Wales, and the Welsh and the English have lived
əv weilz, ənd ðə welf ənd ði iŋɡliʃ həv lɪvd
 together in harmony.
tə'ɡedər in hɑ:məni.

"It has been much more difficult for the English and
"it hæz bi:n mʌlf mɔ: difikəlt fə ði ɪŋɡlɪf ənd
 the Scotch to live in peace and harmony with each
ðə skɒtf tə liv in pi:s ənd hæ:məni wið i:tf
 other, and the two countries have had the same kings
ʌðə, ənd ðə tu: kʌntriz hæv hæd ðə seim kiŋz
 for no more than 300 years. For many hundred
fə nou mɔ: ðən pri: hʌndrəd jɪəz. fə meni hʌndrəd
 years the two nations were enemies, and the Scotch
jɪəz ðə tu: neɪfənz wə:r enɪmɪz, ənd ðə skɒtf
 had just as great a hatred of the English as the English
həd dʒʌst əz greɪt ə heɪtrɪd əv ði ɪŋɡlɪf əz ði ɪŋɡlɪf
 of the Scotch. But the two countries have now become
əv ðə skɒtf. bət ðə tu: kʌntriz hæv nau bi'kʌm
 the best of friends, and the existence of the old hatred
ðə best əv frendz, ənd ði ɪg'zɪstəns əv ði ould heɪtrɪd
 has been forgotten. As Queen Elizabeth of England had
hæz bi:n fə'gɒtn. əz kwi:n i'lɪzəbəθ əv ɪŋɡlənd hæd
 no children, the people in both countries agreed that
nou tʃɪldrən, ðə pi:pl ɪn bəʊp kʌntriz ə'ɡri:d ðət
 it would be best for England and Scotland to be joined
ɪt wəd bi: best fər ɪŋɡlənd ənd skɒtlənd tə bi: dʒɔɪnd
 together under one king. James the Sixth of Scotland
tə'geðər ʌndə wʌn kiŋ. dʒeɪmz ðə sɪksθ əv skɒtlənd
 became James the First of England. Since that time
bɪ'keɪm dʒeɪmz ðə fə:st əv ɪŋɡlənd. sɪns ðæt taɪm
 the two countries have been joined together and have
ðə tu: kʌntriz hæv bi:n dʒɔɪnd tə'geðə ənd hæv

would (here) =
used to

hurry = go
quickly

He **hides**, he **hid**,
he has **hidden**
[haidz, hid, hidn].

had the same kings.

hæd ðə seim kinz.

“Until then the English and the Scotch had often
“ʌn'til ðen ði iŋɡlɪʃ ənd ðə skɒtʃ hæd ɔːfn

fought each other. In the early wars the Scotch would
fɔːt iːtʃ ʌðə. in ði əːli wɔːz ðə skɒtʃ wəd

send soldiers to the nearest English towns, where they
send souldʒəz tə ðə niərist iŋɡlɪʃ taʊnz, hwɛə ðei

would do as much damage as possible. Sometimes the
wəd duː əz mʌʃ dæmɪdʒ əz pɒsəbl. sʌmlaɪmz ðə

damage was very great. Houses were set on fire and
dæmɪdʒ wəz veri greɪt. haʊzɪz wəː set ɒn faɪə ənd

quite destroyed, so that not one stone was left upon
kwɪt di'strɔɪd, sɔʊ ðæt nɒt wʌn stəʊn wəz left ə'pɒn

another. The Scotch only came to destroy houses and
ə'nʌðə. ðə skɒtʃ ɒnli keɪm tə di'strɔɪ haʊzɪz ənd

fields and to take the cows and sheep of the English.
fiːldz ənd tə teɪk ðə kaʊz ənd ʃiːp əv ði iŋɡlɪʃ.

Having done that, they hurried back as quickly as
hæviŋ dʌn ðæt, ðei hʌrɪd bæk əz kwɪkli əz

possible to Scotland to hide in the mountains, where
pɒsəbl tə skɒtlənd tə haɪd in ðə maʊntɪnz, hwɛər

it would be difficult to find them. They knew that the
ɪt wəd biː dɪfɪkəlt tə faɪnd ðəm. ðei njuː ðæt ði

English would hurry after them, but very often they
iŋɡlɪʃ wəd hʌri ɑːftə ðəm, bət veri ɔːfn ðei

were so well hidden that the English had to give up
wəː sɔʊ wel hɪdn ðæt ði iŋɡlɪʃ hæd tə gɪv ʌp

trying to find them.

traiiŋ tə faɪnd ðəm.

"I have told you about the Scotch coming into England,

"aɪ hæv təʊld ju: ə'baʊt ðə skɒtʃ kʌmɪŋ ɪntu ɪŋɡlənd,

but the English were no better. They went just as often

bət ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ wə: nɒ betə. ðeɪ wɛnt dʒʌst əz ɔ:ftn

into Scotland and did the same damage to the Scotch.

ɪntə skɒlənd ənd dɪd ðə seɪm dæmɪdʒ tə ðə skɒtʃ.

Sometimes the English even sent large armies into

sʌmtaɪmz ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ i:vən sent la:dʒ a:mɪz ɪntə

Scotland. Once, the English went into Scotland with

skɒlənd. wʌns, ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ wɛnt ɪntə skɒlənd wɪð

an army of 150 000 men. The Scotch got

ən a:mɪ əv wʌn hʌndrəd ənd fɪfti paʊzənd men. ðə skɒtʃ ɡɒt

together an army of good soldiers, but they were few

tə'geðər ən a:mɪ əv ɡʊd səʊldɪəz, bət ðeɪ wə: fju:

in comparison with the English. The two armies met

ɪn kəm'pærɪsn wɪð ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ðə tu: a:mɪz met

He **meets**, he **met**,
he has **met**
[mi:ts, met, met].

at Bannockburn, where a great battle was fought. The

ət 'bænək'bɜ:n, hwɛər ə greɪt bætl wəz ʃɔ:t. ðə

Scotch soldiers were very brave; they were not afraid

skɒtʃ səʊldɪəz wə: veri breɪv; ðeɪ wə: nɒt ə'freɪd

of meeting and fighting against a much larger army.

əv mi:liŋ ənd ʃaɪliŋ ə'geɪnst ə mʌʃ la:dʒər a:mɪ.

At the end of the day, the English either lay dead on

ət ði end əv ðə deɪ, ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ aɪðə lei ded ən

the field of battle or were hurrying back to England

ðə fi:ld əv bætl ɔ: wə: hʌriiŋ bæk tu ɪŋɡlənd

as quickly as their legs would carry them.

əz kwikli əz ðeə legz wəd kəri ðəm.

“At one time, many European nations had Scotchmen

“ət wʌn taɪm, meni juərəˈpiən neɪfənz hæd skɒtʃmən

in their armies, because they were such brave soldiers,

in ðeər aːmiz, biˈkɔz ðei wə: sʌtʃ breɪv souldʒəz,

but now that England and Scotland have the same king,

bət nau ðət ɪŋɡlənd ənd skɒtlənd hæv ðə seɪm kiŋ,

the Scotch soldiers fight side by side with the English

ðə skɒtʃ souldʒəz faɪt saɪd baɪ saɪd wið ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

in the British army. And now I had better tell you

in ðə brɪtɪʃ aːmi. ənd nau aɪ həd betə tel ju:

something about the Irish.

sʌmˌpɪŋ əˈbaʊt ði aɪərɪʃ.

“Ireland is different from Wales and Scotland in many

“aɪələnd ɪz dɪfrənt frəm weɪlz ənd skɒtlənd ɪn meni

things, as a comparison between the Irish and the other

þɪŋz, əz ə kəmˈpærɪsn biˈtwi:n ði aɪərɪʃ ənd ði ʌðə

two nations will soon show. While it has been rather

tu: neɪfənz wɪl su:n ʃəʊ. hwaɪl ɪt həz bi:n rɑːðər

easy for England, Wales, and Scotland to work together,

iːzi fər ɪŋɡlənd, weɪlz, ənd skɒtlənd tə wɜ:k təˈɡeðə,

there have been great difficulties in arriving at peace

ðeə həv bi:n greɪt dɪfɪkəltɪz ɪn əˈraɪvɪŋ ət piːs

and harmony between the Irish and the English. One

ənd hæːməni biˈtwi:n ði aɪərɪʃ ənd ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ. wʌn

reason is that the Irish live in an island of their own,

riːzn ɪz ðət ði aɪərɪʃ liv ɪn ən aɪlənd əv ðeər oun,

while the English, the Scotch, and the Welsh live
hwail ði iŋɡlɪʃ, ðə skɒtʃ, ənd ðə wɛlʃ liv

together in another island. Then we must also remem-
tə'ɡedər in ə'nʌðər aɪlənd. ðen wi: məst ə:lsoʊ rɪ'mem-

ber that most of the Irish are Catholics, while most
bə ðət maʊst əv ði aɪərɪʃ a: kætjə'liks, hwail maʊst

of the people of the other countries are Protestants.
əv ðə pi:pl əv ði ʌðə kʌntri:z a: prə'tɪstənts.

I don't think that we English understand the Irish very
aɪ'daʊnt ʒɪŋk ðət wi: iŋɡlɪʃ ʌndə'stænd ði aɪərɪʃ veri

well, and we have not always been particularly kind
wɛl, ənd wi: həv nɒt ə:lweɪz bi:n pə'tɪkjʊləli kaɪnd

particularly =
 especially

to them. All this has meant that some of the Irish,
tə ðəm. ə:l ðɪs həz mənt ðət sʌm əv ði aɪərɪʃ,

particularly those in the southern part which is called
pə'tɪkjʊləli ðəʊz in ðə sʌðən pɑ:t hwɪtʃ ɪz kɔ:ld

Eire, have not been very satisfied with the English.
ɛərə, həv nɒt bi:n veri sætɪsfaɪd wɪð ði iŋɡlɪʃ.

You will understand, however, that it is almost im-
ju: wɪl ʌndə'stænd, haʊ'evə, ðət ɪt ɪz ə:lmoʊst 'ɪm-

possible to satisfy people unless you understand them.
'pɒsəbl tə sætɪsfaɪ pi:pl ʌn'les ju: ʌndə'stænd ðəm.

unless = except if

Scotland and Wales send representatives to the British
skɒtlənd ənd weɪlz send reprɪ'zentətɪvz tə ðə brɪtɪʃ

Parliament in London, but since 1922 Eire
pɑ:ləmənt in lʌndən, bʌt sɪns naɪnti:n twenti'tu: ɛərə

has had a parliament of her own, and she no longer
həz həd ə pɑ:ləmənt əv hɜ:r oun, ənd ʃɪ: nou lɔŋɡə

sends representatives to London. Northern Ireland has
sendz repri'zentativz tə lʌndən. nɔ:ðən aiələnd hæz
 a parliament of its own, but, at the same time, sends
ə pa:ləmənt əv its oun, bʌt, ət ðə seim taim, sendz
 representatives to London. When we speak about all
repri'zentativz tə lʌndən. hwen wi: spi:k ə'baut ɔ:l
 four countries together, we usually call them either
fɔ: kʌntriz tə'geðə, wi: ju:ʒuəli kɔ:l ðəm aiðə
 the British Isles or Great Britain and Eire (Ireland).
ðə britiʃ ailz ɔ: greit britən ənd eərə (aiələnd).
 There you have a few facts about the Welsh, the
ðeə ju: hæv ə fju: fæktz ə'baut ðə welf, ðə
 Scotch, and the Irish. Are you satisfied with that? If
skɒtʃ, ənd ði aiəriʃ. a: ju: sætisfaɪd wið ðæt? ɪf
 not, I promise to tell you more some other time."
nɒt, ai prəmɪs tə tel ju: mɔ: sʌm ʌðə taim."

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:

British Isles
 belong
 existence
 exist
 proud
 story
 careful
 waste
 not... either
 414

Although Storm knew that the British — had — to
 the Celts once, he had never thought of the — of three
 nations of Celts in the British Isles. The Scotch are
 very — that they are Celts, but many of the funny —
 that are told about them are made by the Scotch
 themselves. The stories tell us that the Scotch love
 money, but they are only — with it and do not — it by
 buying things —. But it is not the Scotch alone who
 are like that; there are many other people who do not
 waste their money unnecessarily —. In our days the

English, the Welsh, and the Scotch live in peace and — together, but several hundred years ago there was great — between the nations. The Welsh were the first to make peace with the English; the two nations were — together, and the English king called his — son the — of Wales. The eldest son of King Edward the First was — at the Castle of Carnarvon. The Scotch and the English continued to send armies into each other's countries to — the towns and do as much — as possible. Sometimes, after such a trip into England, the Scotch would run back and — in the mountains, but often they — the English armies and fought great battles with them. The Scotch soldiers were very —, and after the Battle of Bannockburn the English army, which was much bigger than the Scotch army, had to — back to England as fast as possible. No difficulties — between these three nations now. The — live in another island by themselves. It has been more difficult for England to — the Irish. If we make a — between the Irish and the Celts of Great Britain, we find that the Irish are —, while most of the others are —. The Scotch live in —, and the Welsh live in —. Scotland and Wales send — to the British Parliament, but Eire was not — until she had her own parliament. You cannot expect people to be satisfied — they are met with kindness and understanding.

EXERCISE B.

As soon as Mr. Miller and the two young men came home, Wood wrote a letter to Storm telling him about the trip. Now we want you to write a letter as if you

harmony
hatred
join
elder
eldest
prince
destroy
bear
bore
born
damage
hide
hid
hidden
meet
met
brave
hurry
Irish
satisfy
satisfied
comparison
Catholic
Protestant
representative
Eire
unless
particularly
southern
Ireland
rather
unnecessarily

were Wood. Please write the letter in such a way that you use all the words in the following list: steamer — sea — seasick — nice — train — restaurant — carriage — wine — cup — newspaper — look — window — station — family — carry — good-bye — teacher — taxi — remember.

How to write a letter in English.

At the top of the paper, in the right hand corner, write the address, the day of the month, and the year. For example:

68, Victory Road, Ealing.
August 4th, 19-.

You may write either 'August 4th' or '4th August', but you usually pronounce 'the fourth of August'. On the left hand side of the paper a little farther down, the words 'Dear Storm', followed by a comma [,], begin the letter itself. This is the usual way of beginning a letter in English. If you write to a person whom you do not know very well, you first write the person's name and address and under that the words: Dear Sir, or Dear Madam, for example:

Mr. George Bentham,
47, Nelson Road, Wimbledon.

Dear Sir,

Notice that the number of the house comes before the name of the street. If you wish to send greetings to somebody else, too, for instance to a person called John, you can do so with the words: "Please remember me to John." At the end of the letter, it is most com-

mon to write 'Yours sincerely' [sin'siəlɪ], followed by your name. If you write to a person whom you do not know well, you may write 'Yours faithfully' [faiþfʊli] or 'Yours truly' [tru:li], and then your name.

Now you know enough about writing letters in English to write the letter from Wood to Storm.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

If we want to express that something belongs to somebody, we may add an -s to the name of the person to whom it belongs. For example: the boy's pencil. When this -s is added to a noun, we say that the noun is in the genitive [dʒenitiv]. We notice that there is an apostrophe [ə'pɒstrəʃi], which looks like this ['']; it is put either before or after the -s, to make it different from the plural -s.

In the singular the apostrophe is always put before the -s. For example: the boy's pencil, the baby's doll, the child's ball. In the plural there are two ways of making the genitive. Nouns that already have a plural -s do not add an extra -s in the genitive, but only add the apostrophe. Examples: the boys' pencils, the babies' dolls. So we see there is a difference between the singular and the plural in writing: the boy's pencils, the boys' pencils; but to the ear there is no difference. Nouns, however, that do not end in -s in the plural, have the apostrophe and the -s just like the genitive in the singular. Examples: the men's hats, the children's balls. The genitive -s is pronounced in the same way as the plural -s: the dog's [dɒgz] nose, the horse's [hɔ:sɪz] head.

The s-genitive is used to express that something belongs to a *person* or an *animal*. But we may express the idea of the genitive in another way, too: John's father, or: the father of John. If it is not a person or an animal that something belongs to, we use the word 'of' to express the genitive: the roof of the house was high; the leaves of the trees had fallen.

Perhaps you have noticed that we speak, for example, of two weeks' holiday or of a day's work. When we speak of a measure of time, the s-genitive is used.

There is also another way in which the s-genitive is used. People speak of shopping at Selfridge's. It looks as if a word should have followed Selfridge's, and really the word 'shop' should have followed; but people are so used to hearing the name that everybody knows what is meant. In the same way we speak of having dinner at your uncle's, that is, at your uncle's house, or of dining at your brother's, etc.

Questions:

What may we add to the name of a person to show that something belongs to that person? ... What takes place in the genitive if a noun already has a plural -s? ... What is the genitive plural of the words: woman, child, boy, lady, girl? ... How do we express the genitive of the noun if it is not a person or an animal that something belongs to? ... May we use only the s-genitive when we speak of persons? ...

ENGLISH MONEY

Marshall and Storm have been working hard the whole
ma:fəl ənd stɔ:m hæv bi:n wə:kiŋ ha:d ðə houl

morning and are now waiting for the lunch hour. A
mɔ:nɪŋ ənd a: nau weitiŋ fə ðə lʌnf auə. ə

few of the clerks have lunch from twelve to one, but
fju: əv ðə kla:ks hæv lʌnf frəm twelv tə wʌn, bət

all the others from one to two. Suddenly, the clock in
ɔ:l ði ʌðəz frəm wʌn tə tu:. sʌdnli, ðə klɒk in

the office strikes one. "I knew it had struck half past
ði ɒfis straiks wʌn. "aɪ nju: ɪt həd strʌk ha:f pa:st

twelve, but I had begun to think it would never reach
twelv, bət aɪ həd bi'gʌn tə piŋk ɪt wəd nevə ri:tʃ

one o'clock," says Marshall.

wʌn ə'klɒk," sez ma:fəl.

The two young men now got up, went to the restaurant
ðə tu: jʌŋ men nau gɒt ʌp, went tə ðə restərɔ:ŋ

where they usually had their lunch, and sat down.
hwɛə ðei ju:ʒuəli həd ðeə lʌnf, ənd sæt daʊn.

They at once began to look at the menu, a long list of
ðei ət wʌns bi'gæn tə luk ət ðə menju:, ə lɔŋ list əv

the different sorts of food that one could get. A little
ðə difrənt sɔ:ts əv fu:d ðət wʌn kəd get. ə lɪl

later, they saw the young lady who served at their
leɪtə, ðei sɔ: ðə jʌŋ leɪdi hu: sə:vəd ət ðeə

He **strikes**,
 he **struck**,
 he has **struck**
 [straiks, strʌk,
 strʌk].



waitress



tray

place = put

table, coming to take their order. "Here comes the
teibl, kʌmiŋ tə teik ðeər ɔ:də. "hiə kʌmz ðə

waitress," said Storm; "I'm glad to see her, for I'm very
weɪtrɪs," sed stɔ:m; "aɪm glæd tə si: hə:, fər aɪm veri

hungry to-day."
hʌŋgri tə'deɪ."

They ordered their lunch, and in two or three minutes
ðei ɔ:dəd ðeə lʌnʃ, ənd in tu: ə ʒri: minɪts

the waitress was back again, carrying the food on a
ðə weɪtrɪs wəz bæk ə'geɪn, kæriiŋ ðə fu:d ɔn ə

tray. One of the most important things on the
treɪ. wʌn əv ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt ʒɪŋz ɔn ðə

waitress's tray was a big pot of tea. Storm had now
weɪtrɪsɪz treɪ wəz ə bɪg pɒt əv ti:. stɔ:m həd naʊ

learned to drink tea as often as an Englishman. The
lə:nd tə driŋk ti: əz ɔ:fən əz ən ɪŋɡlɪʃmən. ðə

waitress placed the pot of tea and the other things on
weɪtrɪs pleɪst ðə pɒt əv ti: ənd ði ʌðə ʒɪŋz ɔn

the table and went away. Although the food had been
ðə teɪbl ənd went ə'wei. ɔ:lðəʊ ðə fu:d həd bi:n

placed on the table, Storm continued to look at the
pleɪst ɔn ðə teɪbl, stɔ:m kən'tɪnju:d tə luk ət ðə

prices on the menu. "I thought you said you were
praɪsɪz ɔn ðə menju:. "aɪ þɔ:t ju: sed ju: wə:

hungry, but you seem to be much more interested in
hʌŋgri, bət ju: si:m tə bi: mʌʃ mɔ:r ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn

the menu than in the food itself," Marshall said to him,
ðə menju: ðən ɪn ðə fu:d ɪt'self," mɑ:ʃəl sed tə hɪm,

smiling. Storm replied that the prices interested him
smailiŋ. stɔ:m ri'plaid ðæt ðə praisiz intristid him

a great deal, and finished by asking Marshall to tell
ə greit di:l, ənd finiʃt bai a:skiŋ mɑ:fəl tə tel

a great deal =
 very much

him something about English money and coins. He
him sʌmpɪŋ ə'baut iŋɡlɪʃ mʌni ənd kɔɪnz. hi:

explained that these things were difficult for a stranger
iks'pleɪnd ðæt ði:z þɪŋz wə: dɪfɪkəlt fər ə streɪndʒə

to get used to, because nearly the whole world uses the
tə get ju:st tu, bi'kɔ:z niəli ðə houl wɜ:ld ju:zɪz ðə

decimal system. "Even the Americans, who use the
desɪməl sistɪm. "i:vən ði ə'merɪkənz, hu: ju:z ði

English system of weights and measures, have their
iŋɡlɪʃ sistɪm əv weɪts ənd meʒəz, hæv ðeə

dollar which is equal to a hundred cents," said Storm.
dɒlə hwɪlf ɪz i:kwəl tu ə hʌndrəd sents," sed stɔ:m.

"I always have great trouble in understanding the
"aɪ ə:lweɪz hæv greɪt trʌbl ɪn ʌndə'stændɪŋ ðə

prices in the shops in London. You have more than
praɪzɪz ɪn ðə ʃɒps ɪn lʌndən. ju: hæv mɔ: ðən

one way of saying the same thing, at least when it
wʌn weɪ əv seɪɪŋ ðə seɪm þɪŋ, ət li:st hwen ɪt

comes to money."
kʌmz tə mʌni."

"You must know quite a lot of these things already,
"ju: mʌst nəʊ kwaɪt ə lɒt əv ði:z þɪŋz ə:l'redi,

seeing that you have been here almost a month. But I
si:ɪŋ ðæt ju: hæv bi:n hiə ə:l'mʌst ə mʌnθ. bət aɪ

seeing that = as

think it will be better if I explain to you all the details
þiŋk it wil bi: betər if ai iks'plein tə ju: ɔ:l ðə di:teilz

of our monetary system, especially as you seem to have
əv auə mʌnɪtəri sistim, is'pefəli əz ju: si:m tə hæv

so much trouble in finding out what things really
sou mʌtʃ trʌbl in faɪndɪŋ aut hwət þiŋz riəli

cost," Marshall told his friend. "I should be glad if you
kɒst," mɑ:fəl təʊld hiz frend. "ai ʃəd bi: glæd if ju:

would give me all the details about English money.
wəd giv mi: ɔ:l ðə di:teilz ə'baʊt ɪŋɡlɪʃ mʌni.

Before you start, however, you had better pour me
bɪ'fɔ: ju: stɑ:t, hau'evə, ju: həd betə pɔ: mi:

another cup of tea," Storm said.
ə'nʌðə kʌp əv ti:," stɔ:m sed.



Some of the tea went on the table and over the edge
sʌm əv ðə ti: went ɒn ðə teɪbl ænd oʊvə ði edʒ

of the table on to the floor. Marshall said, "I'm sorry,
əv ðə teɪbl ɒn tə ðə flɔ:. mɑ:fəl sed, "aɪm sɔ:ri,

I wasn't very careful, but it doesn't matter so much as
ai wəznt veri keəfʊl, bət ɪt dʌznt mætə sou mʌtʃ əz



there is no cloth on the table, and the floor isn't very
ðəz nou klɒθ ɒn ðə teɪbl, ænd ðə flɔ:r ɪznt veri

clean. If you want a restaurant where they have cloths
kli:n. if ju: wənt ə restərɔ:ŋ hwɛə ðei hæv klɒθs

on the tables and clean floors, you must pay more for
ɒn ðə teɪblz ænd kli:n flɔ:z, ju: mʌst peɪ mɔ: ʃə

your meals," he continued laughing. "But if you will
jɔ: mi:lz," hi: kən'tɪnju:d lɑ:fɪŋ. "bət if ju: wil

pass me the sugar, I will start. I like a lot of sugar in
pa:s mi: ðə fʊgə, ai wil sta:t. ai laik ə lɒt əv fʊgə in

my tea, in my coffee — in everything, in fact. I love
mai ti:, in mai kɒfi — in evriθɪŋ, in fækt. ai lʌv

in fact = in
 reality

sweet things." Storm told him that he never took sugar
swi:t θɪŋz." stɔ:m təʊld him ðæt hi: nevə tuk fʊgə

in tea or coffee, because he didn't like sweet things.
in ti: ɔ: kɒfi, bi'kɔz hi: didnt laik swi:t θɪŋz.

In fact, he didn't like anything that was full of sugar.
in fækt, hi: didnt laik eniθɪŋ ðæt wəz fʊl əv fʊgə.

Marshall began by explaining that there are pounds,
ma:fəl bi'gæn bai iks'pleiniŋ ðæt ðeər a: paundz,

shillings, pence, and farthings in the English monetary
filiŋz, pens, ənd fɑ:ðɪŋz in ði iŋglɪʃ mənɪtəri

system. "A pound," he continued, "is divided into
sistim. "ə paund," hi: kən'tɪnju:d, "iz di'vaɪdɪd intə

twenty shillings, a shilling into twelve pence, and a
twenti filiŋz, ə filiŋ intə twelv pens, ənd ə

penny into four farthings. At one time a pound was
peni intə fɔ: fɑ:ðɪŋz. ət wʌn taɪm ə paund wəz

always a gold coin, called a sovereign because the
ɔ:lweɪz ə ɡəʊld kɔɪn, kɔ:ld ə səvrɪn bi'kɔz ðə

sovereign = king

king's head was to be found on one side of it. There
kiŋz hed wəz tə bi: faʊnd ɒn wʌn saɪd əv ɪt. ðeə

was a ten shilling coin, too, also made of gold, that was
wəz ə ten filiŋ kɔɪn, tu:, ɔ:lsəʊ meɪd əv ɡəʊld, ðæt wəz

called a half-sovereign. In nearly every country of the
kɔ:ld ə ha:f'səvrɪn. in niəli evri kʌntri əv ðə



American Indian

world three metals were used for coins before the war
wə:ld pri: mellz wə: ju:zd fə kɔɪnz bi'fə: ðə wə:r

of 1914—1918. Gold had the greatest
əv nainti:n fə:ti:n tə nainti:n eiti:n. gould hæd ðə greɪlɪst

value of the three metals that were used for money,
vælju: əv ðə pri: mellz ðət wə: ju:zd fə mʌni,

and silver was next in value. Silver is the sort of metal
ænd silvə wəz nekst in vælju:. silvə iz ðə sɔ:t əv mell

my parents' forks and spoons are made of," Marshall
maɪ peərənts fɔ:ks ænd spu:nz a: meɪd əv," mɑ:fəl

explained. "The third metal was copper, a metal of a
ɪks'pleɪnd. "ðə þə:d mell wəz kɒpə, ə mell əv ə

red colour. Copper is the same colour as an American
red kʌlə. kɒpə iz ðə seɪm kʌlə əz ən ə'merɪkən

Indian. Nowadays, however, it would be very difficult to
ɪndʒən. naʊədeɪz, haʊ'evə, ɪt wəd bi: veri dɪfɪkəlt tə

find a gold coin; paper money is used instead. In Eng-
faɪnd ə gould kɔɪn; peɪpə mʌni iz ju:zd ɪn'sted. ɪn ɪŋ-

land we use a pound note and a ten shilling note instead
glænd wi: ju:z ə paʊnd nout ænd ə ten fɪlɪŋ nout ɪn'sted

of the gold sovereign and half-sovereign. Until some
əv ðə gould səvərɪn ænd hɑ:f səvərɪn. ʌn'tɪl sʌm

time after the war of 1939—1945
taɪm a:ftə ðə wə:r əv nainti:n þə:ti nain tə nainti:n fə:ti'faɪv,

we had coins that people spoke of and thought of as
wi: hæd kɔɪnz ðət pi:pl spəʊk əv ænd þɔ:t əv əz

silver coins. In reality, we had no coins in England
silvə kɔɪnz. ɪn ri'ælɪti, wi: hæd nou kɔɪnz ɪn ɪŋglænd

that were made of silver only; we had no coins of
ðæt wə: meɪd əv sɪlvər ounli; wi: hæd nou kɔɪnz əv

any sort or size that were made of pure metals. Less
eni sɔ:t ɔ: saɪz ðæt wə: meɪd əv pjʊə mellz. les

than half of the metal of the so-called silver coins was
ðæn ha:f əv ðə mell əv ðə soukɔ:ld sɪlvə kɔɪnz wəz

silver. However, in order to pay America in silver some
sɪlvə. hau'evə, ɪn ɔ:də tə peɪ ə'merɪkə ɪn sɪlvə sʌm

of the money we owe her, we changed instead to a
əv ðə mʌni wi: ou hæ:, wi: tʃeɪndʒd ɪn'stəd tu ə

mixture of copper and nickel. The old copper coins,
mɪkstʃər əv kɒpər ænd nɪkl. ði ould kɒpər kɔɪnz,

however, have not been changed and are still the same
hauevə, hæv nɒt bi:n tʃeɪndʒd ænd a: stɪl ðə seɪm

as they were, made of a mixture of copper and some
əz ðeɪ wə:, meɪd əv ə mɪkstʃər əv kɒpər ænd sʌm

other metal. The world is full of paper money, and it
ʌðə mell. ðə wɜ:ld ɪz fʊl əv peɪpə mʌni, ænd ɪt

is hardly possible to find a coin of any real value. It
ɪz hæ:dli pɒsəbl tə faɪnd ə kɔɪn əv enɪ rɪəl vælju:. ɪt

is not very often that coins are pure; they're mostly
ɪz nɒt veri ɔ:fən ðæt kɔɪnz a: pjʊə; ðeə maʊstli

mixtures of at least two metals. Now I will tell you
mɪkstʃəz əv ət li:st tu: mellz. naʊ aɪ wɪl tel ju:

about the English coins and at the same time show
ə'baʊt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ kɔɪnz ænd ət ðə seɪm taɪm ʃəʊ

you what they look like, for I have some in my pocket."
ju: hwət ðeɪ lʊk laɪk, fɜ: aɪ hæv sʌm ɪn maɪ pɒkɪt."



a half-crown =
two shillings
and sixpence

as to = about

Marshall put his hand in his trouser pocket and brought
ma:fəl put hiz hænd in hiz trauzə pəkɪt ənd brɔ:t
 out a number of coins. He showed Storm four copper
aut ə nʌmbər əv kɔɪnz. hi: ʃəʊd stɔ:m ʃɔ: kɒpə
 coins: a farthing which is a quarter of a penny; a half-
kɔɪnz: ə ʃa:ðɪŋ hwɪtʃ ɪz ə kwɔ:tər əv ə peni; ə hei-
 penny; a penny; and a threepenny bit. He also had four
pni; ə peni; ənd ə θrepeni bɪt. hi: ə:lsoʊ hæd ʃɔ:r
 of the new coins: a sixpence; a shilling; a two-shilling
əv ðə nju: kɔɪnz: ə sɪkspens; ə ʃɪlɪŋ; ə 'tu:ʃɪlɪŋ
 piece (a florin); and a half-crown. "We used to have a
pi:s (ə ʃlɒrɪn); ənd ə 'ha:f'kraʊn. "wi: ju:st tə hæv ə
 crown, too," said Marshall, "but the size of the coin
kraʊn, tu:," sed ma:fəl, "bət ðə saɪz əv ðə kɔɪn
 was too great." "That is all quite easy to understand,"
wəz tu: greɪt." "ðæt ɪz ə:l kwæɪl i:zɪ tu ʌndə'stænd,"
 Storm told him, "but will you also explain to me the
stɔ:m təʊld hɪm, "bət wɪl ju: ə:lsoʊ ɪks'pleɪn tə mi: ðə
 different ways in which people give prices, for some-
dɪfrənt weɪz ɪn hwɪtʃ pi:pl ɡɪv praɪsɪz, ʃə sʌm-
 times when I hear a price, I don't know how much it
taɪmz hwen aɪ hiər ə praɪs, aɪ daʊnt nəʊ haʊ mʌtʃ ɪt
 is, and, consequently, I am in doubt as to how much I
ɪz, ənd, kɒnsɪkwəntli, aɪ əm ɪn daʊt əz tə haʊ mʌtʃ aɪ
 have to pay." "I shouldn't like you to be in doubt about
hæv tə peɪ." "aɪ ʃʊdn't laɪk ju: tə bi: ɪn daʊt ə'baut
 the price," Marshall replied. "Now I will mention all
ðə praɪs," ma:fəl rɪ'plaɪd. "naʊ aɪ wɪl menʃən ə:l

the different ways in which we give prices in writing
ðə difrənt weiz in hwɪf wi: giv praɪsɪz in raɪtɪŋ

and in speaking. Five pounds is written £5. The letter
ænd in spi:kɪŋ. faɪv paʊndz ɪz rɪtn ... ðə letə

£ stands for the Latin word 'libra' or pound. Five
.. stændz fə ðə lætɪn wə:d 'laɪbrə' ɔ: paʊnd. faɪv

shillings is written 5s. or 5/-, but fivepence is written
fɪlɪŋz ɪz rɪtn .. ɔ: .., bət faɪ/pəns ɪz rɪtn

5d. The letter d stands for 'denarius' which is the Latin
... ðə letə di: stændz fə 'dɪnəriəs' hwɪf ɪz ðə lætɪn

word for an old Roman coin. Now, two figures that are
wə:d fər ən ould rəʊmən kɔɪn. naʊ, tu: fɪgəz ðət a:

not connected by 'and' mean pence and farthings. If
nɒt kə'nektɪd baɪ 'ænd' mɪ:n pəns ænd fa:ðɪŋz. ɪf

I say 'five-three', I mean fivepence three farthings, and
aɪ sei 'faɪv-θri:', aɪ mɪ:n faɪ/pəns θri: fa:ðɪŋz, ænd

this is written 5¾d. Two figures connected by 'and'
ðɪs ɪz rɪtn ... tu: fɪgəz kə'nektɪd baɪ 'ænd'

mean shillings and pence, so that if I say five-and-
mɪ:n fɪlɪŋz ænd pəns, səʊ ðət ɪf aɪ sei faɪv-ænd-

three, I mean five shillings and threepence; this is
θri:, aɪ mɪ:n faɪv fɪlɪŋz ænd θre:pəns; ðɪs ɪz

written 5/3. When speaking of pounds, we express
rɪtn ... huən spi:kɪŋ əv paʊndz, wi: ɪks'pres

ourselves in this way: three pounds five-and-three,
əʊə'selvz ɪn ðɪs wei: θri: paʊndz faɪv-ænd-θri:,

which means three pounds five shillings and threepence,
hwɪf mɪ:nz θri: paʊndz faɪv fɪlɪŋz ænd θre:pəns,

and is written £3/5/3."

ənd iz rɪtɪn . . .

"Thank you, Marshall; it is all clear to me now, but I
ˈpæŋk juː, mɑːʃəl; ɪt ɪz ɔːl kliə tə miː naʊ, bət aɪ

must say that I can't see the advantage of having
mʌst seɪ ðæt aɪ kɑːnt siː ði ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ əv hæviŋ

pounds, shillings, pence, and farthings. It seems very
paʊndz, ʃɪlɪŋz, pɛns, ənd ʃɑːðɪŋz. ɪt siːmz veri

foolish to me, as shillings and pence would be quite
fuːlɪʃ tə miː, əz ʃɪlɪŋz ənd pɛns wəd biː kwaɪt

enough." "I might mention, Storm, that only English
ɪˈnʌʃ." ˈaɪ maɪt mɛnfən, stɔːm, ðæt ounli ɪŋɡlɪʃ

business men would say £3/5/3. Nearly
bɪznɪs mɛn wəd seɪ priː paʊndz ʃaɪv-ənd-priː. niəli

everybody else =
any other person

everybody else would prefer to express it 65/3."
evrɪbɒdi els wəd priːfəː tu ɪksˈpres ɪt sɪkstiˈʃaɪvənd priː."

"Then," Storm answered, "there is no doubt that the
ˈðen," stɔːm ɑːnsəd, ˈðəz nou daʊt ðæt ði

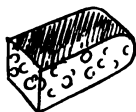
English system is foolish. In my country we always
ɪŋɡlɪʃ sɪstɪm ɪz fuːlɪʃ. ɪn maɪ kʌntri wiː ɔːlwəz

say that it is foolish to do things in such a way that
seɪ ðæt ɪt ɪz fuːlɪʃ tə duː ʒɪŋz ɪn sʌʃ ə wei ðæt

they give extra work. But I think that we have spent
ðeɪ gɪv ɛkstrə wəːk. bət aɪ ʒɪŋk ðæt wiː hæv spɛnt

enough time in talking about money. To finish my meal
ɪˈnʌʃ taɪm ɪn təːkɪŋ əˈbaʊt mʌni. tə ʃɪnɪʃ maɪ miːl

I should like some cheese and another cup of tea. I find
aɪ ʃəd laɪk səm tʃiːz ənd əˈnʌðə kʌp əv tiː. aɪ faɪnd



cheese

that the cheese in England is very good, and I always
ðæt ðə ʈfi:z in iŋglənd iz veri gud, ənd ai ə:lweɪz

have a piece of bread and cheese for supper." "Yes,"
hæv ə pi:s əv bred ənd ʈfi:z fə sʌpə. "jes,"

said Marshall, "bread, a bit of cheese, and a good glass
sed mɑ:fəl, "bred, ə bit əv ʈfi:z, ənd ə gud gla:s

of beer make a fine end to the day. I like a glass of
əv biə meik ə faɪn end tə ðə dei. ai laɪk ə gla:s əv

beer before going to bed."

biə bi:ʃə: ɡəʊɪŋ tə bed."

bit = (small)
piece



EXERCISE A.

When the clock — one, Storm and Marshall went out to lunch. Storm was interested in the prices on the — The — came with a — of tea and the food on a — and — it on the table. The American — is equal to one hundred — Sometimes Storm had much — in understanding English money and prices, so he wanted Marshall to give him all the — of their monetary system. Some of Storm's tea went over the — of the table on to the floor. There was no — on the table in the restaurant. Marshall asked Storm to — the sugar; he liked — things very much. Once, a pound was a — coin called a —.

Spoons and forks are sometimes made of —. — has not so great a — as silver; it is red like an —. Nowadays most coins are not made of — metals. Marshall took several coins out of his —; there were four copper coins: a threepenny bit, a penny, a —, and a —. A — is equal to threepence. Two threepenny bits have the

WORDS:

strike
struck
menu
waitress
pot
tray
place (verb)
dollar
cent
trouble
detail
edge
cloth
pass
sweet
gold
sovereign

half-sovereign
silver
copper
value
American
Indian
pure
pocket
halfpenny
farthing
threepenny
bit
florin
half-crown
crown
doubt
foolish
cheese
beer
red
Latin
denarius
order
clear
a great deal
in fact
nickel
libra

same value as a —. A — is equal to two shillings. One — is equal to two shillings and sixpence. Now and then Storm was in — about the prices in the shops. He found it — to have both pounds and shillings. Marshall and Storm liked bread and — and a glass of —.

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

Did you learn any foreign language at school? ... Are you interested in football? ... Did you play football at school? ... Have you any brothers or sisters? ... Where did you spend your last summer-holidays? ... Did you travel by land or by sea? ... Was the weather good? ... Did you spend much money? ... Do you like to go to the theatre, or do you prefer to see a good picture? ... How do you like singing? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Adjectives [ædʒɪktɪvz] are words that say what things or persons are like. Examples: I have a *big* dog; he is often *dirty*; when he is *clean*, he is a *nice* dog. In these sentences 'big', 'dirty', 'clean', and 'nice' are adjectives, and each of these adjectives tells us something about the 'dog', which is a noun. Other adjectives are: high, beautiful, kind, blue, good, bad, whole, big, great, and many others.

Adjectives may be used to make comparisons. When used in this way, -er and -est are added to them. In the sentence, "My dog is *cleaner* than yours, but Henry's

is the cleanest of the three," a comparison is made between the dogs. When -er is added to an adjective, we say that the adjective is in the comparative [*kəm'pæ-rə-tiv*]; when -est is added, the adjective is said to be in the superlative [*sju:'pə:lə-tiv*].

There are several things to notice about the comparative and the superlative of adjectives. If an adjective already has an 'e' as the last letter, only -r and -st are added, for example: nice, nicer, nicest.

Most adjectives that end in 'y' change 'y' to 'i' in the comparative and the superlative, for example: dirty, dirtier, dirtiest.

In some adjectives of one syllable the last letter is written twice before -er or -est is added; for instance: big, bigger, biggest.

Long adjectives do not add -er and -est, but comparison is expressed by the help of more and most: She is more beautiful than her sister, and the most beautiful girl I know.

Some adjectives have special comparatives and superlatives. For example: good, better, best; many, more, most; much, more, most.

Questions:

What are adjectives? . . . Write some examples of adjectives. . . . What are the comparatives and the superlatives of the following adjectives: warm, large, hot (add an extra -t), blue, red (add an extra -d), hard, kind, cheap, loud, good, many, much, early, dry, funny? . . .

EXERCISE D.

Write the following with the usual letters of the alphabet:

lʌndən, ði eɪlɪp əv ɔ:gəst.

diə wʊd,

*ai ri si:vɪd ʃɔ: letə ðis mɔ:nɪŋ ənd wəz veri glæd tə ri:d ə'baut
ʃɔ: tri:p haʊm. ai hæv mist ju: ɔ:l veri mʌtʃ, is'pefəli ðə ʃə:st
deɪz a:ftə ju: left. ai felt kwait ə'loun in ðis greɪt sɪli, bət ai
əm hæpi tə bi: eɪbl tə tel ju: ðət ai ɔ:l'redi ʃi:l mʌtʃ mɔ:r
ət haʊm naʊ. ðə meɪn ri:z ʃə ðis, ai nou, ɪz ðət ə ʃʌŋ mæn
ət auər ɔ:fɪs baɪ ðə neɪm əv mɑ:fəl, ɔ:l'redi ɔn ðə ʃə:st dei
ɔfəd mi: ə ru:m ət hiz peərənts haʊs. ai teɪk ɔ:l mai mi:lz
wɪð ðə mɑ:fəlz, ənd ðei ɔ:l du: ðeə best tə meɪk mi: ʃi:l ðət
ai ri:əli bi'lɔŋ tə ðə ʃæmili.*

*it ɪz tu: ə:li tə tel ju: mʌtʃ ə'baut mai wə:k; ai məst nou ɪt
ə lɪl betə ʃə:st. ai hæv bi:n pleɪst in ðə kəris'pəndəns di'pɑ:t-
mənt, ənd ju: kən ʌndə'stænd ðət ai felt ə rɑ:ðər im'pɔ:tənt
pə:sn, hwen ðeə wəz ə letər in mai oun læŋgwidʒ tu a:nsə
ɔ:l'redi ɔn mai sekənd dei ət ði ɔ:fɪs. bət ai didnt ʃi:l hæ:f
sou im'pɔ:tənt hwen ai faʊnd ðət ai hæd tu a:sk ə hʌndrəd
streɪndʒ kwɛstʃənz in ði ʌðə di'pɑ:tmənts in ɔ:də tə gel ðə
raɪl ɪnʃə'meɪʃən ə'baut ðə mætər in mai letə — bi'kɔz ai dɪd
nɒt nou ði ɪŋglɪʃ wə:dz.*

*pə'hæps ju: wɪl bi: sou kaɪnd əz tə kɔ:l mai sistər ɔn ðə
telɪfəʊn ənd a:sk hɜ: tə send mi: səm lɪnɪn. ʃi: wɪl ʃaɪnd
ɔ:l mai ʃɪŋz in ðə tʃest əv drɔ:əz in mai ru:m. mai mʌðər
ɪz in ðə kʌntri ɔn hɒlɪdi, ju: nou, ənd ai daʊnt nou huweðə
mai sistər ɪz ət haʊm ɔ: steɪɪŋ wɪð ə gə:l frend, əz ʃi: ɔ:fn
dʌz. bət ju: meɪ kɔ:l hɜ:r ət ði ɔ:fɪs huweð ʃi: wə:ks.*

pli:z ri'membə mi: tə braʊn ənd mɪstə mɪlə.

ʃɔ:z sɪn'siəli,

stɔ:m

A FOOTBALL MATCH

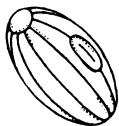
One day in September, when the football season had
wan dei in səp'tembə, hwen ðə futbɔ:l si:zn həd
 begun, Marshall asked Storm if he would like to go
bi'gʌn, mɑ:fəl ɑ:skt stɔ:m if hi: wəd laik tə gou
 to a football match with him. "Are you doing anything
tu ə futbɔ:l mætʃ wið him. "ɑ: ju: du:ɪŋ enɪθɪŋ
 else next Saturday, or is that day convenient to you?"
els nekst sætədi, ɔ:r ɪz ðæt dei kən'vi:njənt tu ju:?"

Storm: "No, I have nothing else on, so that Saturday
stɔ:m: "nou, ai həv nəθɪŋ els ɒn, sou ðæt sætədi
 afternoon will be quite convenient to me. I shall be
ɑ:f'tə'nʊ:n wil bi: kwait kən'vi:njənt tu mi:. ai ʃəl bi:
 very pleased to go to the match with you. I wonder
veri pli:zd tə gou tə ðə mætʃ wið ju:. ai wʌndər
 if the kind of football we are going to see is the same
if ðə kaɪnd əv futbɔ:l wi: ɑ: gouɪŋ tə si: ɪz ðə seɪm

kind as we have at home, for I know that you have two
kaɪnd əz wi: həv ət haʊm, fər ai nou ðæt ju: həv tu:
 kinds of football in England." Marshall: "Yes, we have
kaɪndz əv futbɔ:l in ɪŋɡlənd." mɑ:fəl: "jes, wi: həv
 two kinds of football. The game we are going to see
tu: kaɪndz əv futbɔ:l. ðə geɪm wi: ɑ: gouɪŋ tə si:
 on Saturday is the one you know, so you will not have
ɒn sætədi ɪz ðə wʌn ju: nou, sou ju: wil nɒt həv

have nothing else
 on = have nothing
 else to do

kind = sort



Rugby football

any difficulty in following it. The other kind is called
eni difikəlti in fəloʊɪŋ it. ði ʌðə kaɪnd ɪz kɔːld

Rugby after the famous school where it was first
rʌɡbi ɑːftə ðə feɪməs skuːl hwɛər ɪt wəz fəːst

played." Storm: "I have never seen any Rugby foot-
pleɪd." stɔːm: "aɪ hæv nevə siːn eni rʌɡbi fut-

ball." "Then you would not understand much of it,
bɔːl." "ðen juː wəd nɒt ʌndə'stænd mʌtʃ əv ɪt,

for the rules of the game are quite different from those
fɔː ðə ruːlz əv ðə geɪm ɑː kwaɪt dɪfrənt frəm ðəʊz

of the kind of football you know. There are fifteen
əv ðə kaɪnd əv futbɔːl juː nəʊ. ðeə 'fɪf'tiːn

players; they may carry the ball in their hands if they
pleɪəz; ðeɪ meɪ kəri ðə bɔːl ɪn ðeə hændz ɪf ðeɪ

like; and the ball itself is not round."

laɪk; ənd ðə bɔːl ɪt'self ɪz nɒt raʊnd."

"I am very surprised," Storm replied; "I have never
"aɪ əm veri sə'praɪzd," stɔːm ri'plaɪd; "aɪ hæv nevə

heard how it is played, but from what you say, I under-
hɜːd haʊ ɪt ɪz pleɪd, bʌt frəm hwɒt juː seɪ, aɪ ʌndə-

stand that the rules of the game must be very different
'stænd ðæt ðə ruːlz əv ðə geɪm mʌst biː veri dɪfrənt

from the rules of the kind of football that is played in
frəm ðə ruːlz əv ðə kaɪnd əv futbɔːl ðæt ɪz pleɪd ɪn

my country. I don't see how it is possible to kick a ball
maɪ kʌntri. aɪ daʊnt siː haʊ ɪt ɪz pɒsəbl tə kɪk ə bɔːl

straight if it's not round. I'm sure it must be much
streɪt ɪf ɪts nɒt raʊnd. aɪm suər ɪt mʌst biː mʌtʃ

more difficult to kick the ball to the right man." "Well!
mɔ: difikəlt tə kik ðə bɔ:l tə ðə rait mæn." "wel!

wait till some other time, and you'll see for yourself
weɪt til sʌm ʌðə taɪm, ənd ju:l si: fə ʃɔ:'self

how it is done."
haʊ ɪt ɪz dʌn."

Saturday had come, and Marshall and Storm were on
sætədi həd kʌm, ənd mɑ:ʃəl ənd stɔ:m wə:r ɔn

their way to the match. They went by bus to the
ðeə wei tə ðə mætʃ, ðei went baɪ bʌs tə ðə

nearest Underground station. As it was rather late,
nɪərist ʌndəgraʊnd steɪʃən. əz ɪt wəz rɑ:ðə leɪt,

they jumped on a bus after it had started moving.
ðei dʒʌmp tɔn ə bʌs ɑ:ftər ɪt həd stɑ:tɪd mu:vɪŋ.

People in London often jump on and off the buses
pi:pl ɪn lʌndən ɔ:fn dʒʌmp ɔn ənd ɔ:f ðə bʌsɪz

while they are moving, in order to save time. Having
hwaɪl ðei ɑ: mu:vɪŋ, ɪn ɔ:də tə seɪv taɪm. həvɪŋ

arrived at the Underground station, they went down to
ə'raɪvd ət ði ʌndəgraʊnd steɪʃən, ðei went daʊn tə

the platform. Storm: "It's quite a long way down to
ðə plʌtʃɔ:m. stɔ:m: "ɪts kwaɪt ə lɔŋ wei daʊn tə

the platform; it must be very deep under the ground."
ðə plʌtʃɔ:m; ɪt mʌst bi: veri di:p ʌndə ðə graʊnd."

Marshall told him that some lines of the Underground
mɑ:ʃəl təʊld hɪm ðæt sʌm laɪnz əv ði ʌndəgraʊnd

railways are only just under the ground, but that he
reɪlweɪz ɑ:r ɔʊnli dʒʌst ʌndə ðə graʊnd, bʌt ðæt hi:

behind = at the
back of

was right in saying that this line was very far down,
wəz raɪt ɪn seɪɪŋ ðæt ðɪs laɪn wəz veri faː daʊn,

and he added that it was the deepest in London. The
ænd hiː ædɪd ðæt ɪt wəz ðə diːpest ɪn lʌndən. ðə

train came into the station, and the doors opened. There
treɪn keɪm ɪntə ðə steɪʃən, ænd ðə dɔːz ɒpənd. ðeə

were so many people just behind the two friends that
wəː sɒu meni piːpl dʒʌst bɪ'hænd ðə tuː frendz ðæt

it was hardly necessary for them to do anything to
ɪt wəz haːdli nesɪsəri fɔː ðəm tə duː enɪθɪŋ tə

get into the carriage; they were pushed into it by the
get ɪntə ðə kærɪdʒ; ðeɪ wəː puʃt ɪntu ɪt baɪ ðə

people behind them; but many of those who were
piːpl bɪ'hænd ðəm; bət meni ɔv ðəʊz huː wəː

standing behind them did not get into the carriage,
stændɪŋ bɪ'hænd ðəm dɪd nɒt get ɪntə ðə kærɪdʒ,

because there was no more room, and then the doors
bɪ'kɔːz ðeə wəz nəʊ mɔː ruːm, ænd ðen ðə dɔːz

closed.

kləʊzd.

“People don’t usually push so much as they did on
“piːpl daʊnt juːʒuəli puʃ sɒu mʌtʃ əz ðeɪ dɪd ɒn

this platform,” said Storm; but Marshall only laughed,
ðɪs plʌtfɔːm,” sed stɔːm; bət mɑːʃəl ɒnli lɑːft,

saying, “Remember that you are going to a football
seɪɪŋ, “rɪ'membə ðæt juː ɑː ɡoʊɪŋ tu ə fʊtbɔːl

match. We are interested in many different games in
mætʃ. wiː ɑːr ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn meni dɪfrənt geɪmz ɪn

this country, but in the eyes of most English people
ðis kʌntri, bət in ði aɪz əv mʌst ɪŋɡlɪʃ pi:pl

football is the best game.” Storm: “I noticed that the
fʊtbɔ:l ɪz ðə best geɪm.” stɔ:m: “aɪ nɒtɪst ðət ðə

doors opened and closed of themselves. How long have
dɔ:z ɒpənd ənd kləʊzd əv ðəm'selvz. haʊ lɒŋ hæv

you had doors which open and close automatically?”
ju: hæd dɔ:z hwi:ts ɒpən ənd kləʊz ɔ:tə'mætɪkəli?”

“I can't tell you how long we have had them, but you
“aɪ kɑ:nt tel ju: haʊ lɒŋ wi: hæv hæd ðəm, bət ju:

know that during the last fifty years so many inventions
nəʊ ðət dʒuəriŋ ðə la:st fɪfti jɪəz sɒ mæni ɪn'venʃənz

have been made which save us much time and money,
hæv bi:n meɪd hwi:ts seɪv ʌs mʌtʃ taɪm ənd mʌni,

as for instance doors which work automatically. To the
əz fɜː instəns dɔ:z hwi:ts wɜ:k ɔ:tə'mætɪkəli. tə ði

Underground this invention is very useful. It is no
ʌndəgraʊnd ðis ɪn'venʃən ɪz vɛri ju:sfʊl. ɪt ɪz nəʊ

longer necessary to have two or three men to shut
lɒŋɡə nesɪsəri tə hæv tu: ə ˈpri: mən tə ʃʌt

the doors of the trains, for now they are all shut by
ðə dɔ:z əv ðə treɪnz, fɜː naʊ ðeɪ ɑ:r ɔ:l ʃʌt baɪ

one man.”

wʌn mæn.”

Marshall told Storm that they were going to see the
mɑ:ʃəl təʊld stɔ:m ðət ðeɪ wə: ɡəʊɪŋ tə si: ðə

famous Arsenal football club, which is one of the most
feɪməs ɑ:sɪnl fʊtbɔ:l klʌb, hwi:ts ɪz wʌn əv ðə mʌst

shut the door =
close the door

He **shuts**, he **shut**,
he has **shut** [ʃʌts,
ʃʌt, ʃʌt].

Chapter Forty-Five (45).

by reason of its
many good players
= because it has
so many good
players

Arsenal = the
Arsenal players

He **beats**, he **beat**,
he has **beaten**
[bi:ts, bi:t, bi:tn].

He **wins**, he **won**,
he has **won** [wi:nz,
wʌn, wʌn].

seldom = very
few times

rush = run with
great speed

famous clubs in the world by reason of its many good
feiməs klʌbz in ðə wɜ:ld bai ri:zn əv its meni gud

players. Storm had once seen Arsenal at home, where
pleiəz. stɔ:m həd wʌns si:n a:sɪnl at haʊm, hʊwə

they had beaten his own country by 4—1.

ðei həd bi:tn his oun kʌntri bai fɔ: tə wʌn.

Marshall: "That is not strange, because they have
mɑ:fəl: "ðæt iz nɒt streɪndʒ, bi'kʌz ðei həv

nearly always won when playing on the Continent.
niəli ɔ:lweɪz wʌn hwen pleɪɪŋ ɒn ðə kɒntɪnənt.

It is very seldom that a foreign club is able to beat
it iz veri seldəm ðæt ə fɔ:ɪn klʌb iz eɪbl tə bi:t

them. I expect that they will win this afternoon, too,
ðəm. ai iks'pekt ðæt ðei wil win ðis a:ftə'nu:n, tu:,

as they are playing so well this year."

əz ðei a: pleɪɪŋ sou wel ðis jɪə."

A few minutes later the train stopped, and the people
ə fju: minits leɪtə ðə treɪn stɒpt, and ðə pi:pl

rushed out of the train to get up to the street as quickly
rʌft aʊt əv ðə treɪn tə get ʌp tə ðə stri:t əz kwɪkli

as possible. Storm had never seen people rush about
əz pɒsəbl. stɔ:m həd nevə si:n pi:pl rʌʃ ə'baʊt

so much as they do in London, especially in the City
sou mʌtʃ əz ðei du: in lʌndən, ɪs'peʃəli in ðə sɪti

and when going to games of some kind. While they
and hwen ɡəʊɪŋ tə ɡeɪmz əv sʌm kaɪnd. hwail ðei

were waiting for the game to start, Marshall told Storm
wə: weɪtɪŋ fə ðə ɡeɪm tə sta:t, mɑ:fəl təʊld stɔ:m

something about the English football clubs: "In the
sʌmpɪŋ ə'baʊt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ fʊtbɔ:l klʌbz: "in ðə

best known football clubs in England the players are
best naʊn fʊtbɔ:l klʌbz in ɪŋɡlənd ðə pleɪəz a:

professionals, which means that football is their work,
prə'fesənəlz, hwɪtʃ mi:nz ðæt fʊtbɔ:l ɪz ðeə wə:k,

not only a game that gives them pleasure. As it is
nɒt ɒnli ə geɪm ðæt gɪvz ðəm pleʒə. əz ɪt ɪz

necessary for a professional football player to be able
nesəsəri fə ə prə'fesənəl fʊtbɔ:l pleɪə tə bi: eɪbl

to run very fast, he must not only have good legs, but
tə rʌn veri fɑ:st, hi: mʌst nɒt ɒnli hæv gud legz, bʌt

also very good lungs. It is also very important to have
ɔ:lsoʊ veri gud lʌŋz. ɪt ɪz ɔ:lsoʊ veri ɪm'pɔ:tənt tə hæv

a strong heart. Without especially good lungs and a
ə strɒŋ ha:t. wɪð'aʊt ɪs'peʃəli gud lʌŋz ənd ə

strong heart, a man will not be able to last very long
strɒŋ ha:t, ə mæn wɪl nɒt bi: eɪbl tə ˈlɑ:st veri lɒŋ

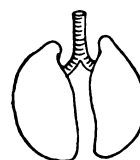
as a professional. These are two of the most important
əz ə prə'fesənəl. ði:z a: tu: əv ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt

things required of a professional, but, besides, he has
þɪŋz rɪ'kwaɪəd əv ə prə'fesənəl, bʌt, bɪ'saɪdz, hi: hæz

to be in very good health, for if he has not got that,
tə bi: ɪn veri gud helθ, fə ɪf hi: hæz nɒt ɡɒt ðæt,

he cannot play football. A professional must, therefore,
hi: kənɒt pleɪ fʊtbɔ:l. ə prə'fesənəl mʌst, ðəfɔ:,

give much attention to his health. These players are
ɡɪv mʌtʃ ə'tenʃən tə hɪz helθ. ði:z pleɪəz a:



lungs



heart

to last = to
continue

to be in good
health = not to
be ill

give attention to
= attend to

nearly always thinking of their health, giving it even
niəli ɔ:lweɪs θɪŋkɪŋ əv ðə helθ, gɪvɪŋ ɪt ɪ:vən

more attention than they give to their practice in playing
mɔːr ə'tenʃən ðən ðeɪ gɪv tə ðə præk'tɪs ɪn pleɪɪŋ

football or their exercise in running, jumping, kicking,
fʊtbɔːl ɔː ðeər ɛksəsaɪz ɪn rʌnɪŋ, dʒʌmpɪŋ, kɪkɪŋ,

etc. Many of them smoke and drink very little. Just
ɪt'setɹə. meni əv ðəm smouk ənd drɪŋk vɛrɪ lɪtl. dʒʌst

as the ladies at Hollywood are proud of their legs, so,
əz ðə leɪdɪz ət hɒliwʊd ɑː praʊd əv ðə legz, sɒ,

too, are professionals. The muscles of their legs are
tuː, ɑː prə'fɛʃənəlz. ðə mʌslz əv ðə legz ɑː

quite hard. They take exercise in running, kicking,
kwaɪt haːd. ðeɪ teɪk ɛksəsaɪz ɪn rʌnɪŋ, kɪkɪŋ,

and jumping every day, and this makes the muscles
ənd dʒʌmpɪŋ ɛvri deɪ, ənd ðɪs meɪks ðə mʌslz

of their legs hard.”

əv ðə legz haːd.”



Storm and Marshall had been waiting for the game to
stɔːm ənd mɑːʃəl həd biːn weɪtɪŋ fə ðə geɪm tə

start, and now the whistle was blown. Storm noticed
stɑːt, ənd naʊ ðə hɪwɪsl wəz blɒn. stɔːm nəʊtɪst

that the grass was not particularly good, and in some
ðæt ðə grɑːs wəz nɒt pə'tɪkjʊləli gud, ənd ɪn sʌm

places he was even able to see the earth itself under
pleɪsɪz hiː wəz ɪ:vən eɪbl tə siː ðɪ əːp ɪt'self ʌndə

the grass. “Where I play football at home, you can
ðə grɑːs. “hweər aɪ pleɪ fʊtbɔːl ət haʊm, juː kən

see nothing but grass," he told Marshall. "You would
si: nʌʃɪŋ bət grɑ:s." *hi: tould mɑ:fəl.* "ju: wəd

not find any places where the earth might be seen."
nɒt faɪnd eni pleɪsɪz hweə ði ə:p məɪt bi: si:n."

Storm and Marshall soon saw that the Arsenal players
stɔ:m ənd mɑ:fəl su:n sɔ: ðət ði ɑ:sɪnl pleɪəz

were much stronger than the players of the other club.
wə: mʌʃ strɔŋgə ðən ðə pleɪəz əv ði ʌðə klʌb.

Every time the ball was kicked over the white line at
evri taɪm ðə bɔ:l wəz kɪkt oʊvə ðə hwaɪt laɪn ət

the side by one club, the whistle was blown, and the
ðə saɪd baɪ wʌn klʌb, ðə hwaɪsl wəz blɔ:n, ənd ðə

play stopped, until the other club had taken the ball
pleɪ stɒpt, ʌn'tɪl ði ʌðə klʌb həd teɪkn ðə bɔ:l

and thrown it in again. Storm had very seldom seen
ənd þrəʊn ɪt ɪn ə'geɪn. stɔ:m həd veri seldəm si:n

the players in a match throw the ball in so many times.
ðə pleɪəz ɪn ə mætʃ þrəʊ ðə bɔ:l ɪn sɔu meni taɪmz.

The Arsenal players were playing against the wind,
ði ɑ:sɪnl pleɪəz wə: pleɪɪŋ ə'geɪnst ðə wɪnd,

but yet the first half of the match finished 2—1 in
bət jət ðə fə:st hɑ:f əv ðə mætʃ fɪnɪʃt tu: wʌn ɪn

favour of Arsenal. In the second half of the game they
feɪvər əv ɑ:sɪnl. ɪn ðə sekənd hɑ:f əv ðə geɪm ðeɪ

had the advantage of the wind, and with the wind behind
həd ði əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ əv ðə wɪnd, ənd wɪð ðə wɪnd bɪ'hænd

them they finished the match 5—1 in their favour.
ðəm ðeɪ fɪnɪʃt ðə mætʃ faɪv wʌn ɪn ðeə feɪvər.

He **throws**, he
threw, he has
thrown [þrəʊz,
 þru:, þrəʊn].

favour (here) =
 advantage

sport = swimming,
riding, hunting,
fishing, etc.



they've = they
have

to their credit =
in their favour

A large number of men were present either to take
ə la:dʒ nʌmbə əv men wə: prɛznt aɪðə tə teɪk

photographs or to write reports of the match for the
fəʊtəgrə:fz ɔ: tə raɪt rɪ'pɔ:ts əv ðə mætʃ fə ðə

newspapers, which always bring long reports of all that
nju:spɛɪpəz, hwi:tʃ ɔ:lweɪz brɪŋ lɔŋ rɪ'pɔ:ts əv ɔ:l ðət

has taken place in the world of sport.

həz teɪkən pleɪs ɪn ðə wɜ:ld əv spɔ:t.

There had been about 50,000 people at the match,

ðeə həd bi:n ə'baʊt fɪfti haʊzənd pi:pl at ðə mætʃ.

and when the two friends left the place, it was almost

ænd hwen ðə tu: frendz left ðə pleɪs, ɪt wəz ə:lmoʊst

impossible to take more than one short step at a time.

ɪm'pɔsəbl tə teɪk mɔ: ðən wʌn ʃɔ:t step at ə taɪm.

"It is rather tiring to have to take such small ladies'

"ɪt ɪz rə:ðə taɪərɪŋ tə hæv tə teɪk sʌtʃ smɔ:l leɪdɪz

steps," said Marshall, laughing. Storm: "How many

steps," sed mɑ:ʃəl, lɑ:fɪŋ. stɔ:m: "haʊ meni

matches have Arsenal played this season?" Marshall:

mætʃɪz hæv ə:sɪnl pleɪd ðɪs si:zn?" mɑ:ʃəl:

"Counting the one to-day, they've played six times, but

"kaʊntɪŋ ðə wʌn tə'deɪ, ðeɪv pleɪd sɪks taɪmz, bʌt

once they didn't win, so that there are five matches

wʌnz ðeɪ dɪdnt wɪn, sɔʊ ðət ðeə faɪv mætʃɪz

to their credit. I remember that some years ago they

tə ðeə kredɪt. aɪ rɪ'membə ðət sʌm jɪəz ə'gəʊ ðeɪ

played eighteen matches on the Continent and came

pleɪd 'eɪti:n mætʃɪz ɔn ðə kɒntɪnənt ænd keɪm

back with all eighteen to their credit."

bæk wið ɔ:l 'ei'ti:n tə ðəə kredit."

They continued to discuss football, and during the

ðei kən'tinju:d tə dis'kʌs fʊtbɔ:l, ənd dʒuəriŋ ðə

discussion Storm asked how long football had been

dis'kʌʃən stɔ:m ɑ:skt hau lɔŋ fʊtbɔ:l həd bi:n

played in England. "It has been played in some form

pleid in iŋglənd. "it hæz bi:n pleid in sam fɔ:m

or other for hundreds of years, but it has only been

ɔ:r əðə fə haɪndrədz əv jɪəz, bət it hæz ounli bi:n

played in its present form for about a hundred years."

pleid in its preznt fɔ:m fər ə'baʊt ə haɪndrəd jɪəz."

When they reached the Underground station, they had

hævn ðei ri:tʃt ði ʌndəgraʊnd steɪʃən, ðei həd

not yet finished their discussion of football. Marshall

nɒt jət fiɪnɪʃt ðəə dis'kʌʃən əv fʊtbɔ:l. mɑ:ʃəl

was telling Storm about the most important match of

wəz telɪŋ stɔ:m ə'baʊt ðə maʊst im'pɔ:tənt mætʃ əv

the year, the one between England and Scotland. "The

ðə jɪə, ðə wʌn bi'twi:n iŋglənd ənd skɒtlənd. "ðə

number of people who go to a match like that is very

nʌmbər əv pi:pl hu: ɡəʊ tu ə mætʃ laɪk ðæt ɪz veri

great. One year there were 150,000

ɡreɪt. wʌn jɪə ðəə wə: wʌn haɪndrəd ənd fiɪfti haʊzənd

present in Glasgow. It's not always the country that

preznt in ɡlɑ:sgəʊ. ɪts nɒt ɔ:lweɪz ðə kʌntri ðət

plays best that wins. The players know that the eyes

pleɪz best ðət wɪnz. ðə pleɪəz nəʊ ðət ði aɪz

of 150,000 people are upon them,
 əv wʌn hʌndrəd ænd fifti haʊzənd pi:pl a:r ə'pɒn ðəm,
 and very often it gets on their nerves; it makes them
 ænd veri ɔ:fən it gets ɒn ðeə nə:ʋz; it meɪks ðəm
 nervous. This means that it's often the players who
 nə:ʋəs. ðis mi:nz ðæt its ɔ:fən ðə pleɪəz hu:
 have the best nerves that win. Besides the match with
 hæv ðə best nə:ʋz ðæt wɪn. bi'saɪdz ðə mætʃ wɪð
 Scotland, we play many international matches every
 skɒtlənd, wi: pleɪ meni ɪntə'næʃənəl mætʃɪz evri
 year, for example against France and Holland. Such
 jɪə, fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl ə'geɪnst frɑ:ns ænd hɒlənd. sʌtʃ
 matches are called international matches, because
 mætʃɪz a: kɔ:ld ɪntə'næʃənəl mætʃɪz, bi'kɔ:z
 players of different nations take part in them. I think
 pleɪəz əv dɪfrənt neɪʃənz teɪk pɑ:t ɪn ðəm. aɪ θɪŋk
 that these international matches in the world of sport
 ðæt ði:z ɪntə'næʃənəl mætʃɪz ɪn ðə wɜ:ld əv spɔ:t
 are of great importance in helping the different nations
 a:r əv greɪt ɪm'pɔ:təns ɪn hel'pɪŋ ðə dɪfrənt neɪʃənz
 of the world to get a better understanding of each
 əv ðə wɜ:ld tə get ə betər ʌndə'stændɪŋ əv i:tʃ
 other."
 ʌðə."

EXERCISE A.

Marshall asked if it would be — to Storm to go to a football — on the following Saturday. In England they have a — of football called —, which has other — than the usual kind of football. The players — a ball which is not —. Marshall and Storm were rather late and — on a bus to be in time for their train. The platform was — under the ground. The two friends were — into the train by the people — them. One of the — which have been made during the last fifty years, is doors that open and — —. One of the most famous football — is Arsenal. It has — many matches, and it is very — that it is — by other clubs on the Continent. When the train stopped, the people — up to the street. Two of the most important things required of a — football player are to have good — and a strong —. He must also give very much — to his —. The — of his legs are very hard. When the — was blown, the play started. In some places Storm could see the — under the grass. When the ball was kicked out by one club, it was — in again by the other. The — finished in — of Arsenal, and now the club had five matches to its —. Many men had been present to write — for the newspapers, which write about all that takes place in the world of —. When the two friends left the place, they could only take one — at a time. They continued their — of football, which game has been played in England in some — or other for hundreds of years. In the — matches it is often the players with the best — that win.

WORDS:

kick
round
jump
deep
push
convenient
match
kind
rule
behind
invention
shut
automatically
club
win
won
seldom
beat
beaten
rush
professional
lung
heart
attention
health
muscle
whistle
earth
throw
threw
thrown
game

favour
credit
report
sport
step
discussion
form
international
nerve
understanding
count
last

EXERCISE B.

Write about a game you are interested in. Do you take part in any sort of game yourself, or do you go to see matches between famous clubs? Tell us about some interesting facts connected with that game, in about 200—300 words. If you do not know all the right words, express what you mean in some other words.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

In the sentences: This is a tree; I saw a man; he gave me a big apple, the word "a" is called the indefinite article [*in'definit a:tɪkl*].

The indefinite article, however, is not always "a". Sometimes it is "an". If the word which follows the indefinite article begins with a consonant [*kɒnsənənt*], that is, *b, d, ð, ʒ, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, r, s, ʃ, z, t, v, w*, the indefinite article is "a". Examples: John is a boy. We have a tall tree in the garden.

If the word which follows the indefinite article, begins, not with a consonant, but with a vowel [*vauəl*], that is, *a:, æ, ai, au, ʌ, e, ei, ə, ɜ:, i, i:, ou, ɔi, u, u:, ɛə, ɔ, ɔ:,* it is "an". Examples: I found an apple. My father is an old man. I have got an idea, but: I have got a good idea.

Notice that it is the way in which the word is pronounced that matters. Sometimes the letter "u" is pronounced as [*ju*] or [*ju:*]; then the indefinite article "a" is used in front of it: A usual thing; Oxford has a uni-

versity. Sometimes the letter “u” is pronounced [ʌ]; then the indefinite article is “an”: An uncle; an unusual thing.

If the indefinite article is used before a word which begins with an “h” which is not pronounced, as for example “hour”, it takes the form “an”, not “a”. Example: An hour has sixty minutes; but: A hospital needs money.

The word “the” we call the definite article [*definit a:tɪkl*]. In the sentences, “He took the book from the book-shelf in the sitting-room”, “the flowers in his garden are beautiful”, the word “the” is the definite article. The definite article is pronounced in two ways: [ðə] and [ði]. It is pronounced [ðə] in front of consonants, [ði] in front of vowels: The man [ðə mæn]; the old man [ði ould mæn]. Again it is the way the word is pronounced that matters: The uncle [ði ʌŋkl]; the United States [ðə ju:ˈnaitɪd steɪts]; the hour [ði aʊə]; the hospital [ðə hɒspɪtl].

Questions:

What are the two forms of the indefinite article in English? ... When do we use one, and when the other? ... What is the definite article? ... What are the two pronunciations of the definite article, and when are they used? ... Which sounds are called vowels, and which consonants? ...

A SUNDAY MORNING IN THE EAST END

Most people do not work on Sundays; they rest from
moust pi:pl du: not wə:k ɒn sʌndis; ðei rest frəm

their usual work. In England, Sunday is therefore also
ðeə ju:ʒʊəl wə:k. in ɪŋɡlənd. sʌndi ɪz ðeəfɔ:r ɔ:lsoʊ

called the day of rest. But Marshall — like many other
kɔ:ld ðə ðei əv rest. bət mɑ:ʃəl — laɪk menɪ ʌðər

Englishmen — was not the kind of man to rest very
ɪŋɡlɪsmən — wəz nɒt ðə kaɪnd əv mæn tə rest veri

on a Sunday =
on Sundays

much on a Sunday. He often went into the country
mʌtʃ ɒn ə sʌndi. hi: ɔ:fən went ɪntə ðə kʌntri

or spent the day on the river; that was his kind of rest.
ɔ: spent ðə ðei ɒn ðə rɪvə; ðæt wəz hɪz kaɪnd əv rest.

People in foreign countries think that Englishmen go
pi:pl in fɔrɪn kʌntriz þɪŋk ðæt ɪŋɡlɪsmən ɡoʊ

to church two or three times every Sunday, but as soon
tə tʃə:tʃ tu: ə ˈpri: taɪmz evri sʌndi, bət əz su:n

as they come to England, they make the discovery that,
əz ðei kʌm tu ɪŋɡlənd, ðei meɪk ðə dɪs'kʌvəri ðæt,

although many Englishmen go to church, the English
ɔ:lðəʊ menɪ ɪŋɡlɪsmən ɡoʊ tə tʃə:tʃ, ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

as a nation spend their Sundays doing many other things
əz ə neɪʃən spend ðeə sʌndɪz du:ɪŋ menɪ ʌðə þɪŋz

as well = besides

as well. Storm had been like other foreigners in this
əz wel. stɔ:m hæd bi:n laɪk ʌðə fɔrɪnəz ɪn ðɪs

matter and had made the same discovery: that Sunday
mætə ənd həd meɪd ðə seɪm dɪs'kʌvəri: ðæt sʌndi

in England is not what it is said to be.

ɪn ɪŋɡlənd ɪz nɒt hwɒt ɪt ɪz sed tə bi:.

One Sunday Marshall said to him, "I am sure that you
wʌn sʌndi mɑ:fəl sed tə him, "aɪ əm suə ðæt ju:

have wondered what people do in London on Sundays.

həv wʌndəd hwɒt pi:pl du: ɪn lʌndən ɒn sʌndɪz.

If you have time, we could spend the whole day visiting

ɪf ju: hæv taɪm, wi: kəd spend ðə haʊl dei vɪzɪtɪŋ

different interesting places. I will not tell you in

dɪfrənt ɪntrɪstɪŋ pleɪsɪz. aɪ wɪl nɒt tel ju: ɪn

advance what we're going to see, but you may be sure

əd'vɑ:ns hwɒt wɪə ɡəʊɪŋ tə si:, bʌt ju: meɪ bi: suə

that there will be many surprises." "I should like

ðæt ðeə wɪl bi: menɪ sə'praɪzɪz." "aɪ ʃəd laɪk

nothing better," Storm told Marshall.

nʌθɪŋ betə," stɔ:m təʊld mɑ:fəl.

To begin with, they went right through the City by

tə bɪ'ɡɪn wɪð, ðeɪ went raɪt θru: ðə sɪti baɪ

bus until they reached the East End. Here they

bʌs ʌn'tɪl ðeɪ ri:tʃt ðɪ i:st end. hɪə ðeɪ

got off the bus. Storm had been to that part of London

ɡɒt ɔ:f ðə bʌs. stɔ:m həd bi:n tə ðæt pɑ:t əv lʌndən

before and was very pleased to be able to recognize it.

bɪ'fɔ: ənd wəz veri pli:zd tə bi: eɪbl tə rekəɡnaɪz ɪt.

Marshall: "London is so big, not only to a foreigner,

mɑ:fəl: "lʌndən ɪz sɒu bɪɡ, nɒt ɒnli tu ə fɒrɪnə,

quite (here) =
well

seller = a man
who sells goods

but even to many Englishmen, so I can quite understand that it must be very pleasant to recognize a place where you have been before." Storm and Marshall now left the main street and entered a side street which was filled with thousands of people. Storm had seen a crowd of 50,000 at the football match, and the crowd of people in this street seemed to be nearly as big. Along both sides of the street there were sellers, who were crying at the top of their voices to make people buy their goods. Each seller seemed to be trying to cry louder than his fellow-seller. The street itself was rather narrow, and being so filled with people, it didn't leave room for traffic of any kind. It was very different from the main street which was

*bat i:vən tə meni ɪŋɡlɪʃmən, sɔʊ əi kən kwaɪt ʌndə-
'stænd ðæt ɪt mʌst bi: veri pleznt tə rekəɡnaɪz ə pleɪs
hweə ju: həv bi:n bi'fɔ:." stɔ:m and mɑ:fəl
nəʊ left ðə meɪn stri:t and ɛntəd ə saɪd stri:t hwɪtʃ
wəz fɪld wɪð ˈhaʊzəndz əv pi:pl. stɔ:m həd si:n
ə kraʊd əv fɪfti ˈhaʊzənd ət ðə fʊtbɔ:l mætʃ, and ðə
kraʊd əv pi:pl ɪn ðɪs stri:t si:md tə bi: ni:əli əz
bɪɡ. ɔlŋ ˌbəʊθ saɪdz əv ðə stri:t ðeə wə: seləz,
hu: wə: kraɪɪŋ ət ðə tɒp əv ðeə vɔɪsɪz tə meɪk
pi:pl baɪ ðeə ɡʊdz. i:ts selə si:md tə bi:
traɪɪŋ tə kraɪ laʊdə ðən hɪz feləʊsələ. ðə stri:t
ɪt'self wəz rɑ:ðə nəraʊ, and bi:ɪŋ sɔʊ fɪld wɪð
pi:pl, ɪt dɪdn't li:v ru:m fə trəfɪk əv ɛni kaɪnd.
ɪt wəz veri dɪfrənt frəm ðə meɪn stri:t hwɪtʃ wəz*

very wide, with room enough for the great bus traffic
veri waid, wið ru:m i'nʌf fə ðə greit bʌs træfik

to East London. Most of the side streets in this part
tu i:st lʌndən. mʌst əv ðə saɪd stri:tɪz ɪn ðɪs pɑ:t

of the town, however, were not very wide.

əv ðə taʊn, haʊ'evə, wə: nɒt veri waid.

Marshall: "A place of this kind, where people do their

mɑ:fəl: "ə pleɪs əv ðɪs kaɪnd, hʌwə pi:pl du: ðeə

buying not only in the shops, but in the street itself,

baɪɪŋ nɒt ɒnli ɪn ðə ʃɒps, bʌt ɪn ðə stri:t ɪt'self,

we call a street market. All over the country we have

wɪ: kɔ:l ə stri:t mɑ:kɪt. ɔ:l ɒvə ðə kʌntri wɪ: hæv

street markets like this."

stri:t mɑ:kɪts laɪk ðɪs."

Many of the sellers had baskets on their arms, others

meni əv ðə seləz həd bɑ:skɪts ɒn ðeər a:mz, ʌðəz

were holding up their goods in both hands, so that

wə: hoʊldɪŋ ʌp ðeə gʊdz ɪn bəʊθ hændz, sɒ ðæt

everybody might see what they had. If the goods were

evrɪbɒdi maɪt si: hʌwɪt ðeɪ həd. ɪf ðə gʊdz wə:

not held up in this way, the sellers would not do so

nɒt held ʌp ɪn ðɪs weɪ, ðə seləz wʊd nɒt du: sɒ

much business. Storm and Marshall looked into many

mʌʃ bɪznɪs. stɔ:m ənd mɑ:fəl lʊkt ɪntə meni

of the baskets, sometimes asking the prices of the goods.

əv ðə bɑ:skɪts, sʌmtaɪnz ɑ:skɪŋ ðə praɪsɪz əv ðə gʊdz.

Storm heard that the prices were very low, but Mar-

stɔ:m hɜ:d ðæt ðə praɪsɪz wə: veri laʊ, bʌt mɑ:-

wide = broad



market



basket

to hold up = to lift

He **holds**, he **held**,
 he has **held** [hoʊldz,
 held, held].

Chapter Forty-Six (46).

quality = value

shall, on seeing his surprise, told him that the quality
fəl, ɔn si:ɪŋ hɪz sə'praɪz, təʊld hɪm, ðət ðə kwoʊlɪti
 of the goods was just as low. "You can't expect to get
əv ðə guɪdz wəz dʒʌst əz laʊ. "ju: kɑ:nt ɪks'pekt tə get
 goods of a high quality at such low prices," he added.
guɪdz əv ə haɪ kwoʊlɪti ət sʌtʃ laʊ praɪsɪz," hɪ: ədɪd.

When passing a woman with a basket of apples, they
hwen pa:sɪŋ ə wʊmən wɪð ə bɑ:skɪt əv æplz, ðeɪ
 noticed that she was rubbing the apples hard to make
nəʊtɪst ðət ʃi: wəz rʌbɪŋ ðɪ æplz hɑ:d tə meɪk
 them shine. They would have quite liked some apples,
ðəm ʃaɪn. ðeɪ wʊd həv kwaɪt laɪkt səm æplz,

but after seeing the apples rubbed on her dirty dress,
bət a:ftə si:ɪŋ ðɪ æplz rʌbd ɔn hɜ: dɜ:ti dres,

they passed on without buying any. All the articles
ðeɪ pa:st ɔn wɪð'aʊt baɪɪŋ enɪ. ɔ:l ðɪ a:tɪklz

poor = bad

they saw were cheap, but their quality was so poor
ðeɪ sɔ: wə: tʃi:p, bət ðeə kwoʊlɪti wəz sʊə puə

that they were not worth the money. Marshall said
ðət ðeɪ wə: nɒt wə:p ðə mʌni. mɑ:fəl sed

that although the prices were low, he had seldom
ðət ɔ:l'ðəʊ ðə praɪsɪz wə: laʊ, hɪ: həd səldəm

found anything worth buying when he went to street
faʊnd enɪθɪŋ wə:p baɪɪŋ hwen hɪ: went tə stri:t

markets.

mɑ:kɪts.

increase = get
bigger

As they walked along, Storm's surprise increased with
əz ðeɪ wɔ:kt ə'lɔŋ, stɔ:mz sə'praɪz ɪn'kri:st wɪð

each step they took. At last he turned to Marshall,
i:tʃ stɛp ðei tuk. æt la:st hi: tænd tə mɑ:fəl,

and said, "Now I am beginning to discover that there
ænd sed, "nau ai əm bi'giniŋ tə dis'kʌvə ðæt ðɛə

are more sides to the English nation than I had thought;
mɔ: saɪdz tə ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ neɪʃən ðæn ai həd þɔ:t;

but I have also discovered that it is necessary to come
bət ai həv ɔ:lsoʊ dis'kʌvəd ðæt it ɪz nesɪsəri tə kʌm

discover = find
out

to England in order to find out about them. I am sure
tu ɪŋɡlənd ɪn ɔ:də tə faɪnd aʊt ə'baʊt ðəm. ai əm suə

that when I return to my own country and tell people
ðæt hwen ai ri'tɜ:n tə maɪ oun kʌntri ænd tel pi:pl

the facts about the English, most of them will not
ðə fækts ə'baʊt ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ, moʊst əv ðəm wil nɒt

believe me. If anybody had told me in advance that
bi'li:v mi:. ɪf enɪbɔ:di həd təʊld mi: ɪn əd'vɑ:ns ðæt

anybody = any
one

it was possible to buy goods in the streets of London
it wəz pɔsəbl tə baɪ gu:dz ɪn ðə stri:tɪz əv lʌndən

on a Sunday morning, I should not have believed it
ɔn ə sʌndi mɔ:nɪŋ, ai ʃəd nɒt həv bi'li:vð it

myself." Marshall: "Well, I told you before we started
maɪ'self." mɑ:fəl: "wel, ai təʊld ju: bi'fɔ: wi: stɑ:tɪd

that you must prepare yourself for many surprises."
ðæt ju: məst pri'peə jɔ:'self fə meni sə'praɪzɪz."

Storm: "And I thought I had prepared myself for
stɔ:m: "ænd ai þɔ:t ai həd pri'peəd maɪ'self fə

everything. But now I see that there is a surprise
evriθɪŋ. bət nau ai si: ðæt ðəz ə sə'praɪz

of course = it is understood

every minute or two for which I have not been prepared.” Marshall: “Of course I might have told you ‘head.” ma:ʃəl: “əv kɔ:s ai maɪt hæv təʊld ju:

all about our trip before we went out, but I thought ɔ:l ə'baʊt əʊə trɪp bɪ'fɔ: wi: wɛnt aʊt, bʌt ai θɔ:t

beforehand = in advance

it would be still better to show you things without it wəd bi: stɪl betə tə ʃəʊ ju: ʒɪŋz wɪð'aʊt

telling you about them beforehand.” Storm: “You telɪŋ ju: ə'baʊt ðəm bɪ'fɔ:hænd.” stɔ:m: “ju:

are quite right! Of course it has been much more fun a: kwaɪt raɪt! əv kɔ:s ɪt hæz bi:n mʌtʃ mɔ: fʌn

for me in this way.” fə mi: ɪn ðɪs weɪ.”

surround = be on all sides of

Now and then they saw men standing on boxes, nau ənd ðen ðeɪ sɔ: mɛn stændɪŋ ɔn bɒksɪz,

speaking, surrounded by people who were listening to spi:kɪŋ, sə'raʊndɪd baɪ pi:pl hu: wə: lɪsnɪŋ tə

them. Some of these men said such funny things that ðəm. sʌm əv ði:z mɛn sed sʌtʃ fʌni ʒɪŋz ðæt

everybody laughed. Many people seemed to have come evrɪbɔdi læ:ft. meni pi:pl si:md tə hæv kʌm

to the street market, not in order to buy anything, but tə ðə stri:t mɑ:kɪt, nɒt ɪn ɔ:də tə baɪ enɪθɪŋ, bʌt

only in order to enjoy themselves. When the sellers ɒnli ɪn ɔ:də tu ɪn'dʒɔɪ ðəm'selvz. hwen ðə seləz

saw a possible customer, four or five of them would at sɔ: ə pɒsəbl kʌstəmə, fɔ:r ə faɪv əv ðəm wəd ət

once surround him so that it was difficult for him to
wʌns sə'raʊnd him sou ðæt it wəz difɪkəlt fə him tə
 get away.
get ə'wei.

Storm suddenly saw a strange sight, one of the strangest
stɔ:m sʌdnli sɔ: ə streɪndʒ saɪt, wʌn əv ðə streɪndʒɪst
 sights he had ever seen, a monkey sitting on a man's
saɪts hi: həd evə si:n, ə mʌŋki sɪtɪŋ ɒn ə mæn
 shoulder with the man's hat in its hand. The man was
ʃouldə wɪð ðə mænʒ hæʔ ɪn ɪts hænd. ðə mæn wəz
 not able to see, for he was blind. On his coat was a
nɒt eɪbl tə si:, fə hi: wəz blaɪnd. ɒn hɪz kəʊt wəz ə
 piece of paper with the word 'blind', so that people
pi:s əv peɪpə wɪð ðə wɜ:d 'blaɪnd', sou ðæt pi:pl
 might know that he could not see. The monkey was
maɪt nəʊ ðæt hi: kʊd nɒt si:. ðə mʌŋki wəz
 holding out the blind man's hat, and many people put
haʊldɪŋ aʊt ðə blaɪnd mænʒ hæʔ, ənd menɪ pi:pl put..
 money into it. It seemed to like its work, and some-
meni ɪntu ɪt. ɪt si:md tə laɪk ɪts wɜ:k, ənd sʌm-
 times it jumped from one shoulder of the man to the
taɪmz ɪt dʒʌmpt frəm wʌn ʃouldə əv ðə mæn tə ði
 other.
ʌðə.

A little later, they discovered a man selling knives
ə lɪtl leɪtə, ðeɪ dɪs'kʌvəd ə mæn selɪŋ naɪvz
 which were so cheap that Storm wanted to buy one;
hwi:ʃ wə: sou tʃi:p ðæt stɔ:m wəntɪd tə baɪ wʌn;



but Marshall told him that if he wanted a sharp knife,
bət ma:fəl təuld him ðət if hi: wɒntɪd ə ʃa:p naɪf.

that is, a knife that is really able to cut, he would
ðæt ɪz, ə naɪf ðət ɪz riəli eɪbl tə, kʌt, hi: wəd

have to go somewhere else for it, as it was impossible
hæv tə ɡəʊ sʌmhwɛər els fər ɪt, əz ɪt wəz ɪm'pɒsəbl

to get a sharp knife very cheap.

tə ɡet ə ʃa:p naɪf veri tʃi:p.

Marshall suddenly noticed that Storm was not there,

ma:fəl sʌdnli nəʊtɪst ðət stɔ:m wəz nɒt ðeə,

and he could not see him anywhere. Five minutes

ænd hi: kʊd nɒt si: him enɪhwɛə. faɪv mɪnɪts

passed, and then Storm appeared again, returning round

pɑ:st, ænd ðen stɔ:m ə'piəd ə'ɡeɪn, rɪ'tə:nɪŋ raʊnd

the corner of a side street with a small parcel in his

ðə kɔ:nər əv ə saɪd stri:t wɪð ə smɔ:l pɑ:sl ɪn hɪz

hand. "It is always hard for me to find my way about

hænd. "ɪt ɪz ə:lweɪz hɑ:d fə mi: tə faɪnd maɪ wei ə'baʊt

the streets of London, so when I saw a man selling maps

ðə stri:ts əv lʌndən, səʊ hwɛn aɪ sɔ: ə mæn selɪŋ mæps

of London which were both large and cheap, I bought

əv lʌndən hwɪtʃ wə: bəʊp la:dʒ ænd tʃi:p, aɪ bɔ:t

one," Storm explained. "I was really very glad," said

wʌn," stɔ:m ɪks'pleɪnd. "aɪ wəz riəli veri ɡlæd," sed

Marshall, "to see you appear once more. Although the

ma:fəl, "tə si: ju: ə'piə wʌnz mʊ:. ə'lðəʊ ðə

parcel you have in your hand is very small, there seems

pɑ:sl ju: hæv ɪn jɔ: hænd ɪz veri smɔ:l, ðeə si:mz



parcel

hard = difficult



map

to be more in it than a map of London." "Perhaps,"
tə bi: mɔ:r in it ðən ə mæp əv lʌndən. "pə'hæps,"

said Storm, "I bought one or two other things at the
sed stɔ:m, "ai bɔ:t wʌn ə tu: ʌðə þɪŋz ət ðə

same time; who knows?" "I won't ask you to tell me
seɪm taɪm; hu: nəʊz?" "ai wəʊnt ɑ:sk ju: tə tel mi:

what you have bought, of course. I only hope that you'll
hwɒt ju: hæv bɔ:t, əv kɔ:s. ai ɔnli hoʊp ðət ju:l

not be sorry later on and regret that you bought it."
nɒt bi: sɔ:ri leɪtə ɔn ənd rɪ'ɡret ðət ju: bɔ:t it."

"What I have bought," Storm replied, "is both of good
"hwɒt ai hæv bɔ:t," stɔ:m rɪ'plaɪd, "ɪz boʊp əv gud

quality and cheap, so that I'm quite sure that I shan't
kweɪlɪti ənd tʃi:p, sʊ ðət aɪm kweɪt suə ðət ai ʃɑ:nt

regret it. Remember, Marshall," he said, laughing,
rɪ'ɡret it. rɪ'membə, mɑ:ʃəl," hi: sed, lɑ:fiŋ,

"that the money came out of my pocket and not yours."
"ðət ðə mʌni keɪm aʊt əv maɪ pɒkɪt ənd nɒt jɔ:z."

"It is almost too hot to-day," said Marshall, "to enter
"ɪt ɪz ɔ:lmoʊst tu: hɒt tə'deɪ," sed mɑ:ʃəl, "tu ɛntə

into a discussion. I think it must be 90° (degrees)
ɪntu ə dɪs'kʌʃən. ai þɪŋk ɪt mʌst bi: naɪntɪ dɪ'ɡri:z

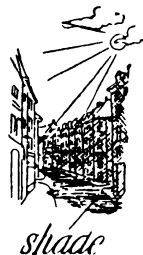
in the shade, so it is no wonder if we feel a little hot
ɪn ðə ʃeɪd, sʊ ɪt ɪz nəʊ wʌndə ɪf wi: fi:l ə lɪtl hɒt

here in the sun. I propose that we cross the street to
hɪə ɪn ðə sʌn. ai prə'pəʊz ðət wi: krɒs ðə stri:t tə

get into the shade on the other side of the street."
get ɪntə ðə ʃeɪd ɔn ðɪ ʌðə saɪd əv ðə stri:t."

shan't = shall
not

ninety degrees
Fahrenheit
[færənhaɪt] =
32.2° (thirty-two
point two degrees)
Celsius [sɛl/si:z]



WORDS:

market
wide
crowd
rest (verb)
rest
recognize
seller
fellow-seller
cry
basket
hold
held
worth
quality
rub
increase
discovery
discover
prepare
anybody
beforehand
believe
surround
sight
shoulder
blind
sharp
appear
parcel
map

EXERCISE A.

Storm made the — that the English do not — very much on Sundays, even if Sunday is called the day of —. When Marshall and Storm came to the East End, Storm was able to — the place. The street — are situated in streets that are not so — as the main streets. There were — of people listening to the — who were — at the top of their voices. Some of the sellers had — on their arms, while others were — up the goods in their hands. The goods are not always — the money, because the — is poor.

Marshall and Storm saw a woman — apples on her dirty dress. Storm's surprise — while they were walking along, because he — so many new things which he had not been — for. He said that if — had told him — that it was possible to buy goods in the streets of London on a Sunday morning, he would not have — it. Later they saw a man speaking from a box, — by people. Another — they saw was a monkey sitting on the — of a — man. Marshall was telling Storm that he could not buy — knives for next to nothing, but Storm was not there. He — five minutes later with a — in his hand. In the parcel was a — and other things, and Marshall said, "I hope you will not — that you bought them." The weather was very hot, 90 — in the —. Marshall said that of — he might have told Storm all about their trip beforehand.

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

What do you do before you go to your work? ... What do you have for breakfast? ... Where do you work, in town or in the country? ... What does your manager say if you are late in the morning? ... How many hours do you work a day? ... For how long have you had your present work? ... Are you interested in it, or would you like to try some other work? ... Are you more busy in the morning or in the afternoon? ... How do you like your manager? ...

regret
degree
shade
of course
as well
hard
plus
poor

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Some words tell us how, when, or where something is done. Examples: slowly, easily, automatically, kindly, now, then, already, here, there. These words are called adverbs [*advə:bz*].

The adverbs that tell us *how* something is done are usually made by adding -ly to an adjective. Examples: He walked **quickly** to the door (quick + ly). They lived **happily** for many years (happy + ly). She was sitting **comfortably** in a big chair (comfortable + ly). Notice that 'y' at the end of an adjective is changed into 'i' before -ly is added, and that -le at the end of an adjective becomes -ly. — Adverbs that tell how, that is, in what way or manner [*mə'nə*] something is done, are called adverbs of manner.

+ = plus [*p/ʌs*]

The adverbs that tell us *when* or *how often* something takes place, are called adverbs of time. Now, then,

already, soon, yesterday, to-day, to-morrow, are adverbs that tell us when something is done. Often, never, usually, always, sometimes, are some adverbs that say how often something takes place. Examples: It **often** rains in England. He is **never** at home.

Adverbs that tell us *where* something takes place are, for instance, somewhere, there, here, far, away. They are usually called adverbs of place.

The adverbs we have spoken of, so far, are adverbs that are used with verbs. You will also find some that are used with adjectives or with other adverbs to tell us *how much*. Here are some examples of adverbs used with adjectives: I am not **quite** ready. You are **very** naughty children. That is good **enough** for me. The coat is **too** big. This is not **so** difficult. And here are some examples of adverbs used with other adverbs: He spoke **quite** openly of what he had done. They walked **very** slowly. You don't come here often **enough**. It cannot be done **too** well ('well' is an adverb). We are not working **so** hard now ('hard' is an adverb here). These adverbs are called adverbs of degree.

Many adverbs may be used for making comparisons. When used in that way, 'more' and 'most' are put before the adverbs, for instance: He talked **more** quietly than ever before. Who ran **most** quickly?

Questions:

What different sorts of adverbs have you learned? ...
Can you find examples of the different sorts of adverbs in chapter 46? ...

A BUSY SUNDAY

Marshall explained to Storm that the so-called East
ma:fəl iks'pleind tə stɔ:m ðət ðə soukɔ:ld i:st

End, where they were now, is part of East London.
end, hwɛə ðei wə: nau, iz pɑ:t əv i:st lʌndən.

"Most of the people in the East End are very poor,"
"moust əv ðə pi:pl in ði i:st end a: veri puə,"

he said, "and you will often find two families living
hi: sed, "ænd ju: wil ɔ:fn faɪnd tu: fæmiliz livɪŋ

together in the same flat or in a one-family house.
tə'geðər in ðə seɪm flæt ɔ:r in ə wʌnfæmili haʊs.

These people live under very bad conditions, but the
ði:z pi:pl liv ʌndə veri bæd kən'dɪʃənz, bət ðə

poor in the large cities all over the world live under
puə in ðə la:dʒ sitiz ɔ:l ɒvə ðə wɜ:ld liv ʌndə

conditions just as bad, I think."
kən'dɪʃənz dʒʌst əz bæd, aɪ þɪŋk."

To Storm's question if there were any stores in this
tə stɔ:mz kwestʃən ɪf ðeə wə:r eni stɔ:z in ðɪs

part of the town, Marshall answered, "You will not
pɑ:t əv ðə taʊn, ma:fəl a:nsəd, "ju: wil nɒt

find many stores in the East End; most of the shops
faɪnd meni stɔ:z in ði i:st end; moust əv ðə ʃɒps

here are rather small. You will notice that fruit is
hɪə a: rɑ:ðə smɔ:l. ju: wil nɒtɪs ðət fru:t ɪz

store = a very
 large shop, selling
 all kinds of goods



store



cheap in the East End. I must remember to buy some
tʃi:p in ði i:st end. ai mʌst ri'membə tə baɪ səm
 fruit for my mother, because the price here is much
fru:t fə mai mʌðə. bi'kəz ðə praɪs hiə ɪz mʌtʃ
 lower than in our suburb."
ləʊə ðən in ʌə sʌbə:b."

After having bought the fruit, Marshall said that there
a:ftə hæviŋ bɔ:t ðə fru:t, mɑ:fəl sed ðət ðəə
 were two or three streets that he wished to show Storm.
wə: tu: ə pri: stri:ts ðət hi: wɪʃt tə ʃəʊ stɔ:m.

"They sell nothing but cats, dogs, birds, and other
"ðei sel nəθɪŋ bʌt kæts, dɔgz, bɜ:dz, ənd ʌðə
 domestic animals in those streets. We English love
də'mestɪk ænɪməlz in ðəʊz stri:ts. wi: ɪŋɡlɪʃ lʌv
 domestic animals very much, and every Sunday morning
də'mestɪk ænɪməlz vɛrɪ mʌtʃ, ənd evri sʌndi mɔ:nɪŋ
 large numbers of cats, dogs, and birds are sold in the
la:dʒ nʌmbəz ɔf kæts, dɔgz, ənd bɜ:dz a: sɔld in ði
 East End."
i:st end."

Before long they reached one of the streets that Mar-
bɪ'fɔ: lɔŋ ðei ri:tʃt wʌn əv ðə stri:ts ðət mɑ:-
 shall had mentioned, and they saw that every third or
ʃəl həd menʃənd, ənd ðei sɔ: ðət evri þɜ:d ə
 fourth person had bought a dog and had it on a chain.
fɔ:θ pɜ:sn həd bɔ:t ə dɔg ənd həd ɪt ɒn ə tʃeɪn.
 Storm: "I am always sorry to see a man walking with
stɔ:m: "aɪ əm ɔ:lweɪz sɔri tə si: ə mæn wɔ:kɪŋ wɪð

on a chain = at
the end of a chain



his dog on a chain, but of course it is necessary for a
hiz dɔg ɒn ə tʃeɪn, bət əv kɔ:s it ɪz nesɪsəri fər ə
 man who has just bought a dog to have it on a chain
mæn hu: həz dʒʌst bɔ:t ə dɔg tə hæv it ɒn ə tʃeɪn
 at first every time he walks out with it, until he is
ət fə:st evri taɪm hi: wɔ:ks aʊt wɪð it, ʌn'tɪl hi: ɪz
 sure that the dog knows its new home and will not
fʊə ðæt ðə dɔg nəʊz ɪts nju: haʊm ænd wɪl nɒt
 run away. After that he may let it run loose when
rʌn ə'weɪ. a:ftə ðæt hi: meɪ let it rʌn lu:s hwen
 he takes it out." Marshall: "I quite agree with you,
hi: teɪks it aʊt." mɑ:fəl: "aɪ kwaɪt ə'gri: wɪð ju:,
 but it is not always possible. In this busy part of the
bət it ɪz nɒt ɔ:lweɪz pɒsəbl. ɪn ðɪs bɪzi pɑ:t əv ðə
 town, for example, you cannot let the dogs run loose,
taʊn, fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl, ju: kænɒt let ðə dɔgz rʌn lu:s,
 for they would very quickly run into the middle of
fə ðeɪ wəd veri kwɪkli rʌn ɪntə ðə mɪdl əv
 the street and, perhaps, get under a car or get run over,
ðə stri:t ænd, pə'hæps, get ʌndə ə kɑ: ɔ: get rʌn oʊvə,
 as we say In several of the suburbs, however, it is
əz weɪ seɪ. ɪn sevrəl əv ðə sʌbə:bz, haʊ'evə, it ɪz
 possible to let them go loose. Speaking of dogs, I don't
pɒsəbl tə let ðəm ɡoʊ lu:s. spi:kɪŋ əv dɔgz, aɪ daʊnt
 like the way some kinds of dogs have part of their tails
laɪk ðə weɪ sʌm kaɪndz əv dɔgz hæv pɑ:t əv ðeə teɪlz
 cut off just because it is thought beautiful by some of
kʌt ɔ:f dʒʌst bɪ'kɔz it ɪz þɔ:t bju:təfʊl baɪ sʌm əv



He **smells**,
he **smelt**,
he has **smelt**
[smelz, smelt,
smelt].

the so-called friends of dogs." Storm: "No, I also
ðə soukɔ:ld frendz əv dɔgz." stɔ:m: "nou, ai ɔ:lsou
prefer them with their tails."
pri'fə: ðəm wið ðəə teils."

The two friends now began walking along the street,
ðə tu: frendz nau bi'gæn wɔ:kiŋ ə'lɔŋ ðə stri:t.

and soon their noses told them what was sold there,
ænd su:n ðəə nouzɪz təʊld ðəm hwɒt wəz səʊld ðəə.

for they could smell the animals. Storm said that he
fə ðei kəd smel ði æniməlz. stɔ:m sed ðət hi:

had smelt something like it when he went with his
həd smelt sʌmθɪŋ laɪk ɪt hwɛn hi: wɛnt wið hɪz

friends to the Zoo. Seeing some very beautiful birds
frendz tə ðə zu:. si:ɪŋ səm veri bjʊ:təfʊl bɑ:dz

and cats in a shop, they went inside to have a better
ænd kæts ɪn ə ʃɒp, ðei wɛnt ɪn'saɪd tə hæv ə betə

look at them. They spent several minutes there playing
lʊk ət ðəm. ðei spɛnt severəl mɪnɪts ðəə pleɪɪŋ

with a small cat, which jumped up on Storm's shoulder
wið ə smɔ:l kæt, hwɪtʃ dʒʌmpt ʌp ɒn stɔ:mz ʃəʊldə

as soon as they entered the shop, but at last Marshall
əz su:n əz ðei ɛntəd ðə ʃɒp, bʌt ət la:st mɑ:ʃəl

said, "We must leave now! There's still a lot more on
sed, "wi: məst li:v nau! ðəz stɪl ə lɒt mɔ:r ɒn

our programme for to-day, so we had better move on.
aʊə prəʊgræm fə tə'deɪ, sɒ wi: həd betə mu:v ɒn.

My real purpose in taking you out to-day was to show
maɪ riəl pʊrəs ɪn teɪkɪŋ ju: aʊt tə'deɪ wəz tə ʃəʊ

you the many different things we do on Sundays, and
ju: ðə meni difrənt þiŋz wi: du: ɔn sʌndiz, and

as it's my purpose to get through all of our programme
əz its mai pə:pas tə get pru: ɔ:l əv auə prəʊgræm

before we return, we'll now go on to one of the shops
bɪ'fɔ: wi: rɪ'tə:n, wi:l naʊ ɡoʊ ɔn tə wʌn əv ðə ʃɔps

that sell beer and other strong drinks. A shop of this
ðət sel biə and əðə strɒŋ driŋks. ə ʃɔp əv ðis

kind is called a public house, or a pub for short, and
kaind iz kɔ:ld ə pʌblik haʊs, ɔ:r ə pʌb fə ʃɔ:t, and

in England we have so many of them that we say that
in ɪŋɡlənd wi: hæv sʌu meni əv ðəm ðət wi: sei ðət

there is a pub on every street corner."

ðəz ə pʌb ɔn evri s'tri:t kɔ:nə."

In less than a minute they reached a public house.

in les ðən ə minit ðei rɪ:tʃt ə pʌblik haʊs.

Storm was surprised to find that the shop was so full

stɔ:m wəz sə'praɪzd tə faɪnd ðət ðə ʃɔp wəz sʌu ful

of people drinking that many had to stand outside with

əv pi:pl driŋkiŋ ðət meni hæd tə stænd aʊt'saɪd wið

the glasses in their hands. Storm was all the more

ðə ɡla:sɪz in ðeə hændz. stɔ:m wəz ɔ:l ðə mɔ:

all the more =
so much more

surprised, because he had always thought that public

sə'praɪzd, bɪ'kɔz hi: hæd ɔ:lweɪz þɔ:t ðət pʌblik

houses in England were closed on Sundays.

haʊzɪz in ɪŋɡlənd wə: kləʊzd ɔn sʌndiz.

A man that had had a little too much to drink, dropped

ə mæn ðət hæd hæd ə litl tu: mʌtʃ tə driŋk, drɒpt

his glass, which was at once smashed to pieces. Another
hiz gla:s, hwitʃ wəz ət wʌns smæft tə pi:siz. ə'nʌðə
 man, who had had far too much to drink, seemed to
mæn, hu: həd həd fɑ: tu: mʌtʃ tə drɪŋk, si:md tə
 like the noise, for he at once picked up his glass and
laɪk ðə nɔɪz, fə hi: ət wʌns pɪkt ʌp hiz gla:s ənd
 smashed it, too. "I am afraid that you are getting one
smæft ɪt, tu: "aɪ əm ə'freɪd ðæt ju: a: getɪŋ wʌn
 surprise after another," Marshall said; "but you are
sə'praɪz a:ftər ə'nʌðə," mɑ:fəl sed; "bət ju: a:
 really seeing the East End on a Sunday morning."
riəli si:ɪŋ ði i:st end ɒn ə sʌndi mɔ:nɪŋ."

It was very difficult for the man to stand on his feet.
ɪt wəz veri dɪfɪkəlt fə ðə mæn tə stænd ɒn hiz fi:t.

Some of his friends tried to support him by holding his
səm əv hiz frendz traɪd tə sə'pɔ:t hɪm baɪ haʊldɪŋ hiz
 arms, but although they supported him as well as they
a:mz, bət ɔ:l'ðəu ðeɪ sə'pɔ:tɪd hɪm əz wel əz ðeɪ
 could, he suddenly fell to the ground. "If that is a
kʊd, hi: sʌdnli fel tə ðə graʊnd. "ɪf ðæt ɪz ə

typical picture of an English public house, I'm sure
tɪpɪkəl pɪktʃər əv ən ɪŋglɪʃ pʌblik haʊs, aɪm suə

that people break many glasses in this way," said
ðæt pi:pl breɪk meni gla:sɪz ɪn ðɪs weɪ," sed

Storm. "You are right," Marshall replied, "thousands
stɔ:m. "ju: a: raɪt," mɑ:fəl rɪ'plaɪd, "paʊzəndz

of glasses must get broken every year. But this is not
əv gla:sɪz mʌst get braʊkn evri jɪə. bət ðɪs ɪz nɒt

He **breaks**,
 he **broke**,
 he has **broken**
 [breɪks, braʊk,
 braʊkn].

a typical English pub; at least it is only typical of some
ə tipikəl ɪŋɡlɪʃ pʌb; ət liːst ɪt ɪz ɔʊnli tipikəl əv sʌm

pubs in the East End. But now, I think, we will leave
pʌbz ɪn ði iːst end. bʌt naʊ, aɪ θɪŋk, ˈwiː wɪl liːv

the East End, not because we've seen all that is to be
ði iːst end, nɒt biˈkɔːz wiːv siːn ɔːl ðæt ɪz tə biː

seen, but because our time is limited. I must say, Storm,
siːn, bʌt biˈkɔːz ɔʊə taɪm ɪz lɪmɪtɪd. aɪ mʌst seɪ, stɔːm,

that I find the East End one of the most interesting
ðæt aɪ faɪnd ði iːst end wʌn əv ðə maʊst ɪntrɪstɪŋ

parts of London.”
paːts əv lʌndən.”

“Yes, that may be so, but you would not like to exchange
ˈjes, ðæt meɪ biː soʊ, bʌt juː wəd nɒt laɪk tu ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ

your own suburb for this place, would you? You would
jɔːr ɔʊn sʌbəːb fə ðɪs pleɪs, wʊd juː? juː wəd

not exchange your house for a house in the East End
nɒt ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ jɔː haʊs fə ə haʊs ɪn ði iːst end

with another family living in it. But you said that our
wɪð əˈnʌðə fæmɪli ˈlɪvɪŋ ɪn ɪt. bʌt juː sed ðæt ɔʊə

time was limited as our programme was so long. What
taɪm wəz lɪmɪtɪd əz ɔʊə prəʊɡræm wəz soʊ lɔːŋ. hwɒt

are we going to do now?” Marshall replied, looking at
ɑː wiː ɡoʊɪŋ tə duː naʊ?” mɑːʃəl rɪˈplaɪd, lʊkɪŋ ət

his watch, that it was an hour or two past lunch-time,
hɪz wɒtʃ, ðæt ɪt wəz ən aʊər ə tuː pɑːst lʌnʃtaɪm,

and that before he could think of doing anything else,
ænd ðæt bɪˈfɔː hɪː kəd θɪŋk əv duːɪŋ enɪθɪŋ els.

proper = right

they must have some lunch and a little rest, and later
ðei mæst hæv səm lʌnf ənd ə litl rest, ənd leɪtə

he would take Storm to church. "Without a visit to
hi: wəd teɪk stɔ:m tə tʃə:tf. "wið'aʊt ə vɪzɪt tu

a church," he told Storm, "I can't give you a really
ə tʃə:tf," hi: təʊld stɔ:m. "aɪ kɑ:nt gɪv ju: ə riəli

typical picture of a Sunday in London. Before the first
tɪpɪkəl pɪktʃər əv ə sʌndi in lʌndən. bɪ'fɔ: ðə fə:st

world war the English were a church-going nation, and
wə:ld wɔ: ði ɪŋglɪʃ wə:r ə tʃə:tfɡoʊɪŋ neɪʃən, ənd

they still are, even if, perhaps, fewer people go to church
ðei stɪl a:, i:vən ɪf, pə'hæps, fju:ə pi:pl ɡoʊ tə tʃə:tf

now. Most of those who go to church on Sundays, go
naʊ. mɔ:st əv ðəʊz hu: ɡoʊ tə tʃə:tf ɔn sʌndɪz. ɡoʊ

because they really want to and feel that they could
bɪ'kɔ:z ðei riəli wɔnt tu ənd fi:l ðæt ðei kʊd

not do without it, but there are, of course, some who
nɔt du: wið'aʊt ɪt, bʌt ðeər a:, əv kɔ:s, sʌm hu:

only go because they think it the proper thing to do.
əʊnli ɡoʊ bɪ'kɔ:z ðei ʃɪŋk ɪt ðə prɒpə ʃɪŋ tə du:.

Their parents and grandparents went to church, and
ðeə peərənts ənd grændpeərənts wɛnt tə tʃə:tf, ənd

so they go, too."

səʊ ðei ɡoʊ, tu:."

Storm: "Yes, in my country it is almost the same. Many
stɔ:m: "jes, in maɪ kʌntri ɪt ɪz ɔ:lmo:st ðə seɪm. menɪ

people, for example, go to church only on the twenty-
pi:pl. fə ɪɡ'zɑ:mpl, ɡoʊ tə tʃə:tf əʊnli ɔn ðə twenti-

fourth or the twenty-fifth of December, because they
 'fɔ:θ ɔ: ðə twenti'fifθ əv dɪ'sembə, bi'kɔz ðei
 think it the proper thing to do, or, perhaps, because
 ɪŋk ɪt ðə prɒpə ɪŋ tə du:, ɔ:, pə'hæps, bi'kɔz
 they have always done so; -but there are, of course,
 ðei hæv ɔ:lweɪs dʌn soʊ; bət ðeə ɑ:, əv kɔ:s,
 also a great many people who go to church every Sunday
 ɔ:lsoʊ ə greɪt meni pi:pl hu: goʊ tə tʃə:tʃ evri sʌndi
 because they really want to."
 bi'kɔz ðei riəli wɒnt tu."

It took the two friends more time to get through their
 ɪt tu:k ðə tu: frendz mɔ: taɪm tə get ɹru: ðeə
 lunch than they had expected. They spent more than
 lʌŋ ðən ðei həd ɪkspektɪd. ðei spent mɔ: ðən
 two hours eating and reading the Sunday papers. "We
 tu: auəs i:tiŋ ənd ri:diŋ ðə sʌndi peɪpəz. "wi:
 are a little late now," Marshall said. "There is a service
 ɑ:r ə lɪtl leɪt naʊ," mɑ:ʃəl sed. "ðəz ə sə:vɪs
 in a church a quarter of an hour's walk from here, so
 ɪn ə tʃə:tʃ ə kwɔ:tər əv ən auəs wɔ:k frəm hiə, soʊ
 we must hurry." When they reached the church, the
 wi: məst hʌri." hwen ðei ri:tʃt ðə tʃə:tʃ, ðə
 service had already begun, and the clergyman had
 sə:vɪs həd ɔ:l'redi bi'ɡʌn, ənd ðə klə:dʒimən həd
 just appeared. Before the clergyman began to speak,
 dʒʌst ə'piəd. bi'fɔ: ðə klə:dʒimən bi'ɡʌn tə spi:k.
 however, Marshall found time to say to Storm in a very
 haʊevə, mɑ:ʃəl faʊnd taɪm tə sei tə stɔ:m ɪn ə veri



clergyman

low voice: "Listen carefully, now! You will hear many
lou vois: "lɪsn kɛəfʊli, naʊ! ju: wɪl hɪə mɛni

strange old expressions that are not in use any more,
streɪndʒ ould ɪks'presʃənz ðæt a: nɒt ɪn ju:s ɛni mɔ:,

but a clergyman usually speaks so slowly in church
bət ə klɛ:dʒɪmən ju:ʒuəli spi:ks sɔʊ sləʊli ɪn tʃɜ:tʃ

and in such a loud voice, that I have no doubt you will
ænd ɪn sʌtʃ ə laʊd vois, ðæt aɪ hæv nəʊ daʊt ju: wɪl

be able to hear and find out the meaning of most of
bɪ: eɪbl tə hɪə ænd faɪnd aʊt ðə mi:nɪŋ əv mɔ:st əv

the words and expressions. You will recognize the
ðə wɜ:dz ænd ɪks'presʃənz. ju: wɪl rekəɡnaɪz ðə

matter he is speaking about, of course, and that will
mætə hi: ɪz spi:kɪŋ ə'baʊt, əv kɔ:s, ænd ðæt wɪl

help, too." The clergyman had a strong voice, that
help, tu:." ðə klɛ:dʒɪmən həd ə strɒŋ vois, ðæt

sounded rather pleasant, and it was quite an experience
saʊndɪd rɑ:ðə pleznt, ænd ɪt wəz kwaɪt ən ɪks'piəriəns

for Storm to hear the many old English words and
fə stɔ:m tə hɪə ðə mɛni ould ɪŋɡlɪʃ wɜ:dz ænd

expressions which sounded very strange and also very
ɪks'presʃənz hwɪtʃ saʊndɪd veri streɪndʒ ænd ɔ:lsəʊ veri

beautiful to his ears, as he told Marshall after the
bju:təfʊl tə hɪz iəz, əz hi: təʊld mɑ:ʃəl a:ftə ðə

service was over.

sə:vɪs wəz oʊvə.

Shortly after seven they left the church and went to
ʃɔ:tli a:ftə sevn ðeɪ left ðə tʃɜ:tʃ ænd wɛnt tu

a restaurant for a cup of tea. "We've had a very busy
a restərɔ:ŋ fər ə kʌp əv ti:. "wi:v hæd ə veri bizi
 day," said Storm, "and I think that your programme
dei," sed stɔ:m, "ænd ai þiŋk ðæt jɔ: prougræm
 could hardly have been better." "Do you think, per-
kəd hu:dli həv bi:n betə." "du: ju: þiŋk, pə-
 haps," Marshall asked, "that our programme is finished
'hæps," mɑ:fəl a:skt, "ðæt əʊə prougræm iz finɪʃt
 already? Just as soon as we've had enough tea and
ɔ:l'redi? dʒʌst əz su:n əz wi:v hæd i'nʌf ti: ənd
 bread and butter, we will go and see a good film."
bred ənd bʌtə, wi: wil ɡoʊ ənd si: ə gud film."
 "See a good film!" said Storm in great surprise; "you
"si: ə gud film!" sed stɔ:m in greɪt sə'praɪz; "ju:
 must have forgotten that the cinemas are closed to-day."
mʌst həv fə'ɡɒtn ðæt ðə siniməz a: klouzəd tə'dei."
 "That is again the strange idea that foreigners have of
"ðæt iz ə'ɡeɪn ðə streɪndʒ aɪ'diə ðæt fɔ:ɪnəz həv əv
 England. There are in all far more than 200
ɪŋɡlənd. ðær ɪn ɔ:l fa: mɔ: ðən tu: haʊdrəd
 towns in England, in which the cinemas are open on
taʊnz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd, ɪn hweɪtʃ ðə siniməz a:r ɒpən ɒn
 Sundays."
sʌndɪz."

They went to a cinema in Leicester Square, and before
ðei went tu ə sinimə ɪn lestə skweə, ənd bɪ'fɔ:
 going in, stood for a time on one of the four sides of
ɡoʊɪŋ ɪn, stʊd fər ə taɪm ɒn wʌn əv ðə fɔ: saɪdz əv



the square, looking at the great number of very bright
ðə skwɛə. lʊkiŋ æt ðə greɪt nʌmbər əv ʔeri braɪt

lights outside most of the buildings. The lights were
laɪts 'aʊt'saɪd moʊst əv ðə bɪldɪŋz. ðə laɪts wə:

so bright that it was almost like daylight. They went
sou braɪt ðæt ɪt wəz ɔ:lmoʊst laɪk deɪlaɪt. ðeɪ wɛnt

inside the cinema, which was so comfortable that it
'ɪn'saɪd ðə sɪnɪmə. hʔwɪtʃ wəz sou kʌmfətəbl ðæt ɪt

was almost like a palace. The prices were rather high,
wəz ɔ:lmoʊst laɪk ə pælɪs. ðə praɪsɪz wə: rɑ:ðə haɪ,

but Marshall told Storm that they must pay for all the
bʌt mɑ:fəl təʊld stɔ:m ðæt ðeɪ mʌst peɪ fər ɔ:l ðə

comforts. "If you want to have all modern comforts,
kʌmfəts. "ɪf ju: wɔnt tə hæv ɔ:l mɔdən kʌmfəts,

you'll usually find that you have to pay for them in
ju:l ju:ʒʔəli faɪnd ðæt ju: hæv tə peɪ fɔ: ðəm ɪn

some way or other."

sʌm weɪ ɔ:r ʌðə."

They saw a war film, and when they left the cinema,
ðeɪ sɔ: ə wɔ: fɪlm, ənd hwen ðeɪ left ðə sɪnɪmə,

they agreed that they did not wish to see any more
ðeɪ ə'gri:d ðæt ðeɪ dɪd nɔt wɪʃ tə si: ɛni mɔ:

war films for a long time to come. It was about an
wɔ: fɪlmz fər ə lɔŋ taɪm tə kʌm. ɪt wəz ə'bʔʊt ən

Englishman who had been taken by the Germans, but
ɪŋglɪʃmən hu: həd bi:n teɪkən baɪ ðə dʒə:mənz, bʌt

after a lot of trouble he had got away from them and
ɑ:ftər ə lɔt əv trʌbl hi: həd ɡɔt ə'wei frɔm ðəm ənd

escaped to Sweden, where he received a shock on
is'keipt tə swi:dn, hweə hi: ri'si:ʔd ə ʃɒk ɒn
 hearing that both his parents were dead, and that his
hiəriŋ ðət bəʊp hi: ʔeərənts wə: ded, ənd ðət hi:
 wife had run away with another man. Marshall: "I have
wʌɪf həd rʌn ə'wei wið ə'nʌðə mæn. mɑ:fəl: "aɪ hæv
 a brother who also escaped from Germany during the
ə brʌðə hu: ə:lsoʊ is'keipt frəm dʒə:məni dʒuəriŋ ðə
 war; but I am glad to say that nothing unpleasant had
wɔ:; bət aɪ əm glæd tə sei ðət nʌθɪŋ ʌn'pleznt həd
 taken place in his family which might give him a shock
teɪkən pleɪs ɪn hi:z fæmili hweɪts maɪt ɡɪv hɪm ə ʃɒk
 when he got back."
hweŋ hi: ɡɒt bæk."

When they got home that evening, Storm thanked his
hweŋ ðeɪ ɡɒt hoʊm ðæt i:vnɪŋ. stɔ:m ʔæŋkt hi:z
 guide and said, "I'm sure this has been the most
ɡaɪd ənd sed, "aɪm suə ðɪs hæz bi:n ðə moʊst
 interesting Sunday I have spent for a long time, full
ɪntrɪstɪŋ sʌndi aɪ həv spent fəɹ ə lɔŋ taɪm, fʊl
 of surprises from morning till night."
əv sə'praɪzɪz frəm mɔ:nɪŋ tɪl naɪt."

Marshall's parents had gone to bed, but as he and Storm
mɑ:fəlz ʔeərənts həd ɡɒn tə bed, bət əz hi: ənd stɔ:m
 were both hungry after their long and tiring day, they
wə: bəʊp haŋɡri ɑ:ftə ðeə lɔŋ ənd taɪəriŋ ðeɪ, ðeɪ
 went into the kitchen, where they found some cold
went ɪntə ðə kɪtʃɪn, hweə ðeɪ faʊnd səm kəʊld

WORDS:

condition
store
cat
domestic
loose
chain
smell
smelt
tail
programme
purpose
public house
pub
smash
support
break
broke
broken
limited
proper
service
clergyman
expression
sound (verb)
square

supper which Mrs. Marshall had left for them. They
sʌpə hwiʃ misɪz mɑːʃəl həd left fɔː ðəm. ðei

made themselves some tea to drink with their supper.
meɪd ðəm'selvz səm tiː tə drɪŋk wɪð ðeə sʌpə.

EXERCISE A.

Most people in the East End live under bad —. In the East End fruit is sold cheap, and the prices are — than in the suburbs. A very large shop, selling all kinds of goods, is called a —. In the East End dogs and other — animals are sold in the streets. It is not allowed to let a dog go —, but it is taken away on a —. The friends could — that animals were sold in these streets. Some kinds of dogs have part of their — cut off. Their — for the day was very long, because it was Marshall's — to show Storm as much as possible. In a — they saw a man — his glass to pieces. It was difficult for him to stand, and his friends had to — him. Storm thought that many glasses were — in this way. They soon had to leave the East End. Many Englishmen find it the — thing to go to church and listen to a — on Sundays. Storm was able to understand most of the words and — used by the clergyman. The clergyman's voice — pleasant. The friends went to a cinema in Leicester — to see a —. The light outside the building was almost as — as —, and inside there were all modern —. The film was about an Englishman who — from Germany to Sweden, where he received a — when hearing that his parents were dead, and that his wife had left him.

EXERCISE B.

In chapter 44, Exercise D, you found a letter from Storm to his friend Wood. Please answer this letter as if you were Wood, in such a way that you use all the words in the following list:

than — letter — sister — receive — send — require — Brown — office — evening — discussion — pleasant — photograph — visit — London.

You will have to make up some sort of story in which these words appear. This will give you practice in expressing yourself in English.

film
bright
daylight
comfort
escape
shock
unpleasant

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

We have some words which we call pronouns [*prounauns*]. Pronouns are words like I, you, his, this, which, somebody. Pronouns may be put instead of nouns. Here are some examples: The man gave the boy an apple, and **he** ate **it** at once. In the sentence 'and he ate it at once' we see that 'he' is used instead of 'boy' and 'it' instead of 'apple'. In the sentence 'John took the books and put **them** into **his** bag', 'them' is used instead of 'books', and 'his' is used instead of 'John's'.

There are different kinds of pronouns. The words: **I, you, he, she, it, me, you, him, her, it, we, you, they, us, you, them**, we call the personal [*pə:snl*] pronouns, because they are mostly used instead of persons. Examples: John has a dog, which **he** likes very much.

(‘He’ is used instead of ‘John’.) The boys ran after the cat, until **they** got **it**. (‘They’ is used instead of ‘boys’, and ‘it’ instead of ‘cat’.)

We have also some pronouns called possessive [*pə'zesiv*] pronouns; there are two kinds of possessive pronouns: firstly, **my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their**; secondly, **mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs**. You will notice that the words in the second list have added an s, except ‘my’, which becomes ‘mine’, and ‘his’ and ‘its’, which have an s already.

The pronouns first mentioned are used with a noun, and the pronouns last mentioned are used when no noun follows. In the sentence ‘I showed him **my** house’, ‘my’ is used with the noun ‘house’, but in the sentence ‘I have shown him **mine**’, no noun follows, so the word ‘mine’ is used instead of ‘my’. Here are some other examples: This is **her** hat; where is **yours**? **Your** garden is small, **ours** is big. It is **her** book — no, it is **his**. It is **his** ball — no, it is **hers**.

Questions:

Can you give some examples of pronouns? ... What different sorts of pronouns do you know? ... How are pronouns used? ... In what way are the two kinds of possessive pronouns different? ... Please write a few sentences where a possessive pronoun is used together with a noun, and some where a possessive pronoun is used without a noun. ...

ENGLISH NEWSPAPERS

Storm: "While I know a great deal about the things

stɔ:m: "hwaɪl aɪ nou ə greɪt di:l ə'baʊt ðə ɪŋz

that happen in my own country, I am afraid that I don't

ðət hæpən ɪn maɪ oun kəntri, aɪ əm ə'freɪd ðət aɪ daʊnt

know very much about events that happen in other

nou vɛrɪ mʌtʃ ə'baʊt i'vents ðət hæpən ɪn ʌðə

countries, so I think that in the future I had better read

kəntri:z, sou aɪ ɪŋk ðət ɪn ðə fju:tʃə aɪ həd betə ri:d

an English newspaper every day. In that way I should

əv ɪŋglɪʃ nju:spetʃə evri dei. ɪn ðæt wei aɪ ʃəd

also get to know more about what the English think

ɔ:lsoʊ get tə nou mɔ:r ə'baʊt hwət ði ɪŋglɪʃ ɪŋk

about things; I should learn the opinions of the English.

ə'baʊt ɪŋz; aɪ ʃəd læ:n ði ə'pɪnjənz əv ði ɪŋglɪʃ.

I am sure that one of the best ways to learn the opinions

aɪ əm suə ðət wʌn əv ðə best wei:z tə læ:n ði ə'pɪnjənz

of a foreign nation is to read the newspapers of the

əv ə fɔrɪn neɪʃən ɪz tə ri:d ðə nju:spetʃəz əv ðə

country. Living in England, as I do now, I think I ought

kəntri. lɪvɪŋ ɪn ɪŋglənd, əz aɪ du: naʊ, aɪ ɪŋk aɪ ɔ:t

to know more about the nation. I think it's almost my

tə nou mɔ:r ə'baʊt ðə neɪʃən. aɪ ɪŋk ɪts ɔ:lmoʊst maɪ

duty to learn all that I can about the English."

dʒu:ti tə læ:n ɔ:l ðət aɪ kæn ə'baʊt ði ɪŋglɪʃ."

event = thing
that happens

happen = take
place

the future = the
time to come

He **ought**,
he **ought**, —
[ɔ:t, ɔ:t].

duty = the work
or the things a
person ought to do

putting it too
strongly = making
too much out of it

"You don't really mean what you say, do you?" asked
"ju: dount riəli mi:n hweɪt ju: sei, du: ju:?" a:skt

Marshall. "You cannot be serious; you must be saying
ma:fəl. "ju: kænɒt bi: siəriəs; ju: məst bi: seiŋ

this just in fun." "No, not in fun; I am serious all
dis dʒʌst in fʌn." "nou, nɒt in fʌn; ai əm siəriəs ɔ:l

right; I mean just what I say," replied Storm. "It is
rait; ai mi:n dʒʌst hweɪt ai sei," ri'plaid stɔ:m. "it iz

very pleasant," said Marshall, "to hear that you take
veri pleznt," sed ma:fəl. "tə hiə ðæt ju: teik

such an interest in us, but I think that you are putting
sʌtʃ ən intrist in əs, bʌt ai θɪŋk ðæt ju: a: putiŋ

it too strongly when you say that you ought to know
it tu: strɔŋli hwen ju: sei ðæt ju: ɔ:t tə nou

all about us, just because you live here for a few
ɔ:l ə'baʊt əs, dʒʌst bi'kɔz ju: liv hiə fər ə fju:

months. If I had a chance of living in your country,
mʌnθs. if ai hæd ə tʃɑ:ns əv li:vɪŋ in jɔ: kʌntri.

I don't think I should look upon it as my duty to make
ai dount θɪŋk ai ʃəd lʊk ə'pɒn ɪt əz maɪ dju:ti tə meɪk

a study of the people and the conditions under which
ə stʌdi əv ðə pi:pl ənd ðə kən'dɪʃənz ʌndə hweɪtʃ

they live, although, on the other hand, I might be glad
ðei liv. ɔ:l'ðəʊ. ɒn ði ʌðə hænd, ai maɪt bi: glæd

to learn a few things about them. You will find, Storm,
tə læ:n ə fju: θɪŋz ə'baʊt ðəm. ju: wɪl faɪnd, stɔ:m,

that all nations know much more about themselves than
ðæt ɔ:l neɪʃənz nou mʌtʃ mɔ:r ə'baʊt ðəm'selvz ðən

about each other. We might say that this is inter-
ə'baʊt i:tʃ ʌðə. wi: maɪt sei ðæt ðis ɪz ɪntə-

national, for it is to be seen in every country. But if
'næʃənəl, fər ɪt ɪz tə bi: si:n ɪn evri kʌntri. bət ɪf

you do take such a great interest in the English, it
ju: du: teɪk sʌtʃ ə greɪt ɪntrɪst ɪn ði ɪŋglɪʃ, ɪt

would be a good idea for you to read an English paper
wəd bi: ə gud aɪ'diə fər ju: tə ri:d ən ɪŋglɪʃ peɪpər

in future, both while you are staying in England and
ɪn fju:tʃə, bəʊp hwaɪl ju: a: steɪɪŋ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd ænd

when you return to your own country.”
hwen ju: ri'tə:n tə ʃɔ:r oun kʌntri.”

Storm: “I have heard the names of quite a number of
stɔ:m: “aɪ hæv hə:d ðə neɪmz əv kwaɪt ə nʌmbər əv

English papers, but it is hard for me to remember them,
ɪŋglɪʃ peɪpəz, bət ɪt ɪz hæ:d fər mi: tə rɪ'membə ðəm,

because I have such a bad memory for foreign names.”
bɪ'kɔz aɪ hæv sʌtʃ ə bəd meməri fər fɔrɪn neɪmz.”

Marshall: “While working at the office, I have not found
mɑ:fəl: “hwaɪl wə:kɪŋ ət ði ɔfɪs, aɪ hæv nɒt faʊnd

your memory so poor. I've sometimes been quite sur-
ʃɔ: meməri səʊ puə. aɪv sʌmtaɪmz bi:n kwaɪt sə-

prised at the things you can remember. It is always
'praɪzd ət ðə þɪŋz ju: kən rɪ'membə. ɪt ɪz ɔ:lweɪs

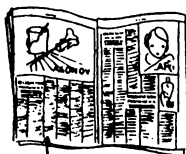
difficult, however, to remember a lot of foreign names.”
dɪfɪkəlt, haʊ'evə, tə rɪ'membə ə lɒt əv fɔrɪn neɪmz.”

Storm: “You English seem to read a great number of
stɔ:m: “ju: ɪŋglɪʃ si:m tə ri:d ə greɪt nʌmbər əv

do take (here) =
really take

in future = in the
future

on account of =
because of



page



race

care about = feel
interested in

papers. Many of the men at the office sometimes buy
peipaz. meni əv ðə men ət ði ɔfis saɪntaɪnz baɪ
two or three papers a day. Is that because they're so
tu: ə ʔri: peipaz ə dei. ɪz ðæt bi'kɔz ðəə sou
interested in the latest news?"
ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðə leɪtɪst nju:z?"

Marshall: "Not always; in most cases it is on account
mɑ:ʃəl: "nɒt ɔ:lwəz; ɪn maʊst keɪsɪz ɪt ɪz ɔn ə'kaʊnt
of their interest in sport. The evening papers usually
əv ðəər ɪntrɪst ɪn spɔ:t. ði i:vɪnɪŋ peɪpəz ju:ʒuəli
have several pages, and in most cases only two or three
hæv severəl peɪdʒɪz, ənd ɪn maʊst keɪsɪz ɔʊnli tu: ə ʔri:
of the pages have news; on the rest there are reports
əv ðə peɪdʒɪz hæv nju:z; ɔn ðə rest ðəə ri'pɔ:ts
of big events in sport. But there is a limit to the
əv bɪɡ i'vents ɪn spɔ:t. bət ðəz ə lɪmɪt tə ðə
number of papers one can comfortably read, so I am
nʌmbər əv peɪpəz wʌn kən kəmfaɪəbli ri:d, sɔʊ aɪ əm
sure that the people who buy so many papers on days
fʊə ðæt ðə pi:pl hu: baɪ sɔʊ meni peɪpəz ɔn deɪz
when a horse-race, a bicycle-race, or a big football match
hwen ə hɔ:sreɪs, ə baɪsaɪklreɪs, ɔ:r ə bɪɡ fʊtbɔ:l mætʃ
takes place, only read a few words on each page. I
teɪks pleɪs, ɔʊnli ri:d ə fju: wə:dz ɔn i:tʃ peɪdʒ. aɪ
don't care much about the many pages of sport, myself;
dəʊnt keə mʌtʃ ə'baʊt ðə meni peɪdʒɪz əv spɔ:t, maɪ'self;
I'm more interested in the rest of the paper. There
aɪm mɔ:r ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðə rest əv ðə peɪpə. ðəz

is one thing particularly that I always read. Perhaps
wʌn ʃɪŋ pə'tɪkjʊləli ðæt aɪ ɔ:lweɪz ri:d. pə'hæps

you have already noticed the many letters to the editor
ju: hæv ɔ:l'redi nɒtɪst ðə meni letəz tə ði editə

editor = the head
of a newspaper

in our papers? People from all parts of the country
ɪn əʊə peɪpəz? pi:pl frəm ɔ:l pɑ:ts əv ðə kʌntri

write letters to the papers and give their opinions about
raɪt letəz tə ðə peɪpəz ənd gɪv ðeə ə'pɪnjənz ə'baʊt

all sorts of things. Some of the letters are quite
ɔ:l sɔ:ts əv ʃɪŋz. sʌm əv ðə letəz a: kwaɪt

interesting, but in most cases, of course, they are very
ɪntrɪstɪŋ, bʌt ɪn mʌst keɪsɪz, əv kɔ:s, ðeɪ a: veri

funny, because the letter-writers don't know enough
fʌni, bɪ'kɔz ðə letəraɪtəz daʊnt nəʊ ɪ'nʌf

about the things they write about. However, people
ə'baʊt ðə ʃɪŋz ðeɪ raɪt ə'baʊt. haʊ'evə, pi:pl

in England have been doing this for so long that it has
ɪn ɪŋɡlənd hæv bi:n du:ɪŋ ðɪs fə sɒ lɒŋ ðæt ɪt hæz

become almost an English institution.”
bɪ'kʌm ɔ:l'mʌst ən ɪŋɡlɪʃ ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃən.”

The newspapers of a country are spoken of as the press,
ðə nju:sp'eɪpəz-əv ə kʌntri a: spəʊkən əv əz ðə pres,

and Storm now wanted Marshall to give him some
ənd stɔ:m nəʊ wəntɪd mɑ:ʃəl tə gɪv hɪm sʌm

information about the English press. “You will, perhaps,
ɪnfə'meɪʃən ə'baʊt ðɪ ɪŋɡlɪʃ pres. “ju: wɪl, pə'hæps,

be able to make a good suggestion as to which paper
bɪ: eɪbl tə meɪk ə gʊd sə'dʒestʃən əz tə hʌwɪʃ peɪpə

suggest = propose

will be the best for me." "Yes, I could easily do that,"
wil bi: ðə best fɔ: mi:. "jes, ai kəd i:zili du: ðæt,"

Marshall replied, "but I have a better suggestion to
ma:fəl ri'plaid, "bət ai hæv ə betə sə'dʒestʃən tə

make. I will first tell you the most important details
meik. ai wil fə:st tel ju: ðə moust im'pɔ:tənt di:teils

about the papers, and then I suggest that you try a few
ə'baut ðə peipəz, ənd ðen ai sə'dʒest ðət ju: trai ə fju:

of them. In quite a short time you'll discover which
əv ðəm. in kwait ə ʃɔ:t taim ju:l dis'kʌvə hwitʃ

one you can read to best advantage."

wʌn ju: kən ri:d tə best əd'vɑ:ntidʒ."

Storm answered that he would do as Marshall suggested,
stɔ:m ə:nsəd ðət hi: wəd du: əz ma:fəl sə'dʒestid,

and Marshall went on, saying, "You mentioned that
ənd ma:fəl went ɔn, seiŋ, "ju: menʃənd ðət

you would like to know more about the opinions of
ju: wəd laik tə nou mɔ:r ə'baut ði ə'pinjənz əv

the English, but, of course, you understand that not all
ði ɪŋgliʃ, bʌt, əv kɔ:s, ju: ʌndə'stænd ðət nɔt ɔ:l

Englishmen have the same opinion. In Parliament we
ɪŋglɪʃmən hæv ðə seim ə'pinjən. in pɑ:ləmənt wi:

have a very good example of this. Those who are of
hæv ə veri gud ig'zɑ:mpl əv ðis. ðəuz hu: a:r əv

the same opinion, and have the same programme for
ðə seim ə'pinjən, ənd hæv ðə seim prəʊgræm fə

what they want to do for the good of the country, are
hwɔt ðei wɔnt tə du: fə ðə gud əv ðə kʌntri, a:

spoken of as a political party, while what they want
spoukən əv əz ə pə'litikəl pɑ:ti, hɪvəl hɪvəl ðeɪ wɒnt

to do is spoken of as their political programme.
tə du: ɪz spoukən əv əz ðeə pə'litikəl prəʊgræm.

"The most important men of the largest party usually
"ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt men əv ðə lɑ:dʒɪst pɑ:ti ju:ʒuəlɪ

make up the government of the country; and it is the
meɪk ʌp ðə ɡʌvənmənt əv ðə kʌntri; and ɪt ɪz ðə

duty of the government to look after the affairs of the
dju:ti əv ðə ɡʌvənmənt tə lʊk ɑ:fteə ðɪ ə'feəz əv ðə

nation. In England we have three large political
neɪʃən. ɪn ɪŋɡlənd wi: hæv θri: lɑ:dʒ pə'litikəl

parties: the Labour Party, the Conservatives, and the
pɑ:tɪz: ðə leɪbə pɑ:ti, ðə kən'sə:tvətɪvz, and ðə

Liberals. All the papers that I shall mention to you,
lɪbərlz. ɔ:l ðə peɪpəz ðæt aɪ ʃəl menʃən tə ju:,

give the opinions of one or other of these three large
ɡɪv ðɪ ə'pɪnjənz əv wʌn ɔ:r ʌðə əv ðɪ:z θri: lɑ:dʒ

political parties, although they are not owned by the
pə'litikəl pɑ:tɪz, ɔ:l'dəʊ ðeɪ ɑ: nɒt ɒnd baɪ ðə

parties. I will begin with the Daily Telegraph, as I
pɑ:tɪz. aɪ wɪl bɪ'ɡɪn wɪð ðə deɪli telɪgrɑ:f əz aɪ

have a copy of it in my pocket. Of course, you have
hæv ə kɒpi əv ɪt ɪn maɪ pɒkɪt. əv kɔ:s, ju: hæv

seen it many times before, and you know what it is
si:n ɪt meni taɪmz bɪ'fɔ:, and ju: nəʊ hɒvɪt ɪt ɪz

like. It has a circulation of about a million, and is,
laɪk. ɪt hæz ə sə:kju'leɪʃən əv ə'baʊt ə mɪljən, and ɪz.

affair = matter

labour = work

the telegraph is
 used for sending
 telegrams

as you'll have seen, a very Conservative paper. Two
 əs ju:l həv si:n, ə veri kən'sə:vativ peipə. tu:

other important Conservative papers are the Daily Mail
 ʌðə im'pɔ:tənt kən'sə:vativ peipəz a: ðə deili meil

and the Daily Express, the first with a circulation
 ənd ðə deili iks'pres, ðə fə:st wið ə sə:kju'leifən

of 2,000,000, and the second with a circulation of
 əv tu: miljən, ənd ðə sekənd wið ə sə:kju'leifən əv

3,800,000."

þri: miljən eit handrəd þauzənd."

Storm: "I can't understand that you have not men-
 stɔ:m: "ai kɑ:nt ʌndə'stænd ðæt ju: həv nɒt men-

tioned The Times. It is almost the only English
 fənd ðə taimz. it iz ɔ:lmoʊst ði ounli ɪŋɡlɪʃ

paper ever mentioned at home." Marshall: "The Times
 peipər evə menʃənd æt hoʊm." mɑ:ʃəl: "ðə taimz

has a circulation of about 300,000." Storm:
 hæz ə sə:kju'leifən əv ə'baʊt þri: handrəd þauzənd." stɔ:m:

"Has The Times only a circulation of 300,000?"

"hæz ðə taimz ounli ə sə:kju'leifən əv þri: handrəd þauzənd?"

Marshall: "Most foreigners are inclined to think that
 mɑ:ʃəl: "moʊst fɔ:rinəz a:r in'klaɪnd tə θɪŋk ðæt

The Times is the paper with the largest circulation. The
 ðə taimz iz ðə peipə wið ðə lɑ:dʒɪst sə:kju'leifən. ðə

reason for this is that many times in the past it has given
 ri:zn fə ðɪs iz ðæt meni taimz in ðə pɑ:st it hæz ɡɪvən

the opinion of the British government, and on account
 ði ə'pinjən əv ðə brɪtɪʃ ɡʌvənɪmənt, ənd ɒn ə'kaʊnt

the past = the time
 that has passed

of this fact it is, of course, one of the most important
əv ðis fækt it iz, əv kɔ:s. wʌn əv ðə maʊst im'pɔ:tənt

papers, even though it is not one of the biggest. The
peɪpəz, i:vən ðəʊ it iz nɒt wʌn əv ðə bɪɡɪst. ðə

biggest Liberal paper is called the News Chronicle with
bɪɡɪst lɪbəərəl peɪpə ɪz kɔ:ld ðə nju:z krɒnɪkl wɪð

chronicle = report

a circulation of 1,750,000.

ə sə:kju'leɪʃən əv wʌn mɪljən sevn haʊdrəd ənd fɪfti haʊzənd.

Then I must mention the Labour paper, called the
ðen aɪ mʌst menʃən ðə leɪbə peɪpə, kɔ:ld ðə

Daily Herald, a paper with a circulation of over
deɪli herəld, ə peɪpə wɪð ə sə:kju'leɪʃən əv oʊvə

herald = one who tells news

2,250,000.

In 1918

tu: mɪljən tu: haʊdrəd ənd fɪfti haʊzənd. ɪn naɪnti:n eɪtɪ:n

it was a small paper with a circulation of only
ɪt wəz ə smɔ:l peɪpə wɪð ə sə:kju'leɪʃən əv ɒnli

100,000,

but its growth has been so rapid

rapid = fast

wʌn haʊdrəd haʊzənd, bət ɪts grəʊp hæz bi:n sɒ ræpɪd

that already in 1939 its circulation had in-
ðæt ɔ:l'redi ɪn naɪnti:n þə:ti'nain ɪts sə:kju'leɪʃən həd ɪn-

creased to twenty times as much."

'kri:st tə twenti taɪmz əz mʌtʃ."

"What a growth!" said Storm; "I have heard of papers
"hweɪt ə grəʊp!" sed stɔ:m; "aɪ hæv hə:d əv peɪpəz

growing quickly, but never of such a rapid growth as
grəʊɪŋ kwɪkli, bət nevə əv sʌtʃ ə ræpɪd grəʊp əz

that." "In your place," Marshall continued, "I should
ðæt." "ɪn jɔ: pleɪs." mɑ:fəl kən'tɪnju:d, "aɪ ʃəd

buy a copy of each of these different papers. It is best
baɪ ə kɒpi əv i:tʃ əv ði:z difrənt peɪpəz. ɪt ɪz best

for you to decide for yourself which one you are going
fə ju: tə dɪ'saɪd fə ʃɔ:'self hwaɪf wʌn ju: ə: ɡoʊɪŋ

to read. In all the papers I've mentioned you'll find
tə ri:d. ɪn ɔ:l ðə peɪpəz aɪv menʃənd ju:l faɪnd

long articles about home affairs, and about foreign
lɒŋ a:tɪklz ə'baʊt haʊm ə'feəz, ənd ə'baʊt fɔːrɪn

affairs as well. I haven't said anything about the
ə'feəz əz wel. aɪ hævnt sed enɪθɪŋ ə'baʊt ði

evening papers, as I don't think they will interest you;
iːvɪnɪŋ peɪpəz, əz aɪ daʊnt θɪŋk ðeɪ wɪl ɪntrɪst ju:ː

they are almost full of articles about sport." Storm:
ðeɪ aːr ɔ:lmoʊst fʊl əv a:tɪklz ə'baʊt spɔːt." stɔːm:

"I am inclined to think you are right. I shall keep to
"aɪ əm ɪn'klaɪnd tə θɪŋk ju: ə: raɪt. aɪ ʃəl kiːp tə

the morning papers and buy a copy of each of those
ðə mɔːnɪŋ peɪpəz ənd baɪ ə kɒpi əv i:tʃ əv ðəʊz

you have suggested."
ju: hæv sə'dʒestɪd."

Marshall then told Storm that, with one or two
mɑːʃəl ðen təʊld stɔːm ðæt, wɪð wʌn ə tuː

exceptions, all the big papers are printed both in
ɪk'septions, ɔ:l ðə bɪɡ peɪpəz aː prɪntɪd boʊp ɪn

London and in some town in the north of England at
lʌndən ənd ɪn sʌm taʊn ɪn ðə nɔːθ əv ɪŋɡlənd ət

the same time. "It is a good idea to print the papers
ðə seɪm taɪm. "ɪt ɪz ə ɡʊd aɪ'dɪə tə prɪnt ðə peɪpəz

in two places. A man in the north of England is then
in tu: pleisiz. ə mæn in ðə nɔ:θ əv ɪŋɡlənd ɪz ðen

able to get a copy of his paper just as quickly as a man
eɪbl tə ɡet ə kɒpi əv hɪz peɪpə dʒʌst əz kwɪkli əz ə mæn

in London," he said. Storm: "I think that is a good
in lʌndən," hi: sed. stɔ:m: "aɪ θɪŋk ðæt ɪz ə ɡʊd

thing. Nowadays it's important to read newspapers."
θɪŋ. naʊədeɪz ɪts ɪm'pɔ:tənt tə ri:d nju:speɪpəz."

"Yes, it is one of the ways in which people, if they
"jes, ɪt ɪz wʌn əv ðə weɪz ɪn hwi:ʃ pi:pl. ɪf ðeɪ

take things seriously, may learn more, and so continue
teɪk θɪŋz sɪəriəsli. meɪ lə:n mɔ:, ənd sʊ kən'tɪnju:

their education after they have left school. Books, of
ðeə edʒu:'keɪʃən ɑ:ftə ðeɪ hæv left sku:l. buks, əv

course, are a great help to people who wish to educate
kɔ:s, ɑ:r ə ɡreɪt help tə pi:pl hu: wɪʃ tu edʒu:'keɪt

themselves, but newspapers can do quite a lot. The
ðəm'selvz, bət nju:speɪpəz kən du: kwaɪt ə lɒt. ðə

papers, however, might do even more to give people
peɪpəz, haʊ'evə, maɪt du: i:vən mɔ: tə ɡɪv pi:pl

a better education; but in our days there is a tendency
ə betə edʒu:'keɪʃən; bət ɪn ʌʊə deɪz ðəz ə tendənsɪ

to fill the papers with articles about sport and politics,
tə fɪl ðə peɪpəz wɪð ɑ:tɪklz ə'baut spɔ:t ənd pəlɪtɪks,

and to leave out things that might be more useful.
ənd tə li:v aʊt θɪŋz ðæt maɪt bi: mɔ: ju:sfʊl.

One notices this tendency more and more as the years
wʌn nəʊtɪsɪz ðɪs tendənsɪ mɔ:r ənd mɔ: əz ðə jɪəz

pass, and as it is the case in every country with hardly
pa:s, and əz it ɪz ðə keɪs ɪn evri kʌntri wið ha:dli

any exception, I think we might speak of it as an inter-
eni ɪk'seɪʃən, aɪ θɪŋk wi:məɪt spi:k əv ɪt əz ən ɪntə-

national tendency." "I see nothing wrong in reading
'næʃənəl tendənsi." "aɪ si: nʌʃɪŋ rɔŋ ɪn ri:dɪŋ

articles about politics," Storm answered. "In a country
ɑ:tɪklz ə'baʊt pəlɪtɪks," stɔ:m ɑ:nʃəd. "ɪn ə kʌntri

where the people take part in the government of their
hwɛə ðə pi:pl teɪk pɑ:t ɪn ðə ɡʌvənmənt əv ðeə

country and any man may become a Member of
kʌntri ənd ɛni mæn meɪ bɪ'kʌm ə mɛmbə ər

Parliament, the more people know about politics, the
pɑ:ləmənt, ðə mɔ: pi:pl nəʊ ə'baʊt pəlɪtɪks, ðə

better, in my opinion." "There is something in what
betə, ɪn maɪ ə'pɪnjən." "ðəz smʌŋɪŋ ɪn hwɔt

you say there," was all that Marshall could say to this.
ju: sei ðeə," wəz ɔ:l ðət mɑ:fəl kəd sei tə ðɪs.

"Speaking of reading," Storm continued, "I have noticed
"spi:kɪŋ əv ri:dɪŋ," stɔ:m kən'tɪnju:d, "aɪ hæv nəʊtɪst

that there is not much space between the lines in your
ðət ðəz nɔt mʌʃ speɪs bɪ'twi:n ðə laɪnz ɪn jɔ:

papers. That is bad for one's eyes, I think. But of
pɛɪpəz. ðət ɪz bəd, fə wʌnz aɪz, aɪ θɪŋk. bʌt əv

course, if you add up all the space saved between the
kɔ:s, ɪf ju: əd ʌp ɔ:l ðə speɪs seɪvd bɪ'twi:n ðə

lines in this way, it comes to quite a lot, doesn't it?
laɪnz ɪn ðɪs weɪ, ɪt kʌmz tə kwaɪt ə lɔt, dʌznt ɪt?

More reading matter for the same money!

mɔ: ri:diŋ mætə fə ðə seim mʌni!

"Newspaper work interests me. I think that when I
"nju:speɪpə wə:k intrɪsts mi:. ai θɪŋk ðæt hwen ai

know England and the English a little better, I shall
nou ɪŋɡlənd ənd ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ ə lɪtl betə, ai ʃəl

write some articles about England and try to send them
raɪt səm ɑ:tɪklz ə'baʊt ɪŋɡlənd ənd traɪ tə send ðəm

to one of our papers at home. So be careful what you
tə wʌn əv əʊə peɪpəz ət haʊm. sɔu bi: keəfʊl hwət ju:

say and do from now on, Marshall; everything that you
sei ənd du: frəm naʊ ɔn, mɑ:fəl; evriθɪŋ ðæt ju:

say will be used against you!" "And I," replied Marshall
sei wɪl bi: ju:zd ə'geɪnst ju:!" "ənd ai," ri'plaɪd mɑ:fəl

with a smile, carefully folding up his Daily Telegraph
wɪð ə smaɪl, keəfʊli fəʊldɪŋ ʌp hɪz deɪli telɪɡrɑ:f

and putting it under his arm, "shall write an article
ənd pʊtɪŋ ɪt ʌndə hɪz ɑ:m, "ʃəl raɪt ən ɑ:tɪkl

called "Educating a Young Foreigner in London" and
kɔ:ld "edju:keɪtɪŋ ə jʌŋ fɔ:ɪnə ɪn lʌndən" ənd

tell about all the funny questions you have asked me."
tel ə'baʊt ɔ:l ðə fʌni kwɛstʃənz ju: hæv ɑ:skt mi:."

So saying, Marshall took his friend back to the office
sɔu seiɪŋ, mɑ:fəl tuk hɪz frend bæk tə ði ɔfis

from the small restaurant where they had been having
frəm ðə smɔ:l restərɔ:ŋ hwɛə ðeɪ həd bi:n hævɪŋ

lunch. Each had his paper folded under his arm.

lʌnʃ. i:tʃ həd hɪz peɪpə fəʊldɪd ʌndə hɪz ɑ:m.

WORDS:

event
happen
opinion
ought
future
serious
duty
memory
case
page
on account of
limit
press
suggestion
suggest
copy
political
party
Conservatives
Liberals
Labour Party
politics
government
affair
inclined
circulation
growth
rapid
space
fold
exception
print

EXERCISE A.

In order to know something about the — that happened in England and to learn what are the — of the English, Storm thought that he — to read an English newspaper every day in the —. He was quite — about it and said to Marshall that he thought it his — to do so. He did not remember many of the names of the English newspapers, because he had a bad — for foreign names. In most — the English evening papers have several —, only two or three of which bring news, while the — are given up to sport. On — of their interest in the big events in sport there is almost no — to the number of papers the English will buy. Storm asked Marshall for some information about the English — and for a good — as to which paper would be the best for him to read. Marshall — that he should buy a — of several of them, in order to decide which one would suit him best. In England there are three great — parties: the — —, the —, and the —. What they wish to do for the — of the country, is spoken of as their —. It is the duty of the — to look after the — of the nation. People are — to think that the Times has a very great —, but in reality its circulation is not nearly so great as that of the Daily Herald. The — of the circulation of the Daily Herald has been very — since 1918. Storm found the English newspapers difficult to read on account of the small — between the lines. He thought it funny to see Englishmen walking with their papers carefully — under their arms. With only one or two — all the big papers are — in two towns at the same time.

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

Where do you live, in a flat or in a house of your own? ... Do you like to be at home in the evenings, or do you prefer to go out? ... How many newspapers do you read a day, and what are the names of them? ... Do you collect foreign stamps or coins? ... How long have you been studying English? ... What are your reasons for studying English? ... Did you ever make a trip to England? ... If you did, what part of England did you visit? ... What part of England would you like to go to, if you were to go there during your holidays? ...

care (verb)
education
educate
tendency
article
race
daily
telegraph
chronicle
herald
editor
past

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

We have mentioned two kinds of pronouns: the personal and the possessive pronouns. Now we will talk about a third kind called the demonstrative [*di'mon-strativ*] pronouns. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these; that, those. 'This' and 'that' are used in the singular, and 'these' and 'those' are used in the plural.

'This' and 'these' are used about persons or things that are near us, and 'that' and 'those' about persons or things that are farther away. Examples: **This** is my house, and **that** is Johnson's, that is, the house here is my house, and the house over there is Johnson's. **This** is my brother (here). **That** is Mr. Smith (over there). **This** book is one of the best I have read. **That** book is no good. **This** evening (to-day) I have come home early. **That** evening (some days ago) I came home very late. **These** shoes are very expensive, but **those** are cheaper.

Questions:

Which of the demonstrative pronouns point at things near us? ... And which demonstrative pronouns point at things farther away? ... Which of the demonstrative pronouns are used in the singular, and which are used in the plural? ...

EXERCISE D.

siksti'eit, nelsn roud, wimbldən.

ðə fə:st əv səp'tembə.

diə wud,

*ai wəz veri glæd tə get ðə bæŋ ful əv linin and lɒðə piŋz
hwiʃf mai sistə sent mi:. ai ɔ:lmu:st bi'li:v ðət ju: helpt
hə: tə pæk it; ə gə:l wəd nevə həv bi:n eibl tə piŋk
əv ɔ:l ðəuz piŋz.*

*it iz nais əv ju: tə rait and tel mi: hʌvət ju: and braun
a: du:ɪŋ. ai əm stil di'vaɪdiŋ mai ha:t in i:kwəl pa:ts bi-
'twi:n mai nju: wə:k and laɪf ət haʊm, sou ai əm veri
intristɪd in ðə nju:z ðət ju: send. wil ju: pli:z send mi:
səm əv ðə fəʊtəgrə:fz frəm əʊə tri:p, tu:?*

*la:st sætədi ai went tə si: ə geɪm əv rægbi futbɔ:l, ə
veri streɪndʒ geɪm, ai kən tel ju:. ai rə:ðə gɒt ði ɪm'presən
ðət ə greɪt bætl wəz bi:ɪŋ fɔ:t fər ə fəni kaɪnd əv hɔ:l,
hwiʃf evrɪbɔ:di wəz traɪɪŋ tə teɪk ə'wei frəm evrɪbɔ:di els and
kæri frəm wʌn pleɪs tu ə'nʌðə andə hɪz a:m!*

*ai əm lə:nɪŋ meni nju: piŋz ət ði ɔ:fɪs, hwiʃf ai ʃəl tel
ju: ə'baʊt ɪn mai nekst letə. rɪ'membə mi: tə braun, pli:z.*

jɔ:z sɪn'siəlɪ.

stɔ:m

A VISIT TO THE HARBOUR OF LONDON

Storm had had a busy morning at the office; the
stɔ:m həd həd ə bɪzi mɔ:nɪŋ ət ði ɔfɪs; ðə

manager's bell had rung for him at least five times.
mænɪdʒəz bel həd rʌŋ fə hɪm ət li:st faɪv taɪmz.

"The old man does nothing but ring his bell for me
"ði ould mæn dʌs nʌθɪŋ bət rɪŋ hɪz bel fə mi:

this morning," Storm said to Marshall. While he was
ðis mɔ:nɪŋ," stɔ:m sed tə mɑ:fəl. hwaɪl hi: wəz

speaking, the bell rang once more. When he had
spi:kɪŋ, ðə bel ræŋ wʌnz mɔ:. hwen hi: həd

entered the manager's office, the manager began by
entəd ðə mænɪdʒəz ɔfɪs, ðə mænɪdʒə bi'gæn baɪ

saying, "You know that the harbour of London is the
seɪɪŋ, "ju: nou ðæt ðə hæ:bər əv lʌndən ɪz ðə

greatest harbour in existence, and that ships go from
greɪtɪst hæ:bər ɪn ɪg'zɪstəns, ænd ðæt ʃɪps ɡəʊ frəm

there to all parts of the world; but have you ever
ðeə tu ɔ:l pɑ:ts əv ðə wɜ:ld; bət həv ju: evə

visited it? If not," he continued, "there is a chance
vɪzɪtɪd ɪt? ɪf nɒt," hi: kən'tɪnju:d, "ðəz ə tʃɑ:ns

for you to do so to-day. I want you to go down to a
fə ju: tə du: sɔu tə'deɪ. aɪ wɒnt ju: tə ɡəʊ daʊn tu ə

ship lying in the harbour and speak to the captain of
ʃɪp laɪɪŋ ɪn ðə hæ:bə ænd spi:k tə ðə kæptɪn əv

He **rings**, he **rang**,
 he has **rung** [rɪŋz,
 ræŋ, rʌŋ].

the old man = a
 name used in fun
 by clerks about
 the manager



authority = the
right to decide
things and give
orders

the boat. We often have trouble with him, because he
ðə bout. wi: ɔ:fən hæv trʌbl wið him, bi'kəz hi:
 decides things for the firm without asking us. If he
di'saidz þɪŋz fə ðə fə:m wið'aut a:skiŋ əs. if hi:
 is in doubt about anything connected with the affairs
iz in daʊt ə'baut enɪþɪŋ kə'nektɪd wið ði ə'feɪz
 of the firm, he does not ask us what to do, but decides
əv ðə fə:m, hi: dʌz nɒt a:sk əs hwɒt tə du:, bət di'saidz
 the matter himself; it matters nothing to him that we've
ðə mətə him'self; it mətəz nʌþɪŋ tu him ðət wi:v
 never given him any authority to do so. But, of course,
nevə gɪvən him eni ɔ: 'pɔ:riti tə du: sɒ. bʌt, əv kɔ:s,
 we cannot take the responsibility for what he does
wi: kənɒt teɪk ðə rɪspɒnsə'bɪlɪti fə hwɒt hi: dʌz
 without being told by us. If the responsibility is to
wið'aut bi:ɪŋ təʊld baɪ əs. if ðə rɪspɒnsə'bɪlɪti iz tə
 be ours, that is, if we are to pay for the goods and
bi: əʊəz, ðæt iz, if wi: a: tə peɪ fə ðə gʊdz ənd
 anything that is done with them, he must ask us what
enɪþɪŋ ðət iz dʌn wið ðəm, hi: məst a:sk əs hwɒt
 to do and not decide things on his own. It is very
tə du: ənd nɒt di'said þɪŋz ɒn hɪz ɒwn. it iz veri
 unpleasant to have anything to do with people like
ʌn'pleznt tə hæv enɪþɪŋ tə du: wið pi:pl laɪk
 this captain, who do things without any authority from
ðɪs kæptɪn, hu: du: þɪŋz wið'aut eni ɔ: 'pɔ:riti frəm
 those for whom they work. This man speaks English
ðəʊz fə hu:m ðei wə:k. ðɪs mæn spi:ks ɪŋɡlɪʃ

very poorly, but I hope that you'll be able to make
veri puoli, bat ai houþ ðat ju:l bi: eibl tə meik

out what he says, for I want you to tell him that he
aut hwɔt hi: sez, fə ai wɔnt ju: tə tel him ðat hi:

may give as many orders as he likes to the men on
mei giv əz meni ɔ:dəz əz hi: laiks tə ðə men ɔn

his ship, but that if the firm has any orders to give,
hiz fip, bat ðat if ðə fə:m hæz eni ɔ:dəz tə giv,

I will give them. — We also want some goods that are
ai wil giv ðəm. — wi: ɔ:lsou wɔnt səm gudz ðat a:

lying in the harbour, and on which duty must be paid
laiɪŋ in ðə hæ:bə, ənd ɔn hwɪtʃ dju:ti mɔst bi: peid

first. We need the goods badly, because we have sold
fə:st. wi: ni:d ðə gudz bædli, bi'kəz wi: hæv sould

all that we had, so that we have no more in stock. If
ɔ:l ðat wi: hæd, sou ðat wi: hæv nou mɔ:r in stɔk. if

an article sells well, it's always best to have a good
ən a:tɪkl selz wel, its ɔ:lwəz best tə hæv ə gud

supply in stock. I will write out a cheque for the
sə'plai in stɔk. ai wil rait aut ə tʃek fə ði

amount of money that will have to be paid in duty,
ə'maunt əv mʌni ðat wil hæv tə bi: peid in dju:ti,

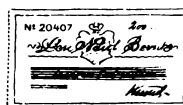
and you can take it with you. The amount of the duty
ənd ju: kən teik it wið ju:. ði ə'maunt əv ðə dju:ti

is £ 10/9/6, and I will write out the cheque
iz ten paʊndz nain ənd siks, ənd ai wil rait aut ðə tʃek

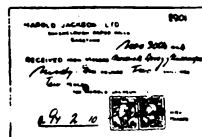
at once. You will remember, of course, to get a receipt
ət wʌns. ju: wil ri'membə, əv kɔ:s, tə get ə ri'si:t

make out = un-
 derstand

We need the goods
 badly = we need
 the goods very
 much.



cheque



receipt

for the amount, so that our book-keeping department
fə ði ə'maunt, sou ðæt auə buki:piŋ di'pa:tmənt

can see that the money has been paid."

kən si: ðæt ðə mʌni həz bi:n peid."

Storm promised to get a receipt for the cheque, and
stɔ:m prəmɪst tə get ə ri'si:t fə ðə tʃek, ənd

mentioned that it would be his first visit to the harbour,
menʃənd ðæt it wəd bi: hi:z fə:st vizit tə ðə hɑ:bə,

after which he left the manager's office.

ɑ:ftə hwɪtʃ hi: left ðə mænɪdʒəz əfis.

The man to whom he paid the money at the custom-
ðə mæn tə hu:m hi: peid ðə mʌni ət ðə kʌstəm-

house soon discovered that Storm was a foreigner, and
haʊs su:n dɪs'kʌvəd ðæt stɔ:m wəz ə fɔ:riŋə, ənd

on hearing that it was his first visit to the harbour,
ɒn hiəriŋ ðæt it wəz hi:z fə:st vizit tə ðə hɑ:bə,

he offered to show him some of the things worth seeing
hi: ɔ:fəd tə ʃəʊ hɪm sʌm əv ðə þɪŋz wə:p si:iŋ

there. The first building to which they came was used
ðeə. ðə fə:st bɪldɪŋ tə hwɪtʃ ðeɪ keɪm wəz ju:zd

to store corn. Storm's new friend said that many of
tə stɔ: kɔ:n. stɔ:mz nju: frend sed ðæt menɪ əv

grain = corn

the buildings were used for grain. "What kind of grain
ðə bɪldɪŋz wə: ju:zd fə greɪn. "hwɒt kaɪnd əv greɪn

do you store here?" he asked the man. "There are
du: ju: stɔ: hiə?" hi: ɑ:skt ðə mæn. "ðeə

three or four important kinds," he answered, "but by
θri: ə fɔ:r ɪm'pɔ:tənt kaɪndz," hi: ɑ:nsəd, "bət baɪ

far the most important is wheat, because most of the
fə: ðə moust im'pɔ:tənt iz hwi:t, bi'kɒz moust əv ðə

bread eaten in England is white bread. However, we
bred i:tn in inglənd iz hwait bred. hau'evə, wi:

don't produce enough wheat in England for our own
dəʊnt prə'dju:s i'nʌf hwi:t in inglənd fə əuər oun

supply, and although there is such a lot stored here,
sə'plai, ənd ɔ:l'dəu ðəz sʌtʃ ə lɒt stɔ:d hiə,

it is not enough to supply the country with white bread
it iz nɒt i'nʌf tə sə'plai ðə kəntri wið hwait bred

for more than a month. Other countries have supplied
fə mɔ: ðən ə mʌnθ. ʌðə kəntriz həv sə'plaɪd

us with the greater part of our wheat for the last
əs wið ðə greɪtə pɑ:t əv əuə hwi:t fə ðə la:st

hundred years. At one time England was a country
hʌndrəd jɪəz. ət wʌn taɪm inglənd wəz ə kəntri

with many farms and farmers, and as in those days
wið meni fɑ:mz ənd fɑ:məz, ənd əz in ðəʊz deɪz

there was more than enough wheat, we used to export
ðeə wəz mɔ: ðən i'nʌf hwi:t, wi: ju:st tu eks'pɔ:t

wheat to other countries. Then the rise of industries
hwi:t tu ʌðə kəntriz. ðen ðə raɪz əv ɪndəstrɪz

using a lot of machinery suddenly changed the whole
ju:zɪŋ ə lɒt əv mə'ʃi:nəri sʌdnli tʃeɪndʒd ðə haʊl

picture, and one factory was built after another, so that
pɪktʃə, ənd wʌn fæktəri wəz bɪlt ɑ:ftər ə'nʌðə, səʊ ðæt

in our days England is most interested in her industries.
ɪn əuə deɪz inglənd iz mɔ:st ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn hə:r ɪndəstrɪz.



industry = the system of producing goods with the help of machines

machinery = machines

woollen (here) =
wool



rat

He **feeds**, he **fed**,
he has **fed** [fi:dz,
fed, fed].

The coal, steel, iron, cotton, and woollen industries are
ðə koul, sti:l, aɪən, kɒtn, and wulin ɪndəstri:z a:

by far the most important. I will now take you to a
baɪ fa: ðə maʊst ɪm'pɔ:tənt. aɪ wɪl naʊ teɪk ju: tu ə

building that will, no doubt, interest you very much.
bɪldɪŋ ðət wɪl, nəʊ daʊt, ɪn'trɪst ju: veri mʌtʃ.

In it we store the many different articles that come
ɪn ɪt wi: stɔ: ðə meni dɪfrənt ɑ:tɪklz ðət kʌm

from the East."
frəm ði i:st."

As soon as they entered the building, Storm saw five
əz su:n əz ðeɪ entəd ðə bɪldɪŋ, stɔ:m sɔ: faɪv

or six cats and asked the man what they wanted cats
ə sɪks kæts ænd ɑ:skt ðə mæn hwɒt ðeɪ wɒntɪd kæts

for. "These are very special cats — our fellow-workers,
fɔ:. "ði:z a: veri spɛʃəl kæts — ɑʊə fəluuwə:kəz,

so to speak," his guide explained. "The buildings here
səʊ tə spi:k," hɪz gaɪd ɪks'pleɪnd. "ðə bɪldɪŋz hɪə

are all full of rats, and it is the duty of the cats to
ɑ: ɔ:l ful əv ræts, ænd ɪt ɪz ðə dju:ti əv ðə kæts tə

catch and eat the rats. We feed them once a day on
kætʃ ænd i:t ðə ræts. wi: fi:d ðəm wʌns ə ðeɪ ɔn

fresh meat, not very much, of course, but just enough
fref mi:t, nɒt veri mʌtʃ, əv kɔ:s, bʌt dʒʌst ɪ'nʌf

to make them feel that they belong to us. For the rest,
tə meɪk ðəm fi:l ðət ðeɪ bi'lɒŋ tu ʌs. fə ðə rest,

they must catch rats, and as they all look nice and well
ðeɪ mʌst kætʃ ræts, ænd əz ðeɪ ɔ:l lʊk naɪs ænd wel

fed, it seems that they are doing their work properly.
fed, it si:mz ðæt ðei a: du:ɪŋ ðeə wə:k prɒpəli.

Some of the rats are very big and will sometimes even
səm əv ðə ræts a: veri big ənd wɪl sʌmtaɪmz i:vən

bite a man's leg. I was bitten by a rat once myself —
bait ə mænz leg. aɪ wəz bitn baɪ ə ræt wʌns maɪself —

a very unpleasant experience, I can tell you.”
ə veri ʌn'pleznt ɪks'piəriəns, aɪ kən tel ju:.”

Storm saw a man standing in front of a large box with
stɔ:m sɔ: ə mæn stændɪŋ ɪn frʌnt əv ə la:dʒ bɒks wɪð

a hammer in his hand. He was using the hammer to
ə hæməɪn ɪn hɪz hænd. hi: wəz ju:zɪŋ ðə hæmə tu

open the box, on one of the sides of which were some
əʊpən ðə bɒks, ɒn wʌn əv ðə saɪdz əv hwɪtʃ wə: səm

very strange marks. Storm could not understand the
veri streɪndʒ mɑ:ks. stɔ:m kəd nɒt ʌndə'stænd ðə

meaning of the marks, but was told that the box had
mi:nɪŋ əv ðə mɑ:ks, bət wəz təʊld ðæt ðə bɒks həd

come from the East, and that the marks must be in
kʌm frəm ði i:st, ənd ðæt ðə mɑ:ks mʌst bi: ɪn

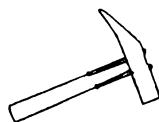
some strange eastern language. This man had worked
səm streɪndʒ i:stən læŋgwɪdʒ. ðɪs mæn həd wə:kɪt

there for twenty-five years and knew almost all that
ðeə fə twenti'faɪv jɪəz ənd nju: ɔ:l'mʌst ɔ:l ðæt

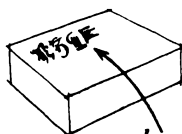
could be known about articles from the East; he was
kəd bi: nəʊn ə'baut a:tɪklz frəm ði i:st; hi: wəz

an expert at his work. There were a number of other
ən ɛkspə:t ət hɪz wə:k. ðeə wə:r ə nʌmbə əv ʌðə

He **bites**, he **bit**, he
 has **bitten** [baitz,
 bit, bitn].



hammer



marks

an expert = a man
 of great experience
 in his work

men, too, who on account of many years' experience
men, tu:, hu: ɔn ə'kaunt əv meni jɪəz iks'piəriəns

had become real experts at their work. Storm remained
həd bi'kʌm riəl eks'pə:ts ət ðeə wə:k. stɔ:m ri'meind

in front of the box that was being opened, as he wanted
in frʌnt əv ðə bɒks ðət wəz bi:iŋ ɒpənd, əz hi: wɒntɪd

to see what it contained. After a few minutes, he saw
tə si: hwɒt it kən'teind. ɑ:f'tər ə fju: minits, hi: sɔ:

that it contained many eastern articles which are usually
ðət it kən'teind meni i:stən ɑ:tɪklz hwɪtʃ ɑ: ju:ʒuəli

sold very cheap. The man, however, explained that
sould veri tʃi:p. ðə mæn, haʊ'evə, iks'pleind ðət

the articles were no longer so cheap as they used to be.
ði ɑ:tɪklz wə: nou lɔŋgə sou tʃi:p əz ðei ju:st tə bi:.

They had always paid insurance on the goods, so that
ðei həd ɔ:lweɪz peɪd ɪn'sʊərəns ɔn ðə guɔdz, sou ðət

if anything should happen to them on the way to Europe,
ɪf enɪθɪŋ ʃəd hæpən tə ðəm ɔn ðə wei tə jʊərəp,

the firm would receive money for the damage that had
ðə fə:m wəd ri'si:v mʌni fə ðə dæmɪdʒ ðət həd

been done, but both during and after the war, they had
bi:n dʌn, bət bəʊð dʒuəriŋ ænd ɑ:f'tə ðə wɔ:, ðei həd

had to pay a much higher insurance on goods from
həd tə peɪ ə mʌtʃ haɪər ɪn'sʊərəns ɔn guɔdz frəm

foreign countries.

fɔrɪn kʌntriz.

Storm noticed that the building had many large doors,

stɔ:m nəʊtɪst ðət ðə bɪldɪŋ həd meni la:dʒ dɔ:z,

through which he could see some lorries and also a
pru: hwɪtʃ hi: kəd si: səm lɒrɪz ænd ɔ:lsəʊ ə

horse and cart. Porters were busy taking goods to the
hɔ:s ænd kɑ:t. pɔ:təz wə: bɪzi teɪkɪŋ ɡʊdʒ tə ðə

doors, where the lorries and carts were being loaded.
dɔ:z, hwæə ðə lɒrɪz ænd kɑ:ts wə: bi:ɪŋ laʊdɪd.

Storm watched the porters at work for some minutes
stɔ:m wɒtʃt ðə pɔ:təz ət wə:k fə səm mɪnɪts

and then spoke to one of them, saying that it must be
ænd ðen spəʊk tə wʌn əv ðəm, seɪɪŋ ðæt ɪt məst bi:

hard work. "Yes, indeed it is, sir," the porter replied.
hɑ:d wə:k. "jes, ɪn'di:d ɪt ɪz, sə:," ðə pɔ:tə rɪ'plaɪd.

"And if I had one pound in money for every pound I
"ænd ɪf aɪ həd wʌn paʊnd ɪn mʌni fə evri paʊnd aɪ

have loaded in weight, I should be a very rich man!"
hæv laʊdɪd ɪn weɪt, aɪ ʃəd bi: ə veri rɪʃ mæn!"

Storm's new friend now offered to show him down to
stɔ:mz nju: frend naʊ ɔ'fəd tə ʃəʊ hɪm daʊn tə

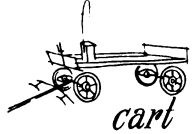
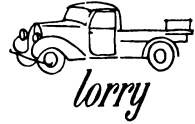
the ship that he wanted to visit. On their way they
ðə ʃɪp ðæt hi: wɒntɪd tə vɪzɪt. ɔn ðeə wei ðeɪ

saw a boat full of coal leaving the harbour. Storm: "The
sɔ: ə bəʊt fʊl əv kəʊl li:vɪŋ ðə hɑ:bə. stɔ:m: "ðə

ship is just as dirty and black as the coal itself." "Yes,
ʃɪp ɪz dʒɹast əz dɑ:ti ænd blæk əz ðə kəʊl ɪt'self." "jes,

black is the right colour for a ship carrying coal."
blæk ɪz ðə raɪt kʌlə fə ə ʃɪp kəriɪŋ kəʊl."

Storm: "Look, there are two small boats just in front
stɔ:m: "lʊk, ðeə tu: smɔ:l bəʊts dʒɹast ɪn frʌnt



load = put
goods on

indeed = really

carrying coal =
loaded with coal

Where is she bound
for = where is she
going to?

He ships,
he shipped,
he has shipped.

of her, pulling her along! They're called tugs, aren't
əv hæ:, pulɪŋ hæ:r ə'ləŋ! ðə kɔ:ld tʌgz, a:nt

they? Do you know where she is bound for?" "She is
ðei? du: ju: nou hwæə fi: iz baund fɔ:?" "fi: iz

bound for Scandinavia, for one of the countries with
baund fə skændi'neɪvjə, fə wʌn əv ðə kʌntri:z wið

little or no coal. The two small boats are called tugs
lɪtl ɔ: nou kəʊl. ðə tu: smɔ:l bəʊts a: kɔ:ld tʌgz

all right. They're pulling her out into the middle of
ɔ:l rait. ðə pulɪŋ hæ:r aʊt ɪntə ðə mɪdl əv

the river." "I don't understand why coal is shipped
ðə rɪvə." "aɪ daʊnt ʌndə'stænd hwaɪ kəʊl ɪz ʃɪpt

from London," said Storm, "because all the mines from
fɹəm lʌndən," sed stɔ:m, "bi'kɔ:z ɔ:l ðə maɪnz fɹəm

which the coal is taken are much farther north." "They
hwɪtʃ ðə kəʊl ɪz teɪkn a: mʌtʃ fɑ:ðə nɔ:θ." "ðei

usually ship the coal from some place near the coal
ju:ʒuəli ʃɪp ðə kəʊl fɹəm sʌm pleɪs nɪə ðə kəʊl

mines, but now and then it's shipped from London," the
maɪnz, bʌt naʊ ənd ðen ɪts ʃɪpt fɹəm lʌndən," ðə

man replied.

mæn rɪ'plaɪd.

When at last they reached the ship that Storm was
hwen ət la:st ðei rɪ:tʃt ðə ʃɪp ðæt stɔ:m wəz

looking for, he saw two sailors painting the side of the
lu:kiŋ fɔ:, hi: sɔ: tu: seɪləz peɪntɪŋ ðə saɪd əv ðə

ship with black paint. Storm turned to his friend, and
ʃɪp wið blæk peɪnt. stɔ:m tə:nd tə hɪz frend, ənd

said, "We have now passed five or six ships, and on
sed, "wi: həv nau pa:st faiv ə siks fips, ənd ɔn

all of them one or two sailors have been painting. Have
ɔ:l əv ðəm wʌn ə tu: seiləz həv bi:n peintiŋ. hæv

sailors nothing else to do but to paint the sides of their
seiləz nʌθiŋ els tə du: bət tə peint ðə saɪdz əv ðeə

ships?" He called to the two sailors, asking them if
fips?" hi: kɔ:ld tə ðə tu: seiləz, ɑ:skiŋ ðəm if

the captain was on board. On hearing that he was,
ðə kæptɪn wəz ɔn bɔ:d. ɔn hiəriŋ ðæt hi: wəz,

Storm said good-bye to his guide, and went on board.
stɔ:m sed gud'bai tə hi:z gaɪd, ənd went ɔn bɔ:d.

He found the captain standing with another officer of
hi: faʊnd ðə kæptɪn stændiŋ wið ə'nʌðər ɔfisə əv

the ship. When Storm had introduced himself, the
ðə fɪp. hwen stɔ:m həd intrə'dju:st him'self, ði

officer walked away, and Storm began to tell the cap-
ɔfisə wɔ:kt ə'weɪ, ənd stɔ:m bi'gæn tə tel ðə kæp-

tain what the manager had said. The captain soon got
tɪn hwɔt ðə mænɪdʒə həd sed. ðə kæptɪn su:n gɒt

very angry and said to Storm, "I'm a man who has
veri æŋgri ənd sed tə stɔ:m, "aɪm ə mæn hu: həz

sailed all the oceans of the world, and yet your manager,
seɪld ɔ:l ði ɒfənz əv ðə wɜ:ld, ənd jət jɔ: mænɪdʒə,

who sits in his office all day, sends me his foolish
hu: sɪts ɪn hi:z ɔfis ɔ:l dei, sendz mi: hi:z fu:lɪʃ

orders."

ɔ:dəz."



ocean = sea

grew (here) = got

trade = business

However, after Storm had explained in detail why it
haw'evə, a:ftə stɔ:m həd ɪks'pleɪnd ɪn di:teɪl hwaɪ ɪt

was important that the captain should never decide
wəz ɪm'pɔ:tənt ðət ðə kæptɪn ʃəd ˈnevə dɪ'saɪd

anything for the firm on his own, the captain grew
ənɪθɪŋ fə ðə fə:m ɔn hɪz oun, ðə kæptɪn grʊ:

quieter and promised to do only what he was told.
kwaɪətə ənd prəmɪst tə du: ɔnli hwət hɪ: wəz təʊld.

“I will do as your manager wishes,” he said. “The
“aɪ wɪl du: əz jɔ: mænɪdʒə wɪʃɪz,” hɪ: sed. “ðə

trade between England and my country is very great,
treɪd bɪ'twi:n ɪŋɡlənd ənd maɪ kʌntri ɪz veri greɪt,

and I hope that I may help to make the two countries
ənd aɪ haʊp ðət aɪ meɪ help tə meɪk ðə tu: kʌntriz

buy still more from each other, so that the trade may
bai stɪl mɔ: frəm i:tʃ əðə, sʌ ðət ðə treɪd meɪ

become still greater.”
bɪ'kʌm stɪl greɪtə.”

When Storm returned to the office, the manager thanked
hwen stɔ:m rɪ'tə:nd tə ðɪ ɔfis, ðə mænɪdʒə ʰæŋkt

him for what he had done.
hɪm fə hwət hɪ: həd dʌn.

EXERCISE A.

While Storm was speaking to Marshall, the manager
 — the — for him and said that he wanted him to go
 down to a — lying in the — and speak to the — of the

boat. The captain often decided things for the firm on his —, although he had no — to do so. The manager hoped that Storm would be able to — — what the captain said. He also asked him to go and pay the — on some goods. Then he wrote a — for the — of money that had to be paid in duty and told Storm to get a — for the cheque. Near the harbour Storm saw many buildings which were used for storing —. He learned that most of the grain which was — in the buildings was —, and that foreign countries — England with the greater part of her wheat. England has great cotton and woollen —. Storm's friend told him that as there were many — in the buildings, they had to keep cats, which were — on fresh meat. He had once been — by a rat. Storm saw a man using a — to open a box with strange — on its sides. The man was an — at his work and soon got it opened, and then Storm saw that it — many eastern articles. These goods were not so cheap now on account of the higher — that had to be paid. Through the doors of the building Storm saw some — and a horse and — which were being — with goods. A dirty — ship was leaving the harbour — along by two small boats. Storm learned that sometimes coal is — from London, and that this ship was — for Scandinavia. "But most of the coal is shipped from places near the coal —," Storm's new friend said.

EXERCISE B.

Write 200—300 words about a trade with a foreign country that has to do with your work in some way.

WORDS:
bell
ring
rang
rung
harbour
ship
ship (verb)
captain
responsibility
authority
make out
cheque
amount
receipt
stock
store (verb)
grain
wheat
supply (verb)
industry
machinery
rat
feed
fed
bite
bit
bitten
hammer
mark
expert
contain
insurance
lorry
cart
load
black

bound
pull
mine
paint
paint (verb)
sailor
officer
ocean
trade
indeed
Scandinavia
tug

There is sure to be something or other that you use in your work which comes from a foreign country. Tell us as much as you know about where it comes from, and how it gets here. Explain everything as well as you can in your own words.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

The words **who**, **whom**, **whose**, **which**, are called relative [*relativ*] pronouns. Here is an example to show you how they are used: It is the postman **who** brings the letters in the morning. In this sentence there are two parts: 'It is the postman' and 'who brings the letters in the morning'. The relative pronoun **who** in the last part is connected with and takes the place of the word 'postman' in the first part.

Now, these relative pronouns are not all used in the same way. From the following examples you will see that **who**, **whom**, **whose** are used about persons, and that **which** is used about animals and things. You will also notice that **who** is used about the person who does or is something, but that **whom** is used about the person to whom something is done or happens, while **whose** is used about the person to whom something belongs. Examples: The man **who** found the boy was very old. The dog **which** found the boy was very old. The woman **whom** I saw yesterday was very old. The dog **which** I saw yesterday was very old. The book **which** I bought to-day was very dear. There comes the girl **whose** brother is ill.

Instead of **who**, **whom**, and **which** in the examples given we might have put **that**, which may also be used as a relative pronoun, both when we speak of persons and when we speak of animals or things. Here are some examples: Here comes the man **that** lives in the new house. It was his wife **that** I saw yesterday. Is this the cat **that** your mother gave you?

‘My father, **whom** you saw yesterday, has left for London this morning.’ ‘Buckingham Palace, **which** is one of the finest buildings in London, is the home of the King and Queen.’ In these sentences, where the relative pronoun is connected with and takes the place of the name of a thing or person, well-known beforehand, we cannot use **that**, but only the pronouns **who** (**whom**, **whose**) and **which**.

Notice that you may leave out the relative pronoun altogether when it takes the place of the person, the animal, or the thing that something is done to. Examples: It was his wife I saw yesterday. Is this the cat your mother gave you?

Questions:

What words are called relative pronouns? ... Which relative pronouns do we use when speaking of persons? ... And which do we use when speaking of animals or things? ... What word may be used instead of the relative pronouns ‘who’, ‘whom’, and ‘which’? ... Can you give an example of how the pronoun ‘whom’ is used? ... What is the genitive of the relative pronoun ‘who’? ... Can you give an example of how it is used? ...

DIRTY BUSINESS

“What have you got there?” Marshall asked, noticing
“hʷɔt hæv ju: gɔt ðeə?” ma:fəl a:skt, noutisiŋ

something that Storm was taking out of his pocket as
səmθiŋ ðət stɔ:m wəz teikiŋ aut əv hi:z pɒkit əz

they sat down to their lunch. “Stamps,” came the
ðei sæt daʊn tə ðeə lʌnʃ. “stæmps,” keim ðə

reply. “Let’s have a look at them,” Marshall said,
riˈplai. “lets hæv ə luk ət ðəm,” ma:fəl sed,

with the ready interest of a fellow-collector. Storm
wid ðə redi intrist əv ə ˈfeloukəˈlektə. stɔ:m

placed the stamps on the table, and Marshall began to
pleist ðə stæmps ɔn ðə teibl, ənd ma:fəl biˈɡæn tə

go through them. He took up one at a time, held it
ɡo θru: ðəm. hi: tuk ʌp wʌn ət ə taɪm, held it

regard = look at

up to the light, and regarded it carefully from all sides.
ʌp tə ðə laɪt, ənd riˈɡɑ:dɪd ɪt keəfʊli frəm ɔ:l saɪdz.

among = in the
number of

At last he picked out three among them and asked,
ət lɑ:st hi: pikt aut θri: əˈmʌŋ ðəm ənd a:skt,

“Who sold them to you?” “Why?” Storm wanted to
“hu: sould ðəm tə ju:?” “hwaɪ?” stɔ:m wɒntɪd tə

know. “Is there anything wrong with them?” “I
nəʊ. “ɪz ðə r eniθiŋ rɔŋ wid ðəm?” “aɪ

should say there is,” Marshall replied. “As far as I’m
ʃəd sei ðə r ɪz,” ma:fəl riˈplaɪd. “əz fɑ:r əz aɪm

able to judge, there are at least three false stamps
eibl tə dʒʌdʒ, ðeər æt liːst priː fɔːls stæmps

among them." Storm regarded Marshall with surprise
ə'maɪ ðəm." stɔːm ri'gaːdɪd mɑːʃəl wɪð sə'praɪz

in his eyes: "But the owner of the stamp-shop told me
ɪn hɪz aɪzː "bət ði ɔʊnər əv ðə stæmpʃɒp təʊld miː

on his word of honour that they were real and worth
ɒn hɪz wəːd əv ɔnə ðæt ðeɪ wəː riəl ənd wəːθ

the money. I must say that I don't know very much
ðə mʌni. aɪ mʌst seɪ ðæt aɪ daʊnt nəʊ vərɪ mʌʃ

about stamps from that country, so I wasn't able to
ə'baʊt stæmps frəm ðæt kʌntri, səʊ aɪ wəznt eibl tə

judge for myself, but the owner was such a nice old
dʒʌdʒ fə maɪ'self, bət ði ɔʊnə wəz sʌʃ ə naɪs ould

man, and I really felt that he was telling me the truth
mæn, ənd aɪ riəli felt ðæt hiː wəz təliɪŋ miː ðə truːθ

truth = what is
not false

about those stamps. It was that little shop with
ə'baʊt ðəʊz stæmps. ɪt wəz ðæt litl ʃɒp wɪð

stamps and coins a few houses from the office, you
stæmps ənd kɔɪnz ə fjuː haʊzɪz frəm ði ɒfɪs, juː

know." "I thought so!" said Marshall. "Word of
nəʊ." "aɪ θɔːt səʊ!" sed mɑːʃəl. "wəːd əv

honour! That man doesn't know what the word
ɔnə! ðæt mæn dʌznt nəʊ hwɒt ðə wəːd

'honour' means. He won't tell the truth about anything
'ɔnə' miːnz. hiː wəʊnt tel ðə truːθ ə'baʊt enɪθɪŋ

if he thinks he can make money by lying about it. It
ɪf hiː θɪŋks hiː kæn meɪk mʌni baɪ laɪɪŋ ə'baʊt ɪt. ɪt

He **lies**, he **lied**,
he has **lied**
[laɪz, laɪd, laɪd]
to **lie** — lying

former = earlier

was the same with the former owner of the shop; he
wæz ðə seim wið ðə fɔ:mər ounər əv ðə ʃɒp; hi:

was just as bad as this one; you can't trust those two
wæz dʒʌst əz bæd əz ðis wʌn; ju: kɑ:nt trʌst ðəʊz tu:

either = any
 (of two)

men. You should never believe anything that either
men. ju: ʃəd nevə bi'li:v eniθiŋ ðət aiðər

of them says. I went there once to buy some Roman
əv ðəm sez. ai went ðeə wʌnz tə baɪ səm roumən

coins in order to start a collection. I didn't know much
kɔɪnz ɪn ɔ:də tə stɑ:t ə kə'leɪʃən. ai didnt nou mʌtʃ

about coins at that time and was not able to judge the
ə'baʊt kɔɪnz ət ðæt taɪm ænd wæz nɒt eɪbl tə dʒʌdʒ ðə

quality of two silver pieces the man showed me, so I
kwoʊli ti əv tu: silvə pi:sɪz ðə mæn ʃəʊd mi:, soʊ ai

had to trust his word that the coins were real old
həd tə trʌst hɪz wə:d ðət ðə kɔɪnz wə: riəl ould

Roman pieces. Some months later I was showing
roumən pi:sɪz. sʌm mʌnθs leɪtə ai wæz ʃəʊɪŋ

my new little collection to a friend, an expert in the
maɪ nju: litl kə'leɪʃən tu ə frend, ən ɛkspə:t ɪn ðə

matter of coins; and do you know what? He was
mætər əv kɔɪnz; ænd du: ju: nou hwɒt? hi: wæz

able to pick out two false pieces among the coins, and
eɪbl tə pik aʊt tu: fɔ:ls pi:sɪz ə'mʌŋ ðə kɔɪnz, ænd

they were the ones which that lying old man, the former
ðeɪ wə: ðə wʌnz hwaɪf ðæt laɪɪŋ ould mæn, ðə fɔ:mər

owner of the shop, had sold me. No, you can't trust
ounər əv ðə ʃɒp, həd səʊld mi:. nou, ju: kɑ:nt trʌst

either of those men. Now, of course, I've learned some
aiðər əv ðəʊz men. nau, əv kɔ:s, aiv læ:nd sam

of the ways to judge of the quality of a coin; when you
əv ðə weiz tə dʒʌdʒ əv ðə kwɒliti əv ə kɔɪn; hwen ju:

drop it, for instance, you can often hear if it's false or
drɒp it, fər ɪnstəns, ju: kən ɔ:fn hiər ɪf ɪts fɔ:ls ə

not." "But I don't understand their motives for doing
nɒt." "bət aɪ daʊnt ʌndə'stænd ðeə maʊtɪvz fər du:ɪŋ

motive = reason

things like that," Storm said. "Even if they do earn a
θɪŋz laɪk ðæt," stɔ:m sed. "i:vən ɪf ðeɪ du: ə:n ə

few shillings more one day by saying something which
fju: ʃɪlɪŋz mɔ: wʌn ðeɪ baɪ seɪɪŋ sʌmθɪŋ hwɪtʃ

isn't correct, they're sure to make their customers angry,
ɪznt kə'rekt, ðeə juə tə meɪk ðeə kʌstəməz æŋɡrɪ,

correct = right

so that they never return. Such business methods
sou ðət ðeɪ nevə rɪ'tə:n. sʌtʃ bɪznɪs meθədz

can't be very good." "No, of course not," Marshall
kɑ:nt bi: veri ɡud." "nou, əv kɔ:s nɒt," mɑ:fəl

replied. "I say, let's go and have some fun with him!
rɪ'plaɪd. "aɪ seɪ, lets ɡoʊ ənd hæv səm fʌn wɪð hɪm!

He doesn't know me; I might go in and try to make
hi: dʌznt nou mi:; aɪ maɪt ɡoʊ ɪn ənd traɪ tə meɪk

him buy back those stamps. Shall we?" "There's
hɪm baɪ bæk ðəʊz stæmps. ʃəl wi:?" "ðəz

no keeping you down," Storm answered with a laugh;
nou ki:piŋ ju: daʊn," stɔ:m ɑ:nsəd wɪð ə lɑ:f;

"but how will you do it?" "I don't quite know, yet.
"bət haʊ wɪl ju: du: ɪt?" "aɪ daʊnt kwaɪt nou, jət.

a man of property
= a rich man

perfect = which
cannot be better

perform = do

admire = look
up to

act = thing done

Persons like our kind friend with the false stamps
pə:snz laik auə kaind frend wið ðə fə:ls stæmps

usually have great respect for people with money, so
ju:zuali həv greit ris'pekt fə pi:pl wið mʌni, sou

perhaps I might tell him a story about being a young
pə'hæps ai mait tel him ə stɔ:ri ə'baut bi:ɪŋ ə jʌŋ

man of property, who has become interested in stamps
mæn əv prɒpəti, hu: həz bi'kʌm intristid in stæmps

and wants to buy a whole collection at once. What
and wɒnts tə baɪ ə haʊl kə'lekʃən ət wʌns. hwɒt

do you think of that?" Marshall asked. "The plan
du: ju: ɪŋk əv ðæt?" mɑ:ʃəl ɑ:skt. "ðə plæn

seems perfect to me," Storm answered. "I can find
si:mz pə:fɪkt tə mi:," stɔ:m ɑ:nsəd. "ai kən faɪnd

nothing wrong with it, if you think you can perform
nʌθɪŋ rɔŋ wið it, ɪf ju: ɪŋk ju: kən pə'fɔ:m

your part of the fun. I must say that I admire your
jɔ: pɑ:t əv ðə fʌn. ai mʌst sei ðæt ai əd'maɪə jɔ:

courage. I'm sure I couldn't go through with it without
kʌrɪdʒ. aɪm suə ai kʊdn't ɡəʊ θru: wið it wið'aʊt

showing by some word or act that I was making fun
ʃəʊɪŋ baɪ sʌm wə:d ɔ:r ækt ðæt ai wəz meɪkɪŋ fʌn

of him." "Well, to tell the truth," Marshall replied,
əv hɪm." "wel, tə tel ðə tru:θ," mɑ:ʃəl ri'plaɪd,

"I'm a little afraid, myself. And I have to support my
"aɪm ə lɪtl ə'freɪd, maɪ'self. ənd ai həv tə sə'pɔ:t maɪ

self-respect by telling myself that our motives in this
'selfrɪs'pekt baɪ telɪŋ maɪ'self ðæt əʊə məʊtɪvz ɪn ðɪs

foolish affair are perfectly pure! — Well, here we are
fu:lɪʃ ə'feə a: pə:'fɪktli pjuə! — wel, hiə wi: a:r

at the shop. You wait outside for me!"
ət ðə ʃɒp. ju: weɪt 'aʊt'saɪd fɔ: mi:!"

A quarter of an hour later Marshall appeared again at
ə kwɔ:tər əv ən aʊə leɪtə mɑ:ʃəl ə'piəd ə'geɪn ət

the door of the shop. He was smiling all over his face,
ðə dɔ:ər əv ðə ʃɒp. hi: wəz smaɪlɪŋ ɔ:l ɒvə hɪz feɪs,

so Storm could understand that everything had gone
səʊ stɔ:m kəd ʌndə'stænd ðæt evrɪθɪŋ həd gɒn

well. As soon as they had turned round the corner,
wel. əz su:n əz ðeɪ həd tə:nd raʊnd ðə kɔ:nə,

Marshall had to stop and have a good laugh, before
mɑ:ʃəl həd tə stɒp ænd hæv ə gud la:f, bɪ'fɔ:

he was able to tell Storm what had taken place in
hi: wəz eɪbl tə tel stɔ:m hwət həd teɪkən pleɪs ɪn

the shop.
ðə ʃɒp.

"First," Marshall said, "I told him my name was
"fɜ:st," mɑ:ʃəl sed, "aɪ təʊld hɪm maɪ neɪm wəz

Reginald Willoughby, just returned from India, where
redʒɪnəld wɪləʊbi, dʒʌst rɪ'tɔ:nd frəm ɪndjə, hwɛər

I had been hunting lions, or whatever it is one hunts
aɪ həd bi:n haʊntɪŋ laɪənz, ɔ: hwɒt'evər ɪt ɪz wʌn haʊnts

in India. There are lions in India, aren't there? This
ɪn ɪndjə. ðeər a: laɪənz ɪn ɪndjə, a:nt ðeə? ðɪs

seemed to make a deep impression upon him, especially
si:md tə meɪk ə di:p ɪm'presən ə'pɒn hɪm, ɪs'peʃəli



lion

when I began speaking about the stamp-collection that
hwen ai bi'gæn spi:kiŋ ə'baut ðə 'stæmpkə'lekʃən ðət

I was planning to start. His behaviour at once showed
ai wəz plæniŋ tə sta:t. hi: bi'heivjə ət wʌnz ʃaʊd

great respect, and he gave me to understand that he
ɡreɪt rɪs'pekt, ʌnd hi: ɡeɪv mi: tu ʌndə'stænd ðət hi:

would think it a privilege to be allowed to help me
wəd θɪŋk ɪt ə prɪvɪlɪdʒ tə bi: ə'laʊd tə help mi:

to find the very best stamps for my collection. I told
tə faɪnd ðə veri best stæmps fə mai kə'lekʃən. ai təʊld

him all about 'my life in India': that I had visited the
him ɔ:l ə'baut 'mai laɪf ɪn ɪndjə: ðət ai həd vɪzɪtɪd ðə

court of a famous prince in India and had been invited
kɔ:t əv ə feɪməs prɪns ɪn ɪndjə ʌnd həd bi:n ɪn'vaɪtɪd

to stay at his palace, where I lived like a prince among
tə steɪ ət hi: pælis, hwɛər ai lɪvd laɪk ə prɪns ə'mʌŋ

the real princes — he had seven sons and four brothers!
ðə riəl prɪnsɪz — hi: həd sevn sʌnz ʌnd fɔ: brʌðəz!

It was perfectly clear from my words and behaviour
ɪt wəz pə'fɪktli kliə frəm mai wə:dz ʌnd bi'heivjə

that I wasn't very clever and knew nothing at all about
ðət ai wəznt veri klevə ʌnd nʃu: nʌθɪŋ ət ɔ:l ə'baut

stamps. He brought out all kinds of stamps, and when
stæmps. hi: brɔ:t aʊt ɔ:l kaɪndz əv stæmps, ʌnd hwen

he saw that I showed an interest in those from India,
hi: sɔ: ðət ai ʃaʊd ən ɪntrɪst ɪn ðəʊz frəm ɪndjə,

he gave me a lot of information about them, only half
hi: ɡeɪv mi: ə lɒt əv ɪnfə'meɪʃən ə'baut ðəm, ɒnli ha:f

of which was correct; the rest had very little to do
əv hwɪtʃ wəz kə'rekt; ðə rest həd veri litl tə du:

with the truth. I 'believed' every word, of course,
wɪð ðə tru:θ. ai 'bi'li:vəd' evri wə:d, əv kɔ:s,

and I could see from the look in his eyes that he
and ai kəd si: frəm ðə luk in hɪz aɪz ðət hi:

thought he was going to get a nice bit of good English
þɔ:t hi: wəz ɡoʊɪŋ tə get ə naɪs bɪt əv ɡʊd ɪŋɡlɪʃ

money out of me. The more foolish my words were,
mʌni aʊt əv mi:. ðə mɔ: fu:lɪʃ maɪ wə:dz wə:,

and the more foolish things I did, the more he seemed
and ðə mɔ: fu:lɪʃ þɪŋz ai dɪd, ðə mɔ: hi: si:məd

to admire and respect me. I tell you, I had such trouble
tʊ əd'maɪər and rɪs'pekt mi:. ai tel ju:, ai həd sʌtʃ trʌbl

trying not to laugh that I was quite weak.
traɪɪŋ nɒt tə lɑ:f ðət ai wəz kwaɪt wi:k.

weak = not strong

"At last I thought the right time had come to take out
"ət la:st ai þɔ:t ðə raɪt taɪm həd kʌm tə teɪk aʊt

your false stamps. 'Look here!' I said; 'I've just bought
jɔ: fɔ:ls stæmps. 'luk hɪə!' ai sed; 'aɪv dʒʌst bɔ:t

some very fine stamps from a friend, but as you have
səm veri faɪn stæmps frəm ə frend, bət əz ju: həv

made me much more interested in Indian stamps now,
meɪd mi: mʌtʃ mɔ:r ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ɪndjən stæmps naʊ,

Indian = from
India

perhaps you would like to buy these?" He grew a bit
pə'hæps ju: wəd laɪk tə baɪ ði:z?' hi: ɡru: ə bɪt

cool at that, so I started for the door, as if I wanted to
ku:l ət ðæt, sʌʊ ai stɑ:tɪd fə ðə dɔ:. əz ɪf ai wɒntɪd tə

quite (here) =
I agree

drop the whole matter. At once, his humour changed,
drɒp ðə haʊl mətə. ət wʌns, hɪz hju:mə tʃeɪndʒd,

and he was all smiles again and doing his best to keep
ænd hi: wəz ɔ:l smaɪlz ə'geɪn ænd du:ɪŋ hɪz best tə ki:p

an important customer. 'Hem, how much have you paid
ən ɪm'pɔ:tənt kʌstəmə. 'hɛm, haʊ mʌtʃ hæv ju: peɪd

for them?' he asked, opening the drawer where he kept
fɔ: ðəm?' hi: ɑ:skt, ɒpənɪŋ ðə drɔ:ə hævð hi: keɪt

his money, as if he was going to pay for them at once.
hɪz mʌni, əz ɪf hi: wəz ɡəʊɪŋ tə peɪ fɔ: ðəm ət wʌns.

'A pound,' I replied, thinking it better to add something
'ə paʊnd,' aɪ ri'plaɪd, θɪŋkɪŋ ɪt betə tu æd sʌmθɪŋ

to the amount. 'Well, I can't give you as much as that,
tə ði ə'maʊnt. 'wel, aɪ kɑ:nt ɡɪv ju: əs mʌtʃ əs ðæt,

of course,' he answered; 'I have to sell them again, you
əv kɔ:s,' hi: ɑ:nsəd; 'aɪ hæv tə sel ðəm ə'geɪn, ju:

know.' 'Oh, quite,' I said; 'I understand that perfectly.
nəu.' 'ou, kweɪt,' aɪ sed; 'aɪ ʌndə'stænd ðæt pə:fɪktli.

Shall we say fifteen shillings? That will satisfy us both.'
ʃəl wi: sei fɪfti:n ʃɪlɪŋz? ðæt wɪl sʌtɪsfai ʌs bəʊθ.'

He had a hard time pulling himself together, poor
hi: həd ə hɑ:d taɪm pulɪŋ hɪm'self tə'ɡedə, puə

fellow! Just think of it — to have to take back the
fə'ləʊ! dʒʌst θɪŋk əv ɪt — tə hæv tə teɪk bæk ðə

false stamps he himself had sold! And he couldn't very
fɔ:ls stæmps hi: hɪm'self həd səʊld! ænd hi: kʊdn't veri

well say anything, because I might find out that it was
wel sei ɛnɪθɪŋ, bɪ'kɔ:z aɪ maɪt faɪnd aʊt ðæt ɪt wəz

he who had sold them. I was having the time of my
hi: hu: həd sould ðəm. ai wəz hæviŋ ðə taim əv mai

life, I tell you.

laif, ai tel ju:.

“Well, he tried to get out of paying any money to me,

“wel, hi: traid tə get aut əv peiŋ eni mʌni tə mi:,

of course, by suggesting that when I had decided what

əv kɔ:s, bai sə'dʒestiŋ ðət hwen ai həd di'saɪdɪd hwɔt

stamps I wanted, I could pay that amount less. ‘Yes,

stæmps ai wɒntɪd, ai kəd peɪ ðæt ə'maʊnt les. ‘jes,

just as you wish,’ I said; ‘that’s perfectly all right.

dʒʌst əz ju: wɪʃ,’ ai sed; ‘ðæts pə:fɪktli ɔ:l rait.

I can pay for everything when I come for the stamps,

ai kən peɪ fər evriθɪŋ hwen ai kʌm fə ðə stæmps,

then. You see, I should like you to put them in the

ðen. ju: si:, ai ʃəd laɪk ju: tə put ðəm ɪn ðə

right order for me, put them in a book, you know, and

rait ɔ:də fɔ: mi:, put ðəm ɪn ə buk, ju: nəʊ, ənd

all that. You do that, too, don’t you?” ‘Yes, it will cost

ɔ:l ðæt. ju: du: ðæt, tu:, daʊnt ju:?’ ‘jes, ɪt wɪl kɔst

a bit extra, of course,’ he answered. ‘Of course!’

ə bɪt ɛkstrə, əv kɔ:s,’ hi: ɑ:nsəd. ‘əv kɔ:s!’

I replied.

ai ri'plaid.

“We looked at the stamps again, and I told him some

“wi: lʊkt ət ðə stæmps ə'geɪn, ənd ai təʊld hɪm səm

more ‘facts’ about myself: I had returned to look after

mɔ: ‘fæktz’ ə'baut maɪ'self: ai həd ri'tə:nd tə lʊk ɑ:fteɪ

Chapter Fifty (50).

property = that
which is owned

some property in Scotland that had become mine after
səm prɒpəti in skɒtlənd ðæt həd bi'kʌm maɪn a:ftər

an uncle. To be sure, it was very strange for me to
ən ʌŋkl. tə bi: suə, it wəz veri streɪndʒ fə mi: tə

be back in England after having lived for more than
bi: bæk in ɪŋɡlənd a:ftə hæviŋ livd fə mɔ: ðən

a year at the court of an Indian prince. Out there,
ə jɪə ət ðə kɔ:t əv ən ɪndjən prɪns. aʊt ðeə,

there had been five men just to look after the rooms
ðeə həd bi:n faɪv men dʒʌst tə luk a:ftə ðə ru:mz

and the clothes of each guest at the palace, and to see
ænd ðə kləʊðz əv i:tʃ gest ət ðə pælɪs, ænd tə si:

that their masters had everything they wanted. But
ðæt ðeə mɑ:stəz həd evriθɪŋ ðeɪ wɒntɪd. bət

here I felt that I was hardly master of my own house —
hiə ai felt ðæt ai wəz ˈhɑ:dli mɑ:stər əv maɪ oun haʊs —

the housemaids did as they wanted to, etc.

ðə haʊsmeɪdz dɪd əz ðeɪ wɒntɪd tu, ɪt'setə.

“You should have heard me, Storm! One would think
“ju: ʃəd həv hə:d mi:, stɔ:m! wʌn wəd θɪŋk

that any one with just the usual amount of common
ðæt eni wʌn wɪð dʒʌst ðə ju:ʒuəl ə'maʊnt əv kɒmən

sense = under-
standing

sense would be able to see through my foolish behaviour
sens wəd bi: eɪbl tə si: pru: maɪ fu:lɪʃ bi'heɪvjə

He drank it all up
= he believed all
of it.

and my stories. But not he! He drank it all up!

ænd maɪ stɔ:riz. bət nɒt hi: hi: dræŋk ɪt ɔ:l ʌp!

“When I had ‘chosen’ a lot of expensive stamps and was

“hwen ai həd ˈtʃəʊzn ə lɒt əv ɪks'pensɪv stæmps ænd wəz

going to leave, I 'discovered' that I had very little
gouɪŋ tə li:v, ai 'dis'kʌvəd ðæt ai həd veri litl

money in my pocket, and said that as this was the case,
mʌni in mai pɒkɪt, ænd sed ðæt əs ðis wəz ðə keɪs,

perhaps it was just as well if he paid the fifteen shillings
pə'hæps ɪt wəz dʒʌst əz wel ɪf hi: peɪd ðə fɪfti:n ʃɪlɪŋz

now. He had to do it, of course, and here's the money!"
naʊ. hi: həd tə du: ɪt, əv kɔ:s, ænd hiəz ðə mʌni!"

"Nice work, Marshall, although a bit thick!" Storm
"naɪs wə:k, mɑ:ʃəl, ɔ:l'dou ə bit θɪk!" stɔ:m

a bit thick =
almost too much

was able to say at last, when he had stopped laughing.
wəz eɪbl tə sei at la:st, hwen hi: həd stɒpt lɑ:fɪŋ.

"I shouldn't have been able to perform an act like that.
"ai ʃudnt həv bi:n eɪbl tə pə'fɔ:m ən ækt laɪk ðæt.

I'm sorry I couldn't be there myself. He must have
aɪm sɔ:ri ai kʊdnt bi: ðeə maɪ'self. hi: mʌst həv

very little common sense to believe a story like that.
veri litl kɒmən sens tə bi'li:v ə stɔ:ri laɪk ðæt.

But no doubt he will be brought to his senses again
bət nəʊ daʊt hi: wɪl bi: brɔ:t tə hɪz sensɪz ə'geɪn

in a few days, when no Reginald Willoughby appears
ɪn ə fju: deɪz, hwen nəʊ redʒɪnəld wɪləbi ə'piəz

to buy his Indian stamps, and then he will begin to
tə baɪ hɪz ɪndjən stæmps, ænd ðen hi: wɪl bɪ'ɡɪn tə

put two and two together. Perhaps that will teach him
pʊt tu: ænd tu: tə'geðə. pə'hæps ðæt wɪl ti:tʃ hɪm

not to sell false stamps in future."
nɒt tə sel fɔ:ls stæmps ɪn fju:tʃə."

They decided to go home by train, but at the station
dei di'saidid tə gou houn bai trein, bət ət ðə steifən

a railwayman told them that there would be no trains
ə reilweimən təuld ðəm ðət ðə wəd bi: nou treinz

for the next two hours, as a train had run into an
fə ðə nekst tu: auəz, əz ə trein həd rʌn intu ən

empty carriage at the station and almost smashed it up.
empti kærɪdʒ ət ðə steifən ənd ɔ:lmoʊst smæʃt ɪt ʌp.

It had to be taken away piece by piece, which a lot of
ɪt həd tə bi: teɪkən ə'wei pi:s bai pi:s, hwɪtʃ ə lɒt əv

workers were now doing. The information that the
wɜ:kəz wə: nau du:ɪŋ. ði ɪnfə'meɪʃən ðət ðə

railwayman gave them made them change their plans.
reilweimən geɪv ðəm meɪd ðəm tʃeɪndʒ ðeɪz plænz.

But they were not sorry, as it was Saturday afternoon
bət ðei wə: nɒt sɒri, əz ɪt wəz sætədi ɑ:ftə'nu:n

and they were just in the humour for doing something
ənd ðei wə: dʒʌst ɪn ðə hju:mə fə du:ɪŋ sʌmʃɪŋ

else and not for going home. "I know the best way
els ənd nɒt fə gouɪŋ houn. "aɪ nou ðə best wei

of spending the next two hours," Storm said. "If it
əv spændɪŋ ðə nekst tu: auəz," stɔ:m sed. "ɪf ɪt

isn't too much trouble, I should like you to go with
ɪznt tu: mʌʃ trʌbl, aɪ ʃəd laɪk ju: tə gou wɪð

me to a good tailor's in the suburbs to order a new suit.
mi: tə ə gud teɪləz ɪn ðə sʌbə:bz tu ɔ:dər ə nju: sju:t.

It seems to me that I must have grown bigger since
ɪt si:mz tə mi: ðət aɪ məst həv grəʊn bɪgə sɪns

I came to England; my clothes don't fit me any longer.
ai keim tu ɪŋɡlənd; mai kləʊðz daʊnt fiː miː ɛni lɔŋɡə.

Another reason is that the manager has invited me to
ə'nʌðə riːzn ɪz ðæt ðə mænɪdʒə hæz ɪn'vɪtaɪd miː tə

dinner at his home in a month's time, and I should
dɪnər ət hɪz haʊm ɪn ə mʌnθs taɪm, ænd ai ʃəd

like to look my best that evening, in a really well-fitting
laɪk tə luk mai best ðæt iːvənɪŋ, ɪn ə riəlɪ wɛlfɪtɪŋ

suit." "Oh, I see!" replied Marshall. "You want to
suɪt." "oʊ, ai siː!" rɪ'plaid mɑːʃəl. "juː wɒnt tə

shine before the weaker sex in the person of Marion.
ʃaɪn bɪ'fɔː ðə wiːkə seks ɪn ðə pəːsn əv mæriən.

The old story of the stronger sex trying to make an
ði ould stɔːri əv ðə strɔŋɡə seks traɪɪŋ tə meɪk ən

impression on the weaker sex! But I thought the
ɪm'preʃən ɒn ðə wiːkə seks! bət ai þɔːt ðə

dinner was going to be a big affair with all the guests
dɪnə wəz ɡəʊɪŋ tə biː ə bɪɡ ə'feə wɪð ɔːl ðə ɡests

in dinner-jackets?" "No, it's just a small dinner-party
ɪn dɪnədʒækɪts?" "nəʊ, ɪts dʒʌst ə smɔːl dɪnəpɑːti

with only the family and two or three guests, so no
wɪð ɒnli ðə fæmɪli ænd tuː ə ˈpriː ɡests, səʊ nəʊ

stand-up collar will be necessary. I don't like stiff
'stænd'ʌp kɒlə wɪl biː nesɪsəri. ai daʊnt laɪk stɪf

collars. Not only are they so stiff that I can hardly
kɒləz. nɒt ɒnli aː ðeɪ səʊ stɪf ðæt ai kən hɑːdli

turn my head, but I feel that my whole body gets stiff
tɜːn mai hed, bət ai fiːl ðæt mai haʊl bɔːdi ɡets stɪf

sex

There are two
sexes, men and
women.



*stand-up
collar*

when I wear one, and I move about like a schoolboy
hwen ai wəə wʌn, ənd ai mu:v ə'baʊt laɪk ə sku:lboɪ
 at his first party." "Yes, I feel like that, too. So
ət hɪz fə:st pɑ:ti. "jes, ai fi:l laɪk ðæt, tu:. sou
 you're going to a family-dinner at the manager's! I
juə ɡoʊɪŋ tu ə fæmɪlɪdɪnər ət ðə mænɪdʒəz! ai
 wonder who put the idea into his head to ask you to
wʌndə hu: put ði aɪ'dɪə ɪntə hɪz hed tu ɑ:sk ju: tə
 dinner." "You're all wrong there. It's a privilege
dɪnə. "juər ɔ:l rɔŋ ðeə. ɪts ə prɪvɪlɪdʒ
 I've earned for myself by the clever work I've per-
aɪv ə:nd fə maɪ'self baɪ ðə klevə wə:k aɪv pə-
 formed and by my bright conversation!" "Oh, stop
'fɔ:md ənd baɪ maɪ braɪt kɔnvə'seɪʃən!" "ou, stɔp
 a second, stop a second, my poor friend!" Marshall
ə sekənd, stɔp ə sekənd, maɪ puə frend!" mɑ:fəl
 said. "Rule number one for 'the perfect gentleman':
sed. "ru:l nʌmbə wʌn fə 'ðə pə:fɪkt dʒentlmən":
 Never speak well of yourself, but leave that to others!"
nevə spi:k wel əv jɔ:'self, bʌt li:v ðæt tu ʌðəz!"

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:
 among
 regard
 false
 judge
 owner
 honour
 truth

Marshall — Storm's stamps carefully from all sides.
 He picked out three — them, saying that they were —,
 as far as he was able to —. Storm said that the — of
 the shop had told him on his word of — that the stamps
 were not false. Marshall said that the owner of the shop
 would not tell the — if he was able to make money by
 — instead, and that it was the same thing with the —

owner. "You cannot — such men; you cannot believe anything that — of them says," Marshall told Storm. Storm did not understand the shopkeeper's — for telling something which was not —. The owner of the shop had great — for people with money. Marshall said that he would tell him that he was a young man of —. The plan seemed — to Storm, but he asked Marshall if he thought he could — his part of it. When Marshall came out of the shop, he had to have a good — at what had happened. Marshall had told the shopkeeper that he had returned from —, where he had been hunting —. The — of the owner of the shop showed that he felt great — for Marshall, and he said he would think it a — to help him. Marshall told him about his — in India. He had visited the — of a famous prince. The more foolish — he performed, the more the owner of the shop seemed to — and respect him. At home he was hardly — of his own house, Marshall had said. The owner of the shop was not a man with common —. As it was Saturday afternoon, Marshall and Storm were just in the — for doing something else, and not for going home. A — told Storm and Marshall that there would be no trains for the next two hours. A lot of — had to take away a smashed carriage. Storm's clothes did not — him any longer. Men are called the stronger —, while women are called the — sex. Storm said that he did not like — collars.

lie
former
trust
either
rhotive
correct
respect
respect (verb)
property
perfect
perform
humour
laugh
India
lion
behaviour
privilege
life
court
act
admire
master
sense
railwayman
worker
fit
sex
weak
weaker sex
stiff
collar

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

In or near what town do you live? ... Has any interesting

event in the history of your country taken place there, or has any famous person lived there? ... Does the town do anything to tell tourists about this? ... What is the most important industry or trade in your part of the country? ... Are you connected with it in any way? ... What do you like best about your town? ... Is there anything you do not like so well there? ... Would you want any important things in the town to be different if you had the authority to decide what was to be done? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

The words **who**, **whom**, **whose**, **which**, **what**, are used to ask questions. When used in this way, they are called interrogative [*intə'rɒɡatɪv*] pronouns. Here are some examples: **Who** is this man? **Whom** did you visit? **Whose** book is this? **Which** of the children is the youngest? **What** are you looking for?

Who, **whom**, **whose**, are only used about persons, as may be seen from the examples given.

What before a noun is used about both things and persons. Examples: **What** meat is this? **What** man would do that? Without a noun following, **what** is used about things only: **What** do you want?

Which is used about both persons and things when it is followed by 'of' and a noun. Examples: **Which of the days** of the week is the first? **Which of the girls** has told you this story? Even if you leave out 'of' and the noun, you must use **which** if you ask about

one or more out of a limited number of persons or things. If, for instance, you speak to a person about some books that you have both read, you may ask: "**Which** do you like best?" You need not say "**Which of these books** do you like best?", because the person whom you are asking knows what books you are speaking of. Here are some more examples where you may use **which** without 'of' and a noun. Instead of saying "**Which of the chairs** do you prefer to sit in?", you may say "**Which** chair do you prefer to sit in?" Instead of "**Which of the boys** did you give the money?", you may ask "**Which** boy did you give the money?"

Questions:

Which of the interrogative pronouns are used about persons? ... Which of the interrogative pronouns are used about things? ... When is 'which' used? ... Which of the interrogative pronouns are the same words as some of the relative pronouns? ...

A LONDON FOG

It is often said that as soon as two Englishmen have
it iz ɔ:fn sed ðæt əz su:n əz tu: ɪŋglɪʃmən hæv

been introduced to each other and have said, "How
bi:n intrə'dju:st tu i:tʃ ʌðə ənd hæv sed, "hau-

do you do!" they always begin to talk about the
dʒu'du:l" ðei ɔ:lweɪz bɪ'ɡɪn tə tɔ:k ə'baut ðə

weather. This is not because the Englishman cannot
weðə. ðɪs iz nɒt bi'kɔz ði ɪŋglɪʃmən kənɒt

find any other subject to discuss, but because he wants
faind eni ʌðə sʌbdʒɪkt tə dɪs'kʌs, bʌt bi'kɔz hi: wɒnts

to get an impression of the person he is talking to,
tə get ən ɪm'preʃən əv ðə pə:sn hi: iz tɔ:kiŋ tu,

before he starts discussing other subjects. And with-
bi'fɔ: hi: stɑ:ts dɪs'kʌsɪŋ ʌðə sʌbdʒɪkts. ənd wɪð-

out doubt the weather is a good subject for discussion,
'aʊt daʊt ðə weðər iz ə gu:d sʌbdʒɪkt fə dɪs'kʌʃən,

because there is so much that can be said about it.
bi'kɔz ðeər iz sʌ mʌtʃ ðæt kən bi: sed ə'baut it.

Many people, for example, are surprised, upon coming
meni pi:pl, fə ɪg'zɑ:mpl, a: sə'praɪzd, ə'pɒn kʌmɪŋ

to London, to find that the sun shines at all. They
tə lʌndən, tə faɪnd ðæt ðə sʌn ʃaɪnz ət ɔ:l. ðei

expect to find either fog or rain. They have heard
ɪks'pekt tə faɪnd aɪðə fɒg ə rein. ðei hæv hə:d

so much about the London fog that they are of the
sou matʃ ə'bcut ðə lʌndən fɔg ðæt ðei a:r əv di

opinion that without a fog London is not London. And
ə'pinjən ðæt wið'out ə fɔg lʌndən iz nɒt lʌndən. ənd

Storm had been of the same opinion. But in London
stɔ:m həd bi:n əv ðə seim ə'pinjən. bət in lʌndən

he was told that there would be no fog before the
hi: wəz təuld ðæt ðeə wəd hi: nou fɔg bi'fɔ: di

autumn. When October came, it happened almost daily
ɔ:təm. hwen ɔk'təubə keim, it hæpnd ɔ:lmu:st deili

daily = every day

that he asked Marshall, "What about that fog? Do
ðæt hi: a:skt mɑ:fəl, "hʌwt ə'baut ðæt fɔg? du:

you think I'll ever see a fog while staying here?" As
ju: piŋk ail evə si: ə fɔg hwail steiŋ hiə?" əz

a rule Marshall did not answer that question, but one
ə ru:l mɑ:fəl did nɒt a:nsə ðæt kwestʃən, bət wʌn

morning at seven o'clock he stood, already dressed, at
mɔ:niŋ ət sevn ə'klɒk hi: stʊd, ɔ:l'redi drest, ət

the side of Storm's bed saying, "Now get up, young
ðə saɪd əv stɔ:mz bed seiŋ, "nau get ʌp, jʌŋ

man! As far as I remember it's you who have such
mæn! əz fa:r əz ai ri'membə its ju: hu: hæv sʌʃ

great belief in getting up early in the morning." "Yes,
greɪt bi'li:f in getiŋ ʌp ə:li in ðə mɔ:niŋ." "jes,

have belief in =
believe in

that is so, only my belief isn't quite so strong when
ðæt iz sʊ, ʌnli maɪ bi'li:f iznt kwait sʊ strɔŋ hwen

it's seven o'clock in the morning and I'm still in bed,"
its sevn ə'klɒk in ðə mɔ:niŋ ənd aɪm stɪl in bed,"

normal = usual

Storm said sleepily. "Sorry to have called you at this
stɔ:m sed sli:pili. "sɔ:ri tə həv kɔ:ld ju: ət ðis

early hour, but you'll no doubt thank me for it and
ə:li · auə, bət ju:l nou daʊt ʃæŋk mi: fə: it ənd

get out of bed quickly when I tell you that to-day at
get aʊt əv bed kwikli hwen ai tel ju: ðət tə'deɪ ət

last we've got our normal autumn weather. There's
la:st wi:v gɒt auə nɔ:məl ɔ:təm weðə. ðəz

a thick fog outside, and as far as I can see from our
ə ʃik fɒg 'aʊt'saɪd, ənd əz fɑ:r əz ai kən si: frəm auə

windows, it's even unusually thick."

wɪndəʊz, ɪts i:vən ən'ju:zʊəli ʃik."

Storm at once jumped out of bed. "What? A fog?

stɔ:m ət wʌns dʒʌmpt aʊt əv bed. "hwɒt? ə fɒg?

You don't say so!" He ran to the window to see for

ju: daʊnt sei sɔ!" hi: rən tə ðə wɪndəʊ tə si: fə

himself and then turned to Marshall, saying, "You're

him'self ənd ðen tə:nd tə mɑ:ʃəl, seɪɪŋ, "juə

quite right! Well, the London fog does exist, then."

kwɑɪt raɪt! wel, ðə lʌndən fɒg dʌz ɪg'zɪst, ðen."

Marshall: "Yes, in fact it has come about a month

mɑ:ʃəl: "jes, ɪn fækt ɪt həz kʌm ə'baut ə mʌnθ

earlier than usual, and, of course, we are not very

ə:lɪə ðæn ju:ʒʊəl, ənd, əv kɔ:s, wi: a: nɒt veri

pleased. Normally fogs come in November."

pli:zd. nɔ:məli fɒgz kʌm ɪn nɒv'embə."

An hour later Storm was sitting with the Marshalls

ən auə leɪtə stɔ:m wəz sɪtɪŋ wɪð ðə mɑ:ʃəlz

round the breakfast table. The light in the room was
raund ðə brekfəst teibl. ðə laɪt ɪn ðə ru:m wəz

on, because it was as dark as night outside. Storm:
ɒn, bɪ'kɔ:z ɪt wəz əz da:k əz naɪt 'aʊt'saɪd. stɔ:m:

“How dark it is — so late in the morning! It ought
“hau da:k ɪt ɪz — sou leɪt ɪn ðə mɔ:nɪŋ! ɪt ɔ:t

to be light at this time of the day.” Mrs. Marshall:
tə bi: laɪt ət ðɪs taɪm əv ðə dei.” mɪsɪz mɑ:fəl:

“Yes, it's extremely dark, but the fog is really quite
“jes, ɪts ɪks'tri:mli da:k, bət ðə fɒg ɪz riəli kwaɪt

unusually thick.” Mr. Marshall: “I am glad to say
ʌn'ju:zuali þɪk.” mɪstə mɑ:fəl: “aɪ əm glæd tə sei

that as a rule it's not so thick. Sometimes there's a
ðæt əz ə ru:l ɪts nɒt sou þɪk. sʌmtaɪmz ðəz ə

mist early in the morning. A mist is not so thick as
mɪst ə:li ɪn ðə mɔ:nɪŋ. ə mɪst ɪz nɒt sou þɪk əz

a fog. You will also find mists and fogs in the country.
ə fɒg. ju: wɪl ɔ:lsoʊ faɪnd mɪsts ənd fɒgz ɪn ðə kʌntri.

The mist is white and clean. This cannot always be
ðə mɪst ɪz hwaɪt ənd kli:n. ðɪs kənɒt ɔ:lwəz bi:

said of the fog, which may be extremely dirty in towns
sed əv ðə fɒg, hwaɪf meɪ bi: ɪks'tri:mli dɑ:ti ɪn taʊnz

with many factories. While discussing the subject of
wɪð meni fæktərɪz. hwaɪl dɪs'kʌsɪŋ ðə sʌbdʒɪkt əv

fog and mist, I . . .” “I'm afraid that Storm and I must
fɒg ənd mɪst, aɪ . . .” “aɪm ə'freɪd ðæt stɔ:m ənd aɪ mʌst

leave now,” Marshall interrupted his father. “It will
li:v naʊ,” mɑ:fəl ɪntə'rʌptɪd hɪz fa:ðə. “ɪt wɪl

mist = thin fog

dad = father

take us more time to reach the office to-day on account
teik ʌs mɔ: taim tə ˈri:tʃ ði ɔfis tə'dei ɔn ə'kaunt

of the fog." "All right, my boy, but you interrupted
əv ðə fɔg." "ɔ:l rait, mai bɔi, bət ju: intə'rʌptɪd

me in telling a little story. You shall have it before
mi: in telɪŋ ə lɪtl stɔ:ri. ju: ʃəl hæv ɪt bɪ'fɔ:

you leave." Marshall: "Well, who hasn't got time to
ju: li:v." ma:ʃəl: "wel, hu: hæznt gɒt taim tə

listen to a good story? Go on, dad!"

lɪsn tu ə gʊd stɔ:ri? ɡoʊ ɔn, dæd!"

Mr. Marshall: "A man that was very drunk, having
mɪstə ma:ʃəl: "ə mæn ðæt wəz veri drʌŋk, hævɪŋ

spent the whole evening drinking beer, called a taxi to
spɛnt ðə haʊl i:vniŋ driŋkiŋ biə, kɔ:ld ə tæksi tə

take him home. There was a thick fog, and the taxi
teɪk hɪm haʊm. ðeə wəz ə θɪk fɔg, ənd ðə tæksi

driver said that he couldn't possibly find his way to
draɪvə sed ðæt hi: kʊdnt pɒsəbli faɪnd hɪz weɪ tə

the suburb in which the man lived. However, the man
ðə sʌbə:b ɪn hwɪtʃ ðə mæn lɪvd. haʊ'evə, ðə mæn

offered him a pound if he would try; but the driver
ɔfəd hɪm ə paʊnd ɪf hi: wəd traɪ; bət ðə draɪvə

would not accept the offer. The man, who was so
wəd nɒt ək'sept ði ɔfə. ðə mæn, hu: wəz sʊ

drunk that he was quite unable to get on a bus or a
drʌŋk ðæt hi: wəz kwaɪt 'ʌn'eɪbl tə get ɔn ə bʌs ɔ:r ə

tram, increased his offer to five pounds. The driver
træm, ɪn'kri:st hɪz ɔfə tə faɪv paʊndz. ðə draɪvə

at last agreed to take him, but said that he must first
at la:st ə'gri:d tə teik him, bət sed ðæt hi: mʌst fə:st
 go upstairs for his brother. 'What do you want your
gou ʌpsteəz fə hiz brʌðə. 'hwɒt du: ju: wɒnt jɔ:
 brother for?' asked the man. 'I need a light in front
brʌðə fɔ:?' a:skt ðə mæn. 'aɪ ni:d ə laɪt ɪn frʌnt
 of the taxi,' the driver answered. 'Oh, you don't have
ɒv ðə tæksi,' ðə draɪvər a:nsəd. 'ou, ju: daʊnt hæv
 to go and get your brother; I can walk in front with
tə gou ənd get jɔ: brʌðə; aɪ kæn wɔ:k ɪn frʌnt wɪð
 the light myself,' said the man."
ðə laɪt maɪ'self,' sed ðə mæn."

A few minutes later Storm and Marshall were walking
ə fju: minɪts leɪtə stɔ:m ənd mɑ:fəl wə: wɔ:kɪŋ

towards the Underground station. They could hear
tə'wɔ:dz ðɪ ʌndəgraʊnd steɪʃən. ðeɪ kəd hɪə

towards = in the
direction of

different sounds in the middle of the road, but, with
dɪfrənt saʊndz ɪn ðə mɪdl ɒv ðə rəʊd, bʌt, wɪð

the exception of a girl on a bicycle, they could see
ðɪ ɪk'sepʃən ɒv ə gɜ:l ɒn ə baɪsaɪkl, ðeɪ kəd si:

nothing. A second or two later they could hear the
nʌθɪŋ. ə sekənd ə tu: leɪtə ðeɪ kəd hɪə ðə

sound of a bus moving in the same direction as the
saʊnd ɒv ə bʌs mu:vɪŋ ɪn ðə seɪm dɪ'rekʃən əz ðə

girl. Suddenly there was a loud noise, and they heard
gɜ:l. sʌdnli ðeə wəz ə laʊd nɔɪz, ənd ðeɪ hæ:d

the sound of the bus stopping, and, at the same time,
ðə saʊnd ɒv ðə bʌs stɒpɪŋ, ənd, ət ðə seɪm taɪm,

spot = place

It **hurts**, it **hurt**,
it has **hurt**
[hə:ts, hə:t, hə:t].



natural = normal

the voice of a girl crying for help. They ran to the
ðə vɔɪs əv ə ɡə:l kraɪɪŋ fə help. ðeɪ rʌn tə ðə

spot as fast as they could and found the girl lying in
spɒt əz fɑ:st əz ðeɪ kʊd ənd faʊnd ðə ɡə:l laɪɪŋ ɪn

front of the bus, while the bus-driver was getting
frʌnt əv ðə bʌs, hwaɪl ðə bʌsdraɪvə wəz ɡetɪŋ

down. The bicycle had been smashed. They could
daʊn. ðə baɪsɪkl həd bi:n smæʃt. ðeɪ kəd

see that the girl was hurt, for her left knee was wet
si: ðæt ðə ɡə:l wəz hə:t, fə hə: left ni: wəz wet

with blood, which was beginning to run down her
wɪð blʌd, hwɪtʃ wəz bɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ tə rʌn daʊn hə:

stocking, making it quite red. "She's very pale, and
stɒkɪŋ, meɪkɪŋ ɪt kwaɪt red. "ʃi:z veri peɪl, ənd

as far as I can see, her knee is rather badly hurt,"
əz fɑ:r əz aɪ kən si:, hə: ni: ɪz rə:ðə bædli hə:t,"

Marshall said to Storm in a low voice. They both
mɑ:ʃəl sed tə stɔ:m ɪn ə lou vɔɪs. ðeɪ bəʊθ

noticed that the natural colour had gone from the girl's
nəʊtɪst ðæt ðə nætʃərəl kʌlə həd ɡɒn frəm ðə ɡə:lz

face. "Something must be the matter with her head,
feɪs. "sʌmþɪŋ mʌst bi: ðə mətə wɪð hə: hed,

too, for she's holding her hand to it as if in pain,"
tu:, fə ʃi:z haʊldɪŋ hə: hænd tu ɪt əz ɪf ɪn peɪn,"

Storm said. Marshall now helped the bus-driver to
stɔ:m sed. mɑ:ʃəl naʊ helpt ðə bʌsdraɪvə tə

lift the girl up from the ground, and then he asked
lɪft ðə ɡə:l ʌp frəm ðə ɡraʊnd, ənd ðen hi: ɑ:skt

her, "Are you in much pain?" at the same time trying
hə:, "a: ju: in matʃ peɪn?" ət ðə seɪm taɪm traɪɪŋ

to stop the blood running down from her knee by tying
tə stɒp ðə blʌd rʌnɪŋ daʊn frəm hæ: ni: baɪ taɪɪŋ

his handkerchief round her leg. She was doing her
hɪz hændkətʃɪf raʊnd hæ: leg. ʃi: wəz du:ɪŋ hæ:

best to be brave, for she smiled and said in an almost
best tə bi: breɪv, fə ʃi: smaɪld ənd sed ɪn ən ɔ:lmʌʊst

natural voice, "Well, the pain in my head is bad enough;
nætʃərəl vɔɪs, "wel, ðə peɪn ɪn maɪ hed ɪz bæd ɪˈnʌf;

but I shall be glad if it is no worse than that. The
bət aɪ ʃəl bi: glæd ɪf ɪt ɪz nəʊ wə:s ðæn ðæt. ðə

bad, worse, worst

worst thing about it, I think, is that my leg is hurt; I
wə:st þɪŋ əˈbaʊt ɪt, aɪ θɪŋk, ɪz ðæt maɪ leg ɪz hɜ:t; aɪ

can't very well walk on it without help." "Then my
kɑ:nt veri wel wɔ:k ɒn ɪt wið'aʊt help." "ðen maɪ

friend and I will walk with you or take you in a taxi
frend ənd aɪ wɪl wɔ:k wɪð ju: ɔ: teɪk ju: ɪn ə tæksɪ

to the nearest doctor and have him look at your knee,"
tə ðə niərist dɒktə ənd hæv hɪm luk ət jɔ: ni:,"

Marshall said. "Oh, thank you so much. But it's
mɑ:ʃəl sed. "əʊ, θæŋk ju: sɒ mʌtʃ. bət ɪts

not necessary to go in a taxi. My own doctor lives
nɒt nesɪsəri tə ɡəʊ ɪn ə tæksɪ. maɪ ɒn dɒktə lɪvz

quite near, and with your help I can easily walk the
kwaɪt niə, ənd wɪð jɔ: help aɪ kæn ɪ:zɪli wɔ:k ðə

few steps to his house." Bus-driver: "I think we had
fju: steɪps tə hɪz haʊs." bʌsdraɪvə: "aɪ θɪŋk wi: həd



better have a policeman look into what has happened,
betə hæv ə pə'li:smən luk intə hwɒt hæz hæpnd,

too." Storm: "Then I'll try to get one, instead of
tu: stɔ:m: "ðen ail trai tə get wʌn, in'sted əv

going with my friend and the young lady."
gəʊɪŋ wið mai frend ənd ðə jʌŋ leɪdi."

Marshall and the girl now left, and Storm went for a
ma:ʃəl ənd ðə gɜ:l nʌw left, ənd stɔ:m went fɔr ə

policeman. And he had only walked five or six steps
pə'li:smən. ənd hi: həd ounli wɔ:kt faɪv ə sɪks steps

when suddenly one appeared. Storm told him what
hwɛn sʌdnli wʌn ə'piəd. stɔ:m tould him hwɒt

he knew about the accident, pointing towards the spot
hi: nju: ə'baut ði æksɪdənt, pɔɪntɪŋ tə'wɔ:dz ðə spɒt

where it had happened. The policeman wrote it all
hwɛər it həd hæpnd. ðə pə'li:smən raɪt it ɔ:l

down, after which he asked the bus-driver, "How did
daʊn, a:ftə hwɪtʃ hi: ɑ:skt ðə bʌsdraɪvə, "həʊ dɪd

the accident happen?" Bus-driver: "All I can tell
ði æksɪdənt hæpən?" bʌsdraɪvə: "ɔ:l aɪ kən tel

you is that suddenly I saw a girl on a bicycle crossing
ju: ɪz ðæt sʌdnli aɪ sɔ: ə gɜ:l ɔn ə baɪsaɪkl krɒsɪŋ

the street in front of the bus. Before I could stop,
ðə stri:t ɪn frʌnt əv ðə bʌs. bɪ'fɔ:r aɪ kəd stɒp,

the accident had happened. She was pushed over by
ði æksɪdənt həd hæpnd. ʃi: wəz puʃt ɒvə baɪ

the bus, but wasn't run over, and that, I think, was
ðə bʌs, bət wɔznt rʌn ɒvə, ənd ðæt, aɪ θɪŋk, wəz

pushed over =
 pushed so that
 she fell down

the only reason why she escaped death." Policeman:
ði ounli ri:zn hwai ji: is'keipt deþ. *pə'li:smən:*

death = the end
of life

"Judging from what you and this young gentleman
"dʒʌdʒɪŋ frəm hwət ju: ənd ðis jʌŋ dʒentlmən

have explained, her life must have been in great
hæv iks'pleɪnd, hæ: laɪf məst hæv bi:n ɪn greɪt

danger. I wonder if she knew that death was waiting
deɪndʒə. aɪ wʌndər ɪf ʃi: nju: ðət deþ wəz weɪtɪŋ

just round the corner, so to speak. It seems as if the
dʒʌst raʊnd ðə kɔ:nə, sou tə spi:k. ɪt si:mz əz ɪf ðə

young lady must have been thinking of anything but
jʌŋ leɪdi məst hæv bi:n ʃɪŋkɪŋ əv enɪθɪŋ bʌt

buses coming from behind, when she was crossing the
bʌsɪz kʌmɪŋ frəm bi'hænd, hwen ʃi: wəz krɔ:sɪŋ ðə

street. But we'll have to talk to her about all this
stri:t. bʌt wi:l hæv tə tɔ:k tə hæ:r ə'baut ɔ:l ðɪs

later in the day or to-morrow."
leɪtər ɪn ðə dei ɔ: tə'mɔ:rəu."

The bus-driver now started his bus again, and the
ðə bʌsdraɪvə naʊ stɑ:tɪd hɪz bʌs ə'geɪn, ənd ðə

policeman, having noticed that Storm was a foreigner,
pə'li:smən, hævɪŋ nəʊtɪst ðət stɔ:m wəz ə fɔ:ɪnə,

explained in a professional voice, "People ought to
ɪks'pleɪnd ɪn ə prə'fesənəl vɔɪs, "pi:pl ɔ:t tə

know that in a fog like this they're in danger of being
nəʊ ðət ɪn ə fɔg laɪk ðɪs ðeər ɪn deɪndʒər əv bi:ɪŋ

run down every time they cross the street. We have
rʌn daʊn evri taɪm ðeɪ krɔs ðə stri:t. wi: hæv

It burns, it burnt,
it has burnt
[bə:nz, bə:nt, bə:nt].

many bad accidents of different kinds at this time of
meni bəd æksidənts əv difrənt kaɪndz ət ðis taɪm əv
the year. Last autumn, I remember, two buses ran
ðə jɪə. lɑ:st ɔ:təm, aɪ rɪ'membə, tu: bʌsɪz ræn
into each other. Twenty-five people were hurt, five
ɪntu i:tʃ ʌðə. twenti'faɪv pi:pl wə: hæ:t, faɪv
of them so seriously that they did not live, but died
əv ðəm sou siəriəsli ðæt ðeɪ dɪd nɒt liv, bət daɪd
before they had reached the hospital. Besides, a fire
bɪ'fɔ: ðeɪ həd ri:tʃt ðə hɒspɪtl. bɪ'saɪdz, ə faɪə
started in one of the buses so quickly that the driver
stɑ:tɪd ɪn wʌn əv ðə bʌsɪz sou kwɪkli ðæt ðə draɪvə
had no time to get out and was burnt up together with
həd naʊ taɪm tə get aʊt ænd wəz bə:nt ʌp tə'geðə wɪð
the bus. Not a very pleasant way of meeting one's
ðə bʌs. nɒt ə veri pleznt wei əv mi:tiŋ wʌnz
death, I must say. Another bad accident ...” Storm,
deɪ, aɪ məst sei. ə'nʌðə bəd æksidənt ...” stɔ:m,
who had heard enough of accidents and death, inter-
hu: həd hə:d i'nʌf əv æksidənts ænd deɪ, ɪntə-
rupted, “I’m sorry, but I have to leave now to be in
'rʌptɪd, “aɪm sɔ:ri, bət aɪ həv tə li:v naʊ tə bi: ɪn
time for my work. Good morning!” And then he
taɪm fə maɪ wə:k. gud mɔ:niŋ!” ænd ðen hi:
hurried to the nearest Underground station.
hʌrɪd tə ðə niərist ʌndəgraʊnd steɪʃən.

While Storm had been talking to the policeman, Mar-
hwail stɔ:m həd bi:n tɔ:kiŋ tə ðə pə'li:smən, mɑ:-

shall and the girl had arrived at the doctor's and had
ʃəl and ðə ɡə:l həd ə'raɪvdət ðə dɒktəz and həd

told him what had happened. "Well, let's have a look
təʊld hɪm hwɒt həd hæpnd. "wel, lets hæv ə lʊk

at your knee," the doctor said, taking away the handker-
ət jɔ: ni:," ðə dɒktə sed, teɪkɪŋ ə'wei ðə hæŋkə-

chief. "I must say it is worse than I thought when
tʃɪf. "aɪ məst sei ɪt ɪz wɜ:s ðən aɪ þɔ:t hwɛn

I saw you enter the room." "The pain in it is much
aɪ sɔ: ju: ɛntə ðə ru:m." "ðə peɪn ɪn ɪt ɪz mʌtʃ

worse now than just after the fall. I hope it isn't
wɜ:s naʊ ðən dʒʌst ɑ:ftə ðə fɔ:l. aɪ hoʊp ɪt ɪznt

so badly hurt that an operation will be necessary."
səʊ bædli hə:t ðæt ən ɔpə'reɪʃən wɪl bi: nesɪsəri."

"No, you need not be afraid of that. There's no
"nəʊ, ju: ni:d nɒt bi: ə'freɪd əv ðæt. ðəz nəʊ

reason to use a knife on it. As to the pain, it's the
ri:zn tə ju:z ə naɪf ɒn ɪt. əz tə ðə peɪn, ɪts ði

effect of the fall, and it's always worse when some time
ɪ'fekt əv ðə fɔ:l, and ɪts ɔ:lweɪz wɜ:s hwɛn sʌm taɪm

has passed. But even if it's bad, you may be glad that
həz pɑ:st. bʌt i:vən ɪf ɪts bæd, ju: meɪ bi: glæd ðæt

no operation is necessary. An operation on the knee
nəʊ ɔpə'reɪʃən ɪz nesɪsəri. ən ɔpə'reɪʃən ɒn ðə ni:

is a very difficult thing and sometimes of no effect at
ɪz ə veri dɪfɪkəlt ʒɪŋ and sʌmtaɪmz əv nəʊ ɪ'fekt ət

all. If the worst comes to the worst, the knee becomes
ɔ:l. ɪf ðə wɜ:st kʌmz tə ðə wɜ:st, ðə ni: bi'kʌmz

stiff in such cases. But I'll give you something which
stif in sɑtʃ keisiz. bət ail giv ju: sʌmpɪŋ hwiʃ

will take the pain away very quickly." And indeed,
wil teik ðə peɪn ə'wei veri kwikli." ənd ɪn'di:d,

what the doctor gave her had a very rapid effect, for
hwɒt ðə dɒktə geɪv hə: həd ə veri ræpɪd ɪ'fekt, fər

in a few minutes the girl felt no pain at all.

ɪn ə fju: mɪnɪts ðə ɡə:l felt nəu peɪn ət ɔ:l.

Doctor: "Now take a taxi home and go to bed. I'll

dɒktə: "naʊ teik ə tæksi hoʊm ənd ɡoʊ tə bed. ail

come to-morrow and see how you are." The girl:

kʌm tə'mɔ:rəʊ ənd si: haʊ ju: ɑ:." ðə ɡə:l:

"Won't that be too much trouble to take for such a

"wəʊnt ðæt bi: tu: mʌʃ trʌbl tə teik fə sʌʃ ə

small matter as my bad knee?" Doctor: "Not at all!

smɔ:l mætər əz maɪ bæd ni:?" dɒktə: "nɒt ət ɔ:l!

I'm paying daily visits to a young man not far from

aɪm peɪɪŋ deɪli vɪzɪts tu ə jʌŋ mæn nɒt fə: frəm

where you live.".

hwɛə ju: liv."

When Marshall had got a taxi for the girl and taken

hwɛn mɑ:ʃəl həd ɡɒt ə tæksi fə ðə ɡə:l ənd teɪkən

leave of her, he started for the office by bus. When

li:v əv hə:, hi: stɑ:tɪd fə ði ɔ:fɪs baɪ bʌs. hwɛn

he got off again, he suddenly saw Storm walking in

hi: ɡɒt ɔ:f ə'geɪn, hi: sʌdnli sɔ: stɔ:m wɔ:kɪŋ ɪn

front of him. They walked together the rest of the

frʌnt əv hɪm. ðeɪ wɔ:kt tə'ɡedə ðə rest əv ðə

way to the office, telling each other what had happened
wei tə ði ɔfis, telɪŋ i:tʃ ʌðə hwɔt həd hæpnd

since they left the place of the accident. Marshall
sɪns ðei left ðə pleɪs əv ði æksɪdnt. mɑ:ʃəl

noticed that Storm used his handkerchief very often.
nəʊtɪst ðət stɔ:m ju:zd hɪz hæŋkətʃɪf veri ɔ:fn.

"You seem to have got a rather bad cold." Storm:
"ju: si:m tə həv gɒt ə rə:ðə bəd kəʊld." stɔ:m:

"Yes, I got it last night, because I didn't put on my
"jes, aɪ gɒt ɪt lɑ:st naɪt, bɪ'kɔz aɪ dɪdn't pʊt ɒn maɪ

coat when I went out for a walk. And the fog to-day
kəʊt hwən aɪ wɛnt aʊt fər ə wɔ:k. ænd ðə fɒg tə'deɪ

has had a bad effect on my lungs and throat. Since
həz həd ə bəd ɪfekt ɒn maɪ lʌŋz ænd θrəʊt. sɪns

you left me, I've been sneezing on account of the dirty
ju: left mi:, aɪv bi:n sni:zɪŋ ɒn ə'kaʊnt əv ðə dɜ:ti

air passing through my nose, and I've been coughing,
ɛə pɑ:sɪŋ θru: maɪ nəʊz, ænd aɪv bi:n kɔʃɪŋ,

too, because of the fog that has got into my mouth
tu:, bɪ'kɔz əv ðə fɒg ðət həz gɒt ɪntə maɪ maʊθ

and my throat. It's extremely unpleasant to know that
ænd maɪ θrəʊt. ɪts ɪks'tri:mli ʌn'pleznt tə nəʊ ðət

every time you take a breath, your lungs get filled with
evri taɪm ju: teɪk ə breθ, jɔ: lʌŋz get fɪld wɪð

dirty yellow fog. I shall be glad when this fog lifts
dɜ:ti jeləʊ fɒg. aɪ ʃəl bi: glæd hwən ðɪs fɒg lɪfts

so that I can once more take a breath of real fresh
səʊ ðət aɪ kən wʌns mɔ: teɪk ə breθ əv rɪəl freʃ



air." Marshall: "We're used to it ourselves, but it's only
εə. *ma:ʃəl:* "wɪə ju:st tu it auə'selvz, bət its ounli

natural that you should find it very unpleasant. I'm
nætʃərəl ðət ju: ʃəd faɪnd it veri ʌn'pleznt. aɪm

extremely sorry that your cold is so bad that you must
iks'tri:mli sɔ:ri ðət jɔ: kould ɪz sou bəd ðət ju: məst

spend most of your time with your handkerchief to
spend moust əv jɔ: taɪm wɪð jɔ: hən'kətʃɪf tə

your face, sneezing or coughing."

jɔ: feɪs, sni:zɪŋ ɔ: kɔ:fɪŋ."

Storm: "So am I, but I hope it'll soon be over. — This
stɔ:m: "sou əm aɪ, bət aɪ haʊp ɪtl su:n bi: ɒvə. — ðɪs

accident that happened to the girl makes me think of
æksɪdənt ðət hæpnd tə ðə ɡɜ:l meɪks mi: ɪŋk əv

another accident because of bad weather. It was one
ə'nʌðər æksɪdənt bi'kɔ:z əv bəd weðə. ɪt wəz wʌn

evening this summer when Mr. Miller, my friends, and
i:vɪŋ ðɪs sʌmə hwen mɪstə mɪlə, maɪ frendz, ənd

I were returning from a trip into the country. The
aɪ wə: rɪ'tə:nɪŋ frəm ə trɪp ɪntə ðə kʌntri. ðə

wind began to blow and the rain to fall, and there
wɪnd bɪ'ɡæn tə bləʊ ənd ðə reɪn tə fɔ:l, ənd ðeə

was a real storm. When the storm had lasted for some
wəz ə riəl stɔ:m. hwen ðə stɔ:m həd lɑ:stɪd fə sʌm

minutes, lightning was seen again and again, each time
mɪnɪts, laɪtnɪŋ wəz si:n ə'geɪn ənd ə'geɪn, i:tʃ taɪm

making the sky as bright as day. At the same time
meɪkɪŋ ðə skaɪ əz braɪt əz deɪ. ət ðə seɪm taɪm



lightning

the sound of thunder came nearer and nearer, and at
ðə saund əv þʌndə keɪm niərə ənd niərə, ənd at
last it was so loud that we could hardly hear ourselves
lɑːst ɪt wəz sou laud ðæt wiː kəd hɑːdli hiər ʌwə'selvz
speaking. We hurried to the nearest farmhouse and
spiːkiŋ. wiː hʌrɪd tə ðə niərist fɑːmhaʊs ənd
stayed there as long as the thunderstorm lasted. The
steɪd ðeə əz lɔŋ əz ðə þʌndəstɔːm lɑːstɪd. ðə
people at the farm got very nervous when they saw
piːpl ət ðə fɑːm ɡɒt veri nəːvəs hwen ðeɪ sɔː
the lightning and heard the thunder, because their maid
ðə laɪtnɪŋ ənd həːd ðə þʌndə, bi'kɔːz ðeə meɪd
was out in it. It was not without reason that they
wəz aʊt ɪn ɪt. ɪt wəz nɒt wið'aʊt riːzn ðæt ðeɪ
were nervous, for when the thunderstorm had passed,
wəː nəːvəs, fə hwen ðə þʌndəstɔːm həd pɑːst,
she was found in a field, struck by lightning and badly
ʃiː wəz faʊnd ɪn ə fiːld, strʌk baɪ laɪtnɪŋ ənd bədli
burnt. I'm glad to say that she didn't die, but she had
bəːnt. aɪm glæd tə seɪ ðæt ʃiː dɪdnt daɪ, bət ʃiː həd
to stay in bed for several months. Only the other day
tə steɪ ɪn bed fə severəl mʌnθs. ɒnli ðɪ ʌðə ðeɪ
I heard that she's all right again now."
aɪ həːd ðæt ʃiːz ɔːl raɪt ə'geɪn naʊ."

EXERCISE A.

The weather is a — which is very often discussed. Storm
had great — in getting up early in the morning. Fog

WORDS:
subject

belief
normal
burn
burnt
mist
interrupt
drunk
towards
sound
spot
knee
hurt
blood
natural
pain
worse
worst
doctor
policeman
accident
danger
death
die
died
operation
effect
fall
breath
throat
sneeze
cough
storm
lightning
thunderstorm
thunder
dad

belongs to the — autumn weather in London. The light in the dining-room was on as it was as — as night outside. Thin fog is called —. In towns with many factories the fog may be — dirty. Marshall — his father in telling a story about a man who was very —, because he had got too much to drink. When Marshall and Storm walked — the Underground station, they heard the — of a bus stopping. They ran to the — and found a girl whose left — was badly —. The — was beginning to run down her stocking. The colour of her face did not look —. The — in her knee was — than that in her head. Marshall went with the girl to the —, while Storm went for a — to tell him about the —. The girl's life had been in great —. The end of life is called —. When you cannot live any longer, you —. An — on the knee is very unpleasant and sometimes of no —. The pain in the girl's knee was an effect of the —. The doctor paid — visits to a young man near the girl's home. Every time Storm took a —, he got his lungs and — filled with fog. On account of a bad cold he had been coughing and — the whole morning. When the wind blows hard and the rain falls heavily, it is called a —. — is seen in the sky during a —. When lightning is seen in the sky, you often hear —. Storm told Marshall about a maid who had been struck by lightning and badly —.

EXERCISE B.

In chapter 48, Exercise D, there was a letter from Storm to Wood. Please answer this letter as if you were Wood.

Build a story round some event that Wood wants to tell Storm about, and make use of the following words: Trip — country — storm — lightning — rain — tree — wet — cart — farmer — cough — sneeze — extremely — unpleasant.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

There are some words which we call the indefinite pronouns. They are words like **no**, **none**, **some**, **any**, **every**, **each**.

No is used as an adjective. Example: I have **no** money. If we want to use it as a noun, we do not say **no**, but **none**. Example: I have money, but you have **none**.

When used as a noun about persons, **no** becomes **nobody** or **no one**, and when used about things it often becomes **nothing**. Examples: **Nobody (no one)** was at home. There was **nothing** I could do for him. Just the same is the case with the pronouns **some**, **any**, **every**. When used as nouns about persons, they have the forms **somebody (some one)**, **anybody (any one)**, **everybody (every one)**, and when used as nouns about things their forms are **something**, **anything**, **everything**.

There is a difference in the use of **any** and **some**, although the two words mean almost the same thing. **Any (anything, anybody)** is especially found after 'if' and 'whether', in questions, and in sentences with 'not'. **Some (somebody, something)** is used in other sentences. Here are some examples: If I had **any** cigars, I would

give you **some** of them. Has **anybody** been here? **If anybody** has been here, tell me. She has **not** been able to find **anything**. Have you got **any** money? No, I have **not** got **any** money; have you? Yes, I have got **some** money.

Each is used to say something about every one of a number of persons or things. **Every** is used to say something about all of a number of persons or things. Examples: He read a new book **each** day **of the week** he stayed at our house. He goes to school **every** day. **Each of the three sisters** got a new frock for Christmas. **Everybody** has to learn to read and write.

Questions:

What indefinite pronouns do you know? ... When do we use 'no', and when do we use 'none'? ... What two words are added to some of the indefinite pronouns when they are used as nouns about persons? ... What is added when they are used about things? ... In what kinds of sentences do we use the word 'any'? ... Can you give two examples of the use of 'some' and 'any'? ... In what case is the indefinite pronoun 'each' used? ... Can you make two sentences where the pronouns 'each' and 'every' are used in the right way? ...

ENGLISH HOLIDAYS

"It's been a long day to-day," Storm said, as he and
"its bi:n ə lɒŋ dei tə'dei," stɔ:m sed, əz hi: ənd

Marshall left the office late one evening at the
ma:fəl left ði ɔfis leit wʌn i:vnɪŋ ət ðə

beginning of December, "and a hard week, too; I'm
bi'giniŋ əv di'sembə, "ənd ə ha:d wi:k, tu:; aim

really feeling quite tired to-night. I wish I could
riəli fi:liŋ kwait təiəd tə'nait. ai wiʃ ai kəd

take a few days off from work. Two or three days'
teik ə fju: deiz ɔ:f frəm wə:k. tu: ə pri: deiz

complete rest, with nothing to do but read the papers
kəm'pli:t rest, wið nəθɪŋ tə du: bət ri:d ðə peɪpəz

and go for a walk now and then, is just what I need;
ən gou fər ə wɔ:k nau ən ðen, iz dʒʌst hwɒt ai ni:d;

my head feels quite empty. Are there any holidays
mai hed fi:lz kwait emti. a: ðeər eni hɒlɪdɪz

between now and Christmas, I wonder?" "No, there
bi'twi:n nau ən krisməs, ai wʌndə?" "nou, ðeər

aren't any till Christmas," Marshall replied, "so you'll
a:nt eni til krisməs," ma:fəl ri'plaid, "sou ju:l

have to wait until then. It's a general rule at the
hæv tə weit ʌn'til ðen. its ə dʒenərəl ru:l ət ði

office that nobody asks for days off during December,
ɔfis ðət nəʊbədi ə:sks fə deiz ɔ:f dʒuəriŋ di'sembə,

because we're always so busy during the weeks before
bɪ'kɔz wiə ɔ:lwəz sou bizi dʒuəriŋ ðə wi:ks bi'fɔ:

Christmas. But I must say that generally December
krisməs. bət ai mʌst sei ðət dʒenərəli di'sembər

is not so busy as this year, so I'm looking forward to
ɪz nɒt sou bizi əz ðis jɪə, sou aim lʊkiŋ fɔ:wəd tə

the Christmas holidays myself. We always have such
ðə krisməs hɒlɪdɪz maɪ'self. wi: ɔ:lwəz hæv sʌtʃ

a good time at Christmas; we make it a family affair,
ə gud taim ət krisməs; wi: meɪk ɪt ə fæmili ə'feə,

you know. My sister will be there for dinner on
ju: nou. maɪ sistə wɪl bi: ðeə fə dɪnər ɔn

Christmas Day, with her husband and her baby. It's
krisməs dei, wið hə: hʌzbənd ən hə: beɪbi. ɪts

a very long time since I saw them, and I'm looking
ə veri lɒŋ taim sɪns ai sɔ: ðəm, ənd aim lʊkiŋ

forward to spending some time with them again, and
fɔ:wəd tə spændɪŋ səm taim wið ðəm ə'geɪn, ən

to having two whole days off from work." "Only
tə hævɪŋ tu: houl deɪz ɔ:f frəm wə:k." "əʊnli

two?" Storm asked. "In my country we have two
tu:?" stɔ:m ə'skt. "ɪn maɪ kʌntri wi: hæv tu:

and a half, as all offices and shops generally close
ənd ə hʌf, əz ɔ:l ɔfɪsɪz ən ʃɒps dʒenərəli kləʊz

about twelve o'clock on the 24th." "No, we keep
ə'baʊt twelv ə'klɒk ɔn ðə twenti'fɔ:p." "nou, wi: ki:p

the usual closing hours on the day before Christmas,"
ðə ju:ʒʊəl kləʊzɪŋ aʊəz ɔn ðə dei bi'fɔ: krisməs,"

Marshall replied. "The shops and streets will be full
ma:ʃəl ri'plaid. "ðə ʃɒps ən stri:t s wil bi: ful

of people late in the afternoon. In front of the shop
əv pi:pl leit in ði a:ftə'nu:n. in frant əv ðə ʃɒp

windows there will be crowds of people looking at the
windouz ðeə wil bi: kraudz əv pi:pl lukiŋ ət ðə

different things shown in the windows. Everybody
difrənt þiŋz ʃəʊn in ðə windouz. evribɒdi

will want to see as much as possible, to help them to
wil wɒnt tə si: əz mʌʃ əz pɒsəbl, tə help ðəm tə

make the difficult last minute decisions about Christmas
meik ðə difɪkəlt la:st minit di'si:ʒənz ə'baʊt krɪsməs

presents for Uncle Fred or Aunt Jane.
preznts fɔr ʌŋkl fred ɔ:r a:nt dʒein.

"There will be children crying because they can't see
"ðeə wil bi: tʃɪldrən kraɪiŋ bi'kɔ:z ðei kɑ:nt si:

anything, and mothers pushing them forward through
eniθiŋ, ən mʌðəz puʃiŋ ðəm fɔ:wəd þru:

the crowd, so that the little ones may get a chance to
ðə kraʊd, sɒ ðət ðə litl wʌnz mei get ə tʃɑ:ns tə

look at the fine things in the windows, too. And
lʊk ət ðə faɪn þiŋz in ðə windouz, tu:. ənd

everybody will be having a lovely time! I'm sorry
evribɒdi wil bi: hæviŋ ə lʌvli taim! aɪm sɒri

Christmas is over so soon — only two days, Christmas
krɪsməs ɪz oʊvə sɒ sʊ:n — ɒnli tu: deɪz, krɪsməs

Day and Boxing Day." "Boxing Day!" What a
deɪ ən bɒksɪŋ deɪ." "bɒksɪŋ deɪ! hwɒt ə

Christmas box =
Christmas present

He rises, he rose,
he has risen [raiziz,
rouz, rɪzn].

object = thing

strange name!" Storm said. "Yes, but easy to explain,"
streindʒ neim!" *stɔ:m sed.* "jes, bət i:zi tu iks'plein,"

Marshall replied. "You see, on the 26th of
mɑ:fəl ri'plaid. "ju: si:, ɔn ðə twenti'siksθ əv

December the postman, the milkman, etc., used to
dɪ'sembə ðə pəʊstmən, ðə milkmən, i'tsetrə, ju:st tə

come round to all the houses and get their 'Christmas
kʌm raʊnd tu ɔ:l ðə haʊzɪz ən get ðəə 'krɪsməs

boxes'. They still come, but nowadays the presents
bɒksɪz'. ðeɪ stɪl kʌm, bət naʊədeɪz ðə preznts

no longer consist of real boxes with things in them,
nəʊ lɒŋɡə kən'sɪst əv riəl bɒksɪz wɪð ʒɪŋz ɪn ðəm,

but instead they usually consist of a small amount
bət ɪn'sted ðeɪ ju:ʒʊəli kən'sɪst əv ə smɔ:l ə'maʊnt

of money." "I see! Yes, that explains it, of course,"
əv mʌni." "aɪ si:! jes, ðæt iks'pleɪnz ɪt, əv kɔ:s,"

Storm answered.

stɔ:m ɑ:nsəd.

Storm and Marshall had reached their bus now, and
stɔ:m ænd mɑ:fəl həd ri:tʃt ðəə bʌs naʊ, ænd

as they got on board, two ladies rose from their seats
əz ðeɪ ɡɒt ɔn bɔ:d, tu: leɪdɪz rəʊz frəm ðəə si:t

to get off when the bus stopped next time. One of
tə get ɔ:f hwen ðə bʌs stɒpt nekst taɪm. wʌn əv

them dropped her bag when she rose, and all the
ðəm drɒpt hə: bæɡ hwen ʃi: rəʊz, ænd ɔ:l ðə

different objects in it with which women fill their bags
dɪfrənt ɒbdʒɪkts ɪn ɪt wɪð huwɪʃ wɪmɪn fɪl ðəə bæɡz

fell out on the floor. "Let me help you," said Storm,
fel aut ɔn ðə flɔː. "let miː help juː," sed stɔːm,
 and began to pick up keys, coins, and a handkerchief
ænd bi'gæn tə pik ʌp kiːz, kɔɪnz, ænd ə hæŋkətʃɪf
 from the floor. "How kind of you! Thank you very
fɹəm ðə flɔː. "hau kaɪnd əv juː! þæŋk juː veri
 much!" she replied, hurrying after the other lady with
mʌtʃ!" *ʃiː ri'plaɪd, hʌriɪŋ aːftə ði ʌðə leɪdi wið*
 her hands full of all sorts of strange objects, which
həː hændz ful əv ɔːl sɔːts əv streɪndʒ ɔbdʒɪkts, hwɪtʃ
 she had no time to put back into the bag. "This is
ʃiː həd nou taɪm tə put bæk ɪntə ðə bæɡ. "ðɪs ɪz
 almost too good to be true," Marshall said, as he made
ɔːlmʌst tuː guːd tə biː truː," mɑːʃəl sed, əz hiː meɪd
 himself comfortable on the seat. "I mean, to be able
hɪm'self kʌɪnfətəbl ɔn ðə siːt. "aɪ miːn, tə biː eɪbl
 to sit down all the way home in an almost empty bus.
tə sit daʊn ɔːl ðə weɪ hoʊm ɪn ən ɔːlmʌst ɛmtɪ bʌs.
 The trips to and from the office generally consist of
ðə trips tu ən frɔm ði ɔfis dʒenərəli kən'sɪst əv
 long half-hours of standing on my feet — and other
lɔŋ hɑːfauəz əv stændɪŋ ɔn maɪ fiːt — ænd ʌðə
 people standing on them, too — on my feet, I mean!
piːpl stændɪŋ ɔn ðəm, tuː — ɔn maɪ fiːt, aɪ miːn!
 And if I do get a seat now and then, some old lady is
ænd ɪf aɪ duː get ə siːt nau ən ðen, sʌm ould leɪdi ɪz
 sure to enter the bus, so that I have to rise and offer
ʃʊə tu ɛntə ðə bʌs, sʊ ðæt aɪ hæv tə raɪz ænd ɔfə

it to her.”

it tu hæ:.”

“The perfect gentleman, aren’t you?” Storm said,
“ðə pə:fikt dzentlmən, a:nt ju:?” stɔ:m sed,

smiling. “Talking about gentlemen, I wonder if you
smailiŋ. “tɔ:kiŋ ə'baut dzentlmən, ai wʌndər if ju:

can help me to come to a decision,” he continued,
kən help mi: tə kʌm tu ə di'sizən,” hi: kən'tinju:d,

pulling a small object out of his pocket. When Storm
puliŋ ə smɔ:l ɔbdʒikt aut əv hiz pɒkit. hwen stɔ:m

showed it to him, Marshall saw that it was a very
ʃəʊd it tu him, mɑ:fəl sɔ: ðæt it wəz ə veri

small book of songs, in fine leather with gold letters
smɔ:l buk əv sɔŋz, in faɪn leðə wið ɡəʊld letəz

printed on the back. “I bought it some days ago for
prɪntɪd ɔn ðə bæk. “ai bɔ:t it sʌm deɪz ə'ɡəʊ fə

Marion. But then the thought came to me that perhaps
mæriən. bət ðen ðə þɔ:t keɪm tə mi: ðæt pə'hæps

she would think it foolish of me to give her a thing
ʃi: wəd þɪŋk it fu:lɪʃ əv mi: tə ɡɪv hæ:r ə þɪŋ

like that, and now I can’t come to a decision whether
laɪk ðæt, ən naʊ ai kɑ:nt kʌm tu ə di'sizən hweðə

to give it to her or not. I wouldn’t like to look foolish
tə ɡɪv it tu hæ:r ɔ: nɒt. ai wʊdn't laɪk tə lʊk fu:lɪʃ

in her eyes.” To his surprise, Marshall seemed to think
ɪn hæ:r aɪz.” tə hiz sə'praɪz, mɑ:fəl si:mɪd tə þɪŋk

this very funny. “Excuse me, old man, but I must
ðɪs veri fʌni. “ɪks'kju:z mi:, ould mæn, bət ai mʌst

laugh when I see your serious face. Of course you
la:f hwen ai si: jɔ: siəriəs feis. əv kɔ:s ju:

can give her the book! I'm really beginning to believe
kən giv hə: ðə buk! aim riəli bi'giniŋ tə bi'li:v

it's true what my mother says, that your head is filled
its tru: hwɔt mai mʌðə sez, ðæt jɔ: hed iz fild

with thoughts of that young lady.”

wið þɔ:ts əv ðæt jʌŋ leidi.”

Just then the bus began moving forward quite suddenly,
dʒʌst ðen ðə bʌs bi'gæn mu:vɪŋ fɔ:wəd kwait sʌdnli,

so that one of the passengers, a lady, who was ascending
sou ðæt wʌn əv ðə pæsɪndʒəz, ə leidi, hu: wəz ə'sendiŋ

the stairs to the top of the bus, fell down, happily right
ðə steəz tə ðə tɒp əv ðə bʌs, fel daʊn, hæpili rait

into the arms of one of the other passengers, so that
intə ði a:mz əv wʌn əv ði ʌðə pæsɪndʒəz, sou ðæt

nothing serious happened. Everybody expected her to
nʌθɪŋ siəriəs hæpnd. evribɔdi iks'pektɪd hə: tə

cry out, as women usually do, for the accident had not
krai aʊt, əz wɪmɪn ju:zuəli du:, fə ði æksɪdənt həd nɒt

been without real danger. But as soon as she had got
bi:n wið'aʊt riəl deɪndʒə. bʌt əz su:n əz ʃi: həd gɒt

on her feet again, she said, to everybody's surprise,
ɔn hə: fi:t ə'geɪn, ʃi: sed, tu evribɔdɪz sə'praɪz,

“Oh, excuse me, I'm so sorry! I'm afraid I wasn't
“ou, iks'kju:z mi:, aim sou sɔri! aim ə'freɪd ai wəznt

very careful. But thank God nothing happened to
veri keəfʊl. bʌt þæŋk ɡɒd nʌθɪŋ hæpnd tə

passenger = one
 who travels by
 ship, train, car, or
 bus

ascend = go up

you!" — and then she rapidly ascended the stairs
ju:! — *ænd ðen ʃi: ræpidli ə'sendid ðə steəz*

again.

ə'gein.

"It's men and women like this lady who have helped

"its men ən wimin laik ðis leidi hu: həv helpt

to make our great British Empire, people who can keep

tə meik əʊə greit britiʃ empaɪə, pi:pl hu: kən ki:p

their heads cool and think of others even in the face

ðeə hedz ku:l ən ʃɪŋk əv ʌðəz i:vən in ðə feɪs

of danger," Marshall said. "You British and your

əv deɪndʒə," mɑ:fəl sed. "ju: britiʃ ən jɔ:r

Empire!" Storm replied. "You must indeed be proud

empaɪə!" stɔ:m ri'plaɪd. "ju: məst in'di:d bi: praʊd

of it, when a little thing like this can call up the

əv ɪt, hwen ə litl ʃɪŋ laik ðis kən kɔ:l ʌp ðə

thought of it. You even have an Empire Day, a sort

þɔ:t əv ɪt. ju: i:vən həv ən empaɪə dei, ə sɔ:t

of state holiday, I've read. I don't know what date

əv steɪt hɔlɪdi, aɪv red. aɪ daʊnt nəʊ hwɒt deɪt

it is, though. Is it soon?" he asked.

ɪt ɪz, ðəʊ. ɪz ɪt su:n?" hi: ɑ:skt.

"No, not until the twenty-fourth of May, the birthday

"nəʊ, nɒt ʌn'tɪl ðə twenti'fɔ:θ əv mei, ðə bæ:θdeɪ

of Queen Victoria. But we British are not so proud

əv kwi:n vɪk'tɔ:riə. bət wi: britiʃ a: nɒt səʊ praʊd

as you seem to think," Marshall answered. "You look

əz ju: si:m tə ʃɪŋk," mɑ:fəl ɑ:nsəd. "ju: luk

as if you don't believe me," he continued, seeing the
əz ɪf juː daʊnt biːliːv miː, "hiː kənˈtɪnjuːd, siːɪŋ ði

expression on Storm's face, "but I can almost prove
ɪksˈpresən ɒn stɔːmz feɪs, "bət aɪ kən ɔːlməʊst pruːv

it to you. We don't even keep our Empire Day as a
ɪt tu juː. wiː daʊnt iːvən kiːp aʊər empaɪə dei əz ə

real national holiday, as they do in France, for instance,
riəl nəʃənəl hɒlɪdi, əz ðei duː ɪn frɑːns, fər ɪnstəns,

with everybody out in the streets, singing and dancing.
wɪð evrɪbɒdi aʊt ɪn ðə striːts, sɪŋɪŋ ən daːnsɪŋ.

We just send the children home from school after a little
wiː dʒʌst send ðə tʃɪldrən hoʊm frəm skuːl aːftər ə lɪtl

talk in the morning about the British Empire." "Well,
tɔːk ɪn ðə mɔːnɪŋ əˈbaʊt ðə brɪtɪʃ empaɪə." "wel,

perhaps you aren't as bad as I thought," Storm replied.
pəˈhæps juː aːnt əz bəd əz aɪ θɔːt," stɔːm rɪˈplaɪd.

"But tell me, now that we're talking about holidays —
"bət tel miː, naʊ ðæt wiːə tɔːkɪŋ əˈbaʊt hɒlɪdɪz —

do you keep the same holidays as we do in my country,
duː juː kiːp ðə seɪm hɒlɪdɪz əz wiː duː ɪn maɪ kʌntri,

I wonder?" Marshall: "The great Church holidays are
aɪ wʌndə?" mɑːʃəl: "ðə greɪt tʃəːtʃ hɒlɪdɪz aː

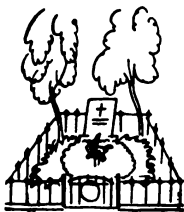
the same, I suppose: Christmas, which the Church tells
ðə seɪm, aɪ səˈpəʊzː krɪsməs, hwɪtʃ ðə tʃəːtʃ telz

us was the time of the birth of Christ, God's Son. That
ʌs wəz ðə taɪm əv ðə bəːθ əv kraɪst, ɡɒdz sʌn. ðæt

is to say, there is much discussion between the different
ɪz tə sei, ðəz mʌtʃ dɪsˈkʌʃən bɪˈtwiːn ðə dɪfrənt

settle = decide

man (here) =
all men



grave

religions about the true date of His birth. The Roman
rɪ'lɪdʒənz ə'baʊt ðə tru: deɪt əv hɪz bæ:ʃ. ðə roumən

Catholic religion tells us it was at Christmas, and most
kæθəlɪk rɪ'lɪdʒən telz ʌs ɪt wəz ət krɪsməs, ən moust

Protestants do the same, while other Protestants say
prətɪstənts du: ðə seɪm, hwaɪl ʌðə prətɪstənts sei

they can prove from the Bible that the birth of Christ
ðei kən pru:v frəm ðə baɪbl ðæt ðə bæ:ʃ əv kraɪst

took place in the autumn. I don't know whether the
tʊk pleɪs ɪn ði ɔ:təm. aɪ daʊnt nou hwedə ðə

question has been settled, but I do know that few
kwestʃən həz bi:n setld, bət aɪ du: nou ðæt fju:

people at Christmas think of the account in the Bible
pi:pl ət krɪsməs ɪŋk əv ði ə'kaʊnt ɪn ðə baɪbl

of how Christ was sent from Heaven to live upon this
əv haʊ kraɪst wəz sent frəm hevn tə liv ə'pɒn ðɪs

earth of ours and teach people about God and God's
ə:p əv aʊəz ən ti:tʃ pi:pl ə'baʊt ɡɒd ən ɡɒdz

plans for man. What they think of for the most part
plænz fə mæn. hwɒt ðei ɪŋk ɔv fə ðə moust pɑ:t

is the good time they're going to have with their friends
ɪz ðə ɡʊd taɪm ðeə ɡoʊɪŋ tə hæv wɪð ðeə frendz

and family! — Well, after Christmas comes Easter —
ən fæmɪli! — wel, ɑ:ftə krɪsməs kʌmz i:stə —

Good Friday, when Christ died, Easter Sunday, when
ɡʊd fraɪdi, hwen kraɪst daɪd, i:stə sʌndi, hwen

He rose from the grave, and Easter Monday." "Excuse
hi: rouz frəm ðə ɡreɪv, ənd i:stə mʌndi." "ɪks'kju:z

my interrupting you in the middle of your account,"
mai intə'rʌptɪŋ ju: in ðə midl əv ʃɔ:r ə'kaunt,"

Storm said, "Good Friday, what a strange name for the
stɔ:m sed, "gud fraidi, hwɒt ə streindəz neim fə ðə

day on which Christ died!" "Yes, isn't it?" "What
dei ɒn hwɪtʃ kraɪst daɪd!" "jes, ɪznt ɪt?" "hwɒt

about the New Year?" Storm asked. "You didn't
ə'baut ðə nju: jɪə?" stɔ:m a:skt. "ju: dɪdnt

mention it." "There's nothing much to tell about that,"
menʃən ɪt." "ðəz nəθɪŋ mʌtʃ tə tel ə'baut ðæt,"

Marshall answered. "In Scotland they keep the first
ma:ʃəl a:nsəd. "ɪn skɒtlənd ðei ki:p ðə fə:st

of January, but here shops, offices, etc., are all open.
əv dʒænjuəri, bət hiə ʃɒps, ɔfɪsɪz, ɪt'setrə, a:r ɔ:l ɒpən.

At the most, we have a party on the 31st of
ət ðə maʊst, wi: həv ə pɑ:ti ɒn ðə þə:ti'fə:st əv

December and dance into the New Year, or go out into
dɪ'sembə ən da:ns ɪntə ðə nju: jɪə, ɔ: ɡəʊ aʊt ɪntə

the streets at twelve o'clock and say 'Happy New Year'
ðə stri:tɪz ət twelv ə'klɒk ən sei 'hæpi nju: jɪə

to complete strangers. Well, shall I continue my
tə kəm'pli:t streindəz. wel, ʃəl aɪ kən'tɪnju: maɪ

account of our holidays and get it over?" "Yes, please
ə'kaʊnt əv ʌə hɒlɪdɪz ən get ɪt ɒvə?" "jes, pli:z

do!" Storm replied. "I might as well use this half-hour
du:!" stɔ:m rɪ'plaɪd. "aɪ maɪt əz wel ju:z ðɪs ha:fəʊə

to learn something." "All right! Seven weeks after
tə lə:n sʌmθɪŋ." "ɔ:l rɑɪt! sevn wi:ks a:ftə

Easter is Whitsun, consisting of Whit Sunday and Whit
i:stə iz hwitsn, kən'sistiŋ əv hwit sandi ən hwit

Monday." "I should like to ask you something here,"
mændi. "ai fəd laik tu a:sk ju: sampiŋ hiə,"

Storm interrupted again. "Don't you keep the day when
stɔ:m intə'rʌptid ə'gein. "dount ju: ki:p ðə dei hwen

Christ ascended to Heaven as a holiday? I didn't hear
kraist ə'sendid tə hevn əz ə hɒlidi? ai didnt hiə

you mention it?" "It's not a general holiday, with the
ju: menʃən it?" "its nɒt ə dʒenərəl hɒlidi, wið ðə

shops closed and so on," Marshall answered, "but we
ʃɒps klouzəd ən sou ɒn," mɑ:fəl a:nsəd, "bət wi:

have a name for it, of course, Ascension Day, on which
həv ə neim fər it, əv kɔ:s, ə'senʃən dei, ɒn hwitʃ

the churches hold special services for Christ's ascension
ðə tʃə:tʃiz həʊld speʃəl sə:vɪsɪz fər kraɪsts ə'senʃən

to Heaven."

tə hevn."

"Well, that is all very much like our holidays at home,"

"wel, ðæt iz ɔ:l veri mʌtʃ laik əʊə hɒlɪdɪz ət haʊm,"

Storm said. "Yes, but I'm not through yet — we have
stɔ:m sed. "jes, bət aɪm nɒt þru: yet — wi: həv

a holiday which I'm sure you haven't got," Marshall
ə hɒlɪdi hwɪtʃ aɪm suə ju: həvnt ɡɒt," mɑ:fəl

replied, "and it's one that we all love and look forward
rɪ'plaɪd, "ænd its wʌn ðæt wi: ɔ:l lʌv ən lʊk fɔ:wəd

to for weeks. It's called August Bank Holiday, and
tu fər wi:ks. its kɔ:ld ɔ:gəst bæŋk hɒlɪdi, ənd

it's always on the first Monday in August. The weather
its ɔ:lwəz ɔn ðə fə:st mʌndi in ɔ:gəst. ðə weðər

is generally fine, and everybody has a lovely time. As a
iz dʒenərəli faɪn, ənd evribɔdi hæz ə lʌvli taɪm. əz ə

boy I often went into the country on that day with
bɔɪ aɪ ɔ:fn went ɪntə ðə kʌntri ɔn ðæt dei wið

my people, starting as soon as the sun had risen and
maɪ pi:pl, sta:tɪŋ əz su:n əz ðə sʌn həd rɪzn ən

people (here) =
 parents

returning in the evening very, very tired and very,
rɪ'tə:nɪŋ in ði i:vniŋ veri, veri taɪəd ən veri,

very happy. We might as well have gone any other
veri hæpi. wi: maɪt əz wel həv ɡɔn eni ʌðə

summer day during the school holidays, but it was
sʌmə dei dʒuəriŋ ðə sku:l hɒlɪdɪz, bət ɪt wəz

always much more fun on that day, because so many
ɔ:lwəz mʌtʃ mɔ: fʌn ɔn ðæt dei, bi'kɔz sɔu meni

people were out." "Why is it called 'Bank Holiday'?"
pi:pl wə:r aʊt." "hwaɪ ɪz ɪt kɔ:ld 'bæŋk hɒlɪdɪ'?"

Storm asked. "That needs a little explaining," Mar-
stɔ:m ɑ:skt. "ðæt ni:dz ə lɪtl ɪks'pleɪnɪŋ," mɑ:-

shall replied. "We have four 'bank holidays': Boxing
ʃəl rɪ'plaɪd. "wi: həv fɔ: 'bæŋk hɒlɪdɪz': bɒksɪŋ

Day — perhaps I should give them in their correct
dei — pə'hæps aɪ ʃəd ɡɪv ðəm ɪn ðeə kə'rekt

order: Easter Monday, Whit Monday, August Bank
ɔ:də: ɪ:stə mʌndi, hwɪt mʌndi, ɔ:gəst bæŋk

order = the way
 one thing follows
 another

Holiday, and Boxing Day. The law of the country says
hɒlɪdɪ, ən bɒksɪŋ dei. ðə lɔ: əv ðə kʌntri sez

that on these four days all banks must close, and as
ðæt ɔn ði:z fɔ: deiz ɔ:l bæŋks məst kləʊz, ənd əz
 factories, shops, and offices then close, too, those days
fækətəriz, ʃɒps, ənd ɔfisiz ðen kləʊz, tu:, ðəʊz deiz
 have become general holidays.”
həv bi'kʌm dʒenərəl hɒlɪdiz.”

“I see,” Storm said. “And I understand what you said
“ai si:,” stɔ:m sed. “ənd ai ʌndə'stænd hwɔt ju: sed

about closing on the three weekdays following religious
ə'baʊt kləʊziŋ ɔn ðə þri: wi:kdeiz fɔləʊɪŋ ri'lɪdʒəs

holidays, but I really find it a funny thought that your
hɒlɪdiz, bət ai riəli faɪnd ɪt ə fʌni þɔ:t ðæt jɔ:

great British Parliament should have taken the trouble
ɡreɪt brɪtɪʃ pɑ:ləmənt ʃəd həv teɪkən ðə trʌbl

to discuss a question like the third holiday and make
tə dɪs'kʌs ə kwɛstʃən laɪk ðə þə:d hɒlɪdi ən meɪk

an Act of Parliament about it. But I suppose that if
ən ækt əv pɑ:ləmənt ə'baʊt ɪt. bət ai sə'pəʊz ðæt ɪf

you had time to read through all the Acts of Parliament
ju: həd taɪm tə ri:d þru: ɔ:l ði ækts əv pɑ:ləmənt

that make up the laws of the country, you would find
ðæt meɪk ʌp ðə lɔ:z əv ðə kʌntri, ju: wəd faɪnd

many strange things.” “I'll tell you what I think,”
meni streɪndʒ þɪŋz.” “aɪ tel ju: hwɔt ai þɪŋk,”

Marshall replied with a smile; “I think that at the end
mɑ:ʃəl ri'plaɪd wɪð ə smaɪl; “ai þɪŋk ðæt ət ði end

of an extremely hot week once upon a time, some
əv ən ɪks'tri:mli hɒt wi:k wʌns ə'pɔn ə taɪm, sʌm

Member of Parliament who perhaps was a bank
membər əv pɑ:ləmənt hu: pə'hæps wəz ə bæŋk

manager thought to himself, 'How unpleasant to have
mænɪdʒə θɔ:t tə him'self, 'hau ʌn'pleznt tə hæv

to work in this heat, and how nice if one could get
tə wə:k ɪn ðɪs hi:t, ən hau naɪs ɪf wʌn kəd get

away from town for an extra day, at least once during
ə'wei frəm taʊn fər ən ɛkstrə dei, ət li:st wʌns dʒuərɪŋ

the summer! One ought to suggest, next time Parlia-
ðə sʌmə! wʌn ɔ:t tə sə'dʒest, nekst taim pɑ:lə-

ment sits, that all banks must close one Monday every
mənt sɪts, ðət ɔ:l bæŋks mʌst kləʊz wʌn mʌndi evri

summer.' And so he did, and so it became an Act of
sʌmə.' ən sou hi: dɪd, ən sou ɪt bɪ'keɪm ən ækt əv

Parliament, and so everybody was happy, as they say
pɑ:ləmənt, ən sou evrɪbɔ:di wəz hæpi, əz ðei sei

in the story-books!" As they rose to get off, Storm
ɪn ðə stɔ:ribuks!" əz ðei rəʊz tə get ɔ:f, stɔ:m

said with a laugh, "You would make a great teacher
sed wɪð ə la:f, "ju: wəd meɪk ə greɪt ti:tʃər

of history, I think. If there was something you didn't
əv hɪstəri, aɪ θɪŋk. ɪf ðeə wəz sʌmθɪŋ ju: dɪdnt

know, you would always be able to make up a fine
nəʊ, ju: wəd ɔ:lweɪz bi: eɪbl tə meɪk ʌp ə faɪn

story in no time!"

stɔ:ri ɪn nəʊ taim!"

in no time = in a
 very short time

WORDS:

general
generally
Boxing Day
milkman
off
complete
object
decision
forward
religion
settle
birth
true
date
prove
account
Easter Sunday
Easter Monday
Easter
Whit Sunday
Whit Monday
Whitsun
consist
Good Friday
ascend
Ascension
heaven
thought
act
law
rise
rose

EXERCISE A.

Storm wanted a few days — from his work; he needed two or three days' — rest, he said. But he would have to wait till Christmas for his rest, as it was the — rule at the office that nobody asked for days off during December. — Day is the day after Christmas Day; it is called so, because on that day the —, the postman, and others used to come to get their Christmas —. In the days before Christmas there are always many people in — of the shop windows, looking at the many things in the windows so that they may get an idea to help them to come to a — about Christmas presents. Mothers push their children — through the crowds, so that they can see. Everybody is — forward to seeing their friends and family during Christmas. In the bus home, Storm took a small — from his pocket and showed it to Marshall.

The different — have not been able to — the question of when the — of Christ took place; some say it was at Christmas, and others say that this is not —, but that the true — of His birth is some time in the autumn. They say that they can — this from the — of His birth in the Bible.

In England they have four holidays called bank holidays: Easter Monday, — —, — — —, and Boxing Day. Easter consists of three holidays, — —, — —, and Easter Monday. — is seven weeks after Easter. Ascension Day is the day when Christ — to —.

Storm found it a funny — that the great British Parliament should have taken the trouble to make the decision about August Bank Holiday an — of Parliament. All the different Acts of Parliament make up the — of the country. Marshall told Storm that he — had to stand in the bus home, and that if he did get a seat, he very often had to — and offer it to a lady.

risen
God
Christ
excuse
grave
Empire Day
empire
Bible
order
Christmas box
passenger

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

Are there buses where you live? ... What other kinds of traffic are there near your home? ... How do you get to and from your work? ... Can you explain what holidays you keep yourself? ... What Christmas presents did you get last Christmas? ... What do you generally do during the Christmas holidays? ... Do you take part in any winter sports? ... What do children always buy at Easter? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Numerals [*nju:mərəlz*] are words like the following: one, four, six, the first, the third, the sixth. There are two kinds of numerals, cardinals [*ka:dinəlz*] and ordinals [*ɔ:dinəlz*]. Of the examples mentioned 'one', 'four', and 'six' are cardinals, and 'the first', 'the third', and 'the sixth' are ordinals.

Cardinals are used to express the number of persons, animals, or things that we are speaking of. Examples: I have **thirteen** shillings in my pocket. **Nine** men and **eight** women were present.

Ordinals show the order in which persons, animals, or things appear or happen. Examples: March is **the third** month of the year. This is **the fifth** time I have had to close the door.

Here are lists of cardinals and ordinals. By the help of these you will be able to express any numeral in English.

Cardinals

- 1 one [wʌn]
- 2 two [tu:]
- 3 three [pri:]
- 4 four [fɔ:]
- 5 five [faɪv]
- 6 six [sɪks]
- 7 seven [sevn]
- 8 eight [eit]
- 9 nine [nain]
- 10 ten [ten]
- 11 eleven [i'levn]
- 12 twelve [twelv]
- 13 thirteen ['θə:'ti:n]
- 14 fourteen
[ˈfɔ:ˈti:n]
- 15 fifteen ['fɪf'ti:n]
- 16 sixteen ['sɪks'ti:n]

Ordinals

- the first [fə:st]
- the second [sekənd]
- the third [θə:d]
- the fourth [fɔ:θ]
- the fifth [fɪfθ]
- the sixth [sɪksθ]
- the seventh [sevnθ]
- the eighth [eitθ]
- the ninth [nainθ]
- the tenth [tenθ]
- the eleventh [i'levnθ]
- the twelfth [twelfθ]
- the thirteenth ['θə:'ti:nθ]
- the fourteenth
[ˈfɔ:ˈti:nθ]
- the fifteenth ['fɪf'ti:nθ]
- the sixteenth ['sɪks'ti:nθ]

17 seventeen [<i>'sevn'ti:n</i>]	the seventeenth [<i>'sevn'ti:nþ</i>]
18 eighteen [<i>'ei'ti:n</i>]	the eighteenth [<i>'ei'ti:nþ</i>]
19 nineteen [<i>'nain'ti:n</i>]	the nineteenth [<i>'nain'ti:nþ</i>]
20 twenty [<i>twenti</i>]	the twentieth [<i>twentiþ</i>]
21 twenty-one [<i>twenti'wʌn</i>], etc.	the twenty-first [<i>twenti- 'fə:st</i>], etc.
30 thirty [<i>þə:ti</i>]	the thirtieth [<i>þə:tiþ</i>]
40 forty [<i>fɔ:ti</i>]	the fortieth [<i>fɔ:tiþ</i>]
50 fifty [<i>fifti</i>]	the fiftieth [<i>fiftiþ</i>]
60 sixty [<i>siksti</i>]	the sixtieth [<i>sikstiþ</i>]
70 seventy [<i>sevnti</i>]	the seventieth [<i>sevntiþ</i>]
80 eighty [<i>eiti</i>]	the eightieth [<i>eitiþ</i>]
90 ninety [<i>nainti</i>]	the ninetieth [<i>naintiþ</i>]
100 a (or one) hun- dred [<i>hʌndrəd</i>]	the (one) hundredth [<i>hʌndrədþ</i>]
101 a (or one) hun- dred and one	the (one) hundred and first
135 a (or one) hundred and thirty-five	the (one) hundred and thirty-fifth
200 two hundred	the two hundredth
1,000 a (or one) thousand [<i>þauzənd</i>]	the (one) thousandth [<i>þauzəndþ</i>]
1,001 a (or one) thou- sand and one	the (one) thousand and first
1,100 eleven hundred or a (or one) thou- sand one hundred	the eleven hundredth or the (one) thousand one hundredth
1,157 eleven hundred and fifty-seven or a (one) thousand one hundred and fifty-seven	the eleven hundred and fifty-seventh or the (one) thousand one hundred and fifty- seventh
2,000 two thousand	the two thousandth
100,000 a (or one) hun- dred thousand	the (one) hundred thou- sandth

341,771	three hundred and forty-one thousand seven hundred and seventy-one	the three hundred and forty-one thousand seven hundred and seventy-first
1,000,000	a (or one) million [miljən]	the (one) millionth [miljənθ]
3,000,533	three million five hundred and thirty-three	the three million five hundred and thirty- third

Notice that with a few exceptions the ordinals are made by adding *th* to the cardinals. Examples: The thirteen *-th*, the eleven-*th*.

Questions:

How would you write the following figures in letters: 5, 9, 17, 19, 32, 51, 143, 701, 1,003, 53,731; 7th, 12th, 32nd, 148th, 1,005th, 47,457th? ...

EXERCISE D.

diə wud,

*it wəz nais tə get ʃɔ: letə ən hiə sʌmpɪŋ ə'baʊt hʌwt
iz ɡəʊɪŋ ɔn ət haʊm. sɔu ju: həv bi:n teikiŋ mai
sistə fə trips intə ðə kʌntri! wel, ai riəli daʊnt nou
hʌwt tə sei tə ðæt. if ju: a:nt ɡəʊɪŋ tə bi: mɔ:
keəfʊl in ðə fju:tsə ə'baʊt teikiŋ hə:r aʊt intu ɔ:l
kaɪndz əv weðə ən briŋɪŋ hə: bæʃ haʊm ɔ:l wɛt ən
kəʊld, ai sə'pəʊz ai ʃəl həv tə rait ən tel hə: hʌwt
ən ʌn'pleznt feləʊ ju: a: bət pə'hæps fi:l faɪnd aʊt
fə hə:'self.*

ai went on a trip into ða kʌntri maɪ'self sam taim
ə'gou wið a ʃʌŋ leidi kɔ:ld mæriən, ða dɔ:tər əv auə
mænɪdʒə. bət ai hæd ɔ:dəd ə blu: skai, ðə siŋiŋ əv
bə:dz, and ə wud ful əv tri:z wið red ən braun li:vz;
ðæts hau its dan in ɪŋglənd! mæriən iz ə veri lʌvli
gə:l, ai kən tel ju:. ju: kən si: ðæt fə ʃɔ:'self frəm
ðis pɪkʃər əv hæ:, hwɪtʃ ai tuk ðæt dei in ðə kʌntri.

pli:z dount tel ðis tə mai sistə, ɔ:r aim ə'freɪd ðæt
ʃi: wil nɒt fi:l ðə rɪs'pekt fɔ: mi: ðæt sistəz ʃəd hæv
fə ðeər eldə brʌðəz. bət ju: mei rɪ'membə mi: tə
hæ:, ən tə ðə rest əv ðə fæmili.

ʃɔ:z sɪn'siəli,

stɔ:m

A TRIP TO BRIGHTON

When Storm started working at the office, it was
hwen stɔ:m stɑ:tɪd wə:kɪŋ at ði ɔfɪs, ɪt wəz

decided that he should only remain as long as the
dɪ'saɪdɪd ðæt hi: ʃəd ɒnli rɪ'meɪn əz lɔŋ əz ðə

clerk whose work he was taking care of was ill. But
kla:k hu:z wə:k hi: wəz teɪkɪŋ keə əv wəz ɪl. bət

when the clerk was able to take over his own work
hwen ðə kla:k wəz eɪbl tə teɪk ɒvə hɪz ɒn wə:k

again at the beginning of the new year, the manager
ə'geɪn at ðə bɪ'gɪnɪŋ əv ðə nju: jɪə, ðə mænɪdʒə

wanted Storm to stay on for a few months longer.

wɒntɪd stɔ:m tə steɪ ɒn fər ə fju: mʌnθs lɔŋɡə.

"I shall be very busy the next eight months or so.

"aɪ ʃəl bi: veri bɪzi ðə nekst eɪt mʌnθs ɔ: sɒu.

We're planning to open some new branch offices, so it

wiə plænɪŋ tu ɒpən səm nju: brɑ:nʃ ɔfɪsɪz, sɒu ɪt

would be nice to have you as a sort of private secretary.

wəd bi: naɪs tə hæv ju: əz ə sɔ:t əv praɪvət sekrətəri.

I shall need your help very badly."

aɪ ʃəl ni:d jɔ: help veri bædli."

Storm was only too glad to get this chance of staying

stɔ:m wəz ɒnli tu: glæd tə get ðɪs tʃɑ:ns əv steɪɪŋ

on, because he wanted to see the spring in England,

ɒn, bɪ'kɔ:z hi: wɒntɪd tə si: ðə sprɪŋ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd,

of which he had heard so much. A week later every-
 əv hʁwɪtʃ hi: həd hə:d sou mʌtʃ. ə wi:k leɪtə ɛvri-
 thing had been settled; he was to stay in England as
 ɪŋ həd bi:n setld; hi: wəz tə steɪ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd əz
 long as the manager needed him.
 lɔŋ əz ðə mænɪdʒə ni:did him.

So when May came he was still in London, working
 sou hwen meɪ keɪm hi: wəz stɪl ɪn lʌndən, wə:kɪŋ
 hard. Summer had come, and as the weather had been
 hɑ:d. sʌmə həd kʌm, ənd əz ðə weðə həd bi:n
 extremely fine for several days, Marshall and Storm
 ɪks'tri:mli faɪn fə severəl deɪz, mɑ:fəl ənd stɔ:m
 decided to go to the seaside for the week-end after a
 dɪ'saɪdɪd tə ɡoʊ tə ðə 'si:'saɪd fə ðə 'wi:k'end ɑ:f tər ə
 particularly busy week.
 pə'tɪkjʊləli bɪzi wi:k.

"A week-end at the sea-side would do us good after
 "ə 'wi:k'end ət ðə 'si:'saɪd 'wəd du: ʌs ɡʊd ɑ:f tər
 a week's hard work," Marshall said, "and even if it may
 ə wi:kz hɑ:d wə:k," mɑ:fəl sed, "ənd i:vən ɪf ɪt meɪ
 still be a little cold to bathe, the sea will be beautiful,
 stɪl bi: ə lɪtl kəʊld tə beɪð, ðə si: wɪl bi: bju:təfʊl,
 and the fresh sea-air will be nice after the bad London
 ən ðə fref 'si:'eə wɪl bi: naɪs ɑ:f tər ðə bæd lʌndən
 air." "What is the best place on the coast to go to?"
 eə." "hʁwɒt ɪz ðə best pleɪs ɔn ðə kəʊst tə ɡoʊ tu?"

Storm wanted to know. "I think Brighton will be
 stɔ:m wəntɪd tə nəʊ. "aɪ ɪŋk braɪtn wɪl bi:



tooth-brush



comb



tooth-paste

one tooth
two teeth

best," Marshall answered. "It's a pleasant town on
best, *ma:fəl a:nsəd.* "its ə pleznt taun ɔn

the south coast of England. We could stay the night
ðə saʊθ kəʊst əv ɪŋɡlənd. *wi: kəd stei ðə naɪt*

at one of the hotels and return on Sunday evening."
ət wʌn əv ðə haʊtəls ən rɪ'tə:n ɔn sʌndi i:vniŋ."

"Fine!" said Storm. "Let's hurry home from the
"fain!" sed stɔ:m. "lets hʌri haʊm frəm ði

office, then, without stopping for lunch at our usual
ɔfis, ðen, wið'aʊt stɒpiŋ fə laʊf ət əʊə ju:ʒuəl

place. Perhaps your mother will prepare a quick
pleis. *pə'hæps jɔ: mʌðə wɪl pri'peə ə kwɪk*

lunch for us at home while we throw a few things
laʊf fə ʌs ət haʊm hwaɪl wi: θrəʊ ə fju: piŋz

into a bag." "We shan't need much more than a
intu ə bæɡ." "wi: ʃɑ:nt ni:d mʌʃ mɔ: ðən ə

tooth-brush and a comb, so there won't be much to
tu:þbrʌʃ ənd ə kəʊm, səʊ ðeə wəʊnt bi: mʌʃ tə

pack. We'll have time enough before our train leaves."
pæk. *wi:l hæv taɪm i'nʌf bi'fɔ:r əʊə treɪn li:vz."*

"Speaking of tooth-brushes," Storm said, "I must
"spi:kiŋ əv tu:þbrʌʃɪz," stɔ:m sed, "aɪ mʌst

remember to buy some tooth-paste on the way home.
rɪ'membə tə baɪ səm tu:þpeɪst ɔn ðə wei haʊm.

I noticed this morning, when I was brushing my teeth,
aɪ nəʊtɪst ðɪs mɔ:niŋ, hwen aɪ wəz brʌʃɪŋ maɪ ti:θ,

that I had used up all my tooth-paste. I think I'll try
ðæt aɪ həd ju:zd ʌp ɔ:l maɪ tu:þpeɪst. aɪ piŋk aɪl traɪ

a shop I've often noticed. It's only a short distance
a ʃɒp aʊv ɔ:fən nəʊtɪst. ɪts ɔʊnli ə ʃɔ:t dɪstəns

from the Underground station, you know, the one which
fɹəm ði ʌndəgraʊnd steɪʃən, ju: nəʊ, ðə wʌn hʌvɪʃ

has an unusually large sponge lying in the window.
həz ən ənʻju:zʊəli lɑ:dʒ spʌndʒ laɪɪŋ ɪn ðə wɪndəʊ.

It must be fun to use a sponge as big as that in the
ɪt mʌst bi: fʌn tə ju:z ə spʌndʒ əz bɪg əz ðæt ɪn ðə

bath; you could almost wash the whole body with it
bɑ:θ; ju: kəd ɔ:lməʊst wɒʃ ðə həʊl bɒdi wɪð ɪt

at once. I saw some beautiful brushes there the other
ət wʌns. aɪ sɔ: səm bju:təfʊl brʌʃɪz ðeə ði ʌðə

day, too. I'd like to buy them for my sister. She takes
deɪ, tu:. aɪd laɪk tə baɪ ðəm fə maɪ sɪstə. ʃi: teɪks

a lot of trouble with her hair and brushes it carefully
a lɒt əv trʌbl wɪð hə: heə ən brʌʃɪz ɪt keəfʊli

morning and night; so those fine brushes would be just
mɔ:nɪŋ ən naɪt; səʊ ðəʊz faɪn brʌʃɪz wəd bi: dʒʌst

the thing for her, one for her hair and one to brush
ðə ʃɪŋ fə hə:, wʌn fə hə: heə ən wʌn tə brʌʃ

her clothes with. Perhaps there's a comb to go with
hə: kləʊðz wɪð. pə'hæps ðəz ə kəʊm tə ɡəʊ wɪð

them, too."

ðəm, tu:."

"Well, don't be too long about your shopping," Marshall

"wel, dəʊnt bi: tu: lɔŋ ə'baʊt jɔ: ʃɒpɪŋ," mɑ:ʃəl

said. "I shall have to look for my bathing-costume.

sed. "aɪ ʃəl hæv tə luk fə maɪ beɪðɪŋkɒstjʊ:m.



take trouble with
 = work carefully
 with



*bathing-
costume*



bathing-drawers

My mother puts it away every winter, and never twice
 mai mæðə puts it ə'wei evri 'wintə, ən nevə 'twais
 in the same place, so I can't be sure of finding it at
 in ðə seim pleis, sou ai kɑ:nt bi: suə əv faɪndɪŋ it at
 once."
 wʌns."

"Do you think it will be warm enough to bathe?" Storm
 "du: ju: θɪŋk it wil bi: wɔ:m i'nʌf tə beɪð?" stɔ:m
 asked. "Then I'll take my bathing-drawers, too."
 ə:skt. "ðen ail teik mai beɪðɪndrɔ:z, tu:."

"Bathing-drawers!" Marshall said. "Haven't you got
 "beɪðɪndrɔ:z!" mɑ:səl sed. "hævnt ju: gɒt

a bathing-costume? At one time you were not allowed
 ə beɪðɪŋkɔstju:m? ət wʌn taɪm ju: wə: nɒt ə'laʊd

to use bathing-drawers, but nowadays it's perfectly all
 tə ju:z beɪðɪndrɔ:z, bʌt naʊədeɪz ɪts pə:fɪktli ɔ:l

right of course. However, we English are funny in
 raɪt əv kɔ:s. haʊ'evə, wi: ɪŋglɪʃ ə: fʌni in

many ways, you know. By some people bathing-
 meni weɪz, ju: nəʊ. baɪ sʌm pi:pl beɪðɪŋ-

drawers are still regarded as not quite the thing for
 drɔ:z ə: stɪl rɪ'ga:dɪd əz nɒt kwaɪt ðə θɪŋ fə

bathing." "Well, I haven't got anything else, so I'll
 beɪðɪŋ." "wel, ai hævnt gɒt ənɪθɪŋ els, sou ail

have to take them along," Storm answered.
 hæv tə teik ðəm ə'lɔŋ." stɔ:m ɑ:nsəd.

Two hours later the two young men were sitting in
 tu: aʊəz leɪtə ðə tu: jʌŋ men wə: sɪtɪŋ in

a bus on their way to Brighton. "The distance from
a bas ɔn ðeə wei tə braɪn. "ðə dɪstəns frəm

London to Brighton is only about fifty miles," Marshall
lʌndən tə braɪn ɪz ɔnli ə'baʊt fɪfti maɪlz," mɑ:fəl

explained, "so I thought we might go there by bus
ɪks'pleɪnd, "səʊ aɪ θɔ:t wi: maɪt ɡəʊ ðeə baɪ bas

instead of by train. The country between London and
ɪn'stəd əv baɪ treɪn. ðə kʌntri bɪ'twi:n lʌndən ən

Brighton is very beautiful, and you'll see more from
braɪn ɪz veri bju:təfʊl, ən ju:l si: mɔ: frəm

the bus. The trees will be looking their best now;
ðə bas. ðə tri:z wɪl bi: lʊkiŋ ðeə best naʊ;

there will be flowers in bright colours by the roadside,
ðeə wɪl bi: flauəz ɪn braɪt kʌləz baɪ ðə rəʊdsaɪd,

by the roadside =
 by the side of the
 road

and the leaves and the grass will be of that lovely
ən ðə li:vz ən ðə ɡrɑ:s wɪl bi: əv ðæt lʌvli

fresh green that they only have during the weeks
fref ɡri:n ðæt ðeɪ ɔnli hæv dʒuəriŋ ðə wi:kz

when spring is turning into summer. I want you to
hwen sprɪŋ ɪz tə:niŋ ɪntə sʌmə. aɪ wɔnt ju: tə

see England at its very best — in May, in the country,
si: ɪŋɡlənd. ət ɪts veri best — ɪn meɪ, ɪn ðə kʌntri,

when everything is fresh and clean and full of peace
hwen evriθɪŋ ɪz fref ən kli:n ən fʊl əv pi:s

and beauty.
ən bju:ti.

"It's funny, isn't it, that although I should not like to
"ɪts fʌni, ɪznt ɪt, ðæt ɔ:l'dəʊ aɪ ʃəd nɒt laɪk tə

in the distance =
far away



live in the country, May always makes me wish to
liv in ðə kʌntri, mei ɔ:lwəs meiks mi: wɪʃ tə
 spend the summer in the country, to see the corn
spend ðə sʌməɹ in ðə kʌntri, tə si: ðə kɔ:n
 standing green in the fields and the cows happy in
stændiŋ gri:n in ðə fi:ldz ən ðə kaʊz hæpi in
 lovely deep grass."
lʌvli di:p grɑ:s."

"I quite understand how you feel," Storm replied, "and
"ai kwait ʌndə'stænd hau ju: fi:l," stɔ:m ri'plaid, "ænd
 I'm glad we came by bus. I'm really seeing the country
aim glæd wi: keim bai bʌs. aim riəli si:iŋ ðə kʌntri
 this way. Look, Marshall," he continued, "isn't that
ðis wei. luk, mɑ:fəl," hi: kən'tinju:d, "iznt ðæt
 a windmill we can see in the distance?" "Yes, it is,"
ə windmil wi: kən si: in ðə distəns?" "jes, it iz."

Marshall replied. "We still have a few left, although
mɑ:fəl ri'plaid. "wi: stil hæv ə fju: left, ɔ:l'dəu
 in most places factories have taken over the work of
in moust pleisiz fæktəriz hæv teikn ouvə ðə wɜ:k əv
 making corn into flour, which the windmills used to do.
meikiŋ kɔ:n intə flauə, hwi:f ðə windmilz ju:st tə du:.

Factories can make flour cheaper, I suppose. And as
fæktəriz kən meik flauə tʃi:pə, ai sə'pəʊz. ʌnd əz
 bread is such a large part of the nation's food, it's
bred iz sʌtʃ ə lɑ:dʒ pɑ:t əv ðə neɪʃənz fu:d, its
 important, of course, that flour should be cheap."
im'pɔ:tənt, əv kɔ:s, ðæt flauə ʃəd bi: tʃi:p."

"What a lot of work must be done to the corn," Storm
"hʌʊt ə lɒt əv wə:k mʌst bi: dʌn tə ðə kɔ:n," stɔ:m

said as he looked out over the fields, "in the course of
sed əz hi: lʊkt aʊt oʊvə ðə fi:ldz, "in ðə kɔ:s əv

the months from the time when the farmer puts the
ðə mʌnθs frəm ðə taɪm hʌvən ðə fɑ:mə pʊts ðə

plough into the ground in spring until we put the bread
plau intə ðə graʊnd ɪn sprɪŋ ʌn'tɪl wi: pʊt ðə bred

on our tables! When the ground has been broken by
ɒn ʌʊə teɪblz! hʌvən ðə graʊnd hʌz bi:n brəʊkn baɪ

the plough, the seed is put in, and then after five or
ðə plau, ðə si:d ɪz pʊt ɪn, ʌn ðen ɑ:ftə faɪv ə

six months the corn is ready to be taken to the mills,
sɪks mʌnθs ðə kɔ:n ɪz redi tə bi: teɪkn tə ðə mɪlz.

or factories, to be made into flour, and at last it is
ɔ: fæktərɪz, tə bi: meɪd intə flauə, ʌnd ət lɑ:st ɪt ɪz

made into bread. When the corn has been taken to the
meɪd intə bred. hʌvən ðə kɔ:n hʌz bi:n teɪkn tə ðə

mills, there is still something left of the plant, which
mɪlz, ðəz stɪl sʌmθɪŋ left əv ðə plɑ:nt, hweɪtʃ

is used for the animals during the winter. Not all the
ɪz ju:zd fə ði ˌænɪməlz dʒuəriŋ ðə wɪntə. nɒt ɔ:l ðə

corn is sent to the mills; some of it is used for next
kɔ:n ɪz sent tə ðə mɪlz; sʌm əv ɪt ɪz ju:zd fə neks

year's seed."

jiəz si:d."

"Yes," Marshall replied. "In town you usually don't
"jes," mɑ:səl rɪ'plaɪd. "ɪn taʊn ju: ju:ʒuəli daʊnt



grow (here) =
make grow

think of these things. You go into a shop, ask for some
þiŋk əv ði:z þiŋz. ju: gou intu ə ʃɒp, ɑ:sk fə səm
 bread, and in the course of a minute or two you leave
bred, ənd in ðə kɔ:s əv ə minit ə tu: ju: li:v
 the shop with the bread you have bought. Just as easy
ðə ʃɒp wið ðə bred ju: hæv bɔ:t. dʒʌst əz i:zi
 as buying potatoes, and yet, how much more easily
əz baɪɪŋ pə'teitəʊz, ən jet, haʊ mʌtʃ mɔ:r i:zili
 potatoes are grown!"
pə'teitəʊz ɑ: grəʊn!"

Time passed quickly on the road. Every few minutes
taɪm pɑ:st kwɪkli ɒn ðə rəʊd. evri fju: minits
 the view changed. They passed through some small
ðə vju: tʃeɪndʒd. ðei pɑ:st þru: səm smɔ:l
 towns with beautiful old houses, between rose-bushes
taʊnz wið bjʊ:təfʊl ould haʊsɪz, bi'twi:n rəʊzbʊʃɪz
 that grew in long rows along both sides of the road,
ðət gru: in lɔŋ rəʊz ə'lɔŋ bəʊθ saɪdz əv ðə rəʊd,
 full of red and white flowers, or looked over bright
ful əv red ənd hwaɪt flauəz, ɔ: lʊkt oʊvə braɪt
 green fields, pleasantly broken by a few trees here
ɡri:n fi:ldz, plɛzntli brəʊkn baɪ ə fju: tri:z hiə
 and there, a thing which is typically English. They
ənd ðeə, ə þɪŋ hweɪtʃ ɪz tɪpɪkəli ɪŋɡlɪʃ. ðei
 arrived at Brighton about four o'clock, and one of the
ə'raɪvd ət braɪtn ə'baut fɔ:r ə'klɒk, ənd wʌn əv ðə
 first things they did when they reached their hotel
fɜ:st þiŋz ðei dɪd hweɪn ðei rɪ:tʃt ðeə haʊ'tel

was to order tea.

ʋəs tu ɔ:də ti:.

"I'll take mine with lemon to-day," Storm said. "I like
"ail teik main wið lemən tə'dei," stɔ:m sed. "ai laik

it best that way when I'm hot and thirsty. Won't you
it best ðæt wei hwen aim hɒt ən þə:sti. wəunt ju:

try it, too, Marshall? You won't regret it." "Yes, I'll
traɪ it, tu:, mɑ:fəl? ju: wəunt ri'gret it." "jes, ail

take lemon in my tea, too, for once," Marshall replied.
teik lemən in mai ti:, tu:, fə wʌns," mɑ:fəl ri'plaid.

"But I'll have to take at least three lumps of sugar
"bət ail hæv tə teik ət li:st þri: lʌmps əv sugə

to make it sweet enough. Oh, I say, Storm, look at that
tə meɪk ɪt swi:t i'nʌf. ou, ai sei, stɔ:m, luk ət ðæt

little dog, over there! He's looking at our sugar as if
lɪtl dɒg, oʊvə ðeə! hi:s lʊkiŋ ət ʌə sugə əz ɪf

we'd taken it from him. We'll have to give him a lump
wi:d teɪkŋ ɪt frɒm hɪm. wi:l hæv tə gɪv hɪm ə lʌmp

of sugar. He doesn't look as if he belongs to anybody
əv sugə. hi: dʌznt luk əz ɪf hi: bi'lɒŋz tu enɪbɒdi

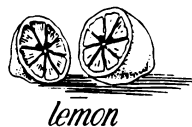
here; he must have come here by himself."

hiə; hi: məst hæv kʌm hiə baɪ hɪm'self."

While they were having tea, a band started playing
hwaɪl ðei wə: hævɪŋ ti:, ə bænd stɑ:tɪd pleɪɪŋ

in the restaurant. "Do people dance here in the after-
ɪn ðə restərɔ:ŋ. "du: pi:pl dɑ:ns hiə ɪn ði ɑ:ftə-

noons?" Storm asked, noticing that they were playing
'nu:nz?" stɔ:m ɑ:skt, nəʊtɪsɪŋ ðæt ðei wə: pleɪɪŋ



by himself =
alone

dance-music. "No, not at this hotel," Marshall replied.
da:nsɪnju:zɪk. "nou, nɒt at ðɪs hou'tel," mɑ:fəl rɪ'plaɪd.

"But there are several restaurants where you can dance
"bət ðeə sevərəl restərɔ:ŋz hweə ju: kən da:ns

at this time of the day. There will be dancing here
at ðɪs taɪm əv ðə dei. ðeə wɪl bi: da:nsɪŋ hiə

to-night, though, as far as I know. Have you noticed
tə'naɪt, ðəu, əz fa:r əz aɪ nou. hæv ju: nəʊtɪst

that they have seven or eight instruments that they
ðæt ðeɪ hæv sevən ər eɪt ɪnstrəmənts ðæt ðeɪ

aren't using? I suppose that means there will be a
a:nt ju:zɪŋ? aɪ sə'pəʊz ðæt mi:nz ðeə wɪl bi: ə

larger band playing later on, and that there will be
lɑ:dʒə bænd pleɪɪŋ leɪtə ɒn, ən ðæt ðeə wɪl bi:

dancing then. Would you like to go to some other place
da:nsɪŋ ðen. wəd ju: laɪk tə ɡəʊ tə səm ʌðə pleɪs

to dance?"

tə da:ns?"

"No, dancing on a nice afternoon like this has no
"nou, da:nsɪŋ ɒn ə naɪs ɑ:ftə'nu:n laɪk ðɪs hɑz nou

attraction for me," Storm said. "Besides, I want to
ə'trækʃən fə mi:," stɔ:m sed. "bi'saɪdz, aɪ wɒnt tə

see as much of the town as possible while we are here."
si: əz mʌtʃ əv ðə taʊn əz pɒsəbl hwaɪl wi: a: hiə."

"Right you are! Let's go, then," Marshall answered.
"raɪt ju: a:! let's ɡəʊ, ðen," mɑ:fəl ɑ:nsəd.

"We might walk about a bit. I want to show you the
"wi: maɪt wɔ:k ə'baʊt ə bɪt. aɪ wɒnt tə ʃəʊ ju: ði

attractions of the town — just like a professional guide:

ə'trækʃənz əv ðə taʊn — dʒʌst laɪk ə prə'fesjənəl gaɪd:

Here, ladies and gentlemen, you see . . . , etc. Brighton

hɪə, leɪdɪz ən dʒentlmən, ju: si: . . . , ɪt'setərə. braɪtn

is full of cinemas, theatres, restaurants, music-halls,

ɪz fʊl əv sɪnɪməs, θiətəz, restərɔ:ntz, mju:zɪkhɔ:lz,

and all kinds of places where you can have a good

ænd ɔ:l kaɪndz əv pleɪsɪz hwɛə ju: kən hæv ə gud

time. I really think that although Brighton is a

taɪm. aɪ riəli θɪŋk ðæt ɔ:l'ðəʊ braɪtn ɪz ə

seaside town, its attraction for many of the people

'si:'saɪd taʊn, ɪts ə'trækʃən fə meni əv ðə pi:pl

who come here lies more in these things than in the

hu: kʌm hɪə laɪz mɔ:r ɪn ði:z θɪŋz ðən ɪn ðə

beach," Marshall explained as they left the hotel.

bi:tʃ," mɑ:fəl ɪks'pleɪnd əz ðeɪ left ðə haʊ'tel.

"Really?" Storm asked. "You would think that, first

"riəli?" stɔ:m ɑ:skt. "ju: wəd θɪŋk ðæt, fə:st

of all, people come here to bathe, since this street, with

əv ɔ:l, pi:pl kʌm hɪə tə beɪð, sɪns ðɪs stri:t, wɪð

all these hotels on one side, is situated almost at the

ɔ:l ði:z haʊ'telz ɔn wʌn saɪd, ɪz sɪtʃueɪtɪd ɔ:l'məʊst ət ðə

very edge of the sea. You only have to walk a few

veri edʒ əv ðə si:. ju: ɔnli hæv tə wɔ:k ə fju:

steps across the street, and you find yourself on the

steps ə'krɔs ðə stri:t, ən ju: faɪnd ʃɔ:'self ɔn ðə

beach. What is the beach like here?" "It's rather

bi:tʃ. hwɔt ɪz ðə bi:tʃ laɪk hɪə?" "ɪts rə:ðə

hall (here) = very large room

music-hall = a sort of theatre with music, singing, and dancing

good," Marshall replied. "On this part of the coast,
gud," ma:ʃəl ri'plaid. "ɔn ðis pa:t əv ðə koust,

the beach generally consists of small round stones
ðə bi:tʃ dʒenərəli kən'sists əv smɔ:l raund stounz

which don't hurt the feet at all. In fact, many people
hwɪtʃ daʊnt hæ:t ðə fi:t at ɔ:l. in fækt, meni pi:pl

prefer these small stones to sand. 'Sand,' they say,
pri:fə: ði:z smɔ:l stounz tə sænd. 'sænd,' ðei sei,

'gets into your shoes and your stockings and your hair
'gets intə jɔ: ʃu:z ən jɔ: stɔkiŋz ən jɔ: heə

and gives you a lot of trouble before you get it out.'
ən giʊz ju: ə lɒt əv trəbl bi'fɔ: ju: get it aʊt.'

However, if you prefer sand, I know a place not very
haʊ'evə, if ju: pri:fə: sænd, ai nou ə pleis nɒt veri

far from here where the beach has lovely red sand.
fa: frəm hiə hweə ðə bi:tʃ hæz lʌvli red sænd.

We might go out there to-morrow."

wi: maɪt ɡəʊ aʊt ðeə tə'mɔrəʊ."

"I think I'd rather try this place," Storm answered.

"ai þɪŋk aɪ ra:ðə traɪ ðis pleɪs," stɔ:m a:nsəd.

"Perhaps there's sand enough on the shores of your

"pə'hæps ðəz sænd i'nʌf ɔn ðə ʃɔ:z əv jɔ:r

own country," Marshall said. "I think I prefer the

əʊn kʌntri," ma:ʃəl sed. "ai þɪŋk ai pri'fə: ðə

stones myself; they're quite comfortable to lie on."

stounz maɪ'self; ðeə kwait kʌmfətəbl tə laɪ ɔn."

"Just a minute," Storm interrupted, "I must ask you

"dʒʌst ə mɪnɪt," stɔ:m ɪntə'rʌptɪd, "ai məst a:sk ju:

to explain the meaning of a word you used just now
tu iks'plein ðə mi:niŋ əv ə wə:d ju: ju:zd dʒʌst naʊ

— ‘shore’, I think it was.” “With pleasure,” Marshall
 — ‘ʃɔ:’, *ai ɪŋk ɪt wəz.* “*wɪð pleʒə,*” *ma:ʃəl*

replied. “It means almost the same as ‘beach’, but
rɪ'plaɪd. “*ɪt mi:nz ə:lmoʊst ðə seɪm əz 'bi:tʃ,* *bət*

not quite. Both ‘beach’ and ‘shore’ mean ‘land at the
nɒt kwaɪt. *bəʊʃ 'bi:tʃ ən 'ʃɔ: mi:n 'lænd ət ði*

edge of a sea or a lake’. But while ‘beach’ is only
edʒ əv ə si: ɔ:r ə leɪk. *bət hwaɪl 'bi:tʃ ɪz ɒnli*

used about a low piece of land with sand or small
ju:zd ə'baʊt ə loʊ pi:s əv lænd wɪð sænd ɔ: smɔ:l

stones at the edge of the sea or at the edge of a large
stəʊnz ət ði edʒ əv ðə si: ɔ:r ət ði edʒ əv ə la:dʒ

lake, ‘shore’ may also be used where the land rises
leɪk, 'ʃɔ: meɪ ɔ:lsoʊ bi: ju:zd hweə ðə lænd raɪzɪz

sharply out of the sea without any low piece of land
ʃə:pli aʊt əv ðə si: wɪð'aʊt enɪ loʊ pi:s əv lænd

at the edge of the water, as for instance at Dover. So
ət ði edʒ əv ðə wɔ:tə, əz fər ɪnstəns ət dɒvə. səʊ

you see, a ‘beach’ is always a ‘shore’, but a ‘shore’ is
ju: si:, ə 'bi:tʃ ɪz ɔ:lweɪz ə 'ʃɔ:, bət ə 'ʃɔ: ɪz

only a ‘beach’ if it has small round stones or sand —
ɒnli ə 'bi:tʃ ɪf ɪt hæz smɔ:l raʊnd stəʊnz ɔ: sænd —

if you know what I mean.” “Thanks! I think I do,”
ɪf ju: nəʊ hwaɪt ai mi:n.” “θæŋks! ai ɪŋk ai du:.”

Storm said. “At least I know enough to be able to
stɔ:m sed. “ət li:st ai nəʊ ɪ'nʌf tə bi: eɪbl tə

find out the rest when I read the word or hear some-
faind aut ðə rest hwen ai ri:d ðə wə:d ɔ: hiə sʌm-
body use it. But tell me, don't you think we might
bədi ju:z it. bət tel mi:, dount ju: ʔɪŋk wi: maɪt
be able to get a boat somewhere?" "Yes, that's easy
bi: eɪbl tə get ə bout sʌmhweə?" "jes, ðəts i:zi
enough," Marshall replied. "There isn't wind enough
i'nʌf," mɑ:fəl ri'plaid. "ðər ɪznt wɪnd i'nʌf
for sails, though, and, besides, I'm not very used to
fə seɪlz, ðou, ən, bi'saɪdz, aɪm nɒt veri ju:st tə
boats with sails, so I should prefer one of the small
bouts wɪð seɪlz, sou ai ʃəd pri'fə: wʌn əv ðə smɔ:l
boats that you see down there on the beach." "You
bouts ðət ju: si: daʊn ðeər ɔn ðə bi:tʃ." "ju:
need not be afraid," Storm said, "I know all about
ni:d nɒt bi: ə'freɪd," stɔ:m sed, "ai nou ɔ:l ə'baut
boats and sails, so I'll take care of that side of the
bouts ən seɪlz, sou aɪl teɪk keər əv ðæt saɪd əv ðə
matter." "Oh, in that case," Marshall answered, "I
mætə." "ou, ɪn ðæt keɪs," mɑ:fəl a:nsəd, "ai
don't care which we go out in, as long as you'll be
dount keə hwɪtʃ wi: ɡoʊ aut ɪn, əz lɔŋ əz ju:l bi:
the captain. But I think it would be a good idea to
ðə kæptɪn. bət ai ʔɪŋk ɪt wəd bi: ə ɡʊd aɪ'dɪə tə
wait until this evening before going out," he continued.
weɪt ʌn'tɪl ðɪs i:vniŋ bi'fɔ: ɡoʊɪŋ aut," hi: kæn'tɪnju:d.
"As far as I remember, there will be a moon to-night,
"əz fɑ:r əz aɪ ri'membə, ðeə wɪl bi: ə mu:n tə'nait,

and if the weather doesn't change, the stars will be
and if ðə weðə dʌznt tʃeɪndʒ, ðə stɑ:z wɪl bi:
 out, too. But after all we had better take one of the
aut, tu: bət a:ftər ɔ:l wi: həd betə teɪk wʌn əv ðə
 small boats, for what little wind there is will be gone
smɔ:l bəʊts, fə hwɒt lɪtl wɪnd ðər ɪz wɪl bi: ɡɒn
 to-night."
tə'naɪt."

The sea was as smooth as glass when they went out
ðə si: wəz əz smu:ð əz gla:s hwen ðei went aut
 in a small boat that evening. There was not a single
ɪn ə smɔ:l bəʊt ðæt i:vniŋ. ðeə wəz nɒt ə sɪŋɡl
 wave on the surface of the water.
weɪv ɒn ðə sə:fɪs əv ðə wɔ:tə.

"What a lovely sight it is," Marshall said, "with the
"hwɒt ə lʌvli saɪt ɪt ɪz," mɑ:səl sed, "wɪð ðə
 moon and the stars up there in the sky and, at the
mu:n ən ðə stɑ:z ʌp ðeər ɪn ðə skai ænd, ət ðə
 same time, shining back at us from the smooth surface
seɪm taɪm, ʃaɪnɪŋ bæk ət ʌs frəm ðə smu:ð sə:fɪs
 of the sea, and all the lights from the many hotels on
əv ðə si:, ænd ɔ:l ðə laɪts frəm ðə meni haʊ'telz ɒn
 the shore." "Yes, I'm glad we waited till it was dark;
ðə ʃɔ: "jes, aɪm glæd wi: weɪtɪd tɪl ɪt wəz dɑ:k;
 it's a sight I shan't forget," Storm replied.
ɪts ə saɪt aɪ ʃɑ:nt fə'get," stɔ:m rɪ'plaɪd.

When they got on shore again, Marshall suggested that
hwen ðei ɡɒt ɒn ʃɔ:r ə'geɪn, mɑ:səl sə'dʒestɪd ðət

going on = taking
place

turn in = go to
bed

they should have a look at the night-life of Brighton.
ðei ʃəd hæv ə luk ət ðə naɪtlaɪf əv braɪtn.

“Our night-life is not what they call ‘hot’ in America,
“aʊə naɪtlaɪf ɪz nɒt hwɒt ðei kɔ:l ‘hɒt’ ɪn əˈmerɪkə,

but we might look in at a few places and see if there’s
bət wi: maɪt luk ɪn ət ə fju: pleɪsɪz ən si: ɪf ðəz

any fun going on anywhere.”
eni fʌn ɡoʊɪŋ ɔn enɪhwɛə.”

They did as Marshall suggested and passed a very
ðei dɪd əz mɑ:ʃəl səˈdʒestɪd ænd pɑ:st ə veri

pleasant evening, returning about eleven o’clock to
pleznt i:vniŋ, rɪˈtə:nɪŋ əˈbaʊt ɪˈlevn əˈklɒk tə

their hotel to have a glass of something in the restaurant
ðeə haʊˈtel tə hæv ə gla:s əv smʌŋθɪŋ ɪn ðə restərɔ:ŋ

before ‘turning in’. The band was much larger now
bɪˈfɔ: ‘tə:nɪŋ ɪn’ ðə bænd wəz mʌtʃ lɑ:dʒə naʊ

than in the afternoon, and all the musical instruments
ðən ɪn ði ɑ:ftəˈnu:n, ænd ɔ:l ðə mju:zɪkəl ɪnstrəmənts

were being used.
wə: bi:ɪŋ ju:zd.

“It’s almost too much of a good thing with all the noise
“ɪts ɔ:lmoʊst tu: mʌtʃ əv ə ɡʊd θɪŋ wɪð ɔ:l ðə nɔɪz

the band is making now,” Storm said; “I liked it better
ðə bænd ɪz meɪkɪŋ naʊ,” stɔ:m sed; “aɪ laɪkt ɪt betər

in the afternoon.” “That’s because we aren’t dancing,”
ɪn ði ɑ:ftəˈnu:n.” “ðætʃ bɪˈkɔ:z wi: ɑ:nt dɑ:nsɪŋ,”

Marshall replied. “Could we do that?” Storm asked.
mɑ:ʃəl rɪˈplaɪd. “kʊd wi: du: ðæt?” stɔ:m ɑ:skt.

"Yes, it's quite proper to dance with girls you don't
"jes, its kwɔit prɔpə tə da:ns wið gə:lz ju: dount

know at seaside places like this," Marshall answered.
nou at 'si:'said pleisiz laik dis," ma:fəl a:nsəd.

"There will often be girls staying with their families
"ðeə wil ɔ:fn bi: gə:lz steiɪŋ wið ðeə fæmiliz

at the hotel, or young women spending a little holiday
ət ðə hau'tel, ɔ: jʌŋ wimin spendiŋ ə litl holidi

alone, who are usually glad to have a few dances with
ə'loun, hu: a: ju:ʒuəli glæd tə hæv ə fju: da:nsiz wið

you. Let's see if we can find two pleasant-looking
ju:. lets si: if wi: kən faɪnd tu: plezntlu:kiŋ

girls." "Look over there, Marshall, at the three women
gə:lz." "lʊk ɔuvə ðeə, ma:fəl, at ðə θri: wimin

at that table, especially the one to the left. What on
ət ðæt teɪbl, ɪs'peʃəli ðə wʌn tə ðə left. hwɔt ɔn

earth is she doing?" "I think she's beating time to the
ə:θ ɪz ʃi: du:ɪŋ?" "aɪ θɪŋk ʃi:z bi:tiŋ taɪm tə ðə

music with her hand," he answered, "perhaps to show
mju:zɪk wið hə: hænd," hi: a:nsəd, "pə'hæps tə ʃəʊ

that she can dance and is willing to, if anybody should
ðæt ʃi: kən da:ns ənd ɪz wi:lɪŋ tu, ɪf enɪbɔdi ʃəd

ask her. I must say they're a strange collection, those
a:sk hə:. aɪ mʌst sei ðeə ə streɪndʒ kə'leksən, ðəʊz

three! They must be at least fifteen years older than
θri:! ðei mʌst bi: ət li:st fifti:n jɪəz ouldə ðən

they're trying to appear. Look at the other one, now!
ðeə traɪɪŋ tu ə'piə. lʊk ət ði ʌðə wʌn, naʊ!

appear (here) =
look

She is putting still more red 'paint' on her lips and
ʃi: iz putɪŋ stɪl mɔ: red 'peɪnt' ɔn hæ: lɪps ən
 powder on her nose and cheeks. I wonder what they
paʊdər ɔn hæ: nouz ən tʃi:ks. aɪ wʌndə hwɔt ðeɪ
 look like under that surface of powder and paint?"
lʊk laɪk ʌndə ðæt sə:fɪs əv paʊdər ən peɪnt?"

"You should look over there instead," Storm said,
"ju: ʃəd lʊk oʊvə ðeər ɪn'sted." stɔ:m sed,

noticing two girls of about twenty entering the restaurant
nəʊtɪsɪŋ tu: gə:lz əv ə'baʊt twenti ɛntəriŋ ðə restərɔ:ŋ

in the company of a man who looked old enough to be
ɪn ðə kʌmpəni əv ə mæn hu: lʊkt ould ɪ'nʌf tə bi:

their grandfather. They were tall and good-looking,
ðeə grændfa:ðə. ðeɪ wə: tɔ:l ənd gudlʊkɪŋ,

not beautiful, but with the clear skin and rosy lips and
nɔt bjʊ:təfʊl, bət wɪð ðə kliə skɪn ənd rouzi lɪps ənd

cheeks for which English women are famous. "Have
tʃi:ks fə hwɪtʃ ɪŋglɪʃ wɪmɪn a: feɪməs. "həv

you noticed the way the smaller of them is walking in
ju: nəʊtɪst ðə wei ðə smɔ:lər əv ðəm ɪz wɔ:kiŋ ɪn

time to the music? Musical people often do that. I
tʌɪm tə ðə mju:zɪk? mju:zɪkəl pi:pl ɔ:fən du: ðæt. aɪ

am sure she dances well."
əm ʃʊə ʃi: dɑ:nsɪz wel."

In fact, both girls moved across the dance-floor with the
ɪn fækt, bəʊθ gə:lz mu:vɔd ə'krɔs ðə dɑ:nsflɔ: wɪð ðə

grace of young animals. "If they dance with as much
greɪs əv jʌŋ ænɪməlz. "ɪf ðeɪ dɑ:ns wɪð əz mʌtʃ

grace as they walk, it should be lovely to dance with
greis əz ðei wɔ:k, it ʃəd bi: lʌvli tə dɑ:nz wið

them. Do you think they will dance with us?" Storm
ðəm. du: ju: ʃɪŋk ðei wil dɑ:nz wið ʌs?" stɔ:m

asked. "We can only find that out by asking them.
ɑ:skt. "wi: kən ounli faɪnd ðæt aʊt baɪ ɑ:skɪŋ ðəm.

But let's give them a chance to taste their wine, or
hət lets gɪv ðəm ə tʃɑ:nz tə teɪst ðeə weɪn, ɔ:

whatever they're having, before we ask them. Did
hwət'evə ðeə hævɪŋ, bɪ'fɔ: wi: ɑ:sk ðəm. dɪd

you notice that they are both wearing very beautiful
ju: nəʊtɪs ðæt ðei ɑ: boʊp weəərɪŋ veri bjʊ:təfʊl

jewels round their necks?" Marshall continued. "As
dʒu:əlz raʊnd ðeə neks?" mɑ:ʃəl kən'tɪnju:d. "əz

far as I can see from here, the tall girl's jewels are
fɑ:r əz aɪ kən si: frəm hɪə, ðə tɔ:l gɜ:lz dʒu:əlz ɑ:

quite like her sister's, except that the stones of their
kwaɪt laɪk hɜ: sɪstəz, ɪk'sept ðæt ðə stəʊnz əv ðeə

jewels are of different colours. For I suppose that they
dʒu:əlz ɑ:r əv dɪfrənt kʌləz. fɜr aɪ sə'pəʊz ðæt ðei

must be sisters."
mʌst bi: sɪstəz."

"I shouldn't wonder if they are," Storm said. "How
"aɪ ʃʊdn̩t wʌndə ɪf ðei ɑ:," stɔ:m sed. "haʊ

different these two are from the three painted ladies
dɪfrənt ði:z tu: ɑ: frəm ðə ʒri: peɪntɪd leɪdɪz

over there. You can easily see that when you compare
oʊvə ðeə. ju: kən i:zɪli si: ðæt hwen ju: kəm'peə

compare = make
a comparison

auntie = aunt

the quiet good taste of the two girls' jewels with the
ðə kwaɪət gud teɪst əv ðə tuː ɡəːlz dʒuːəls wɪð ðə

'loud' jewels our three 'aunties' have hung round their
'laʊd' dʒuːəls ɔʊə θriː 'aːntiːz hæv haŋ raʊnd ðeə

thin necks — gold and silver, and stones in all colours!"
θɪn neks — ɡəʊld ən sɪlvə, ən stəʊnz ɪn ɔːl kələz!"

"Yes, I suppose their jewels must be expensive, but
"jes, aɪ səˈpəʊz ðeə dʒuːəls mʌst biː ɪksˈpensɪv, bət

they look as if they might have been bought at one
ðeɪ lʊk əz ɪf ðeɪ maɪt hæv biːn ɒ:t ət wʌn

of those stores where nothing costs more than sixpence,"
əv ðəʊz stɔːz hwɛə nəθɪŋ kɒsts mɔː ðən sɪkspens,"

Marshall replied.

maːʃəl rɪˈplaɪd.

"Well, shall we ask if the girls would care to dance
"wel, ʃəl wiː ɑːsk ɪf ðə ɡəːlz wəd keə tə daːns

with us? We had better go one at a time — you first!
wɪð ʌs? wiː həd betə ɡəʊ wʌn ət ə taɪm — juː fəːst!

Which of them have you thought of asking?" Storm
hwɪtʃ əv ðəm hæv juː θɔːt əv ɑːskɪŋ?" stɔːm

wanted to know. "The smaller one. But I don't want
wʌntɪd tə nəʊ. "ðə smɔːlə wʌn. bət aɪ daʊnt wʌnt

to go first," Marshall replied. "Well, if I'm to go first,
tə ɡəʊ fəːst," maːʃəl rɪˈplaɪd. "wel, ɪf aɪm tə ɡəʊ fəːst,

I shall ask the small one," Storm laughed. "I liked
aɪ ʃəl ɑːsk ðə smɔːl wʌn," stɔːm lɑːft. "aɪ laɪkt

the way she moved in time to the music."
ðə weɪ ʃiː muːvd ɪn taɪm tə ðə mjuːzɪk."

"So did I. However, I'd rather not go first; but if they
"sou did ai. hau'evə, aid ra:ðə nɒt ɡou fə:st; bət if dei

care to have more than one dance with us, perhaps
kəə tə hæv mɔ: ðən wʌn dɑ:ns wɪð ʌs, pə'hæps

I might have a chance later of trying how well she
ai maɪt hæv ə tʃɑ:ns leɪtə əv traɪɪŋ hau wəl ʃi:

dances. All right, run along now," Marshall said, "and
dɑ:nsɪz. ɔ:l rait, rʌn ə'ləŋ nau," mɑ:ʃəl sed, "ən

don't forget to bow to grandpa and ask him first if
dəʊnt fə'ɡet tə baʊ tə ɡrændpɑ: ənd ɑ:sk hɪm fə:st ɪf

grandpa =
grandfather

you may dance with one of his young ladies!"
ju: meɪ dɑ:ns wɪð wʌn əv hɪz jʌŋ leɪdɪz."

Storm collected all his courage and walked up to the
stɔ:m kə'lektɪd ɔ:l hɪz kʌrɪdʒ ənd wɔ:kt ʌp tə ðə

table where the two girls were sitting. As he came
teɪbl hweə ðə tu: ɡɜ:lz wə: sɪtɪŋ. əz hɪ: keɪm

nearer, he noticed that the taller of the girls looked
nɪərə, hɪ: nəʊtɪst ðæt ðə tə:lər əv ðə ɡɜ:lz lʊkt

a little like Marion, and so at the last minute he decided
ə lɪtl laɪk mə'ɪən, ənd sou ət ðə lɑ:st mɪnɪt hɪ: dɪ'saɪdɪd

to ask her. First he bowed once in the general direction
tu ɑ:sk hə:. fə:st hɪ: baʊd wʌns ɪn ðə dʒenərəl dɪ'rekʃən

of their table, then he bowed to the old gentleman,
əv ðeə teɪbl, ðen hɪ: baʊd tə ði ould dʒentlmən,

and at last he bowed to the girl and asked in a voice
ənd ət lɑ:st hɪ: baʊd tə ðə ɡɜ:l ənd ɑ:skt ɪn ə vɔɪs

that he hardly recognized as his own, "May I have the
ðæt hɪ: hædli rekəɡnaɪzd əz hɪz oun, "meɪ ai hæv ðə

pleasure of having this dance with you?"

plezər əv hævɪŋ ðɪs da:ns wɪð ju:?"

Soon they were all talking pleasantly together, and

after the first few dances the old gentleman invited

them to move over to his table.

ðəm tə mu:v oʊvə tə hɪz teɪbl.

On Sunday evening the two friends went home by

train after having spent a very pleasant week-end at

the seaside.

ðə 'si:'saɪd.

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:

grace

week-end

tooth

teeth

brush

brush (verb)

tooth-paste

tooth-brush

comb

sponge

Storm — to see the spring in England. Marshall and Storm went to Brighton for the —. Brighton is a town on the south — of England. A — is used to — your teeth with. In the morning, when brushing his —, Storm had noticed that he had used up all his —. A — is used to brush your hair with, and a — is also used for the hair.

The two friends wanted to bathe, so Marshall took his — with him and Storm his —. The — from London

to Brighton is about fifty miles. In former times the — made corn into —, but now the factories do it. When the ground has been broken by the —, the — is put into it. The corn is taken to the — to be made into flour. At the hotel Marshall and Storm took their tea with —. Marshall took three — of sugar.

After tea Marshall wanted to show Storm the different — of the town. The — at Brighton consisted of small stones, which many people prefer to —. Marshall knew a place with — sand. Both 'beach' and '—' mean land at the edge of a sea. Storm knew all about boats with —.

EXERCISE B.

Write about one of the latest books you have read. Was it about a subject you are interested in, or was it just a good story? Tell us if you liked it, if you know anything about the person who wrote it, etc. Use your own words as well as you can when writing the exercise, which should have a length of 200—300 words.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Verbs are words that tell us what persons or things do or are. They also tell us what happens. Here are some examples: The girl **goes** to school at eight o'clock in the morning. The man **drove** the car. The boy **is** small. The horse **was running** very fast. I **have eaten** my apple. He **could see** many houses from his window.

bathing-drawers
bathing-costume
drawers
distance
roadside
seed
instrument
plough
windmill
left
mill
flour
course
lemon
lump
seaside
coast
shore
beach
sand
dance (verb)
dance
attraction
bow
music
musical
time
lip
cheek
powder
jewel
compare
moon
star
surface
sail
smooth

grandpa

What **happened** then? In these sentences the words 'goes', 'drove', 'is', etc., are verbs.

A verb has several forms. 'Write', 'wrote', 'written', 'writing', 'writes' are all forms of the verb 'to write'. The form 'to write' we call the infinitive [*in'finitiv*], and this is generally the form we give when we mention a verb. Examples: to go, to eat, to swim, to play.

The form of the verb that expresses the time of the sentence we call its tense. The verbs have several tenses, which may be seen from the following sentences: I **am** ill now. I **was** ill yesterday. I **have been** ill for three days. The time "now" is expressed by the present tense. Here are some examples of verbs in the present tense: I **hope** to see you again. We **think** of going there often. You never **eat** enough. We **write** letters every day.

The forms used in the present tense are the following: I call, you call, he (she, it, the boy) calls, we call, you call, they (the boys) call. You will notice that the form is the same in all cases, except one: after 'he', 'she', 'it', and a noun in the singular, an -s is added.

The -s is pronounced [*s*] after the sounds *p, t, k, f, þ*, which are called voiceless [*vʊislis*] consonants, but after the sounds *b, d, g, m, n, ŋ, v, ð, l*, which are called voiced [*vʊist*] consonants, and after vowels, the -s is pronounced [*z*]. Examples: he thanks [*þæŋks*], he brings [*brɪŋz*], he hears [*hɪəz*].

Notice that if the verb ends in the sounds *s*, *z*, *f*, *ʒ*, a whole syllable [-*iz*] is added: he passes [*pa:si:z*], he rises [*raizi:z*], he wishes [*wiʃi:z*], he changes [*tʃeindʒi:z*]. In writing, -es is added in such words if they do not end in an -e beforehand: wish-es, rise-s.

If a verb ends in a consonant followed by -y in the infinitive, it changes -y into -ie before -s is added, for instance, try — tries. But if a vowel comes before the -y, the -y remains when -s is added: stay — stays.

Questions:

What are verbs? ... What is the tense of a verb? ... How do you make the form of the present tense after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular? ... What do you add to a verb in the present tense after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a singular noun, if it ends in *s*, *z*, *f*, *ʒ*? ... If a verb ends in -y in the infinitive, do you always change it into -ie before -s is added? ...

RAILWAYS

“Really, Marshall,” Storm said, when they were
“riəli, mɑ:ʃəl,” stɔ:m sed, huven ðei wə:

discussing their trip to Brighton over a quiet cup of
dis'kʌsiŋ ðəə tri:p tə braɪtn ouvə ə kwiət kʌp əv

tea on Sunday night, “I must say a few words in praise
ti: ɒn sʌndi naɪt, “aɪ mʌst sei ə fju: wə:dz ɪn preɪz

of your railways. Not only was our train extremely
əv jɔ: reɪlweɪz. nɒt ɒnli wəz əʊə treɪn ɪks'tri:mli

comfortable, but I was surprised to find how fast it
kʌmfətəbl, bʌt aɪ wəz sə'praɪzd tə faɪnd haʊ fɑ:st ɪt

went. The journey home from Brighton was very
went. ðə dʒɜ:ni haʊm frəm braɪtn wəz veri

quick indeed.”

kwi:k ɪn'di:d.”

“Yes, we’re rather proud of our railways. Most people
“jes, wiə ra:ðə praʊd əv əʊə reɪlweɪz. mʌst pi:pl

who come to Britain from the Continent have nothing
hu: kʌm tə brɪtən frəm ðə kɒntɪnənt hæv nəθɪŋ

but praise for our trains. The reason why our railways
bʌt preɪz fər əʊə treɪnz. ðə ri:zn huəɪ əʊə reɪlweɪz

are better than those of most other countries many
ɑ: betə ðən ðəʊz əv mʌst ʌðə kʌntriz mʌni

think is this: In most countries the railways have
θɪŋk ɪz ðɪs: ɪn mʌst kʌntriz ðə reɪlweɪz hæv

always been owned by the State, but over here they
 ɔ:lʌvəz bi:n ound bai ðə steit, bət ouvə hia ðei

were under the control of four big private companies
 wə:r ʌndə ðə kən'trɒl əv fɔ: big praɪvət kʌmpənɪz

until the first of January 1948. Where the
 ʌn'tɪl ðə fə:st əv dʒænjuəri naɪnti:n fɔ:ti'eɪt. hʌvə ðə

State owns the railways, there's no competition, and
 steit ɒnz ðə reɪlweɪz, ðəz nou kəmpeɪtɪʃən, ən

that often means, they say, that nobody takes any real
 ðæt ɔ:fn mi:nz, ðei sei, ðæt noubədi teɪks ɛni riəl

trouble to make a first-class business out of them. This
 trʌbl tə meɪk ə fə:stklɑ:s bɪznɪs aʊt əv ðəm. ðɪs

usually means, of course, that railways owned by the State
 ju:ʒuəli mi:nz, əv kɔ:s, ðæt reɪlweɪz ound bai ðə steit

don't make money, but lose money instead. Although
 daʊnt meɪk mʌni, bət lu:z mʌni ɪn'sted. ɔ:lðəu

our railways are now owned by the State, you must
 ɒʊə reɪlweɪz a: naʊ ound bai ðə steit, ju: mʌst

remember that they had been made into a first-class
 rɪ'membə ðæt ðei həd bi:n meɪd ɪntu ə fə:stklɑ:s

business by the people who owned them before."
 bɪznɪs bai ðə pi:pl hu: ound ðəm bi'fɔ:."

Storm: "Yes, I can easily understand that there must
 stɔ:m: "jes, aɪ kən i:zɪli ʌndə'stænd ðæt ðɛə mʌst

have been much competition between the four com-
 həv bi:n mʌtʃ kəmpeɪtɪʃən bi'twi:n ðə fɔ: kʌm-

panies, and I also understand that this may have been
 pəni:z, ənd aɪ ɔ:lsoʊ ʌndə'stænd ðæt ðɪs meɪ həv bi:n

company = busi-
 ness into which
 many people have
 put money

make money =
 earn money

He **loses**, he **lost**,
 he has **lost** [lu:zɪz,
 lɒst, lɒst].

benefit = advantage

a benefit to the people who used the trains. Each
a benifit tə ðə pi:pl hu: ju:zd ðə treinz. i:tf
of the companies, of course, wanted to get as much
əv ðə kʌmpəni:z, əv kɔ:s, wɒntid tə get əz mʌtʃ
of the transport as possible. Their accounts had to
əv ðə trænspɔ:t əz pɒsəbl. ðeər ə'kaunts həd tə
show a profit at the end of the year. If they lost
ʃəʊ ə prɒfit ət ði end əv ðə jɪə. ɪf ðei lɒst
business, they lost money, and if they lost too much
bɪznɪs, ðei lɒst mʌni, ʌnd ɪf ðei lɒst tu: mʌtʃ
money, their accounts would show a loss instead of
mʌni, ðeər ə'kaunts wəd ʃəʊ ə lɒs ɪn'sted əv
a profit; then people wouldn't put their money into
a prɒfit; ðen pi:pl wudnt put ðə mʌni ɪntə
that company, and it would soon be finished. But
ðæt kʌmpəni, ʌnd ɪt wəd su:n bi: fɪnɪʃt. bʌt

in the way of = as to

tell me, what could they really do in the way of competition? It isn't always that competition is good."
*tɛl mi:, hɒw kʌd ðei riəli du: ɪn ðə weɪ əv kəm-
petɪʃən? ɪt ɪznt ɔ:lweɪs ðæt kəmpeɪtɪʃən ɪz gud."*

"Oh, there were, and still are of course, many forms
"əʊ, ðə wə:, ʌn stɪl ɑ:r əv kɔ:s, mʌni fɔ:mz
of service to be found in our trains. We really feel
əv sə:vɪs tə bi: faʊnd ɪn ʌʊə treinz. wi: riəli fi:l
that somebody is always thinking out new comforts
ðæt sʌmbədi ɪz ɔ:lweɪs θɪŋkɪŋ ʌʊt nju: kʌmfəts
for the travellers. In almost all carriages we have
fɔ ðə trævələz. ɪn ɔ:lmʌst ɔ:l kærɪdʒɪz wi: həv

soft seats to sit on, instead of hard seats of wood. At
soft si:ts tə sit ɒn, in'sted əv ha:d si:ts əv wud. ət

many stations we can buy a cup of tea, take it along
meni steifənz wi: kən bai ə kʌp əv ti:, teik it ə'lɔŋ

in the train, and leave the empty cup at another station.
in ðə treɪn, ən li:v ði ɛmti kʌp ət ə'nʌðə steɪʃən.

In one or two trains running between London and
in wʌn ə tu: treɪnz rʌniŋ bi'twi:n lʌndən ən

Brighton, they have special carriages with typewriters
braɪtn, ðei hæv speʃəl kærɪdʒɪz wið taɪpraɪtəz

for business men and their secretaries."
fə bɪznɪs mən ən ðeə sekrətɪz."

"I see that your railways differ very much from those
"aɪ si: ðæt jɔ: reɪlweɪz dɪfə veri mʌʃ frəm ðəʊz

in my country," Storm said. "At home, there is, for
in maɪ kʌntri," stɔ:m sed. "ət hoʊm, ðər ɪz, fər

instance, a great difference between first and third
ɪnstəns, ə greɪt dɪfrəns bi'twi:n fə:st ən þə:d

class carriages. The first class carriages, of course,
kla:s kærɪdʒɪz. ðə fə:st kla:s kærɪdʒɪz, əv kɔ:s,

have soft seats, but many third class carriages still
hæv soft si:ts, bʌt meni þə:d kla:s kærɪdʒɪz stɪl

have hard wooden seats. And typewriters! I'm sure
hæv ha:d wudn si:ts. ən taɪpraɪtəz! aɪm suə

nobody ever thought of having typewriters for business
nəʊbədi evə þɔ:t əv hævɪŋ taɪpraɪtəz fə bɪznɪs

men in our trains."
mən ɪn ʌʊə treɪnz."

wood = what
 chairs and tables
 are made of



typewriter

wooden = made
 of wood



rails

"There's another difference which I'm almost sure you
 "ðæz ə'nʌðə dɪfrəns hwiɪf aɪm ɔ:lmoʊst suə ju:

have noticed," Marshall said. "Our carriages are a
 hæv noutɪst," mɑ:fəl sed. "auə kærɪdʒɪz a:r ə

little narrower than those used on the Continent,
 lɪtl nærouə ðən ðəʊz ju:zd ɔn ðə kɒntɪnənt,

although the space between the rails isn't narrower.
 ɔ:l'ðəʊ ðə speɪs bɪ'twi:n ðə reɪlz ɪznt nærouə.

With narrower carriages running on the rails, it means
 wɪð nærouə kærɪdʒɪz rʌnɪŋ ɔn ðə reɪlz, ɪt mi:nz

that trains can go much faster. You will remember
 ðæt treɪnz kən ɡəʊ mʌtʃ fɑ:stə. ju: wɪl rɪ'membə

that we Englishmen built the first railways. That is
 ðæt wi: ɪŋɡlɪʃmən bɪlt ðə fɜ:st reɪlweɪz. ðæt ɪz

to say, already more than two thousand years ago the
 tə sei, ɔ:l'reɪdɪ mɔ: ðən tu: haʊzənd jɪəz ə'ɡəʊ ðə

Romans knew how to use rails of stone or wood for
 ɾəʊmənz nju: haʊ tə ju:z reɪlz əv stəʊn ɔ: wʊd fə

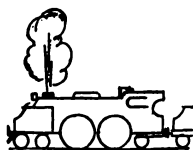
the transport of heavy objects. But it was in England
 ðə trænspɔ:t əv hevi ɔbdʒɪkts. bʌt ɪt wəz ɪn ɪŋɡlənd

that the first modern railway was opened, with a real
 ðæt ðə fɜ:st mɒdən reɪlweɪ wəz ɒʊpənd, wɪð ə riəl

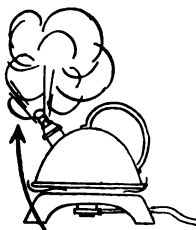
engine that was moved forward by steam. At first
 ɛndʒɪn ðæt wəz mu:vəd fɔ:wəd baɪ sti:m. ət fɜ:st

people were afraid of these engines with steam coming
 pi:pl wə:r ə'freɪd əv ði:z ɛndʒɪnz wɪð sti:m kʌmɪŋ

out of them. They thought that the engines weren't
 aʊt əv ðəm. ðeɪ θɔ:t ðæt ði ɛndʒɪnz wə:nt



engine



steam

safe and dared not ride in trains pulled by engines.
seif ən deəd nɒt raid in treinz puld bai endʒinz.

So not until the engines had been used for some time
sou nɒt ʌn'til ði endʒinz həd bi:n ju:zd fə sʌm taim

for the transport of goods, did people believe that they
fə ðə trəns'pɔ:t əv gudz, did pi:pl bi'li:v ðət ðei

were quite safe, and that they could ride in the trains
wə: kwait seif, ən ðət ðei kəd raid in ðə treinz

without danger. I think it would be hard to-day to
wɪð'aʊt deɪndʒə. ai θɪŋk ɪt wəd bi: hæ:d tə'dei tə

find a person who wouldn't dare to ride in a train."
faind ə pə:sən hu: wədnt deə tə raid in ə treɪn."

"How strange to think that the railways, which have
"hau streɪndʒ tə θɪŋk ðət ðə reɪlweɪz, hwi:ʃ həv

been of such benefit to people, were so long in having
bi:n ə sʌʃ benɪfɪt tə pi:pl, wə: sou lɔŋ in hævɪŋ

success!" Storm said. "Just think how travelling, a
sək'ses!" stɔ:m sed. "dʒʌst θɪŋk hau trævəlɪŋ, ə

little over a hundred years ago, differed from travelling
lɪtl oʊvər ə haʊdrəd jɪəz ə'gəʊ, dɪfəd frəm trævəlɪŋ

to-day! A two hours' trip to-day would have been
tə'dei! ə tu: aʊəs trɪp tə'dei wəd həv bi:n

a two days' journey then — a very uncomfortable
ə tu: deɪz dʒə:ni ðen — ə veri ʌn'kʌmfətəbl

journey, too — and not very safe. Nowadays we sit
dʒə:ni, tu: — ən nɒt veri seif. naʊədeɪz wi: sit

at ease on seats as comfortable as our chairs at home.
ət i:z ɒn si:ts əz kʌmfətəbl əz ʌʊə tʃeəz ət haʊm.

at ease = com-
 fortably

Chapter Fifty-Four (54).

restaurant car =
railway carriage
used as a restau-
rant

He **flies**, he **flew**,
he has **flown**
[flaiz, flu:, flown].

unknown = not
known

'Cheltenham
Flyer' = the fastest
train running
between London
and Cheltenham

'Flying Scotsman'
= a well-known
train running
between London
and Edinburgh
[edimbərə]

If we get hungry on the trip, we only have to go into
if wi: get haŋgri ɔn ðə tri:p, wi: ounli hæv tə gou into

the restaurant car and order what we want, and then
ðə restərɔ:ŋ kɑ:r ənd ɔ:də hwæt wi: wɔnt, ən ðen

sit at ease in soft chairs, watching houses and trees
sit at i:z in sɔft tʃeəz, wɔtʃiŋ haʊziz ən tri:z

fly past the window, while we are waiting for the
flai pɑ:st ðə wi:ndəʊ, hwaɪl wi: ɑ: weitiŋ fə ðə
food.”
fu:d.”

“Yes,” replied Marshall, “the railways soon became a
“jes,” ri'plaid mɑ:fəl, “ðə reɪlweɪz su:n bi'keɪm ə

success, even if the first trains were uncomfortable and
sək'ses, i:vən ɪf ðə fə:st treɪnz wə:r ʌn'kʌmfətabl ən

the service now given to passengers was quite unknown
ðə sə:vɪs naʊ gɪvən tə pæsɪndʒəz wəz ki:tɪ ʌn'nəʊn

then. The speed of those first trains in comparison
ðen. ðə spi:d ɔv ðəʊz fə:st treɪnz ɪn kəm'pærɪsn

with what people were used to must have given the
wɪð hwæt pi:pl wə: ju:st tu məst hæv gɪvən ðə

first passengers a feeling that they were flying along
fə:st pæsɪndʒəz ə fi:lɪŋ ðæt ðeɪ wə: flaɪɪŋ ə'lɔŋ

as fast as birds. Speaking of birds and flying, it is said
əz fə:st əz bɑ:dz. spi:kɪŋ ɔv bɑ:dz ən flaɪɪŋ, ɪt ɪz sed

that some of our trains, for instance, the 'Cheltenham
ðæt sʌm ɔv ʌʊə treɪnz, fəɪ ɪnstəns, ðə 'tʃeltnəm

Flyer' and the 'Flying Scotsman', two of the fastest
flaɪə' ən ðə 'flaɪɪŋ skɒtsmən', tu: ɔv ðə fə:stɪst

trains in the world, when at their greatest speed, really
treinz in ðə wə:ld, hwen æt ðeə greitist spi:d, riəli

do go faster than any bird has ever flown. I don't
du: gou fa:stə ðæn eni bə:d hæz evə floun. ai dount

know whether it's true, though."

nou hweðər its tru:, ðou."

"I hardly think so. But even without that there are

"*ai ha:dli þɪŋk sou. bət i:vən wið'aut ðæt ðeə*

so many things that I must praise," Storm answered.

sou meni þɪŋz ðæt ai məst preiz," stɔ:m a:nsəd.

"I've noticed, for instance, that there are very fine

"*aɪv noutist, fər instəns, ðæt ðeə veri faɪn*

connections between most of the larger towns. There

kə'nekʃənz bi'twi:n moust əv ðə la:dʒə taʊnz. ðeə

are connections several times a day from one end of the

kə'nekʃənz severəl taɪmz ə dei frəm wʌn end əv ðə

country to the other. And the connections from London

kəntri tə ði ʌðə. ən ðə kə'nekʃənz frəm lʌndən

are so frequent that you can go almost anywhere

ə: sou fri:kwənt ðæt ju: kən gou ɔ:l'moust enɪhwə

whenever you want to. I'm sorry to say that in my

hwen'evə ju: wɒnt tu. aɪm sɔ:ri tə sei ðæt in maɪ

country this is not always so."

kəntri ðis ɪz nɒt ɔ:lweɪs sou."

"Perhaps that is why many Londoners are such fre-

"*pə'hæps ðæt ɪz hwaɪ meni lʌndənəz a: sʌtʃ fri:-*

quent guests in the country. It's made easy for them

kwənt gests in ðə kəntri. its meɪd i:zi fə ðəm

to get away," Marshall replied. "You seem to be made
tə get ə'vei," *ma:fəl ri'plaid.* "ju: si:m tə bi: meid
of the right material for a true Londoner; I've noticed
əv ðə rait mə'tiəriəl fər ə tru: lʌndənə; aiv noutist
that it's getting harder and harder to keep you at home
ðət its getiŋ ha:dər ən ha:də tə ki:p ju: ət haʊm
during the week-ends. You go about in trains as if
dʒuəriŋ ðə 'wi:k'ends. ju: gou ə'baut in treinz əz if
you were getting material together for a book about
ju: wə: getiŋ mə'tiəriəl tə'geðə fər ə buk ə'baut
the country round London — or perhaps you just want
ðə kʌntri raʊnd lʌndən — ɔ: pə'hæps ju: dʒʌst wɒnt
to be sure that the railways will get a nice profit?"
tə bi: suə ðət ðə reilweiz wil get ə nais prɒfit?"
"Don't be foolish, Marshall," Storm replied. "I'm sorry
"dʌnt bi: fu:lɪʃ. ma:fəl," stɔ:m ri'plaid. "aɪm sɔ:ri
I haven't told you any more about my trips than I have,
ai hævnt toʊld ju: eni mɔ:r ə'baut maɪ trips ðən ai hæv,
but I will tell you all about them later on." "This
bət ai wil tel ju: ɔ:l ə'baut ðəm leɪtər ɒn." "ðis
sounds very interesting. — And what has come over
saʊndz veri intristiŋ. — ən hwɒt hæz kʌm oʊvə
you, since you suddenly look so serious? Have you
ju:, sɪns ju: sʌdnli luk sou siəriəs? hæv ju:
lost all your smiles in the train?" "Please don't make
lɒst ɔ:l jɔ: smailz in ðə treɪn?" "pli:z dʌnt meɪk
fun of me — I'm really a rather serious young man at
fʌn əv mi: — aɪm riəli ə rə:ðə siəriəs jʌŋ mæn ət

heart!" "So I see. Excuse me, old man! But I'm
ha:t! "sou ai si:. iks'kju:z mi:, ould mæn! bat aim

sure that yours is not only a case of the loss of a few
fua ðæt jɔ:z iz nɒt ounli ə keis əv ðə lɒs əv ə fju:

smiles. I wonder if you haven't lost your heart as
smailz. ai wʌndər ɪf ju: hævnt lɒst jɔ: ha:t əz

well?" Storm: "What do you mean?" "I mean,"
wel?" stɔ:m: "hwɒt du: ju: mi:n?" "ai mi:n,"

Marshall replied, "— no, I shall answer you with another
ma:fəl ri'plaɪd, "— nou, ai fəl a:nsə ju: wið ə'nʌðə

question: Are you alone on your frequent Sunday trips
kwestʃən: a: ju: ə'loun ɒn jɔ: fri:kwənt sʌndi trips

into the country?" "Hem — I'm not quite ready to tell
ɪntə ðə kʌntri?" "hm — aɪm nɒt kwaɪt redi tə tel

you about that yet." "Oh, sorry! I can wait."
ju: ə'baʊt ðæt jet." "ou, sɒri! ai kən weɪt."

EXERCISE A.

Until the first of January 1948, all the railways in England were owned by four — and were not under the — of the State. The English railways are of great — to the passengers. The passengers sit on — seats, instead of hard seats made of —. Most railways owned by the State show a — when the accounts are made up at the end of the year, while the private railway companies generally show a —.

WORDS:
 frequent
 transport
 safe
 dare
 steam
 engine
 success
 journey

uncomfortable
restaurant car
unknown
fly
flew
flown
flyer
wood
wooden
soft
difference
differ
benefit
control
lose
lost
loss
profit
company
connection
competition
rail
service
ease
praise
praise (verb)
material
typewriter

Storm told Marshall that the railways in his country in many ways — from the railways in Britain. They did not give the passengers such good —. The — between the first and third class carriages was very great. Nowadays you can sit at — in the restaurant — and have your dinner while you are travelling. They say that the train called the ‘Cheltenham —’ runs faster than any bird has ever —. In one or two trains running between London and Brighton, they have — for business men. Storm — the English railways, and Marshall answered that most foreigners had only words of — for them.

Although the British carriages are narrower, the space between the — in England is the same as on the Continent. When the first railways were built, modern comforts on the trains were quite —. Before the railways came, a trip which now is made in a few hours was often a — of several days. It is the — that pulls the train. Most engines are driven by —. At first people thought that the trains were not —, and therefore they — not ride in them, but used them only for the — of goods. Now, however, they have had great — everywhere. There are very good — between all the larger towns in England. Storm had made — trips into the country during the last months. When Storm answered Marshall in a serious voice, Marshall asked him if he had — all his smiles in the train.

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

Which do you think is the cheaper way of transport of goods, by ship or by train? ... Are all the railways in your country owned by the State? ... What service do your trains give to the passengers? ... Have you got trains that have names, as some trains have in England? ... Do railways in your country show a profit or a loss? ... Why do you think this is so? ... Which way of travelling do you prefer, by train or by boat? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

The present tense of the verb 'have' is not made in the normal way after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular. The form is 'has': I have, you have, he (she, it, the boy) has, we have, you have, they (the boys) have. In the same way, the present tense of the verb 'do' is irregular [*i'regjulə*], that is, not normal, after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular: I do [*du:*], you do, he (she, it, the boy) does [*dʌz*], we do, you do, they (the boys) do. Verbs ending in -o add -es after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular. Example: I go, he goes.

The verbs 'shall', 'will', 'can', 'may', 'must', 'ought' do not add an -s when used with 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular, and have consequently only one form in the present tense. Examples: He **will** do it. John **must** not go to school to-day. He **can** pay the bill. She **may** come at any time.

'Dare' and 'need' may be without -s after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular, if they are followed by an infinitive. Examples: He **needs** the money. He **need** not go there. Let him come if he **dares**. He **dare** not go there.

The present tense of the verb 'be' has three different forms: I am, you are, he (she, it, the boy) is, we are, you are, they (the boys) are.

Questions:

What is the present tense form of 'have' after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular? ... What is the present tense of 'do' after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular, and how is the form pronounced? ... What do verbs ending in -o add in the present tense after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular? ... Mention the six verbs which do not end in -s after 'he', 'she', 'it', or a noun in the singular. ... What are the present tense forms of the verb 'be'? ...

AN IMPORTANT QUESTION

Storm's special work for Mr. Edwards made it necessary
stɔ:mz spəʃəl wə:k fə mistər edwədz meɪd ɪt nesɪsəri

for him to spend many evenings at the manager's house.
fə hɪm tə spend menɪ i:vniŋz ət ðə mænɪdʒəz haʊs.

When work was finished on these nights, Mrs. Edwards
hwen wə:k wəz fɪnɪʃt ɒn ði:z naɪts misɪz edwədz

and Marion usually laid the tea-table, and they all had
ænd mæriən ju:ʒuəli leɪd ðə ti:teɪbl, ənd ðeɪ ɔ:l hæd

a cup of tea together.

ə kʌp əv ti: tə'geðə.

In this way it was not long before the two young people
ɪn ðɪs weɪ ɪt wəz nɒt lɒŋ bɪ'fɔ: ðə tu: jʌŋ pi:pl

had become great friends. They went about together
həd bɪ'kʌm greɪt frendz. ðeɪ went ə'baʊt tə'geðə

quite a lot, to restaurants now and then, to see a picture,
kwaɪt ə lɒt, tə restərɔ:ŋz naʊ ənd ðen, tə si: ə pɪktʃə,

or on small trips to places outside London.

ɔ:r ɒn smɔ:l trips tə pleɪsɪz aʊtsaɪd lʌndən.

On the Sunday following the trip to Brighton, Marion
ɒn ðə sʌndi fɔ'louɪŋ ðə trip tə braɪtn, mæriən

had agreed to go with Storm to spend a day in the
həd ə'ɡri:d tə ɡoʊ wɪð stɔ:m tə spend ə ðeɪ ɪn ðə

hills south of London. London itself is mostly built
hɪlz saʊθ əv lʌndən. lʌndən ɪt'self ɪz maʊstli bɪlt



since (here)
= because

curve = bend

on very flat ground, but a short distance to the south
ɔn veri flæt graund, bət ə ʃɔ:t distəns tə ðə saʊθ

of the city there are high hills, from which there is
əv ðə siti ðeər a: hai hilz, frəm hwi:tf ðeər iz

a very beautiful view of London and the country round
ə veri bju:təfʊl vju: əv lʌndən ənd ðə kʌntri raʊnd

it. The highest of the hills is called Leith Hill; that
it. ðə haɪst əv ðə hilz iz kɔ:ld li:p hil; ðæt

was where they were going that day, since Storm had
wəz hwɛə ðei wə: ɡoʊɪŋ ðæt dei, sɪns stɔ:m həd

not been there yet. "I'm looking forward to getting
nɒt bi:n ðeə jət. "aɪm lʊkiŋ fɔ:wəd tə ɡetiŋ

up into the hills," Storm said as they sat in the bus.
ʌp ɪntə ðə hilz," stɔ:m sed əz ðei sæt ɪn ðə bʌs.

"I don't find flat country very interesting — the same
"aɪ daʊnt faɪnd flæt kʌntri veri ɪntrɪstɪŋ — ðə seɪm

wherever you look. In the hills, on the other hand,
hwɛər'evə ju: lʊk. ɪn ðə hilz, ɔn ði ʌðə hænd,

the country changes all the time, and there's always
ðə kʌntri tʃeɪndʒɪz ɔ:l ðə taɪm, ən ðəz ɔ:lweɪz

something new to be seen. Hallo! What was that?"
sʌmθɪŋ —nju: tə bi: si:n. hə'ləʊ! hwɒt wəz ðæt?"

he suddenly cried out, as the bus threw them over to
hi: sədnli kraɪd aʊt, əz ðə bʌs θru: ðəm oʊvə tə

one side and then stopped. They had just come round
wʌn saɪd ənd ðen stɒpt. ðei həd dʒʌst kʌm raʊnd

a curve in the road and had nearly run into an old
ə kə:v ɪn ðə rəʊd ənd həd niəli rʌn ɪntu ən ould

car that was standing in the road. "That was a near
ka: ðæt wəz stændɪŋ ɪn ðə roud. "ðæt wəz ə nɪə
 thing," Marion said. "If the driver hadn't been so
ʃɪŋ. mæriən sed. "ɪf ðə draɪvə hædnt bi:n sou
 quick in using the brakes and stopping the bus, there
kwɪk ɪn ju:zɪŋ ðə breɪks ən stɒpɪŋ ðə bʌs, ðeə
 would no doubt have been an accident. Look at the
wəd nou daʊt hæv bi:n ən æksɪdənt. luk æt ðə
 cloud of dust that the wheels made!"
klaʊd əv dʌst ðæt ðə hwi:lz meɪd!"

"This is one of the new buses with brakes both on the
"ðɪs ɪz wʌn əv ðə nju: bʌsɪz wɪð breɪks boʊp ɒn ðə
 front wheels and on the back wheels; that's why she
frʌnt hwi:lz and ɒn ðə bæk hwi:lz; ðæts hwaɪ ʃi:
 was able to stop so quickly when I put the brakes on,"
wəz eɪbl tə stɒp sou kwɪkli hwen aɪ pʊt ðə breɪks ɒn,"
 the driver said proudly, as he started the bus again.
ðə draɪvə sed praʊdli, əz hi: stɑ:tɪd ðə bʌs ə'geɪn.

"If it had been one of the old ones," he continued,
"ɪf ɪt hæd bi:n wʌn əv ði ould wʌnz," hi: kən'tɪnju:d.

"I'm afraid we should now all have been lying in the
"aɪm ə'freɪd wi: ʃəd naʊ ɔ:l hæv bi:n laɪɪŋ ɪn ðə
 dirty water in the ditch at the side of the road — bus,
dɑ:ti wɔ:tər ɪn ðə dɪtʃ æt ðə saɪd əv ðə roud — bʌs,
 passengers, car, and all, and this just because some
pæsɪndʒəz, kɑ:, and ɔ:l, ən ðɪs dʒʌst bɪ'kəz sʌm

farmer leaves his car in such a foolish place as a curve
fɑ:mə li:vz hɪz kɑ:r ɪn sʌtʃ ə fu:lɪʃ pleɪs əz ə kə:v



wheel

she = the bus



ditch

certain = sure

in the road! Well, I've never run my bus into the
in ðə roud! wel, aiv nevə rʌn maɪ bʌs ɪntə ðə

ditch yet, and if I can help it, I never shall!" "I'm
dɪtʃ yet, ʌnd ɪf aɪ kən help ɪt, aɪ nevə ʃæl!" "aɪm

quite certain he never will," Storm said to Marion;
kwaɪt seɪtn hi: nevə wɪl," stɔ:m sed tə məəriən;

"he seems to be an extremely clever driver."

"hi: si:mz tə bi: ʌn ɪks'tri:mli klevə draɪvə."

"Well, this seems to be where we're to get off," Storm

"wel, ðis si:mz tə bi: hwɛə wiə tə get ɔ:f," stɔ:m

said a few minutes later, as the bus stopped at the
sed ə fju: mɪnɪts leɪtə, əz ðə bʌs stɒpt ət ðə

bottom of a hill. "Yes, this is Leith Hill," Marion

bɒtəm əv ə hɪl. "jes, ðis ɪz li:θ hɪl," məəriən

replied. "Can you see the tower at the top of the hill?"

ri'plaid. "kən ju: si: ðə taʊə ət ðə tɒp əv ðə hɪl?"

The hill isn't quite 1,000 feet high, but now that

ðə hɪl ɪznt kwaɪt ə haʊzənd fi:t haɪ, bʌt naʊ ðət

the tower has been built, it may be said with some

ðə taʊə həz bi:n bɪlt, ɪt meɪ bi: sed wɪð sʌm

truth that it is 1,000 feet from the bottom of the

tru:θ ðət ɪt ɪz ə haʊzənd fi:t frəm ðə bɒtəm əv ðə

hill to the top. — It is certainly good to walk about

hɪl tə ðə tɒp. — ɪt ɪz sə:tnli gud tə wɔ:k ə'baʊt

a bit after sitting in the bus for so long," Marion

ə bɪt ɑ:ftə sɪtɪŋ ɪn ðə bʌs fə sɒ lɒŋ," məəriən

continued, as she got out of the bus. "And now I

kən'tɪnju:d, əz ʃi: gɒt aʊt əv ðə bʌs. "ʌn naʊ aɪ

suggest that first of all we walk over to that farm and
sə'dʒest ðæt fə:st əv ɔ:l wi: wɔ:k oʊvə tə ðæt fɑ:m ən

have a cup of tea to wash away the dust from our
hæv ə kʌp əv ti: tə wɔʃ ə'wei ðə dʌst frəm ʌʊə

throats before we start on our walk. It hasn't rained
prəʊts bi'fɔ: wi: stɑ:t ɔn ʌʊə wɔ:k. it hæznt reɪnd

for two weeks, so there must have been at least an
fə tu: wi:ks, sʌ ðə məst hæv bi:n ət li:st ən

inch of dust on the road for the wheels of the bus to
ɪnf əv dʌst ɔn ðə rəʊd fə ðə hwi:lz əv ðə bʌs tə

send flying in clouds." "Did you say tea at the farm?"
send flaɪɪŋ ɪn klaʊdz." "dɪd ju: sei ti: ət ðə fɑ:m?"

Storm asked. "Yes, in many places in the country
stɔ:m ɑ:skt. "jes, ɪn menɪ pleɪsɪz ɪn ðə kʌntri

where tourists come," she answered, "the farmers' wives
hwɛə tuəɪrɪsts kʌm," ʃi: ɑ:nsəd, "ðə fɑ:məz waɪvz

serve tea with home-made bread and cake, and they
sə:v ti: wɪð haʊmmeɪd bred ən keɪk, ən ðeɪ

do so here, too."

du: sʌ hiə, tu:."

The farm-house was a long, low building made of red
ðə 'fɑ:m'haʊs wəz ə lɔŋ, ləʊ bɪldɪŋ meɪd əv red

brick. At one side there was a building for the animals,
bri:k. ət wʌn saɪd ðɛə wəz ə bɪldɪŋ fə ði ænɪməlz,

also of red brick, and at the other side was a nice
ɔ:lsoʊ əv red bri:k, ənd ət ði ʌðə saɪd wəz ə naɪs

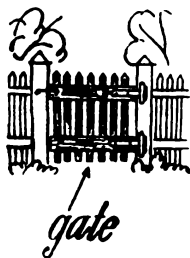
garden, surrounded by a wooden fence, where tea was
gɑ:dn, sə'raʊndɪd baɪ ə wʊdn fens, hwɛə ti: wəz



brick



fence



served. "I wonder where the gate is in this fence?"
sə:vd. "ai wʌndə hwɛə ðə geit iz in ðis fens?"

Marion said, as they walked along the side of the
məriən sed, əz ðei wɔ:kt ə'laɪ ðə said əv ðə
garden towards the house. "There must be some way
ga:dən tə'wɔ:dz ðə haʊs. "ðeə mʌst bi: sʌm wei
of getting into the garden."
əv getɪŋ ɪntə ðə ga:dən."

Not until they came all the way up to the farm-house,
nɒt ʌn'tɪl ðei keɪm ɔ:l ðə wei ʌp tə ðə 'fɑ:m'haʊs,
did they find the gate. Just as they were going to
dɪd ðei faɪnd ðə geit. dʒʌst əz ðei wə: goʊɪŋ tu
open it, the farmer's wife came out with a basket full
əʊpən ɪt, ðə fɑ:məz waɪf keɪm aʊt wɪð ə bɑ:skɪt fʊl
of corn and started feeding the corn to the fowls
əv kɔ:n ənd stɑ:tɪd fi:dɪŋ ðə kɔ:n tə ðə faʊlz
running about in front of the house. When she called,
rʌnɪŋ ə'bʌt ɪn frʌnt əv ðə haʊs. hwen ʃi: kɔ:ld,

they hurried up to her as fast as their legs and their
ðei haɪd ʌp tə hə: əz fɑ:st əz ðeə legz ənd ðeə
wings would carry them. One little brown hen
wɪŋz wəd kəri ðəm. wʌn lɪtl braʊn hen
especially seemed to be very hungry; it tried to fly
ɪs'peʃəli si:md tə bi: veri haŋɡri; ɪt traɪd tə flai
up to the basket to get as near to the corn as possible.
ʌp tə ðə bɑ:skɪt tə get əz niə tə ðə kɔ:n əz pɒsəbl.

There were several kinds of fowls, and among them
ðeə wə: sevərəl kaɪndz əv faʊlz, ənd ə'mʌŋ ðəm

they also saw a turkey. "Look at that funny fellow
ðei ɔ:lsou sɔ: ə tə:ki. "luk ət ðæt fʌni felou

over there," Marion said. "He looks as if he owned
oʊvə ðeə," mə:riən sed. "hi: luks əz ɪf hi: ɔund

the whole place — so proud. And then he's going
ðə houl pleɪs — sou praʊd. ən ðen hi:z ɡoʊɪŋ

to end his life on somebody's Christmas table, no doubt.
tu end hi:z laɪf ɔn səmbədɪz krɪsməs teɪbl, nou daʊt.

Listen to the strange noise he's making. Isn't he funny?
lɪsn tə ðə streɪndʒ nəɪz hi:z meɪkɪŋ. ɪznt hi: fʌni?

I must always laugh when I see turkeys; they look
aɪ mʌst ɔ:lweɪz lɑ:f hwɛn aɪ si: tə:kɪz; ðei luk

so much like little old, foolish, proud men."
sou mʌtʃ laɪk lɪtl ould, fu:lɪʃ, praʊd mɛn."

"Good afternoon," she said to the farmer's wife, who
"ɡʊd ˈɑ:ftəˈnu:n," ʃi: sed tə ðə fɑ:məz ˈwaɪf, hu:

had now finished feeding the fowls. "Could you make
həd naʊ fɪnɪʃt fi:dɪŋ ðə faʊls. "kəd ju: meɪk

us a cup of tea?" "Yes, certainly," the woman
ʌs ə kʌp ɔv ti:?" "jes. sə:tɪnli," ðə wʊmən

answered. "If you'll go into the garden and wait, it
ɑ:nsəd. "ɪf ju:l ɡoʊ ɪntə ðə ɡɑ:dən ən weɪt. ɪt

will be ready in a few minutes." "Fine! But might
wɪl bi: redi ɪn ə fju: mɪnɪts." "faɪn! bət maɪt

I look about a bit while we're waiting?" Storm asked.
aɪ luk əˈbaʊt ə bɪt hwəɪl wɪə weɪtɪŋ?" stɔ:m ə:skt.

"You see, I've never visited an English farm before,
"ju: si:, aɪv nevə vɪzɪtɪd ən ɪŋɡlɪʃ fɑ:m bɪˈfɔ:,





pig

fat = the opposite
of thin

and I'm interested in seeing whether there's much
ænd aim intristid in si:iŋ hweðə ðæz mʌtʃ

difference between your farms and the farms of the
difrəns bi'twi:n jɔ: fɑ:mz ən ðə fɑ:mz əv ðə

country that I come from." "Certainly! Look about
kʌntri ðət ai kʌm frəm." "sə:tnli! luk ə'baut

as much as you like. But be careful when you go over
əz mʌtʃ əz ju: laik. bət bi: keəfʊl hwen ju: gou ouvə

to the animals, for we've got a young pig running
tə ði æniməlz, fə wi:v gɒt ə jʌŋ pig rʌniŋ

about loose, and he might brush against your clothes.
ə'baut lu:s, ən hi: maɪt brʌʃ ə'geɪnst jɔ: kləʊðz.

Pigs, you know, aren't always so clean. He really
pɪgz, ju: nou, a:nt ɔ:lwəz sou kli:n. hi: riəli

shouldn't be loose any longer, but ought to be shut
ʃudnt bi: lu:s eni lɒŋgə, bət ɔ:t tə bi: ʃʌt

up with the other pigs — you can see the five fat pigs
ʌp wið ði ʌðə pɪgz — ju: kən si: ðə faɪv fæt pɪgz

in there. He runs about so much that he doesn't grow
in ðeə. hi: rʌnz ə'baut sou mʌtʃ ðət hi: dʌznt gru

fat like the others. He's such a funny little pig, putting
fæt laik ði ʌðəz. hi:z sʌtʃ ə fʌni litl pig. pʊtiŋ

his nose into everything to see what it is, and the
hɪz nouz ɪntu evriθɪŋ tə si: hwɒt ɪt ɪz, ən ðə

children have such a good time playing with him that
tʃɪldrən hæv sʌtʃ ə gud taim pleɪɪŋ wið him ðət

my husband hasn't had the heart to shut him up with
maɪ hʌzbənd hæznt hæd ðə hɑ:t tə ʃʌt him ʌp wið

the others yet. But you can see for yourselves that
ði ʌðəz jət. bət ju: kən si: fə ʃɔ:ˈselvz ðət

he's much too thin; by now, he ought to be almost
hi:z mʌtʃ tu: þin; baɪ naʊ, hi: ɔ:t tə bi: ɔ:lmoʊst

twice as fat! Well," she continued, picking up two
tuwaɪs əz fæt! wel," ʃi: kənˈtɪnju:d, pɪkɪŋ ʌp tu:

empty buckets that were standing outside the kitchen
empti bʌkɪts ðət wə: stændɪŋ aʊtsaɪd ðə kɪtʃɪn

door, "I'd better go to the pump now and get the
dɔ:. ˈaɪd betə ɡoʊ tə ðə pʌmp naʊ ən get ðə

water for your tea."
wɔ:tə fə ʃɔ: ti:."

"Aren't the buckets heavy for you to carry?" Marion
ˈɑ:nt ðə bʌkɪts hevi fə ju: tə kæri?" mæriən

asked. "No, that's nothing to speak of. But in my
ɑ:skt. ˈnoʊ, ðætʃ nʌθɪŋ tə spi:k ɔv. bət ɪn maɪ

grandmother's time the work of a farmer's wife was
ɡrændmʌðəz taɪm ðə wɜ:k əv ə fɑ:məz waɪf wəz

hard. They didn't have a pump at the farm then,
hɑ:d. ðeɪ dɪdnt hæv ə pʌmp ət ðə fɑ:m ðen,

but had to walk quite a long distance to a small
bət həd tə wɜ:k kwaɪt ə lɔŋ dɪstəns tu ə smɔ:l

brook to get water. Of course, the water in a brook
brʊk tə get wɜ:tə. ɔv kɔ:s, ðə wɜ:tər ɪn ə brʊk

coming down from the hills is always very fine, but
kʌmɪŋ daʊn frəm ðə hɪlz ɪz ɔ:lweɪz veri faɪn, bət

it really was too far to go to get water. If you're
ɪt riəli wəz tu: fa: tə ɡoʊ tə get wɜ:tə. ɪf juə



bucket



brook



pump



around = about

a bit = a short
time



oak

He **spreads**, he
spread, he has
spread [spredz,
spred, spred].

going up Leith Hill, you will cross the brook on your
gouɪŋ ʌp li:h hil, ju: wil krɒs ðə brʊk ɒn jɔ:

way up. The path from here to the top of the hill
wei ʌp. ðə pɑ:h frəm hiə tə ðə tɒp əv ðə hil

passes the brook at a place where the brook is so
pɑ:sɪz ðə brʊk ət ə pleɪs hʌwɛə ðə brʊk ɪz sou

narrow that you can cross it in one step." "Isn't
nərou ðæt ju: kæn krɒs ɪt ɪn wʌn step." "ɪznt

there a road up the hill from the main road?" Storm
ðər ə roud ʌp ðə hil frəm ðə meɪn roud?" stɔ:m

asked. "Yes," she answered, "but you had better go
ɑ:skt. "jes," ʃi: ɑ:nsəd, "bət ju: həd betə ɡoʊ

by the path through the wood. It's a much nicer
baɪ ðə pɑ:h θru: ðə wʊd. ɪts ə mʌtʃ naɪsə

way and not so full of dust as the road." After
wei ən nɒt sou ful əv dʌst əz ðə roud." ɑ:ftə

having looked around for a bit, Marion and Storm
hæviŋ lʊkt ə'raʊnd fər ə bɪt, məɪriən ənd stɔ:m

went into the garden to have their tea. The garden
wɛnt ɪntə ðə ɡɑ:dən tə hæv ðeə ti:. ðə ɡɑ:dən

was small and well kept, with three or four tables
wəz smɔ:l ənd wel kept, wɪð θri: ə fɔ: teɪblz

for the guests. They chose a table in the corner,
fɔ ðə ɡests. ðeɪ tʃoʊz ə teɪbl ɪn ðə kɔ:nə,

under a very large old oak tree. The old oak spread
ʌndə ə veri la:dʒ ould ouk tri:. ði ould ouk spred

its branches far out on all sides and gave a lovely,
ɪts brɑ:nʃɪz fɑ:r aʊt ɒn ɔ:l saɪdɪz ənd ɡeɪv ə lʌvli,

cool shade for them to sit in. In the leaves and the
ku:l feid fə ðəm tə sit in. in ðə li:vz ənd ðə

branches above their heads they saw birds busily flying
bra:nfɪz ə'baʊ ðə hedz ðei sɔ: bə:dz bizili flaiɪŋ

in and out, and some of them flew away to return a
in ənd aʊt, ənd sʌm əv ðəm flu: ə'wei tə ri'tə:n ə

little later with food for their young.

lɪtl leɪtə wið fu:d fə ðə jʌŋ.

"Look there, on that branch over there," Marion said.

"lʊk ðə, ɔn ðæt bra:nʃ ɔvə ðə, məəriən sed.

— "No, not so high up, just above the fence. There's

— "nəʊ, nɒt səʊ haɪ ʌp, dʒʌst ə'baʊ ðə fens. ðəz

a nest there; I wonder if there are young birds in it?"

ə nest ðə; ai wʌndə ɪf ðə jʌŋ bə:dz in it?"

"No, but there's a bird sitting on eggs, I think," Storm

"nəʊ, bʌt ðəz ə bɜ:d sɪtɪŋ ɔn eɡz, ai θɪŋk," stɔ:m

replied. "And that busy little fellow coming now

ri'plaid. "ən ðæt bɪzi lɪtl feləʊ kʌmɪŋ nəʊ

seems to be carrying food to her. Listen to him,

sɪmz tə bi: kəriɪŋ fu:d tu hə:. lɪsn tə him.

singing out to all the world what a clever fellow he

sɪŋɪŋ aʊt tu ɔ:l ðə wɜ:ld hʌv ə klevə feləʊ hi:

is!" "Do you think that is what he's doing?" Marion

ɪz!" "du: ju: θɪŋk ðæt ɪz hʌv hi:z du:ɪŋ?" məəriən

asked. "Well, perhaps you're right. Now, I thought

ɑ:skt. "wel, pə'hæps juə raɪt. nəʊ, ai þɔ:t

he was being the little gentleman, singing to keep her

hi: wəz bi:ɪŋ ðə lɪtl dʒentlmən. sɪŋɪŋ tə ki:p hə:



nest

company. But, of course, you must have a better
kampəni. bət, əv kɔ:s. ju: məst hæv ə betə

understanding of the stronger sex than I. And men
ʌndə'stændiŋ əv ðə strɒŋgə seks ðən ai. ən men

do like to talk about themselves." Here the farmer's
du: laik tə tɔ:k ə'baut ðəm'selvz." hiə ðə fa:məs

wife interrupted them, bringing a tray with the tea-
waif intə'rʌptid ðəm, briŋiŋ ə trei wið ðə ti:-

things. She spread a pretty, green-and-brown cloth
piŋz. ʃi: spred ə priti, gri:nəndbraun klɒθ

on the table, put cups, plates, cake, bread-and-butter,
ɒn ðə teibl, put kʌps, pleits, keik. bredn'bʌtə,

marmalade, and tea on the table, and then left them
mɑ:məleɪd, ənd ti: ɒn ðə teibl, ənd ðen left ðəm

to themselves again.

tə ðəm'selvz ə'geɪn.

"She's really a pretty woman — to speak of something

"ʃi:z riəli ə priti wʊmən — tə spi:k əv sʌmʃiŋ

else," said Storm, spreading marmalade on a piece of

els," sed stɔ:m, sprediŋ mɑ:məleɪd ɒn ə pi:s əv

bread. "Don't you think so?" "Yes, if she wasn't

bred. "dəʊnt ju: ʃiŋk soʊ?" "jes, if ʃi: wəznt

quite so fat, one might almost call her beautiful," Marion

kwaɪt so fæt, wʌn maɪt ɔ:lmoʊst kɔ:l hə: bju:təfʊl," mæriən

answered. "But they get too many good things to eat

ɑ:nsəd. "bət ðei get tu: meni gud ʃiŋz tu i:t

here in the country, I suppose. Let's take a picture

hiə in ðə kʌntri, ai sə'pəʊz. lets teɪk ə pɪktʃə

of her when she comes for her money! You did bring
ɔv hə: hwen ʃi: kəmɪz fə hə: mʌni! ju: did briŋ

your camera along, didn't you?"
jɔ: kəmərə ə'ləŋ, didnt ju:?"

"Yes, I've got the camera here in my pocket. I'm
"jes, aɪv ɡɒt ðə kəmərə hiə in maɪ pɒkɪt. aɪm

going to try to get a picture of one of the bees, too,
ɡoʊɪŋ tə traɪ tə ɡet ə pɪktʃər əv wʌn əv ðə bi:z, tu:,

that are flying round these flowers all the time. If
ðæt a: flaɪɪŋ raʊnd ði:z flauəz ɔ:l ðə taɪm. ɪf

I could get very near to a bee, it would make an
aɪ kəd ɡet veri niə tu ə bi:, ɪt wəd meɪk ən

interesting picture, I think. I'd like one of the bird,
ɪntrɪstɪŋ pɪktʃə, aɪ ɪŋk. aɪd laɪk wʌn əv ðə bɑ:d,

too, just when he's spreading his wings to fly. But
tu:, dʒʌst hwen hi:z spreɪdɪŋ hɪz wɪŋz tə flaɪ. bət

a picture like that will be hard to get, I'm afraid; they
ə pɪktʃə laɪk ðæt wɪl bi: hɑ:d tə ɡet, aɪm ə'freɪd; ðeɪ

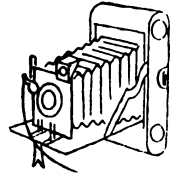
move their wings so quickly. — And when we have
mʊ:v ðeə wɪŋz sʊ kwi:kli. — ən hwen wi: həv

mounted to the top of the hill, I'm going to take a
maʊntɪd tə ðə tɒp əv ðə hɪl, aɪm ɡoʊɪŋ tə teɪk ə

picture of you, too, with your pretty head against the
pɪktʃər əv ju:, tu:, wɪð jɔ: prɪti hed ə'ɡeɪnst ðə

blue sky."
blu: skai."

"Don't be foolish!" Marion laughed. "You had better
"dʌnt bi: fu:lɪʃ!" mæriən la:ft. "ju: həd betə



camera



bee



do try = please try

take a picture of the river Thames flowing quietly
teik ə pɪktʃər əv ðə rɪvə tɛmz flouɪŋ kwaɪətli

towards London down in the bottom of its valley.
tə'wɔːdɪz lʌndən daʊn ɪn ðə bɒtəm əv ɪts væli.

That's something worth seeing." "I can see rivers that
ðætɪz sʌmθɪŋ wɜːθ siːɪŋ." "aɪ kən siː rɪvəz ðæt

flow through valleys wherever there are hills and rivers
flou θruː væliːz hʊwɛər'evə ðɛə hɪlz ən rɪvəz

in the world, but I don't know how often I may see
ɪn ðə wɜːld, bʌt aɪ daʊnt nəʊ haʊ ɔːfən aɪ meɪ siː

your sweet face yet," Storm replied. "Don't say such
jɔː swiːt feɪs jət," stɔːm rɪ'plaɪd. "daʊnt seɪ sʌtʃ

things; the farmer's wife might hear you. Look, she's
θɪŋz; ðə fɑːməz wɪf maɪt hiə juː. lʊk. ʃiːz

laughing at us," Marion said, trying not to smile. "No,
ləːfɪŋ æt əs," məɪriən sed, traɪɪŋ nɒt tə smaɪl. "nəʊ,

she isn't," Storm answered, "she's smiling kindly at us.
ʃiː ɪznt," stɔːm ɑːnsəd, "ʃiːz smaɪlɪŋ kaɪndli æt əs.

'All the world loves a lover,' you know. She's seen
'ɔːl ðə wɜːld lʌvz ə lʌvə.' juː nəʊ. ʃiːz siːn

long ago how I feel about you. — Now, do try to be
lɒŋ ə'gəʊ haʊ aɪ fiːl ə'baut juː. — naʊ, duː traɪ tə biː

serious, Marion, just for a few minutes while I tell you
sɪəriəs, məɪriən, dʒʌst fɜː ə fjuː mɪnɪts hwaɪl aɪ tel juː

about this." "But I don't want to be serious now, not
ə'baut ðɪs." "bʌt aɪ daʊnt wɒnt tə biː sɪəriəs naʊ, nɒt

with people standing about, looking at us, at least,"
wɪð piːpl stændɪŋ ə'baut, lʊkɪŋ æt əs, æt liːst,"

Marion cried, jumping up from her chair. "I'm going
mærian kraid, dʒʌmpɪŋ ʌp frəm hæ: tʃeə. "aɪm ɡoʊɪŋ

to run all the way to the top of the hill. Catch me
tə rʌn ɔ:l ðə wei tə ðə tɒp əv ðə hɪl. kætʃ mi:

if you can!" So saying, she ran through the garden
ɪf ju: kæn!" soʊ seɪɪŋ, ʃi: ræn ʒru: ðə ɡa:dn

gate and started off along the path. Storm had to pay
ɡeɪt ənd stɑ:tɪd ɔ:f ə'lɒŋ ðə pa:θ. stɔ:m hæd tə peɪ

for their tea before he could run after her, so when
fə ðeə ti: bɪ'fɔ: hi: kəd rʌn ɑ:ftə hæ:, soʊ hwen

he left the farm, he could no longer see her. "Well,
hi: left ðə fa:m, hi: kəd nou lɒŋɡə si: hæ:. "wel,

she must be somewhere along this path," he said to
ʃi: mʌst bi: səmhweər ə'lɒŋ ðɪs pa:θ," hi: seɪd tə

himself, and started off. He hadn't walked far, how-
hɪm'self, ənd stɑ:tɪd ɔ:f. hi: hædnt wɔ:kt fɑ:, haʊ-

ever, before he heard her calling his name. But he
'evə, bɪ'fɔ: hi: hæ:d hæ: kɔ:lɪŋ hɪz neɪm. bət hi:

couldn't see her anywhere. "Where are you?" he called.
kʊdnt si: hæ:r enɪhweə. "hweər ɑ: ju:?" hi: kɔ:ld.

"Here," she answered, laughing, and her voice sounded
"hiə," ʃi: ɑ:nsəd, lɑ:fɪŋ, ənd hæ: vɔɪs saʊndɪd

quite near, although he could still see nothing but trees
kwəɪt niə, ɔ:l'ðəʊ hi: kəd stɪl si: nʌʃɪŋ bət tri:z

all round.

ɔ:l raʊnd.

Then he began to look behind trees and up into the
ðen hi: bɪ'ɡæn tə luk bɪ'hænd tri:z ənd ʌp ɪntə ðə



branches, hoping to find her there. "Call again," he
bra:nfɪz, houpɪŋ tə faɪnd hæ: ðəə. "kɔ:l ə'geɪn," hi:

cried, and this time he could hear that her voice came
kraɪd, ənd ðɪs taɪm hi: kəd hɪə ðæt. hæ: vɔɪs keɪm

from one of the big old oaks standing by the path. She
fɹəm wʌn əv ðə bɪg ould ouks stændɪŋ baɪ ðə pa:θ. ʃi:

had found a hole in a hollow tree, big enough for her
həd faʊnd ə haʊl ɪn ə hɒləʊ tri:, bɪg ɪ'nʌf fə hæ:

to get in through. When he found her, he saw that
tə get ɪn θru:. hwen hi: faʊnd hæ:, hi: sɔ: ðæt

there was almost room enough inside the hollow tree
ðəə wəz ɔ:lmoʊst ru:m ɪ'nʌf ɪnsaɪd ðə hɒləʊ tri:

for six people, or for two armchairs, as Marion suggested.
fə sɪks pi:pl, ɔ: fə tu: 'ɑ:m'tʃeəz, əz mə'riən sə'dʒestɪd.

"But now comes the difficult part of it," Marion said.
"bət naʊ kʌmz ðə dɪfɪkəlt pɑ:t əv ɪt," mə'riən sed.

"How am I going to get out of here again? When I
"haʊ əm ɪ ɡoʊɪŋ tə get aʊt əv hɪə ə'geɪn? hwen ɪ

was standing outside, I could reach a branch above the
wəz stændɪŋ aʊt'saɪd, ɪ kəd ri:tʃ ə brɑ:nʃ ə'bʌv ðə

hole, but when I had got in, I found that the bottom
haʊl, bət hwen ɪ həd ɡɒt ɪn, ɪ faʊnd ðæt ðə bɒtəm

of the hole inside the tree was deeper than I thought.
əv ðə haʊl ɪnsaɪd ðə tri: wəz di:pə ðən ɪ θɔ:t.

I shouldn't like to get a hole in my new frock, getting
ɪ ʃʊdn't laɪk tə get ə haʊl ɪn maɪ nju: frɒk, ɡetɪŋ

out. Will you help me, please?" she asked.

aʊt. wɪl ju: help mi:, pli:z?" ʃi: ɑ:skt.

"Not until you've listened to what I want to tell you,
"nɒt ʌn'til ju:v lisnd tə hʊɪt əi wɒnt tə tel ju:,

young lady," Storm laughed. "Oh, I don't think you're
ʝʌŋ leiði," stɔ:m la:ft. "ou, əi daʊnt ɪŋk juə

nice at all," Marion said. "In the old days, true gentle-
nais ət ɔ:l," məriən sed. "in ði ould deiz, tru: dʒentl-

men who were asked to help ladies in danger always
mən hu: wə:r ə:skt tə help leiðiz in deindʒə ɔ:lwəz

mounted their horses at once and rode off to bring help
maʊntid ðeə ho:siz ət wʌns ən roud ɔ:f tə briŋ help

without talking first."

wið'aut tɔ:kiŋ fə:st."

"That's all very well, but it only takes us away from

"ðætɪz ɔ:l veri wel, bət it ɒnli teiks əs ə'wei frəm

what we were talking about when you left me so

hʊɪt wi: wə: tɔ:kiŋ ə'baut hwen ju: left mi: sou

suddenly. What was it I was going to say when you

sʌdnli. hʊɪt wɒz it əi wəz ɡəʊiŋ tə sei hwen ju:

ran off? — Oh, yes, now I know. Will you marry me?"

rən ɔ:f? — ou, jes, nau əi nou. wil ju: məri mi:?"

"Is that your price for helping me out?" Marion asked

"iz ðæt ʝɔ: prais fə helpiŋ mi: aut?" məriən ə:skt

with a smile. "I'm afraid it is," he answered very

wið ə smail. "aim ə'freid it iz," hi: ə:nsəd veri

seriously. "Oh, well — then I shall have to, I suppose,"

sɪəriəsli. "ou, wel — ðen əi ʃəl hæv tu, əi sə'pəʊz,"

Marion said. With a laugh, he lifted her out of her

məriən sed. wið ə la:f, hi: liftid hə:r aut əv hə:



hollow tree, and arm in arm they continued up the
hɒləʊ tri:, ənd a:m in a:m ðei kən'tɪnju:d ʌp ðə
hill. A little higher up, they came to the brook that
hɪl. ə lɪtl haɪər ʌp, ðei keɪm tə ðə brʊk ðət
the farmer's wife had spoken of. Here some of the
ðə fɑ:məz wʌɪf həd spəʊkn ɔv. hɪə sʌm əv ðə
roots of the trees were above the ground, and in some
ru:ts əv ðə tri:z wə:r ə'bʌv ðə graʊnd, ənd in sʌm
places the water of the brook had washed the earth
pleɪsɪz ðə wɔ:tər əv ðə brʊk həd wɒʃt ði ɜ:p
away round the roots, so that they lay like brown, wet
ə'weɪ raʊnd ðə ru:ts, sʌ ðət ðei leɪ laɪk braʊn, wet
snakes on the ground. "Let me help you to jump
sneɪks ɒn ðə graʊnd. "let mi: help ju: tə dʒʌmp
across," Storm said to Marion. "It's a little wider here
ə'krɒs," stɔ:m sed tə məɪriən. "ɪts ə lɪtl waɪdər hɪə
than I thought, and I'm afraid that your feet will slip
ðən aɪ þɔ:t, ənd aɪm ə'freɪd ðət jɔ: fi:t wɪl slɪp
on the wet stones." She took Storm's hand, and it
ɒn ðə wet stəʊnz." ʃi: tuk stɔ:mz hænd, ənd ɪt
was a good thing that she did, for just as she was
wəz ə gʊd þɪŋ ðət ʃi: dɪd, fə dʒʌst əz ʃi: wəz
going to jump, her foot slipped, and she would have
ɡoʊɪŋ tə dʒʌmp, hɜ: fʊt slɪpt, ənd ʃi: wəd həv
fallen if he had not supported her.
fɔ:lən ɪf hi: həd nɒt sə'pɔ:tɪd hə:.

At last they reached the top of the hill, where the
ət la:st ðei ri:tʃt ðə tɒp əv ðə hɪl, hʌweə ðə

tower stood. "Doesn't it cost anything to go up
tauə stud. "dʌznt it kɒst enɪθɪŋ tə ɡoʊ ʌp

there?" Storm asked. "No, it's quite free," Marion
ðeə?" stɔ:m ɑ:skt. "nəʊ, ɪts kwaɪt friː," mæriən

answered. "It's funny — you're not the first foreigner
ɑ:nsəd. "ɪts fʌni — juə nɒt ðə fɜːst fɔːrɪnə

I've heard ask that question. Does it seem so strange
aɪv hæ:d ɑ:sk ðæt kwestʃən. dʌz ɪt si:m soʊ streɪndʒ

to you that it should be free of charge?" "Oh, I
tə ju: ðæt ɪt ʃəd bi: fri: əv tʃɑ:dʒ?" "oʊ, aɪ

don't know," he answered. "But you are usually
dəʊnt nəʊ," hi: ɑ:nsəd. "bət ju: ɑ: ju:ʒuəli

surprised, as a tourist, to find something that is free
sə'praɪzd, əz ə tuərist, tə faɪnd sʌmθɪŋ ðæt ɪz fri:

of charge."
əv tʃɑ:dʒ."

"Now, let's go up," he continued, mounting the narrow
"naʊ, lets ɡoʊ ʌp," hi: kən'tɪnju:d, maʊntɪŋ ðə næroʊ

stairs of the tower. "Look, out there, at the bottom
steəz əv ðə tauə. "lʊk, aʊt ðeə, ət ðə bɒtəm

of the valley, is the Thames," Marion said. "It looks
əv ðə væli, ɪz ðə temz," mæriən sed. "ɪt lʊks

no bigger than a brook from here, so it must be farther
nəʊ bɪɡə ðən ə brʊk frəm hiə, soʊ ɪt mʌst bi: fɑːðər

away than I thought," Storm replied. "And what is
ə'weɪ ðən aɪ þɔ:t," stɔ:m ri'plaɪd. "ən hwɒt ɪz

that white spot over there on the hill — is it a tent,
ðæt hwaɪt spɒt oʊvə ðeər ɒn ðə hɪl — ɪz ɪt ə tent,



tent

I wonder?" "No, it's too big for that. I think it is
ai wʌndə? "nou, its tu: biɡ fə ðæt. ai ɪŋk it ɪz

chalk. Between London and the south coast there are
tʃɔ:k. bi'twi:n lʌndən ən ðə saʊθ kəʊst ðeə

many chalk hills. You can see the white chalk hills
meni tʃɔ:k hɪlz. ju: kən si: ðə hwaɪt tʃɔ:k hɪlz

from the boat, when you cross the Channel, coming
fɹəm ðə bəʊt, hwen ju: krɒs ðə tʃænl, kʌmɪŋ

from France to England. But I think there really is
fɹəm frɑ:ns tu ɪŋɡlənd. bʌt ai ɪŋk ðeə riəli ɪz

a tent down there, at the foot of the hill."
ə tent daʊn ðeə, at ðə fʊt əv ðə hɪl."

"What fun those fellows must be having! I've often
"hwaɪt fʌn ðəʊz feləʊz məst bi: hæviŋ! aɪv ɔ:fən

lived in a tent myself at home, with one or two of my
lɪvd ɪn ə tent maɪ'self at haʊm, wɪð wʌn ə tu: əv maɪ

friends. It's a fine way to spend your holidays,"
frendz. ɪts ə faɪn weɪ tə spend jɔ: hɒlɪdɪz."

Storm said. "Is it?" Marion asked. "It seems to
stɔ:m sed. "ɪz ɪt?" məriən ɑ:skt. "ɪt si:mz tə

me that it must be a rather cold and wet affair. A
mi: ðæt ɪt məst bi: ə ra:ðə kəʊld ən wet ə'feə. ə

tent is a poor cover when it rains." "Not if the tent
tent ɪz ə puə kʌvə hwen ɪt reɪnz." "nɒt ɪf ðə tent

is made of good canvas," Storm replied. "Mine is
ɪz meɪd əv ɡʊd kænvas," stɔ:m ri'plaid. "maɪn ɪz

made of the same kind of canvas as they use for tents
meɪd əv ðə seɪm kaɪnd əv kænvas əz ðeɪ ju:z fə tents

in the army, and I'm sure you couldn't wish for a
in ði a:mi, ənd aim suə ju: kudnt wiʃ fər ə

wish for = want

better cover against the rain than my tent. I once
betə kʌvər ə'geɪnst ðə rein ðən maɪ tent. ai wʌns

slept in it when it was raining hard; outside, the water
slept in it hwen it wəz reɪnɪŋ hɑ:d; 'aʊt'saɪd, ðə wɔ:tə

was pouring down on the roof of the tent, but, inside,
wəz pɔ:riŋ daʊn ɒn ðə ru:f əv ðə tent, bət, 'ɪn'saɪd,

pour = rain very hard

it was quite dry.”

it wəz kwaɪt draɪ.”

“Well, I'm glad I don't live in a tent, all the same,”

“wel, aim glæd ai daʊnt lɪv ɪn ə tent, ɔ:l ðə seɪm,”

Marion said. “I hope we shan't have to live in one
mæriən sed. “ai haʊp wi: ʃɑ:nt hæv tə lɪv ɪn wʌn

when we're married. I'm a great lover of nature, but
hwen wɪə mærid. aim ə greɪt lʌvər əv neɪtʃə, bət

I do prefer to be able to return to a house with a
ai du: prɪfə: tə bi: eɪbl tə rɪ'tɜ:n tu ə haʊs wɪð ə

kitchen and a bathroom, and with warm and com-
kɪtʃɪn ənd ə bɑ:brʊm, ən wɪð wɔ:m ən kʌm-

fortable rooms, when I've been out all day with the
fətəbl ru:mz, hwen aɪv bi:n aʊt ɔ:l dei wɪð ðə

rain pouring down.”

rein pɔ:riŋ daʊn.”

“You'd never make a good farmer's wife,” Storm told

“ju:d nevə meɪk ə gud fɑ:məz waɪf,” stɔ:m təʊld

her. “No, but am I going to be one?” she smiled. “I

hə:. “nou, bət æm ai ɡəʊɪŋ tə bi: wʌn?” ʃi: smaɪld. “ai

forest = very big
wood

never knew you had a farm at home." "I haven't,
nevə nju: ju: həd ə fa:m ət haʊm." "ai həvnt,

but I'm a great lover of nature, and not just for a
bət aɪm ə greɪt lʌvər əv neɪtʃə, ən nɒt dʒʌst fər ə

day! I should like to walk for miles in a forest, with
dei! ai ʃəd laɪk tə wɔ:k fə maɪlz ɪn ə fɒrɪst, wɪð

no other company than the animals." "Not even me?"
nou ʌðə kʌmpəni ðən ði ænɪməlz." "nɒt i:vən mi:?"

Marion interrupted. "No, you'd rather stay at home
mæriən ɪntə'rʌptɪd." "nou, ju:d rə:ðə steɪ ət haʊm

and play in the kitchen or lie in the bath all day, you
ən pleɪ ɪn ðə kɪtʃɪn ɔ:l laɪ ɪn ðə bɑ:p ɔ:l dei, ju:

just told me," he laughed.
dʒʌst təʊld mi:," hi: lɑ:ft.

Hand in hand, they ran down the path towards the
hænd ɪn hænd, ðeɪ ræn daʊn ðə pɑ:p tə'wɔ:dz ðə

farm again. At the hollow tree Storm stopped to ask
fa:m ə'geɪn. ət ðə hɒləʊ tri: stɔ:m stɒpt tu ə:sk

Marion if she was still willing to become his wife.
mæriən ɪf ʃi: wəz stɪl wɪlɪŋ tə bɪ'kʌm hɪz waɪf.

"If not, I had better put you back into the tree," he
"ɪf nɒt, ai həd bətə put ju: bæk ɪntə ðə tri:," hi:

said to her. "Are you quite sure?" "Yes, quite
sed tə hə:." "a: ju: kwaɪt ʃʊə?" "jes, kwaɪt

certain," she answered. "Even if I was a tired and
sə:tn," ʃi: ə:nsəd." "i:vən ɪf ai wəz ə taɪəd ən

dirty farmer working all day in the fields to make
də:ti fa:mə wɜ:kɪŋ ɔ:l dei ɪn ðə fi:ldz tə meɪk

the soil of our farm better and better, and raising
ðə sɔɪl əv ɔːr fɑ:m bətər ən bətə, ən reɪzɪŋ

soil = earth

cows and pigs and sheep, and you had to be a farmer's
kaʊz ən pɪgz ən ʃi:p, ən ju: həd tə bi: ə fɑ:məz

wife and raise hens and sell the eggs in the market
waɪf ən reɪz henz ən sel ði eɡz ɪn ðə mɑ:kɪt

every Saturday?"

evri sətədi?"

"The way you say it, it sounds quite nice," she
"ðə wei ju: sei it, it saʊndz kwait naɪs," ʃi:

answered. "Do you think I could make enough money
ɑ:nsəd. "du: ju: ɪŋk aɪ kəd meɪk ɪ'nʌf mʌni

raising fowls to pay for a bathroom in our farm-
reɪzɪŋ faʊlz tə peɪ fər ə bɑ:prʊm ɪn ɔːr 'fɑ:m-

house?"

'haʊs?"

They both laughed at this idea and continued their
ðei bəʊθ lɑ:fɪd ət ðɪs aɪ'dɪə ənd kən'tɪnju:d ðeə

way. They soon saw the red brick walls of the house
wei. ðei su:n sɔ: ðə red brɪk wɔ:lz əv ðə haʊs

again. The woman was standing at the window. A
ə'ɡeɪn. ðə wʊmən wəz stændɪŋ ət ðə wɪndəʊ. ə

broad, kind smile appeared on her face when she saw
brɔ:d, kaɪnd smaɪl ə'piəd ɔn hɜ: feɪs hʌven ʃi: sɔ:

Storm and Marion coming hand in hand. "There
stɔ:m ənd mə'ɪrɪən kʌmɪŋ hænd ɪn hænd. "ðeə

you see, Marion," Storm said, "all the world loves
ju: si:, mə'ɪrɪən," stɔ:m sed, "ɔ:l ðə wɜ:ld lʌvz

a lover.' Just look at her face! You would think
a lʌvə.' dʒʌst luk ət hə: feis! ju: wəd piŋk

that I had asked her and not you to marry me."
ðət ai həd ɑ:skt hə: ən nɒt ju: tə mæri mi:."

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:

hill
 curve
 brake
 wheel
 dust
 ditch
 certain
 cake
 bottom
 brick
 fence
 gate
 fowl
 wing
 turkey
 end (verb)
 pig
 fat
 pump
 bucket
 brook
 path
 oak
 spread
 above

The highest of the — south of London is called Leith Hill. The bus in which Storm and Marion were riding came round a — in the road. The driver was so quick in using the — and stopping the bus that the — made a cloud of — behind it. Storm was quite — that the driver would never run his bus into the — at the side of the road. The bus stopped at the — of a hill.

The farm-house was made of red —. The garden was surrounded by a wooden —. It was difficult to find the — in the fence. The farmer's wife started feeding corn to the —. They hurried up to her as fast as their legs and their — would carry them. Among the fowls there was a —.

There was also a — which ran about so much that it did not grow — like the others. The farmer's wife went to the — to get her empty — filled with water. In her grandmother's time they got water from a —. There was a — to Leith Hill through the wood. Storm and Marion sat down at a table under a large old — tree, which — its branches far out on all sides — their heads. On one of the branches there was a — with eggs in it.

Storm had brought his — along and wanted to get a picture of one of the —, before they — to the top of the hill. The river Thames — in the bottom of a —. Marion had found a — in a — tree, big enough for her to get in through. In some places the water of the brook had washed the earth away round the —. Between London and the south coast there are many — hills.

EXERCISE B.

In chapter 52, Exercise D, you found a letter from Storm to Wood. We now ask you to answer this letter as if you were Wood. In writing your letter, the following words must be used in some way or other: stamp — collection — room — furniture — desk — armchair — new — tree — leaf — cold — rain — storm — spring.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Look at the verbs in the following sentences: I visited my friend yesterday. John walked all the way to town the other day, and so did his sister. A month ago my uncle went to Paris. You will notice that the time of the verbs is before ‘now’; it is ‘yesterday’ in the first example given, ‘the other day’ in the second, and ‘a month ago’ in the third. The form of the verb that expresses the time before ‘now’ we call the past [*pa:st*] tense.

The past tense of two of the verbs in the sentences given above has been made by adding -ed to the form

nest
fellow
camera
bee
mount
flow
valley
hole
hollow
root
slip
chalk
tent
cover
canvas
forest
soil
nature
lover
free
flat
pretty
raise
charge
around
pour

of the infinitive: visited (visit-ed), walked (walk-ed). The past tense of most English verbs is made in this way. (But if they end in -e, only -d is added. Example: hope — hoped.) The past tense of 'call' is: I called, you called, he called, she called, it called, we called, you called, they called. You will see that the form is the same after all pronouns.

The -ed is pronounced [t] after the voiceless sounds *p, k, f, þ, s, ʃ*. After the voiced consonants *b, g, m, n, ŋ, v, ð, l, z, ʒ*, and after vowels, it is pronounced [d]. After t and d, the pronunciation is [ɪd]. Examples: hoped [hʌpt], thanked [θæŋkt], bathed [beɪðd], answered [ɑːnsəd], started [staːtɪd], added [ədɪd].

In writing, the following rules must be noticed: If a verb ends in a consonant followed by -y, it changes -y into i- before the -ed of the past tense is added. For instance, try — tried.

But if a vowel comes before -y, the -y remains when -ed is added. For instance, stay — stayed. Only the verbs 'lay', 'pay', 'say' have 'laid', 'paid', 'said' in the past tense.

If a single consonant ends the verb, it is sometimes made double when -ed is added. The rules are seen from the following examples:

explain-ed plan-ned
answer-ed prefer-red

Rule number one: The consonant always remains single when following two vowels.

Rule number two: The consonant remains single after an unstressed [*unstrest*] single vowel, but is made double after a stressed [*strest*] single vowel. (The verb 'prefer' is pronounced with the stress [*stres*] on the last syllable, -fer. We say that -fer is stressed or is pronounced with stress, and we show this by putting the mark ' before the syllable: [*pri'fə:*].) To this rule there is, however, the exception that -l is made double even after an unstressed vowel. Example: travel-led.

Notice that the past tense of 'have' is 'had'.

'Be' is the only verb that has two forms in the past tense: 'was' and 'were'. They are used in the following way: I was, you were, he was, she was, it was, we were, you were, they were.

Questions:

How is the past tense of most English verbs made? ... When is the -ed pronounced [*t*] and when [*d*]? ... If a verb ends in -y in the infinitive, do you always change it into -i before -ed is added? ... When is a single consonant that ends a verb made double before -ed is added? ... When does it remain single? ... What are the two past tense forms of 'be'? ...

THE LAND OF LIBERTY

One evening, when Storm and Marshall had decided
wʌn iːvniŋ, hwen stɔ:m ənd mɑ:fəl həd di'saidid

to stay at home and read, Storm asked Marshall about
tə stei ət haʊm ənd ri:d, stɔ:m ɑ:skt mɑ:fəl ə'baut

some words in the book he was reading. "The book
səm wə:dz in ðə bu:k hi: wəz ri:diŋ. "ðə bu:k

is written in English, but yet it seems to me that it's
iz ritn in iŋglif, bət jət it si:mz tə mi: ðət its

different from the English I'm used to," Storm said.
difrənt frəm ði iŋglif aim ju:st tu," stɔ:m sed.

"Now take this word, for instance: 'street-car'. It was
"naʊ teik ðis wə:d, fər instəns: 'stri:tka:'. it wəz

not until I had met it several times that I discovered
nɒt ʌntɪl ai həd met it severəl taɪmz ðət ai dis'kʌvəd

that it must mean a 'tram'."

ðət it məst mi:n ə 'træm'."

"I'll tell you why you find the language strange,"

"aɪl tel ju: hwaɪ ju: faɪnd ðə læŋgwidʒ streɪndʒ,"

Marshall smiled. "It isn't English at all; it's American."

mɑ:fəl smaɪld. "it ɪznt iŋglif ət ɔ:l; its ə'merɪkən."

"Oh, is it? I didn't know that American was different

"ou, ɪz ɪt? ai dɪdnt naʊ ðət ə'merɪkən wəz difrənt

from English," Storm said. "Perhaps you will explain

frəm iŋglif," stɔ:m sed. "pə'hæps ju: wɪl ɪks'pleɪn

to me what these other words mean. I've made a list
tə mi: hʊɪt ði:z ʌðə wə:dz mi:n. aiv meɪd ə list

of all the words that were new to me, although I think
əv ɔ:l ðə wə:dz ðət wə: nju: tə mi:, ɔ:l'dəu ai θɪŋk

I have discovered the meaning of some of them myself.
aɪ hæv dɪs'kʌvəd ðə mi:nɪŋ əv sʌm əv ðəm maɪ'self.

'Railroad', that must be the same as 'railway'; and a
'reɪlroʊd', ðæt mʌst bi: ðə seɪm əz 'reɪlweɪ'; and ə

'five-dollar bill' is a 'five-dollar note', isn't it?" "Yes,
'faɪvɔːlə bɪl' ɪz ə 'faɪvɔːlə noʊt', ɪznt ɪt?" "jes,

that's quite right," Marshall answered.
ðætʃz kwaɪt raɪt," mɑ:ʃəl a:nsəd.

"And after a little hard thinking," Storm continued,
"and a:ftər ə lɪtl hɑ:d θɪŋkɪŋ," stɔ:m kən'tɪnju:d.

"I found out that 'baggage' must be the same as
"aɪ faʊnd aʊt ðət 'bæɡɪdʒ' mʌst bi: ðə seɪm əz

'luggage'. But here are two that were too difficult for
'lʌɡɪdʒ'. bʌt hɪər a: tu: ðət wə: tu: dɪfɪkəlt fə

me: What is a 'subway', and what does 'depot' mean?"
mi: hʊɪt ɪz ə 'sʌbweɪ', ən hʊɪt dʌz 'dɪ:pəʊ' mi:n?"

"What on earth have you been reading, since you have
"hʊɪt ən ə:θ hæv ju: bi:n ri:diŋ, sɪns ju: hæv

found such a strange collection of words?" Marshall
faʊnd sʌtʃ ə streɪndʒ kə'leɪʃən əv wə:dz?" mɑ:ʃəl

asked. "A book about a young man who runs away
a:skt. "ə buk ə'baut ə jʌŋ mæn hu: rʌnz ə'weɪ

from home somewhere in Europe, goes to America, and
fɹəm hoʊm sʌmhweər ɪn juərəp, ɡəʊz tu ə'merɪkə, ən

travels all over the country."

trævlz ɔ:l ouvə ðə kʌntri."

"I thought it must be something about travelling,"

"aɪ θɔ:t ɪt mʌst bi: sʌmθɪŋ ə'baʊt trævliŋ,"

Marshall said. "You see, all those words have some-

ma:fəl sed. "ju: si:, ɔ:l ðəʊz wə:dz həv sʌm-

thing to do with travelling. 'Subway' is the same as

θɪŋ tə du: wɪð trævliŋ. 'sʌbwei' ɪz ðə seɪm əz

our 'Underground'; perhaps you remember from your

aʊə 'ʌndəgraʊnd'; pə'hæps ju: ri'membə frəm jɔ:

school-days that 'sub' is Latin for 'under'; and 'depot'

sku:ldeɪz ðæt 'sʌb' ɪz lætɪn fə 'ʌndə'; ən 'di:pəʊ'

is the American expression for 'station'. They use the

ɪz ði ə'merɪkən ɪks'presən fə 'steɪʃən'. ðeɪ ju:z ðə

word 'station', too, but just as America is rich in so

wə:d 'steɪʃən', tu:, bət dʒʌst əz ə'merɪkə ɪz rɪtʃ ɪn səʊ

many other ways, it is, as you see, also rich in

meni ʌðə weɪz, ɪt ɪz, əz ju: si:, ɔ:lsoʊ rɪtʃ ɪn

expressions."

ɪks'presənz."

"Thanks! But tell me, Marshall — now that America

"θæŋks! bət tel mi:, ma:fəl — naʊ ðæt ə'merɪkə

has become such a great and rich country, aren't you

həz bɪ'kʌm sʌtʃ ə greɪt ən rɪtʃ kʌntri, a:nt ju:

English sorry sometimes that it's no longer an English

ɪŋɡlɪʃ sɔ:ri sʌmtaɪmz ðæt ɪts nəʊ lɔŋɡər ən ɪŋɡlɪʃ

colony?" "We don't think much about that nowadays,"

kələni?" "wi: daʊnt θɪŋk mʌtʃ ə'baʊt ðæt naʊədeɪz,"

Marshall answered. "And, besides, it really was our
ma:fəl a:nsəd. "ən, bi'saidz, it riəli wəz auər

own foolish generals and statesmen who lost our
oun fu:lɪʃ dʒenərəlz ən steitsmən hu: lɒst auər

American colonies for England — not to mention the
ə'merikən kələnɪz fər ɪŋɡlənd — nɒt tə menʃən ðə

king, George the Third." Storm: "How did it happen?"
kiŋ, dʒɔ:dʒ ðə þə:d." stɔ:m: "haʊ did it hæpən?"

"The Americans were dissatisfied with many things,
"ði ə'merikənz wə: 'dis'sætɪsfaɪd wɪð meni þɪŋz,

dissatisfied = not
satisfied

and in many cases they had some cause to be dis-
ənd ɪn meni keɪsɪz ðeɪ həd sʌm kɔ:z tə bi: 'dis-

cause = reason

satisfied with the government of the colonies. There
'sætɪsfaɪd wɪð ðə ɡʌvənmənt əv ðə kələnɪz. ðeə

were great differences between life in England and life
wə: ɡreɪt dɪfrənsɪz bi'twi:n laɪf ɪn ɪŋɡlənd ən laɪf

in the 'New World', and many of the men that England
ɪn ðə 'nju: wɔ:ld', ən meni əv ðə men ðæt ɪŋɡlənd

sent to America to look after her affairs had no under-
sɛnt tu ə'merikə tə luk ɑ:ftə hə:r ə'feəz həd nou ʌndə-

standing of this at all, but did many things that only
'stændɪŋ əv ðɪs ət ɔ:l, bət dɪd meni þɪŋz ðæt ɒnli

made the Americans more and more angry.

meɪd ði ə'merikənz mɔ:r ən mɔ:r æŋɡri.

"What made them very angry, for instance, was the

"hwaɪt meɪd ðəm veri æŋɡri, fər ɪnstəns, wəz ðə

tax that was put on tea. England had just helped the
tæks ðæt wəz put ɒn ti:. ɪŋɡlənd həd dʒʌst helpt ðə

tax = a kind of
duty

thirteen American colonies in a war with France, and
þə:ti:n ə'merikən kələniz in ə wɔ: wið fra:ns, ən
 now England wanted the colonies to help to pay for
nau ɪŋɡlənd wɔntid ðə kələniz tə help tə pei fə
 the army. But the Americans said that as long as the
ði a:mi. bət ði ə'merikənz sed ðət əz lɔŋ əz ðə
 colonies had no representatives in the British Parliament,
kələniz həd nou reprɪzəntətɪvz in ðə brɪtɪʃ pɑ:ləmənt,
 Parliament had no right to put a tax on anything in the
pɑ:ləmənt həd nou raɪt tə put ətæks ɔn enɪθɪŋ in ðə
 colonies. And quite right they were, I think."
kələniz. ən kwɑɪt raɪt ðeɪ wə:, aɪ θɪŋk."

"So do I," Storm said. "But go on, please; I find it
"səu du: aɪ," stɔ:m sed. "bət ɡoʊ ɔn, pli:z; aɪ faɪnd ɪt
 very interesting to hear an Englishman speaking about
veri ɪntrɪstɪŋ tə hiər ən ɪŋɡlɪʃmən spi:kɪŋ ə'baut
 'the American question' in this way." "Do you really
'ði ə'merikən kwɛstʃən' in ðɪs weɪ." "du: ju: riəli
 want me to tell you more about it?" Marshall asked in
wɔnt mi: tə tel ju: mɔ:r ə'baut ɪt?" mɑ:fəl ɑ:skt ɪn
 some surprise. "I thought you knew almost as much
səm sə'praɪz. "aɪ θɔ:t ju: nju: ɔ:lməʊst əz mʌtʃ
 — or as little — about it as I do." "No, I don't. You
— ɔ:r əz lɪtl — ə'baut ɪt əz aɪ du:." "nou, aɪ daʊnt. ju:
 see, I wasn't very interested in history at school. When
sɪ:, aɪ wɔznt veri ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn hɪstəri ət sku:l. hwen
 preparing my lessons, I never read my history-book,
pri'peəriŋ maɪ lesnz, aɪ nevə red maɪ hɪstərɪbʊk,

and, consequently, I don't know much history. The
ən, kɒnsɪkwəntli, aɪ daʊnt nəʊ mʌtʃ hɪstəri. ði

only thing I really remember is something about a
əʊnli θɪŋ aɪ riəli rɪ'membə ɪz sʌmθɪŋ ə'baʊt ə
 tea-party."
ti:pa:ti."

"The Boston tea-party! Well, I'll give you a lesson
"ðə bɒstən ti:pa:ti! wɛl, aɪl gɪv ju: ə lesn

in history, then, and tell you about our war with
ɪn hɪstəri, ðen, ən tel ju: ə'baʊt ɔʊə wɔ: wɪð

America. When the Americans wouldn't pay the tax
ə'merɪkə. hwen ði ə'merɪkənz wʊdn't peɪ ðə tæks

that had been put on tea, and stopped drinking tea,
ðæt həd bi:n put ɒn ti:, ən stɒpt drɪŋkɪŋ ti:,

King George got very angry and sent over some ships
kɪŋ dʒɔ:dʒ gɒt vɛrɪ æŋɡrɪ ən sent oʊvə səm ʃɪps

full of tea and told the Americans to buy the tea.
ful ɔv ti: ən təʊld ði ə'merɪkənz tə baɪ ðə ti:.

"But in the night, Americans dressed up as Indians
"bət ɪn ðə naɪt, ə'merɪkənz drest ʌp əz ɪndʒənz

went on board the ships and poured all the tea into
went ɒn bɔ:d ðə ʃɪps ən pɔ:d ɔ:l ðə ti: ɪntə

the harbour. That was the 'tea-party' you remembered.
ðə hɑ:bə. ðæt wəz ðə 'ti:pa:ti' ju: rɪ'membəd.

Soon after this action open war broke out between
su:n ɑ:ftə ðɪs æksən ɒpən wɔ: brəʊk aʊt bɪ'twi:n

America and England, a war that was to end in making
ə'merɪkə ænd ɪŋɡlənd, ə wɔ: ðæt wəz tu end ɪn meɪkɪŋ

action = act



two separate nations of England and her American
tu: seprɪt neɪʃənz əv ɪŋɡlənd ən hæ:r ə'merɪkən

colonies. But perhaps it was a good thing, after all.
kələnɪz. bət pə'hæps ɪt wəz ə gud þɪŋ, ɑ:fɹər ɔ:l.

England has grown again to be one of the greatest
ɪŋɡlənd hæz grəʊn ə'geɪn tə bi: wʌn əv ðə greɪtɪst

empires of the world — it may really be said that our
empaɪəz əv ðə wɜ:ld — ɪt meɪ riəli bi: sed ðət aʊər

empire extends to all corners of the earth.

empaɪə ɪks'tendz tu ɔ:l kɔ:nəz əv ði ə:θ.

“And on the other hand, after the colonies got their
“ænd ɔn ði əðə hænd, ɑ:fɹə ðə kələnɪz ɡɒt ðeə

liberty, they continued to grow in size, and now the
lɪbəti, ðeɪ kən'tɪnju:d tə grəʊ ɪn saɪz, ən naʊ ðə

country extends from the Atlantic all the way across
kʌntri ɪks'tendz frəm ði ət'læntɪk ɔ:l ðə wei ə'krɔs

to the Pacific. The country that we call America con-
tə ðə pə'sɪfɪk. ðə kʌntri ðət wi: kɔ:l ə'merɪkə kən-

sists of 48 separate states, each with its own laws.
'sɪsts əv fɔ:ti'eɪt seprɪt steɪts, i:tʃ wɪð ɪts ʌʊn lɔ:z.

But they are united into one nation, and have one
bət ðeɪ ɑ: ju:'naɪtɪd ɪntə wʌn neɪʃən, ən hæʊ wʌn

law for things that are important to all the states.
lɔ: fə þɪŋz ðət ɑ:r ɪm'pɔ:tənt tu ɔ:l ðə steɪts.

That is why the country is called the ‘United States of
ðæt ɪz hɪwaɪ ðə kʌntri ɪz kɔ:ld ðə 'ju:'naɪtɪd steɪts əv

America’.” “What made the first people leave England
ə'merɪkə’.” “hɜ:vət meɪd ðə fə:st pi:pl li:v ɪŋɡlənd

and go to America?" Storm asked. "Wasn't there
ən gou tu ə'merikə?" *stɔ:m ə:skt.* "wɔznt ðəə

sufficient work and food for them in England?" "Yes,
sə'fɪʃənt wə:k ən fu:d fə ðəm in ɪŋɡlənd?" "jes.

sufficient =
 enough

that had nothing to do with the reason. But shortly
ðæt həd nʌθɪŋ tə du: wɪð ðə ri:zn. bət ʃɔ:tlɪ

after sixteen hundred, there was a lot of religious
ɑ:ftə sɪks'ti:n hʌndrəd, ðəə wəz ə lɒt əv rɪ'lɪdʒəs

trouble in England, and the cause of the trouble was a
trəbl in ɪŋɡlənd, ən ðə kɔ:s əv ðə trəbl wəz ə

new Act that said that all church services in England
nju: ækt ðæt sed ðæt ɔ:l tʃə:ʃ sə:vɪsɪz in ɪŋɡlənd

must be held in a way that was very much like the
mʌst bi: held in ə wei ðæt wəz veri mʌʃ laɪk ðə

way the Catholic services were held. However, there
wei ðə kæθəlɪk sə:vɪsɪz wə: held. haʊ'evə, ðəə

were many people who thought that this was not the
wə: meni pi:pl hu: þɔ:t ðæt ðɪs wəz nɒt ðə

right way to worship God, and who would not do
raɪt wei tə wə:ʃɪp ɡɒd, ən hu: wəd nɒt du:

as the law said. Often, when they came together to
əz ðə lɔ: sed. ɔ:fn, hwen ðeɪ keɪm tə'ɡedə tə

worship God, people who held the other opinion would
wə:ʃɪp ɡɒd, pi:pl hu: held ði ʌðər ə'pɪnjən wəd

come and interrupt their services and try to start fights
kʌm ənd ɪntə'rʌpt ðəə sə:vɪsɪz ən traɪ tə stɑ:t faɪts

with them. In all this trouble many people were hurt,
wɪð ðəm. in ɔ:l ðɪs trəbl meni pi:pl wə: hæ:t,

poor (here) =
needing help or
care

and some even killed in the fights, and at last some
ən sʌm i:vən kild in ðə faɪts, ʌnd ət la:st sʌm

of them decided to leave England and go to America,
ʌv ðəm di'saɪdɪd tə li:v ɪŋɡlənd ən ɡoʊ tu ə'merɪkə,

where they would have liberty to worship God as they
hæwə ðeɪ wəd hæv lɪbəti tə wə:ʃɪp ɡɒd əz ðeɪ

thought best, without being killed for it."

þɔ:t best, wɪð'aʊt bi:ɪŋ kild fər ɪt."

"Poor fellows!" Storm said. "I wonder if many more

"pʊə feləʊz!" stɔ:m sed. "aɪ wʌndər ɪf menɪ mɔ:r

of them weren't killed by the Indians in America?"

ʌv ðəm wə:nt 'kild baɪ ðɪ ɪndʒənz ɪn ə'merɪkə?"

"Yes, that's just what happened," Marshall replied.

"jes, ðætɪz dʒʌst hwɒt hæpnd," mɑ:ʃəl rɪ'plaɪd.

"Only a very few of the Englishmen who arrived in

"oʊnli ə veri fju: ʌv ðɪ ɪŋɡlɪʃmən hu: ə'raɪvd ɪn

America on the famous 'Mayflower' lived to see the

ə'merɪkə ɒn ðə feɪməs 'meɪflaʊə' lɪvd tə si: ðə

next spring. In the first place, they had not brought

nekst sprɪŋ. ɪn ðə fə:st pleɪs, ðeɪ həd nɒt brɔ:t

sufficient food with them from England, and in the

sə'fɪʃənt fu:d wɪð ðəm frəm ɪŋɡlənd, ʌnd ɪn ðə

second place, the Indians hated the white men, or the

sekənd pleɪs, ðɪ ɪndʒənz heɪtɪd ðə hwaɪt men, ɔ: ðə

pale-faces, as they called them, and killed many of

peɪlfesɪz, əz ðeɪ kɔ:ld ðəm, ən kɪld menɪ ʌv

them. The English went in fear of their lives both

ðəm. ðɪ ɪŋɡlɪʃ wɛnt ɪn fɪər ʌv ðeə laɪvz bəʊθ

day and night and never felt safe. Much blood was
dei ən nait ən nevə felt seif. mʌtʃ blʌd wəz

shed to conquer America from the Indians.”
ʃed tə kɒŋkəʁ ə'merikə frəm ði indjənz.”

He **sheds**, he **shed**,
 he has **shed** [ʃedz,
 ʃed, ʃed].

“One can easily understand that the Indians hated
“wʌn kən i:zili ʌndə'stænd ðæt ði indjənz heitid

those pale-faced strangers and regarded them as their
ðəʊz peɪlfeɪst streɪndʒəz ən ri'gɑ:dɪd ðəm əz ðeə

enemies,” Storm said. “They couldn’t understand each
enɪmɪz.” stɔ:m sed. “ðei kʊdnʌt ʌndə'stænd i:tʃ

other at first, and so it was impossible for the white
ʌðər ət fɜ:st, ən sou ɪt wəz ɪm'pɒsəbl fə ðə hwaɪt

men to explain to the Indians that they only wanted
men tu ɪks'pleɪn tə ði indjənz ðæt ðei ɒnli wɒntɪd

a small part of the country to live in. The Indians, of
ə smɔ:l pɑ:t əv ðə kʌntri tə li:v ɪn. ði indjənz, əv

course, had a fear that the pale-faces were going to
kɔ:s, həd ə fiə ðæt ðə peɪlfeɪsɪz wə: ɡəʊɪŋ tə

take the whole continent, and thought they could stop
teɪk ðə haʊl kɒntɪnənt, ən þɔ:t ðei kəd stɒp

them by killing them. I think that if the Indians
ðəm baɪ kɪlɪŋ ðəm. aɪ θɪŋk ðæt ɪf ði indjənz

hadn’t been in such a hurry to start fighting, but had
hædnʌt bi:n ɪn sʌtʃ ə hʌrɪ tə stɑ:t faɪtɪŋ, bət həd

waited until they and the pale-faces could understand
weɪtɪd ʌn'tɪl ðei ən ðə peɪlfeɪsɪz kəd ʌndə'stænd

each other, there wouldn’t have been so much trouble,
i:tʃ ʌðə, ðeə wʊdnʌt həv bi:n sou mʌtʃ trʌbl,

pretty (here) =
rather

and so much blood would not have been shed.”
ən sou matf bləd wəd nɒt hæv bi:n fed.”

“I don’t think it would have made much difference,”
“ai dount þɪŋk ɪt wəd hæv meɪd matf difrəns,”

was Marshall’s opinion. “People have been making
wəz mɑ:fəlz ə'pɪnjən. “pi:pl hæv bi:n meɪkiŋ

war upon each other for less reason than that since
wɔ:r ə'pɒn i:tʃ ʌðə fə les ri:zn ðæn ðæt sɪnz

the beginning of history. It seems to be the nature
ðə bi'gɪniŋ əv hɪstəri. ɪt si:mz tə bi: ðə neɪtʃə

of man to hate and to kill, and, consequently, many
əv mæn tə heɪt ən tə kɪl, ən, kɒnsɪkwəntli, menɪ

must live in fear of others and suffer pain from the
mʌst liv ɪn fiər əv ʌðəz ən sʌfə peɪn frəm ði

actions of others. Now that I come to think of it, we
ækʃənz əv ʌðəz. naʊ ðæt ai kʌm tə þɪŋk əv ɪt, wi:

really are a pretty bad lot, don’t you think so, too?”
riəli a:r ə prɪti bæd lɒt, dount ju: þɪŋk sou. tu:?”

“Some of us, yes,” Storm answered. “But at least those
“sʌm əv ʌs, jes,” stɔ:m ɑ:nsəd. “bət ət li:st ðəʊz

first Americans seem to have been the right sort of
fə:st ə'merɪkənz si:m tə hæv bi:n ðə raɪt sɔ:t əv

men. They were willing to take upon themselves all
men. ðeɪ wə: wɪlɪŋ tə teɪk ə'pɒn ðəm'selvz ɔ:l

the work, all the difficulties, all the suffering that
ðə wɜ:k, ɔ:l ðə dɪfɪkəltɪz, ɔ:l ðə sʌfərɪŋ ðæt

living in the New World meant, in order to be allowed
lɪvɪŋ ɪn ðə nju: wɜ:ld meɪnt, ɪn ɔ:də tə bi: ə'laʊd

to worship God in the way they thought right. They
tə wə:ʃɪp ɡɒd ɪn ðə wei ðei þɔ:t rait. ðei

stayed on over there, even though they suffered very
steɪd ɒn oʊvə ðeə, i:vən ðou ðei saʃəd veri

much both on account of the cold winters and the
mʌtʃ bəʊθ ɒn ə'kaʊnt əv ðə kəʊld wɪntəz ən ðə

fight with the Indians, and because they did not have
faɪts wɪð ði ɪndjənz, ən bi'kɔz ðei dɪd nɒt hæv

sufficient food. Thus the great nation of the United
sə'fɪʃənt fu:d. ðʌs ðə greɪt neɪʃən əv ðə ju:'naɪtɪd

thus = in this
way

States to-day owes its existence to the courage with
steɪts tə'dei ɔʊz ɪts ɪg'zɪstəns tə ðə kʌrɪdʒ wɪð

which these people settled a question of religion which
hwɪtʃ ði:z pi:pl setld ə kwɛstʃən əv rɪ'lɪdʒən hwɪtʃ

settle (here) =
decide

was more important to them than their lives. Not a bad
wəz mɔ:r ɪm'pɔ:tənt tə ðəm ðən ðeə laɪvz. nɒt ə bəd

sort of people for a nation to begin with!"

sɔ:t əv pi:pl fə ə neɪʃən tə bi'ɡɪn wɪð!"

"No, that's right," Marshall agreed. "But look what
"nəʊ, ðəts rait," mɑ:ʃəl ə'ɡri:d. "bʌt luk hwɒt

has happened over there since then. America has
həz hæpnd oʊvə ðeə sɪns ðen. ə'merɪkə həz

been in too great a hurry to grow big and strong, and
bi:n ɪn tu: greɪt ə hʌrɪ tə ɡrəʊ bɪɡ ən strɒŋ. ən

many Americans have been in too great a hurry to
meni ə'merɪkənz həv bi:n ɪn tu: greɪt ə hʌrɪ tə

get rich quickly. They haven't had much time left
ɡet rɪʃ kwɪkli. ðei hævnt həd mʌtʃ taɪm left



*Statue of
Liberty*

over for thinking about those fine ideas of liberty that
ouva fə ʃɪŋkɪŋ ə'baʊt ðəʊz faɪn aɪ'dɪəz əv lɪbəti ðət

made the first Americans leave their mother coun-
meɪd ðə fə:st ə'merɪkənz li:v ðəθ mʌðə kʌn-

try. However," he continued, "I do think America
tri. haʊ'evə," hi: kən'tɪnju:d, "aɪ du: ʃɪŋk ə'merɪkə

has earned the Statue of Liberty which the people
həz ə:nd ðə stætju: əv lɪbəti hʁwɪtf ðə pi:pl

of France gave America in 1886, as a sign
əv fra:ns geɪv ə'merɪkə ɪn eɪtɪ:n eɪtɪ'sɪks, əz ə saɪn

of the love of liberty in both countries. It's an
əv ðə lʌv əv lɪbəti ɪn bəʊθ kʌntrɪz. ɪts ən

extremely tall statue, you know, placed on an island
ɪks'tri:mli tɔ:l stætju:, ju: nou, pleɪst ɔn ən aɪlənd

just outside New York, — the first sign that you have
dʒʌst aʊtsaɪd nju: jɔ:k, — ðə fə:st saɪn ðət ju: həv

come to a free country."

kʌm tu ə fri: kʌntri."

"Yes, I know," Storm replied. "I've read about it.

"jes, aɪ nou," stɔ:m ri'plaɪd. "aɪv red ə'baʊt ɪt.

Inside it, you can go all the way up to the head,
ɪnsaɪd ɪt, ju: kən ɡəʊ ɔ:l ðə wei ʌp tə ðə hed,

where you can look out through the eyes and thus
hʁweə ju: kən lʊk aʊt θru: ði aɪz ən ðʌs

get a wonderful view of New York. The Americans
ɡet ə wʌndəfʊl vju: əv nju: jɔ:k. ðɪ ə'merɪkənz

are very proud of the 'sky-line' of New York, as
ɑ: veri praʊd əv ðə 'skɪləɪn' əv nju: jɔ:k, əz

they call it, the line of houses and towers seen against
ðei kɔ:l it, ðə laɪn əv haʊzɪz ən taʊəz si:n ə'geɪnst

the sky when your boat is entering the harbour. I
ðə skai hwen jɔ: bɔ:t ɪz ɛntərɪŋ ðə ha:bə. aɪ

hope to see it some day."
haʊp tə si: ɪt sʌm deɪ."

"So do I," Marshall said, as he prepared to go to
"sou du: aɪ," mɑ:fəl sed, əz hi: prɪ'peəd tə ɡoʊ tə

bed. "Perhaps we could go there together." "Yes,
bed. "pə'hæps wi: kəd ɡoʊ ðeə tə'ɡeðə." "jes,

perhaps we might," Storm answered. "Well, good
pə'hæps wi: maɪt," stɔ:m a:nsəd. "wel, ɡud

night!"
nait!"

EXERCISE A.

In America a tram is called a —. A railway is called a —, and a five-dollar note a — —. The Underground the Americans call the —, and a — is a station. The American word for luggage is —. In former times America was an English —. The Americans were — with the English government of their country.

The English put a — on the tea that was sent to the Americans. Storm never read his — at school. The war between England and her American colonies ended in making two — nations of them. The British Empire — to all corners of the earth.

WORDS:

railroad
 bill
 street-car
 subway
 depot
 baggage
 colony
 lesson
 dissatisfied
 tax
 separate
 extend
 liberty

Atlantic
Pacific
unite
worship
sufficient
fight
hate
pale-face
pale-faced
kill
fear
shed
suffer
action
hurry
cause
statue
thus
sign

When the American colonies had got their —, they grew in size, and now the country — from the — all the way across to the —. America now consists of 48 states — into one nation. Some people in England who wanted to — God in their own way went to America to do so. They did not bring — food along from England. They suffered on account of the — with the Indians.

The Indians — the white men, or the —, as they called them, and — many of them. The English went in — of their lives. Much blood was —. It seems to be the nature of man to hate and kill, and, consequently, many must — pain from the — of others. America has been in a great — to grow big and strong.

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

Are you interested in music? ... Do you think you are musical? ... Do you play any instrument? ... Do you like to dance? ... Have you been taught dancing? ... Do you like modern dance-music? ... Do you like to sing, and have you got a good voice for singing? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

In the sentences "I have **walked** five miles the last three days", "the girl has **played** in the garden for an hour", "he had **looked** out of the window for me just before

I arrived", 'walked', 'played', and 'looked' are called second participles [*pɑ:tisiplz*]. (The first participle, 'playing', etc., we are going to hear about later.) You will notice that the second participle of verbs like these has the same form as the past tense.

The second participle is used with the present tense of 'have' to make the perfect [*pə:fikt*] tense: I have called, you have called, he has called, she has called, it has called, we have called, you have called, they have called.

The second participle is also used with the past tense of 'have' to make the pluperfect [*'plu:'pə:fikt*] tense: I had called, you had called, he had called, she had called, it had called, we had called, you had called, they had called.

The second participle of 'be' is 'been', and the perfect tense is as follows: I have been, you have been, he has been, she has been, it has been, we have been, you have been, they have been. The pluperfect is made with the past tense of 'have': I had been, you had been, he had been, she had been, it had been, we had been, you had been, they had been.

Questions:

What other form of the verb is as a rule the same as the second participle? ... What is the second participle used for? ... What is the second participle of the verb 'be'? ...

EXERCISE D.

siksti'eit, nelsn roud,
wimblæn.

ðə twenti'eitθ əv dʒu:n.

diə wud,

aim sɔri ðæt it hæz bi:n sou lɔŋ bi'fɔ:r aiv faund
taim tu a:nsə ʃɔ: letə, hwitʃ ai ri'si:vð ɔ:l'redi æt ðə
bi'giniy əv la:st wi:k. bæt ju: si:, ən im'pɔ:tənt tʃeindʒ
hæz teikn pleis in mai laif sins mai la:st letə, and ɔ:l
mai taim and ɔ:l mai ʃɔ:ts hæv bi:n teikn ʌp wið it.
ðə fækt iz, mæriən edwədz hæz prɒmist tə bi'kʌm mai
waif, sou frəm bi:ny ə laitha:tid ʃɔŋ mæn wið'aut ə
kæər in ðə wə:ld, aiv sʌdnli bi:n tʃeindʒd intu ə mæn
wið veri siəriəs ʃɔ:ts ə'baut ðə fju:tʃə, nau ðæt aim
gouin tə hæv ə fæmili əv mai oun.

its streindʒ tə ʃɪŋk ðæt æt ðə seim taim hwæn mæriən
and ai wə:r ɔn ðə tri:p hwæər ai a:skt hæ: ðæt veri
im'pɔ:tənt kwestʃən, ən hwæə wi: wɔ:kt in ðə wɔ:m
sʌnsaɪn andə ðə gri:n tri:z, ju: wə: hæviŋ stɔ:mz wið
rein ən kould æt houn. bæt ðæt riəli iz ʌn'ju:ʒuəl.
i:vən in auə kʌntri, æt ðis taim əv ðə ʃiə. hau'evə,
sprɪŋ ən sʌmə du: kʌm ə:liə in ɪŋglənd ðæn æt houn.
in ðə pɑ:ts əv ɪŋglənd ðæt aiv si:n ɔn mai tri:ps, ðə
li:vz wə:r aut ɔ:l'redi æt ðə bi'giniy əv eɪprɪl. (

wel, ai houp tə hiə frəm ju: ə'gein veri su:n; ai
wɔnt tə nou hwɔt ju: ʃɪŋk əv ðə 'greɪt nju:s'. əz
ju: nou daʊt kən si: frəm mai letə, ai hævnt bi:n
eɪbl tə ʃɪŋk əv mʌts els ði:z la:st tu: wi:ks.

ʃɔ:z sin'siəli,

stɔ:m

THE BRITISH EMPIRE

Marshall had often promised Storm to take him to the
ma:ʃəl həd ɔ:fən prəmɪst stɔ:m tə teɪk hɪm tə ðə

House of Commons when the members were present
haʊs əv kɒmənz hwen ðə membəz wə: prɛznt

and the House at work. Storm wanted to see some
ænd ðə haʊs at wɜ:k. stɔ:m wɒntɪd tə si: sʌm

of its famous members and hear them speak. Marshall
əv ɪts feɪməs membəz ænd hiə ðəm spi:k. ma:ʃəl

felt this promise as a debt of honour. So, at length,
felt ðɪs prɒmɪs əz ə det əv ɒnə. səʊ, ət lɛŋθ,

debt = something
which is owed to
somebody

one afternoon after office hours he decided to pay
wʌn ɑ:ftə'nu:n ɑ:ftər ɒfɪs aʊəz hi: dɪ'saɪdɪd tə peɪ

this debt. He went with Storm to the House of
ðɪs det. hi: wɛnt wɪð stɔ:m tə ðə haʊs əv

Commons, and they spent some hours there, listening
kɒmənz, ænd ðeɪ spent sʌm aʊəz ðeə, lɪsnɪŋ

to the different speakers.

tə ðə dɪfrənt spi:kəz.

Among other matters several colonial questions were
ə'mʌŋ ʌðə mætəz sevrəl kə'lɒnjuəl kwestʃənz wə:

colonial = having
to do with colonies

discussed, which seemed to be of much interest to
dɪs'kʌst, hwi:ʃ si:md tə bi: əv mʌtʃ ɪntrɪst tə

Storm. On their way home he seemed to be thinking
stɔ:m. ɒn ðeə weɪ haʊm hi: si:md tə bi: ɪŋkɪŋ

manner = way

moment = a very short time

of something, and after dinner, when they were making
əv sʌmʃɪŋ, ənd a:ftə dɪnə, hævən ðeɪ wə: meɪkɪŋ
 themselves comfortable, each in a big chair, he said
ðəm'selvz kʌmfətəbl, i:tfɪn ə bɪg tʃeə, hi: sed
 to Marshall, "The colonial questions which were dis-
tə mɑ:fəl, "ðə kə'lɒnjəl kwestʃənz hɪwɪtʃ wə: dis-
 cussed in Parliament to-day interested me more than
'kʌst ɪn pɑ:ləmənt tə'deɪ ɪntrɪstɪd mi: mɔ: ðən
 anything else, though I didn't always catch the meaning;
enɪʃɪŋ els, ðəu aɪ dɪdnt ɔ:lwəz kætʃ ðə mi:nɪŋ;
 for after all, I know far too little about the colonies.
fər a:ftər ɔ:l, aɪ nəʊ fɑ: tu: lɪtl ə'baʊt ðə kələnɪz.
 For instance, I don't know how they're governed."
fər ɪnstəns, aɪ daʊnt nəʊ haʊ ðeə ɡʌvənd."
 "It isn't so easy," Marshall said, "to tell you in a few
"ɪt ɪznt səʊ i:zi," mɑ:fəl sed, "tə tel ju: ɪn ə fju:
 words about their government, because they're not all
wə:dz ə'baʊt ðeə ɡʌvənəmənt, bɪ'kɔz ðeə nɒt ɔ:l
 governed in the same manner; but we could talk a little
ɡʌvənd ɪn ðə seɪm mənə; bət wi: kəd tɔ:k ə lɪtl
 about the question until bedtime. I'll start in a
ə'baʊt ðə kwestʃən ʌn'tɪl bedtaɪm, aɪl stɑ:t ɪn ə
 moment. First I'll go out to the kitchen and get some
məʊmənt. fə:st aɪl ɡəʊ aʊt tə ðə kɪtʃɪn ən get səm
 matches so that we can try the new cigarettes I bought
mætʃɪz səʊ ðət wi: kən traɪ ðə nju: sɪɡə'rets aɪ bɔ:t
 to-day." He did so, and a few moments later they
tə'deɪ." hi: dɪd səʊ, ənd ə fju: məʊmənts leɪtə ðeɪ

were enjoying their cigarettes. "Well, Storm," said
wə:r in'dʒɔɪɪŋ ðeə sigə'rets. "wel, stɔ:m," sed

Marshall, taking up the conversation again, "I'll first
mɑ:ʃəl, teɪkɪŋ ʌp ðə kənʋə'seɪʃən ə'geɪn, "aɪl fə:st

tell you about a number of countries which used to
tɛl ju: ə'baʊt ə nʌmbər əv kʌntrɪz hʋɪtʃ ju:st tə

be governed by Britain. The best known of them are
bɪ: ɡʌvənd baɪ brɪtən. ðə best noun əv ðəm a:

Canada, New Zealand, Australia, South Africa, India,
kænədə, nju:'zi:lənd, ɔ:s'treɪljə, saʊθ əfrɪkə, ɪndjə,

and Pakistan. We call these countries Dominions.
ən pɑ:kɪ'stɑ:n. wi: kɔ:l ði:z kʌntrɪz də'mɪnjənz.

They have their own governments which look after
ðeɪ hæv ðeər oun ɡʌvənmənts hʋɪtʃ luk ɑ:ftər

affairs of interest to the Dominions themselves. Re-
ə'fɛəz əv ɪntrɪst tə ðə də'mɪnjənz ðəm'selvz. ri-

garding foreign affairs which are of importance to the
'ɡɑ:diŋ fɔrɪn ə'fɛəz hʋɪtʃ ɑ:r əv ɪm'pɔ:təns tə ðə

whole Empire, they have the same right as the mother
houl empaɪə, ðeɪ hæv ðə seɪm raɪt əz ðə mʌðə

country to decide what steps should be taken. So you
kʌntri tə dɪ'saɪd hʋɛt steɪps ʃəd bɪ: teɪkən. sɔu ju:

see, Storm, that it would be incorrect to regard Britain
sɪ:, stɔ:m, ðæt ɪt wəd bɪ: ɪnkə'rekt tə rɪ'ɡɑ:d brɪtən

and the Dominions as a country with its colonies. It's
ən ðə də'mɪnjənz əz ə kʌntri wɪð ɪts kələnɪz. ɪts

rather a number of states which are held together by
rɑ:ðər ə nʌmbər əv steɪts hʋɪtʃ a: held tə'ɡedə baɪ

regarding = as to

incorrect = not
correct

Chapter Fifty-Seven (57).

development =
growth

nineteenth century
= the time from
the year 1800 to
the year 1900

gain = win

the same interests of trade and politics."

ðə seim intrists æv treid ən pɒlɪtiks."

"But the Dominions cannot have had all these political

"bət ðə də'mɪnjənz kənət hæv hæd ɔ:l ði:s pə'litikəl

rights from the beginning," Storm interrupted.

raɪts frəm ðə bɪ'gɪnɪŋ," stɔ:m ɪntə'rʌptɪd.

"No, they're the fruits of a development which has been

"nou, ðeə ðə fru:ts æv ə dɪ'veləpmənt hwi:tf hæz bi:n

going on for many years," Marshall continued. "At

gəʊɪŋ ɔn fə meni jɪəz," mɑ:ʃəl kən'tɪnju:d. "ət

first the Dominions were simply colonies which could

fə:st ðə də'mɪnjənz wə: simpli kələnɪz hwi:tf kəd

not make decisions regarding many of their own affairs

nɒt meɪk dɪ'sɪʒənz rɪ'ga:diŋ meni æv ðeər oun ə'feəz

without asking Britain, but the political development

wɪd'əʊt ɑ:skiŋ brɪtən, bət ðə pə'litikəl dɪ'veləpmənt

which took place in the nineteenth century has made

hwi:tf tuk pleɪs ɪn ðə naɪnti:nθ sentʃuri hæz meɪd

it necessary for Britain to give them greater and

ɪt nesɪsəri fə brɪtən tə gɪv ðəm greɪtər ən

greater liberty to look after their own affairs, and by

greɪtə lɪbəti tə luk ɑ:ftə ðeər oun ə'feəz, ən baɪ

the year 1900 half of the Dominions had

ðə jɪə naɪnti:n haʊdrəd ha:f æv ðə də'mɪnjənz hæd

gained their present rights." "And the fact that the

geɪnd ðeə preznt raɪts." "ən ðə fækt ðæt ðə

Dominions have gained these political rights is no

də'mɪnjənz hæv geɪnd ði:s pə'litikəl raɪts ɪz nou

doubt an important reason why Britain has been able
daut ən im'pɔ:tənt ri:zn hwai britən həs bi:n eibl

to keep her connection with them," Storm said. "It's
tə ki:p hə: kə'nekʃən wið ðəm," stɔ:m sed. "its

the same with nations as with people. You can almost
ðə seim wið neɪʃənz əz wið pi:pl. ju: kən ɔ:lməʊs!

always have your way with them if your behaviour
ɔ:lweɪz hætʃ ju: wei wið ðəm if ju: bi'heivjə

towards them is gentle and understanding. If Britain
tə'wɔ:dz ðəm ɪz dʒentl ənd ʌndə'stændɪŋ. ɪf britən

had used force against her present Dominions instead
həd ju:zd fɔ:s ə'geɪnst hə: prɛznt də'mɪnjənz ɪn'sted

of being gentle with them, they would have been lost
əv bi:ɪŋ dʒentl wið ðəm, ðeɪ wəd hæv bi:n lɔst

now, I suppose, as her former North-American colonies
naʊ, aɪ sə'pəʊz, əz hə: fɔ:mə 'nɔ:θə'merɪkən kələnɪz

were lost when she used force against them, sending
wə: lɔst hwen ʃi: ju:zd fɔ:s ə'geɪnst ðəm, sendɪŋ

armies across the sea to fight them." "No doubt you're
ɑ:mɪz ə'krɔs ðə si: tə faɪt ðəm." "nəʊ daʊt juə

right," Marshall replied. "But though the Dominions
raɪt," mɑ:ʃəl ri'plaɪd. "bət ðəʊ ðə də'mɪnjənz

are the best known parts of the British Empire, we
ɑ: ðə best nəʊn pɑ:ts əv ðə brɪtɪʃ empaɪə, wi:

must not forget to say a few words about the colonies
mʌst nɒt fə'get tə sei ə fju: wɔ:dz ə'baut ðə kələnɪz

proper. They're parts of the British Empire with
prɒpə. ðeə pɑ:ts əv ðə brɪtɪʃ empaɪə wið

Chapter Fifty-Seven (57).

an official =
a person who
works for the
government

the natives of a
country = the
people belonging
by birth to the
country

only a few Englishmen — soldiers and officials —
ounli ə fjuː ɪŋɡlɪʃmən — souldʒəz ənd ə'fɪʃəlz —

living among the natives. They're governed from
lɪvɪŋ ə'maŋ ðə neɪtɪvz. ðeə ɡʌvənd frəm

Britain, that is, by the Colonial Office in London.
brɪtən, ðæt ɪz, baɪ ðə kə'lounjəl ɔfɪs ɪn lʌndən.

The Colonial Office sends a representative, a so-called
ðə kə'lounjəl ɔfɪs sendz ə reprɪ'zentatɪv, ə soukɔːld

Governor, to each of the colonies to look after the
ɡʌvənə, tu iːtʃ əv ðə kələnɪz tə luk ɑːftə ði

affairs of the colony. Of course, he can't do all the
ə'feəz əv ðə kələnɪ. əv kɔːs, hiː kɑːnt duː ɔːl ðə

work himself, but has a number of officials to help
wɜːk hɪm'self, bət həz ə nʌmbə əv ə'fɪʃəlz tə help

him. He and the officials together make up the
hɪm. hiː ən ði ə'fɪʃəlz tə'ɡedə meɪk ʌp ðə

highest authority of the colony. Naturally, the
haɪɪst ɔː'θɔrɪti əv ðə kələnɪ. nətʃrəli, ðə

Governor is always in connection with the Colonial
ɡʌvənə ɪz ɔːlwəz ɪn kə'nekʃən wɪð ðə kə'lounjəl

Office in London, telling it what happens in the
ɔfɪs ɪn lʌndən, telɪŋ ɪt hwɒt hæpənz ɪn ðə

colony and getting orders as to what to do in im-
kələnɪ ən ɡetɪŋ ɔːdəz əz tə hwɒt tə duː ɪn ɪm-

portant matters.”

'pɔːtənt mətəz.”

just = right

“Wouldn't it be more just of Britain to let the colonies
“wʊdnɪt ɪt biː mɔː dʒʌst əv brɪtən tə let ðə kələnɪz

have governments of their own, just like the Do-
həv ɡʌvənmənts əv ðeər oun, dʒʌst laɪk ðə də-

minions?" Storm asked.

'minjənz?" stɔ:m ə:skt.

"Perhaps it would be just," Marshall replied, "but the
"pə'hæps it wəd bi: dʒʌst," mɑ:fəl ri'plaid, "bət ðə

natives of most of the colonies are not white people,
neɪtɪvz əv mʌst əv ðə kələnɪz ə: nɒt hwaɪt pi:pl,

and wouldn't be able to govern themselves. When the
ən wʊdnt bi: eɪbl tə ɡʌvən ðəm'selvz. hwen ði

English first came to these places, the natives in many
ɪŋɡlɪʃ fə:st keɪm tə ði:z pleɪsɪz, ðə neɪtɪvz ɪn menɪ

cases were nothing but wild or savage tribes, living
keɪsɪz wə: nʌθɪŋ bət waɪld ɔ: səvɪdʒ traɪbz, lɪvɪŋ

under the conditions offered by nature; so the English
ʌndə ðə kən'dɪʃənz ɔ:fəd baɪ neɪtʃə; sɔu ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ

have had to take care of them. However, as the
həv həd tə teɪk keər əv ðəm. haʊ'evə, əz ðə

natives become more used to European ideas, it is
neɪtɪvz bɪ'kʌm mɔ: ju:st tə juərə'piən aɪ'diəz, ɪt ɪz

the intention of the British to give all the colonies
ði ɪn'tenʃən əv ðə brɪtɪʃ tə ɡɪv ɔ:l ðə kələnɪz

self-government.

'self'ɡʌvənmənt.

"I know that it's the general opinion of many foreigners

"aɪ nəʊ ðət ɪts ðə dʒenərəl ə'pɪnjən əv menɪ fɔrɪnəz

that Britain has only thought of her own interests in

ðət brɪtən həz ounli þɔ:t əv hɜ:r oun ɪntrɪsts ɪn



a savage

intention =
purpose

Chapter Fifty-Seven (57).

fair = just

connection with the colonies, but this is not quite fair.
kə'neksən wið ðə kələniz, bət ðis iz nɒt kweɪt feə.

rule(here) =
government

In the colonies where the natives were savages when
in ðə kələniz hwɛə ðə neɪtɪvz wə: səvədʒɪz hwɛn

they came under British rule, Britain has really done
ðei keɪm ʌndə brɪtɪʃ ru:l, brɪtən həz riəli dʌn

a lot of good work for the people, making their life
ə lɒt əv gud wɜ:k fə ðə pi:pl, meɪkɪŋ ðeə laɪf

easier, building schools and hospitals for them, etc.,
i:ziə, bɪldɪŋ sku:lz ən hɒspɪtlz fɔ: ðəm, ɪl'setə,

and on the whole trying to be just and fair. But it
ænd ɒn ðə hoʊl traɪɪŋ tə bi: dʒʌst ən feə. bət ɪt

would be incorrect to say that all the colonies like to
wəd bi: ɪnkə'rekt tə seɪ ðæt ɔ:l ðə kələniz laɪk tə

be under British rule.”

bi: ʌndə brɪtɪʃ ru:l.”

“At least many of the people in India didn't like it
“ət li:st meni əv ðə pi:pl ɪn ɪndjə dɪdn't laɪk ɪt

as they came to feel equal with the Europeans,” Storm
əz ðei keɪm tə fi:l i:kwəl wið ðə juərə'piənz,” stɔ:m

said with a smile. “From the papers and also from
sed wið ə smaɪl. “frəm ðə peɪpəz ænd ɔ:lsəʊ frəm

a number of books I've read, I know that there used
ə nʌmbə əv buks aɪv red, aɪ naʊ ðæt ðeə ju:st

to be much trouble with India from time to time.
tə bi: mʌtʃ trəbl wið ɪndjə frəm taɪm tə taɪm.

Could you tell me a little more about the government

kəd ju: tel mi: ə lɪtl mɔ:r ə'baut ðə ɡʌvənmənt

of India? I've no definite idea of it." "Before
 əv indjə? aiv nou definit ai'diə əv it." "bɪfɔ:

definite = clear
 in meaning

1947 the government of India was different
 maɪntɪn fɔ:tɪsɜrn ðə ɡʌvənmənt əv indjə wəz dɪfrənt

from that of the Dominions as well as from that of
 frəm ðæt əv ðə də'mɪnjənz əz wel əz frəm ðæt əv

the colonies," was Marshall's reply. "It did not govern
 ðə kələnɪz," wəz mɑ:fəls rɪ'plai. "ɪt dɪd nɒt ɡʌvən

itself. It was governed by the British and the Indians
 ɪt'self. ɪt wəz ɡʌvənd baɪ ðə brɪtɪʃ ən ðɪ ɪndjənz

together. The country is so large — having nearly
 tə'geðə. ðə kʌntri ɪz sɒu lɑ:dʒ — həvɪŋ niəli

400 million people — that there was a special
 fɔ: hʌndrəd mɪljən pi:pl — ðæt ðeə wəz ə speʃəl

government department in London, called the India
 ɡʌvənmənt dɪ'pɑ:tmənt ɪn lʌndən, kɔ:ld ðɪ ɪndjə

Office, looking after Indian affairs. But as you
 ɒfis, lʊkɪŋ ɑ:ftər ɪndjən ə'feəz. bət əz ju:

mentioned, Britain often had trouble with India —
 menʃənd, brɪtən ɔ:fn həd trʌbl wɪð ɪndjə —

mostly on account of the manner in which it was
 mɒstli ɒn ə'kaʊnt əv ðə mænər ɪn hwiʃ ɪt wəz

governed. Many of the Indians wanted their country
 ɡʌvənd. meni əv ðɪ ɪndjənz wɒntɪd ðeə kʌntri

to be given self-government as soon as possible." "And
 tə bi: ɡɪvən 'self'ɡʌvənmənt əz su:n əz pɒsəbl." "ən

wasn't it to do justice to them, Marshall, to offer them
 wəznt ɪt tə du: dʒʌstɪs tu ðəm, mɑ:fəl, tu ɔ:fə ðəm

do justice to =
 be just to

what they wanted?" Storm asked. "If it was only
hwæt ðei wæntid?" stɔ:m a:skt. "if it wæz ounli

a question of doing justice to them, they would
ə kwɛstʃən əv du:ɪŋ dʒʌstɪs tu ðəm, ðei wəd

have been given self-government a long time before,"
hæv bi:n gɪvən 'self'gʌvənmənt ə lɔŋ taɪm bi'fɔ:,"

Marshall replied. "In 1917 the British
mɑ:ʃəl ri'plaid. "in naɪnti:n sɛvənti:n ðə brɪtɪʃ

Government declared that its intention was the develop-
gʌvənmənt di'kleəd ðət ɪts ɪn'tenʃən wæz ðə di'veləp-

ment, step by step, of the same sort of self-government
mənt, steɪp baɪ steɪp, əv ðə seɪm sɔ:t əv 'self'gʌvənmənt

for India as the Dominions had. But India consists
fər ɪndjə əz ðə də'mɪnjənz həd. bət ɪndjə kən'sɪsts

of many nations, with different ideas of life and with
əv mæni neɪʃənz, wɪð dɪfrənt aɪ'diəz əv laɪf ən wɪð

different religions. Several of them were not at all
dɪfrənt ri'lɪdʒənz. sevrəl əv ðəm wə: nɒt ət ɔ:l

interested in a national and united India, but thought
ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ə næʃənəl ən ju:'naɪtɪd ɪndjə, bət þɔ:t

only of their own interests, while others were satisfied
əv ðeər oun ɪntrɪsts, hwaɪl ʌðəz wə: sætɪsfaɪd

with British rule, because they thought that if India
wɪð brɪtɪʃ ru:l, bi'kɔ:z ðei þɔ:t ðət ɪf ɪndjə

was left to itself, there would be more trouble, perhaps
wəz left tu ɪt'self, ðeə wəd bi: mɔ: trʌbl, pə'hæps

war, instead of the good conditions that the country
wɔ:, ɪn'sted əv ðə gu:d kən'dɪʃənz ðət ðə kæntri

enjoyed under British rule. That is one of the reasons
in'dʒɔɪd ʌndə brɪtɪʃ ru:l. ðæt ɪz wʌn əv ðə ri:zənz

why Britain, at one time, was not willing to give up
hwaɪ brɪtən, ət wʌn taɪm, wəz nɒt wɪlɪŋ tə gɪv ʌp

India, even if Indians like the famous Gandhi, for
ɪndjə, i:vən ɪf ɪndjənz laɪk ðə feɪməs ɡændi:, fər

instance, wanted it.”

ɪnstəns, wɒntɪd ɪt.”

“It seems as if the British were a little in doubt as

“ɪt si:mz əz ɪf ðə brɪtɪʃ wə:r ə lɪtl ɪn daʊt əz

to what to do with Gandhi,” Storm said. “Several

tə hwɒt tə du: wɪð ɡændi:,” stɔ:m sed. “sevrəl

times they punished him by sending him to prison, and

taɪmz ðeɪ ˈpʌnɪʃt hɪm baɪ sendɪŋ hɪm tə ˈprɪzn, ən

when he had been in prison for some time, they set

hwən hɪ: həd bi:n ɪn ˈprɪzn fə sʌm taɪm, ðeɪ set

him at liberty again. In my opinion, they might just

hɪm ət lɪbəti əˈɡeɪn. ɪn maɪ əˈpɪnjən, ðeɪ maɪt dʒʌst

as well have given up punishing him, for I’m sure that

əz wel həv ɡɪvən ʌp ˈpʌnɪʃɪŋ hɪm, fər aɪm suə ðæt

punishment cannot change the political opinions of a

ˈpʌnɪʃmənt kənɒt tʃeɪndʒ ðə pəˈlɪtɪkəl əˈpɪnjənz əv ə

man like that, even if it’s a punishment which sends

mæn laɪk ðæt, i:vən ɪf ɪts ə ˈpʌnɪʃmənt hwɪtʃ sendz

him to prison for several years.”

hɪm tə ˈprɪzn fə sevrəl jɪəz.”

“The British didn’t think that either when they put

“ðə brɪtɪʃ dɪdnt θɪŋk ðæt aɪðə hwən ðeɪ put



prison

him in prison! They regarded him as a danger to the
him in prɪzn? ðei rɪ'ga:dɪd him ə ə deɪndʒə tə ðə

State, because it was his political purpose to make the
steɪt, bɪ'kəz ɪt wəz hɪz pə'lɪtɪkəl pə:pəs tə meɪk ði

Indians stop working in industry and thus make
ɪndjənz stɒp wə:kɪŋ ɪn ɪndəstri ən ðʌs meɪk

trouble for the British Government. However, after the
traʊbl fə ðə brɪtɪʃ ɡʌvənmənt. haʊ'evə, a:ftə ðə

war of 1939—1945, the British
wɔ: r əv naɪnti:n pə:ti'nain tə naɪnti:n fɔ:tɪ'faɪv, ðə brɪtɪʃ

Government made a definite plan for India. They
ɡʌvənmənt meɪd ə defɪnɪt plæn fər ɪndjə. ðei

declared that the British troops and government officials
dɪ'kleəd ðət ðə brɪtɪʃ tru:ps ən ɡʌvənmənt ə'fɪʃəlz

would leave India in 1948. The Indians would
wəd li:v ɪndjə ɪn naɪnti:n fɔ:tɪ'eɪt, ði ɪndjənz wəd

then have to decide for themselves whether they wanted
ðen hæv tə dɪ'saɪd fə ðəm'selvz hwedə ðei wəntɪd

to remain in the Empire as a self-governing Dominion,
tə rɪ'meɪn ɪn ði ɛm'paɪə əz ə 'self'ɡʌvənɪŋ də'mɪnjən,

or whether they wanted to be a completely separate
ɔ: hwedə ðei wəntɪd tə bi: ə kəm'pli:tli seprɪt

country without any connection with Britain. In
kʌntri wɪð'aʊt ɛni kə'nekʃən wɪð brɪtən. ɪn

1947 the English and the Indians agreed
naɪnti:n fɔ:tɪ'sevn ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ ən ði ɪndjənz ə'ɡri:d

to divide the whole of India into the two Dominions
tə dɪ'vaɪd ðə həʊl əv ɪndjə ɪntə ðə tu: də'mɪnjənz

of India and Pakistan, and on the fifteenth of August
əv ɪndjə ən pɑ:kɪ'stɑ:n, ənd ɔn ðə fɪfti:nθ əv ɔ:gəst

of that year these Dominions received self-government.
əv ðæt jɪə ði:z də'mɪnjənz rɪ'si:vəd 'self'gʌvənmənt.

For my part I hope that these new Dominions will keep
fə maɪ pɑ:t aɪ haʊp ðət ði:z nju: də'mɪnjənz wɪl ki:p

their connection with Britain, for they have so many
ðeə kə'nekʃən wɪð brɪtən, fə ðeɪ hæv sɔu meni

advantages of trade to offer each other. And I think,
əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒɪz əv treɪd tu ɔfər i:tʃ əðə. ənd aɪ θɪŋk,

too, that good old Clive in that case would be happy
tu:, ðət gu:d ould klaɪv ɪn ðæt keɪs wəd bi: hæpi

in his grave.”

ɪn hɪz greɪv.”

“Who's Clive?” Storm asked. “Clive! You don't say
“hu:z klaɪv?” stɔ:m ɑ:skt. “klaɪv! ju: daʊnt seɪ

that you've lived in England for about a year
ðət ju:v lɪvd ɪn ɪŋɡlənd fər ə'baʊt ə jɪə

without hearing the name of Robert Clive?” “I'm
wɪð'aʊt hɪəriŋ ðə neɪm əv rɒbət klaɪv?” “aɪm

afraid so, but I'd like to hear something about him.”
ə'freɪd sɔu, bət aɪd laɪk tə hɪə sʌmθɪŋ ə'baʊt hɪm.”

“Indeed, I must tell you about him at once. You cannot
“ɪn'di:d, aɪ mʌst tel ju: ə'baʊt hɪm ət wʌns. ju: kənɒt

go about without knowing who Robert Clive is. He
ɡəʊ ə'baʊt wɪð'aʊt nəʊɪŋ hu: rɒbət klaɪv ɪz. hɪ:

was a great soldier and is famous for the battles he
wəz ə greɪt souldʒə ənd ɪz feɪməs fər ðə bætlɪz hɪ:

military = having
to do with soldiers
and war

fought in India against the French and the Indians,
fɔ:t in indjə ə'geɪnst ðə frenʃ ən di ɪndʒənz.

when the British control of India began. He was born
hwen ðə brɪtɪʃ kən'trəʊl əv indjə bɪ'ɡæn. hi: wəz bɔ:n

in 1725, and as a boy he was very interested
in sevnti:n twenti'faɪv, and əz ə bɔɪ hi: wəz veri ɪn'trɪstɪd

in military life and wanted to be a soldier himself. He
in militəri laɪf ən wɒntɪd tə bi: ə souldʒə him'self. hi:

made a kind of military organisation among his small
meɪd ə kaɪnd əv militəri ɔ:gənəɪ'zeɪʃən ə'mʌŋ hɪz smɔ:l

friends, with military law. After leaving school he
frendz, wɪð militəri lɔ:. ɑ:ftə li:vɪŋ sku:l hi:

was sent to India. In all, he had three long stays in
wəz sent tu indjə. in ɔ:l, hi: həd θri: lɒŋ steɪz in

that country, but it was during his first stay there that
ðæt kʌntri, bət ɪt wəz dʒuəriŋ hɪz fə:st steɪ ðeə ðæt

he did wonders. I'm thinking especially of the fighting
hi: dɪd wʌndəz. aɪm θɪŋkɪŋ ɪs'peʃəli əv ðə faɪtɪŋ

at Arcot, which I should like to tell you a little about.
ət ɑ:'kɒt, hʁwɪʃ aɪ ʃəd laɪk tə tel ju: ə lɪtl ə'baut.

But first of all you must hear something about the
bət fə:st əv ɔ:l ju: mʌst hɪə sʌmpɪŋ ə'baut ðə

political development in India which led up to those
pə'lɪtɪkəl dɪ'veləpmənt in indjə hʁwɪʃ led ʌp tə ðəʊz

fight.

faɪts.

"The French at that time had a large army in India,

"ðə frenʃ ət ðæt taɪm həd ə la:dʒ a:mi in indjə,

and they had gained control of a large part of the
 ən ðei həd geɪnd kən'trəʊl əv ə lɑ:dʒ pɑ:t əv ðə
 country. The brave fighting of the French soldiers
 kəntri. ðə breɪv faɪtɪŋ əv ðə frenʃ səʊldʒəz
 made a great impression upon the natives, who respected
 meɪd ə greɪt ɪm'preʃən ə'pɒn ðə neɪtɪvz, hu: rɪs'pektɪd
 them and supported them by letting their own soldiers
 ðəm ən sə'pɔ:tɪd ðəm baɪ letɪŋ ðeər ɒwn səʊldʒəz
 fight with them. Now it was the plan of the French
 faɪt wɪð ðəm. naʊ ɪt wəz ðə plæn əv ðə frenʃ
 to use the great power they had gained to drive the
 tə ju:z ðə greɪt paʊə ðei həd geɪnd tə draɪv ði
 English out of India.
 ɪŋglɪʃ aʊt əv ɪndjə.

"The English had tried to stop the rapid expansion of
 "ði ɪŋglɪʃ həd traɪd tə stɒp ðə ræpɪd ɪks'pænsən əv
 French power, but without success. No doubt, one of
 frenʃ paʊə. bʌt wɪð'aʊt sək'ses. nəʊ daʊt, wʌn əv
 the reasons for this was that they only had a few
 ðə ri:znz fə ðɪs wəz ðæt ðei ɒnli həd ə fju:
 thousand soldiers in India. The greater part of them
 haʊzənd səʊldʒəz ɪn ɪndjə. ðə greɪtə pɑ:t əv ðəm
 were at Madras, their most important city. Was the
 wə:ɹ ət mə'dræs, ðeə mʌst ɪm'pɔ:tənt sɪti. wəz ði
 expansion of French power to continue, or could
 ɪks'pænsən əv frenʃ paʊə tə kən'tɪnju: ɔ: kəd
 anything be done to stop it? Clive, who at that time
 enɪθɪŋ bi: dʌn tə stɒp ɪt? klaɪv, hu: ət ðæt taɪm

Hedrives, hedrove,
he has driven
 [draɪvz, drouv,
 drɪvz].

expansion =
spreading out

retake = take
back again

He **retakes**, he
retook, he has
retaken ['ri:'teiks,
'ri:'tuk,
'ri:'teikn].

march = walk like
a soldier

troops = soldiers

held a position equal to that of a captain in the army,
held ə pə'zifən i:kwəl tə ðæt əv ə kæptɪn ɪn ði ɑ:mɪ,

was of the opinion that the English should try to
wəz əv ði ə'pɪnjən ðæt ði ɪŋglɪʃ ʃəd traɪ tə

conquer Arcot, the capital of one of the native states
kɒŋkə ɑ:'kɒt, ðə kæpɪtəl əv wʌn əv ðə neɪtɪv steɪts

which was supported by the French. Then, he supposed,
hwɪtʃ wəz sə'pɔ:tɪd baɪ ðə frenʃ. ðen, hi: sə'pəʊzd,

some of the soldiers that were on their way to Madras
sʌm əv ðə souldʒəz ðæt wə:r ɒn ðəə wei tə mə'dræs

would be sent to Arcot instead in order to retake it,
wəd bi: sent tu ɑ:'kɒt ɪn'sted ɪn ɔ:də tə 'ri:'teɪk ɪt,

and, consequently, there would not be so many soldiers
ən, kɒnsɪkwəntli, ðəə wəd nɒt bi: sɔ:meni souldʒəz

to fight against the English at Madras. The officers
tə faɪt ə'geɪnst ði ɪŋglɪʃ ət mə'dræs. ði ɔ:fɪsəz

in that city thought his plan a good one and asked
ɪn ðæt sɪti þɔ:t hɪz plæn ə gud wʌn ənd ɑ:skt

him if he himself was willing to perform what he had
hɪm ɪf hi: hɪm'self wəz wɪlɪŋ tə pə'fɔ:m hwɒt hi: həd

proposed that they should do.

pɹə'pəʊzd ðæt ðeɪ ʃəd du:.

"Clive at once agreed to this, and in a heavy storm

"klaɪv ət wʌns ə'gri:d tə ðɪs, ənd ɪn ə hevi: stɔ:m

with thunder and lightning he marched off towards

wɪð þʌndə ən laɪtnɪŋ hi: mɑ:tʃt ɔ:f tə'wɔ:dz

Arcot as fast as possible with his troops, which only

ɑ:'kɒt əz fɑ:st əz pɒsəbl wɪð hɪz tru:ps, hwɪtʃ ɒnli

consisted of 200 English soldiers and 300
kən'sistid əv tu: hʌndrəd ɪŋɡlɪʃ souldʒəz ən ʒri: hʌndrəd

native soldiers, the so-called Sepoys, commanded by
neitiv souldʒəz, ðə soukɔ:ld si:poiz, kə'ma:ndid baɪ

eight officers, only two of whom had been in battle
eɪt əfisəz, ounli tu: əv hu:m həd bi:n ɪn bætl

before.

bɪ'fɔ:.

"The soldiers of the town of Arcot weren't very brave

"ðə souldʒəz əv ðə taun əv a:'kɔt wə:nt veri breɪv

and at once gave up the place without a fight. This

ænd æt wʌns geɪv ʌp ðə pleɪs wið'aʊt ə faɪt. ðɪs

was easier than Clive had expected, but if he couldn't

wəz i:zɪə ðən klaɪv həd ɪks'pektɪd, bət ɪf hi: kʊdn't

hold the city against the enemy, nothing would have

hould ðə sɪti ə'geɪnst ði enɪmi, nəθɪŋ wəd hæv

been gained. He knew that they would soon try to

bi:n geɪnd. hi: nəʊ: ðæt ðeɪ wəd su:n traɪ tə

retake the town, and that he would be forced to fight

'ri:'teɪk ðə taun, ən ðæt hi: wəd bi: fɔ:st tə faɪt

with only the few troops he had, because some soldiers

wɪð ounli ðə fju: tru:ps hi: həd, bɪ'kɔz səm souldʒəz

that had been sent to help him had not been able to

ðæt həd bi:n sent tə help hɪm həd nɒt bi:n eɪbl tə

reach Arcot on account of the enemy. So he prepared

ri:tʃ a:'kɔt ɔn ə'kaʊnt əv ði enɪmi. sɔʊ hi: pri'peəd

everything to hold the town, took care of the distri-

evrɪθɪŋ tə hould ðə taun, tuk keə əv ðə distri-

was forced to =
 had to

distribution =
dividing among
people

bution of food, etc.

'bju:fən əv fu:d, it'setrə.

"The strength of the enemy army that came to retake

"ðə streŋθ əv ði enimi a:mi ðæt keim tə 'ri:'teik

the town was much greater than that of Clive's, as

ðə taun wəz mʌtʃ greɪtə ðən ðæt əv klaɪvz, əs

the natives at first had more than 6000 soldiers,

ðə neɪtɪvz ət fɜ:st həd mɔ: ðən sɪks ʔaʊzənd souldʒəz,

and in addition, 4000 of the troops that had been

ænd ɪn ə'dɪʃən, fɔ: ʔaʊzənd əv ðə tru:ps ðæt həd bi:n

fighting near Madras were sent to support them. So

fɑɪtɪŋ nɪə mə'dræs wə: sent tə sə'pɔ:t ðəm. sɔʊ

it seemed quite impossible that Clive should be able

ɪt si:md kweɪt ɪm'pɔsəbl ðæt klaɪv ʃəd bi: eɪbl

to break the strength of this army.

tə breɪk ðə streŋθ əv ðɪs a:mi.

"The fighting lasted for fifty days. The native troops

"ðə fɑɪtɪŋ lɑ:stɪd fə fɪfti deɪz. ðə neɪtɪv tru:ps

surrounded the town, and there was fighting every day.

sə'raʊndɪd ðə taun, ən ðeə wəz fɑɪtɪŋ evri deɪ.

Towards the end of that time, conditions had become

tə'wɔ:dz ði end əv ðæt taɪm, kən'dɪʃənz həd bi'kʌm

very bad for Clive and his men. Many of his soldiers

veri bæd fɔ klaɪv ən hɪz men. meni əv hɪz souldʒəz

had been killed, big holes had been shot in the walls

həd bi:n kɪld, bɪg həʊlz həd bi:n ʃɒt ɪn ðə wɔ:lz

of the town, and in addition to this there was but little

əv ðə taun, ænd ɪn ə'dɪʃən tə ðɪs ðeə wəz bʌt lɪtl

in addition =
besides

food. However, Clive took care that the distribution
fʊ:d. hau'evə, klaiʊ tuk kɛə ðət ðə distri'bju:fən

of it was just and did his best to help where help was
əv it wəz dʒʌst ən did hi:z best tə help hʌvə help wəz
 needed.

ni:did.

“The troops outside thought that he would have to give
“ðə tru:ps aʊt'said þɔ:t ðət hi: wəd hæv tə giv

up the town and told him as much, but he said angrily
ʌp ðə taʊn ən təʊld him əs mʌtʃ, bət hi: sed æŋgrili

that they would soon know how British soldiers could
ðət ðei wəd su:n nəʊ hau britɪʃ souldʒəz kəd

fight. The natives then decided to take the town, cost
faɪt. ðə neɪtɪvz ðen dɪ'saɪdɪd tə teɪk ðə taʊn, kɔst

what it might, and a hard battle began. Clive, who
hʌvət ɪt maɪt, ənd ə hɑ:d bætl bɪ'gæn. klaiʊ, hu:

had not had any rest for several days, had thrown
həd nɒt həd eni rest fə sevrəl deɪz, həd þrəʊn

himself upon his bed; but when he heard that the
him'self ə'pɒn hi:z bed; bət hwen hi: hə:d ðət ðə

battle which was to decide everything had begun, he
bætl hwi:tʃ wəz tə dɪ'saɪd evriθɪŋ həd bɪ'gæn, hi:

rose from his bed at once, and led the fighting himself.
rəʊz frəm hi:z bed ət wʌns, ən led ðə faɪtɪŋ him'self.

The enemy went forth to battle with a number of
ði enɪmi wɛnt fɔ:θ tə bætl wɪð ə nʌmbər əv

elephants in front of them, but as soon as the troops
elɪfənts ɪn frʌnt əv ðəm, bət əs su:n əs ðə tru:ps

might = strength

in the town began using their guns, the elephants
in ðə taun bi'gæn ju:ziŋ ðə ɡʌnz, ði elɪfənts

got quite wild and rushed back, killing many of the
ɡɒt kwait wáild ən rʌʃt bæk, kiliŋ meni əv ðə

natives. Without the elephants the enemy now tried
neitivz. wið'aut ði elɪfənts ði enimi nau traɪd

with all their might again and again to take the town,
wið ɔ:l ðə mait ə'geɪn ænd ə'geɪn tə teɪk ðə taun,

but they were driven back every time. The strength
bət ðei wə: dri:vən bæk evri taɪm. ðə streŋθ

of the little army in the town, fighting like lions and
əv ðə litl a:mi in ðə taun, faɪtiŋ laɪk laɪənz ən

bravely commanded by Clive, was too great. At
breɪvli kə'ma:ndɪd baɪ klaɪv, wəz tu: greɪt. ət

last the enemy was forced to give up the fight, and
la:st ði enimi wəz fɔ:st tə gɪv ʌp ðə faɪt, ən

the rest of the troops marched away from the town.
ðə rest əv ðə tru:ps mɑ:tʃt ə'weɪ frəm ðə taun.

Clive and his troops had won the battle.

klaɪv ən hɪz tru:ps həd wʌn ðə bætl.

“From this day forth the French lost their power.

“frəm ðɪs ðei fɔ:θ ðə frenʃ lɒst ðə paʊə.

Many of the natives would not help them any longer
meni əv ðə neitivz wəd nɒt help ðəm eni lɔŋɡə

when they found out how great the military strength
hæven ðei faʊnd aʊt haʊ greɪt ðə militəri streŋθ

of the English was. Clive fought with all his might

əv ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ wəz. klaɪv fɔ:t wið ɔ:l hɪz mait

against the French and the natives that still supported
a'geinst ðə frenʃ ən ðə neitivz ðæt stil sə'pɔ:tɪd

them, and before long the day came when the power
ðəm, ən bi'fɔ: lɔŋ ðə dei keɪm hwen ðə paʊər

of the English in India was as great as and even
əv ði ɪŋɡlɪʃ ɪn ɪndjə wəz əs greɪt əz ənd i:vən

greater than that of the French.”
greɪtə ðən ðæt əv ðə frenʃ.”

“Thank you very much, Marshall,” said Storm. “How-
ˈθæŋk ju: veri mʌʃ, mɑ:fəl,” sed stɔ:m. “hau-

ever, there's one more thing I should like to ask you
'evə. ðəs wʌn mɔ: þɪŋ aɪ ʃəd laɪk tu ɑ:sk ju:

about,” he continued. “Certainly, old man,” Marshall
ə'baʊt,” hi: kən'tɪnju:d. “sə:tnli, ould mæn,” mɑ:fəl

replied. “I should like you to tell me something about
rɪ'plaɪd. “aɪ ʃəd laɪk ju: tə tel mi: smʌpiŋ ə'baʊt

Ceylon,” said Storm. “I know that it's a very large
sɪ'lɒn,” sed stɔ:m. “aɪ nou ðæt ɪts ə veri la:dʒ

island near the south coast of India from which we get
ailənd niə ðə saʊθ koust əv ɪndjə frəm hwɪtʃ wi: get

very good tea. But tell me, Marshall,” he said, “is
veri gud ti:. bʌt tel mi:, mɑ:fəl,” hi: sed, “ɪz

Ceylon part of the new Dominion of India?” “No,
sɪ'lɒn pɑ:t əv ðə nju: də'mɪnjən əv ɪndjə?” “nou,

answered Marshall. “Ceylon is not part of the Dominion
ɑ:nsəd mɑ:fəl. “sɪ'lɒn ɪz nɒt pɑ:t əv ðə də'mɪnjən

of India. It has become a separate Dominion with self-
əv ɪndjə. ɪt hæz bɪ'kæm ə seprɪt də'mɪnjən wɪð 'self-

government, in the same way as India and Pakistan,"
'gʌvənmənt, in ðə seim wei əz indjə ən pɑ:kɪ'stɑ:n,"

he continued.

hi: kən'tɪnju:d.

"Thank you, Marshall," said Storm. "I hope we can
"pæŋk ju: mə:fəl," sed stɔ:m. "aɪ hoʊp wi: kən

continue our discussion of the British Empire some
kən'tɪnju: əwə dɪs'kʌʃən əv ðə brɪtɪʃ ɪm'paɪə səm

other evening."

ʌðə i:vniŋ."

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:

forth

command

moment

definite

debt

Dominion

colonial

manner

regarding

incorrect

native

wild

savage

force

force (verb)

troops

military

strength

power

The colonies of the British Empire are not all — in the same manner. The political rights of the Dominions are the fruits of a — which has been going on for many years. By the year 1900 half of the Dominions had — their present rights. Storm supposed that if England had used — against her present Dominions instead of being — with them, they would have been lost now.

The colonies proper are parts of the British Empire with only a few English soldiers and — living among the —. The highest authority of a colony proper is the —. Storm asked if it would not be more — to let the colonies proper have governments of their own. When the English first came to the colonies, the natives in many places were nothing but — or — tribes.

Marshall thought that on the whole England had tried to be just and — towards her colonies. Storm had no

— idea of the government of India. The English — Gandhi several times by sending him to —. Storm thought that — cannot change the political opinions of men like Gandhi. As a boy, Clive was very interested in — life.

It was the plan of the French to use the great — they had gained to — the English out of India. The English had tried to stop the rapid — of French power. At Arcot Clive took good care of the just — of food. The — of the enemy army was much greater than that of Clive's. The enemy tried with all their — to take Arcot, but at last they were — to give up the battle.

EXERCISE B.

Write 200—300 words about a film you have seen. In what cinema did you see it? In what country had it been produced? Who played in it? What was it about? Was it a good or a bad film? Tell us about all this in your own words as well as you can.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

The forms of most English verbs are made in the same way as those of 'to call'. We call these verbs regular [*regjula*] verbs. From what you have learned about them so far, you will have seen that if you know the infinitive, you will be able to make all the other forms. But in the case of some other verbs this is not so.

might
drive
drove
driven
march
gain
retake
retook
retaken
addition
development
expansion
justice
official
punishment
just
punish
prison
gentle
bedtime
distribution
fair
govern
Indian
Governor
Sepoy
century
intention
rule
Pakistan
Ceylon

Example: write, wrote, written (he writes, he wrote, he has written). Of such verbs you must know the infinitive, the past tense, and the second participle, in order to be able to make the different forms and tenses of the verb. We call these verbs irregular [*i'regjlə*] verbs. Other examples are: eat, ate, eaten; give, gave, given; swim, swam, swum.

The verbs 'shall', 'will', 'can', 'may' are also irregular verbs; they only exist in the present tense and in the past tense: shall — should; will — would; can — could; may — might.

'Must' and 'ought' are the same in the present tense and in the past tense. Examples: You **must** go now. When he came home, I told him that he **must** go again. You always **ought** to help your friends. When you visited your uncle, you **ought** to have told him the truth.

Questions:

Mention one or two of the regular verbs that you have learned. . . . Mention one or two of the irregular verbs that you have learned. . . . What are the past tense forms of 'shall', 'will', 'can', 'may'? . . . What are the past tense forms of 'must' and 'ought'? . . .

THE CAT IS LET OUT OF THE BAG

“Look here, Storm,” Mr. Edwards said one afternoon,
“luk hiə, stɔ:m, mistər edwədʒ sed wʌn ɑ:ftə'nu:n,

as they were sitting in Mr. Edwards' study up to
əz ðei wə: sitiŋ in mistər edwədʒiz stʌdi ʌp tə

their eyes in letters, bills, and all sorts of papers.
ðeər aiz in letəz, bilz, ənd ɔ:l sɔ:ts əv peipəz.

“We shall have to find out why the goods that come
“wi: ʃəl hæv tə faɪnd aʊt hwaɪ ðə guːdz ðət kʌm

to us via Portsmouth have been so late in reaching
tu ʌs viə pɔ:tsməp hæv bi:n sou leit in ri:tʃiŋ

us the last few times; we can't have all these delays.
ʌs ðə la:st fju: taɪmz; wi: kɑ:nt hæv ɔ:l ði:z di'leɪz.

Twice there has been a delay of five days. Please go
tuwaɪs ðeə həz bi:n ə di'lei əv faɪv deɪz. pli:z ɡoʊ

to the telephone in the hall and ring up Marshall.
tə ðə telɪfəʊn in ðə hɔ:l ən rɪŋ ʌp mɑ:ʃəl.

Ask him to send a wire to Portsmouth. I demand
ɑ:sk hɪm tə send ə waɪə tə pɔ:tsməp. aɪ di'mɑ:nd

wire = telegram

to know the reason for those delays at once. Tell
tə nəʊ ðə ri:zn fə ðəʊz di'leɪz ət wʌnz. tel

Marshall that we want a reply by wire to-day, so that
mɑ:ʃəl ðət wi: wɒnt ə ri'plai baɪ waɪə tə'deɪ, sou ðət

he may be able to send the necessary cables to the
hi: meɪ bi: eɪbl tə send ðə nesɪsəri keɪblz tə ðə

cable = telegram
across water

Continent, if they don't know anything about it at
kɔntinənt, if ðei daʊnt nou enɪpɪŋ ə'baʊt ɪt ət

Portsmouth. I want to get to the bottom of this
pɔ:tsməp. aɪ wɒnt tə get tə ðə bɒtəm əv ðɪs

question now, and it takes too long to send letters.
kwestʃən naʊ, ənd ɪt teɪks tu: lɒŋ tə send letəz.

So, as I said, I want Marshall to send a wire to
sou, əz aɪ sed, aɪ wɒnt mɑ:fəl tə send ə waɪə tə

Portsmouth, and, if necessary, to cable to the Con-
pɔ:tsməp, ənd, ɪf nesɪsəri, tə keɪbl tə ðə kɔn-

tinent.”

tinənt.”

When Storm had rung up Marshall and given him the
hwen stɔ:m həd rʌŋ ʌp mɑ:fəl ənd gɪvən hɪm ðə

message from the manager, Marshall replied, “I know
mesɪdʒ frəm ðə mænɪdʒə, mɑ:fəl rɪ'plaɪd, “aɪ nou

a fellow at the customs office in Portsmouth. I think
ə feləʊ ət ðə kʌstəmz ɔfɪs ɪn pɔ:tsməp. aɪ θɪŋk

I'll send a personal wire to him and ask him to help
aɪl send ə pə:snl waɪə tə hɪm ənd ɑ:sk hɪm tə help

error = something
wrong

us to find the error. For it seems clear to me that
ʌs.tə faɪnd ðɪ erə. fər ɪt si:mz kliə tə mi: ðæt

it must be somebody down there who is making an
ɪt mʌst bi: səmbədi daʊn ðeə hu: ɪz meɪkɪŋ ən

error of some kind or other.”

erə əv sʌm kaɪnd ɔ:r ʌðə.”

“Yes, do that,” Storm said. “And then ring me up as
“jes, du: ðæt,” stɔ:m sed. “ən ðen rɪŋ mi: ʌp əz

soon as you have learned something about it." As he
su:n əz ju: həv lə:nd sʌmʃɪŋ ə'baʊt ɪt. əz hi:

learn something
 (here) = get
 information

returned from the telephone in the hall, he met Marion
rɪ'tə:nd frəm ðə telɪfəʊn ɪn ðə hɔ:l, hi: met mæriən

just leaving her father's room. "Hallo!" he greeted
dʒʌst li:vɪŋ hə: fɑ:ðəz ru:m. "hə'ləʊ!" hi: grɪ:tɪd

her with a smile. "You certainly have courage to go
hə: wɪð ə smaɪl. "ju: sə:tnli həv kʌrɪdʒ tə ɡəʊ

in to your father when he's so busy. It must have
ɪn tə ʃɔ: fɑ:ðə hwen hi:z sɔʊ bɪzi. ɪt mʌst həv

been something pretty important you had to tell him."
bɪ:n sʌmʃɪŋ prɪti ɪm'pɔ:tənt ju: həd tə tel hɪm."

pretty (here) =
 rather

She didn't answer him, but hurried away.
ʃi: dɪdnt ɑ:nsə hɪm, bət hʌrɪd ə'wei.

He shook his head a little in surprise at her behaviour,
hi: ʃʊk hɪz hed ə lɪtl ɪn sə'praɪz ət hə: bɪ'heɪvjə,

He **shakes**, he
shook, he has
shaken [*ʃeɪks, ʃʊk,*
ʃeɪkn].

but entered the room without trying to stop her. Here
bət ɛntəd ðə ru:m wɪð'aʊt traɪɪŋ tə stɒp hə:. hɪə

he found Mr. Edwards standing at the window in
hi: faʊnd mɪstər edwədz stændɪŋ ət ðə wɪndəʊ ɪn

deep thought, not looking busy at all. When he heard
dɪ:p þɔ:t, nɒt lʊkɪŋ bɪzi ət ɔ:l. hwen hi: hə:d

Storm, he turned round with a little smile and said,
stɔ:m, hi: tə:nd raʊnd wɪð ə lɪtl smaɪl ənd sed,

"Well, my boy, Marion has just told me about you two.
"wel, maɪ bɔɪ, mæriən həz dʒʌst təʊld mi: ə'baʊt ju: tu:.

And although young women no longer have to ask their
ənd ɔ:l'dəʊ ʒʌŋ wɪmɪn nəʊ lɒŋɡə həv tu ɑ:sk ðeə

father's permission to marry, I'm happy to be able to
fa:ðəz pə'mɪʃən tə məri, aɪm hæpi tə bi: eɪbl tə
 say that I should gladly have given Marion my per-
sei ðət aɪ ʃəd glædli həv gɪvn məriən mai pə-
 mission to marry you, had she asked me. This is a
'mɪʃən tə məri ju:, həd ʃi: ɑ:skt mi:. ðɪs ɪz ə
 surprise to me. — I wonder what my wife is going to
sə'praɪz tə mi:. — aɪ wʌndə hwɒt mai waɪf ɪz ɡoʊɪŋ tə
 say about it! Where have we had our eyes? But, of
sei ə'baut ɪt! hwɛə həv wi: həd aʊər aɪz? bət, əv
 course, modern girls aren't kept under observation in
kɔ:s, mɒdən ɡɜ:lz ɑ:nt kept ʌndər ɔbzə'veɪʃən ɪn
 the same way as their mothers were when I was young.
ðə seɪm weɪ əz ðeə mʌðəz wə: hwen aɪ wəz jʌŋ.

why! = oh!

Why! You must have been seeing each other quite
hwai! ju: məst həv bi:n si:ɪŋ i:tʃ ʌðə kwait
 a lot to find time for coming to such an important
ə lɒt tə faɪnd taɪm fə kʌmɪŋ tə sʌtʃ ən ɪm'pɔ:tənt
 decision!"
dɪ'sɪʒən!"

"Not nearly enough, Mr. Edwards," Storm replied.
"nɒt niəli i'nʌf, mɪstər edwədz," stɔ:m rɪ'plaɪd.

"You see, there were always so many people about to
"ju: si:, ðeə wə:r ɔ:lweɪz sɒu meni pi:pl ə'baut tə
 prevent me from telling her all the things I had to
pri'vent mi: frəm telɪŋ hə:r ɔ:l ðə þɪŋz aɪ həd tə
 say — and when it did look as if I was going to have
sei — ən hwen ɪt dɪd lʊk əz ɪf aɪ wəz ɡoʊɪŋ tə həv

a chance, she always seemed to be able to find some-
a tʃa:ns, ʃi: ɔ:lwəz si:md tə bi: eibl tə faɪnd sʌm-

thing to prevent me from talking about it just then!
ʃɪŋ tə prɪ'vent mi: frəm tɔ:kɪŋ ə'baut ɪt dʒʌst ðen!

But I can play at that game, too," Storm continued
bət aɪ kən pleɪ ət ðæt geɪm, tu:," stɔ:m kən'tɪnju:d

with a little laugh, thinking of their trip to Leith Hill.
wɪð ə lɪtl la:f, ʃɪŋkɪŋ əv ðeə trɪp tə li:θ hɪl.

"I caught her in a place the other day where she
"aɪ kɔ:t hæ:r ɪn ə pleɪs ðɪ ʌðə dei hweə ʃi:

couldn't get away, and for once there were no unwanted
kudnt get ə'wei, ən fə wʌns ðeə wə: nou 'ʌn'wʊntɪd

unwanted = not
 wanted

persons about. So I just kept her there till she ac-
pə:snz ə'baut. sɔu aɪ dʒʌst kept hæ: ðeə tɪl ʃi: ək-

cepted me."
'septɪd mi:."

"Hem, well," Mr. Edwards replied, "I've made the
"hm, wel," mɪstər edwədz rɪ'plaɪd, "aɪv meɪd ðɪ

observation several times myself that one must use a
əbzə'veɪʃən sevrəl taɪmz maɪ'self ðæt wʌn mʌst ju:z ə

strong hand with women now and then. It was the
strɒŋ hænd wɪð wɪmɪn naʊ ən ðen. ɪt wəz ðə

same with her mother when we ..."
seɪm wɪð hæ: mʌðə hwen wi: ..." hi: sʌdnli

interrupted himself here and continued in another voice,
ɪntə'rʌptɪd hɪm'self hɪə ʌnd kən'tɪnju:d ɪn ə'nʌðə vɔɪs,

"Well, shall we go to the sitting-room and break the
"wel, ʃəl wi: ɡəʊ tə ðə sɪtɪŋrʊm ən breɪk ðə

break the news =
tell the news

news to my wife?"
nju:s tə mai waif?"

They found Mrs. Edwards in the garden with Marion.
ðei faund misiz edwədz in ðə ga:dn wið məriən.

"Now, what do you think of that?" Mr. Edwards
"nau, hwət du: ju: þiŋk əv ðæt?" mistər edwədz

grant = give

asked. "Do you think we can grant these two children
a:skt. "du: ju: þiŋk wi: kən gra:nt ði:s tu: tʃildrən

our permission to marry?" "I think it's wonderful, and
auə pə'misən tə məri?" "ai þiŋk its wʌndəfʊl, ən

that he's a very nice boy for our Marion. May God
ðæt hi:s ə veri nais bɔi fər auə məriən. mei gɒd

bless you, children! I hope you'll be very happy."
bles ju:, tʃildrən! ai həʊp ju:l bi: veri hæpi."

"Thank you, mother — we shall," Marion answered,
"þæŋk ju:, mʌðə — wi: ʃəl," məriən a:nsəd,

with a little smile at Storm's red face.
wið ə litl smaɪl ət stɔ:mz red feɪs.

"But you don't look very surprised," Mr. Edwards
"bət ju: daʊnt lʊk veri sə'praɪzd," mistər edwədz

said to his wife. "Oh no, I've been expecting this for
sed tə his waif. "ou nou, aɪv bi:n iks'pektɪŋ ðɪs fə

some time. Haven't you?" He replied by shaking his
sʌm taɪm. hævnt ju:?" hi: ri'plaɪd baɪ ʃeɪkɪŋ his

head. "Why, with your wonderful brain, I thought
hed. "hwaɪ, wið jɔ: wʌndəfʊl breɪn, ai þɔ:t

you had found out long ago!" "I may have got a good
ju: həd faʊnd aʊt lɔŋ ə'gəʊ!" "ai mei həv gɒt ə gʊd



brain, as you say, and be able to use it in my work.
brein, əz ju: sei, ən bi: eibl tə ju:z it in mai wə:k.

But I'll never be so wise about life as you are, my
bət ail nevə bi: sou waiz ə'baut laif əz ju: a:, mai

dear," Mr. Edwards answered. "Your mother is a
diə," mistər edwədz a:nsəd. "jɔ: mʌðər iz ə

very wise woman, Marion," he continued; "you can't
veri waiz wumən, mæriən," hi: kən'tinju:d; "ju: kɑ:nt

teach her very much about life."
ti:tʃ hə: veri mʌtʃ ə'baut laif."

"Yes, I do hope Marion will grow up to be like you,"
"jes, ai du: həʊp mæriən wil grou ʌp tə bi: laik ju:,"

Storm said seriously, but with laughing eyes. "Grow
stɔ:m sed siəriəsli, bət wið la:fiŋ aiz. "grou

up!" Marion cried. "Now, children, please!" laughed
ʌp!" mæriən kraid. "nau, tʃildrən, pli:z!" la:ft

Mrs. Edwards. "Life may be pretty rough, you
misiz edwədz. "laif mei bi: priti rʌf, ju:

rough = not
smooth

know, so don't make it rougher still by fighting already.
nou, sou dount meik it rʌfə stil bai faitiŋ ɔ:l'redi.

And we have so many things to talk about now, too.
ən wi: hæv sou meni piŋz tə tɔ:k ə'baut nau, tu:.

Let's go inside."
lets gou in'said."

"Yes, tell us about your plans," Mr. Edwards said.
"jes, tel ʌs ə'baut jɔ: plænz," mistər edwədz sed.

"I'm afraid our plans for the future haven't taken any
"aim ə'freid əʊə plænz fə ðə fju:tʃə hævnt teikn eni

shape = form

definite shape yet," Storm answered. "We want to
definit *jeip jet,*" *stɔ:m a:nsəd.* "wi: wɔnt tə

marry as soon as possible, of course, but it looks to
mæri əz su:n əz pɔsəbl, əv kɔ:s, bət it luks tə

me as if that's a long way off. As far as I can see,
mi: əz ɪf ðəts ə lɔŋ wei ɔ:f. əz fa:r əz ai kən si:,

we must place all our hope of marrying soon in what
wi: mɔst pleɪs ɔ:l əʊə haʊp əv mæriŋ su:n ɪn hwɔt

I'm able to do with my brain." "So you can under-
aim eɪbl tə du: wið mai breɪn." "sou ju: kən ʌndə-

stand what a very small hope it is, father," Marion
'stænd hwɔt ə veri smɔ:l haʊp ɪt ɪz, fa:ðə," *mæriən*

interrupted, laughing.

ɪntə'rʌptɪd, la:fɪŋ.

pay attention =
give attention

Storm paid no attention to her words, but it was with
stɔ:m peɪd nou ə'tenʃən tə hɜ: wɜ:dz, bət ɪt wəz wið

rather red ears he continued: "What I mean is, I
ra:ðə red iəz hi: kən'tɪnju:d: "hwɔt ai mi:n ɪz, ai

haven't been blessed with any rich old aunts who will
hævnt bi:n blest wið enɪ rɪʃ ould a:nts hu: wɪl

leave me all their money when they die, so what we'll
li:v mi: ɔ:l ðeə mʌni hwen ðei dai, sou hwɔt wi:l

need, I shall have to earn by my own work. However,
ni:d, ai ʃəl hæv tu ə:n baɪ maɪ oun wɜ:k. haʊ'evə,

I think that the experience I have been able to gain
ai ɪŋk ðət ði ɪks'piəriəns ai hæv bi:n eɪbl tə geɪn

over here will help me when I return home."

əʊvə hɪə wɪl help mi: hwen ai ri'tə:n haʊm."

"Return home!" Mrs. Edwards cried. "But that's
"ri'tə:n haum!" misiz edwədʒ kraid. "bət ðəts

entirely out of the question. Isn't it?" she asked and
in'taiəli aut əv ðə kwestʃən. iznt it?" fi: ə:skt ənd

turned to her husband. "I'm afraid it's impossible for
tə:nd tə hə: hʌzbənd. "aim ə'freid its im'pɔsəbl fɔ:

me to stay much longer," Storm said. "It makes me
mi: tə stei mʌtʃ lɔŋgə," stɔ:m sed. "it meiks mi:

very sad, too, to think of leaving England. But now
veri sæd, tu:, tə þɪŋk əv li:viŋ ɪŋglənd. bət nau

I shall have to 'get rich quick', as they say in America,
ai ʃəl hæv tə 'get rɪtʃ kwɪk', əz ðei sei in ə'merɪkə,

and my chance of getting better paid work will be
ən mai tʃɑ:ns əv getɪŋ betə peɪd wə:k wɪl bi:

greater at home. And an entirely different thing is
greɪtər ət haʊm. ənd ən in'taiəli dɪfrənt þɪŋ ɪz

that my passport says that I can only stay three months
ðət maɪ pɑ:spɔ:t seɪz ðət ai kən ounli steɪ θri: mʌnθs

longer in England." "Only three months?" Mrs. Ed-
lɔŋgər in ɪŋglənd." "ounli θri: mʌnθs?" misiz ed-

wards asked sadly. "Oh, isn't there anything you can
wədʒ ə:skt sædli. "əʊ, iznt ðər enɪθɪŋ ju: kən

do about it? Don't you know anybody in the police
du: ə'baut it? daʊnt ju: nəʊ enɪbɔdi in ðə pə'li:s

department that deals with unwanted foreigners?"
dɪ'pɑ:tmənt ðət di:lz wɪð 'ʌn'wʌntɪd fɔrɪnəz?"

Mr. Edwards replied, with a little smile at the ex-
mɪstər edwədʒ rɪ'plaɪd, wɪð ə lɪtl smaɪl ət ði ɪks-

entirely = quite

sad = sorry

He **deals**, he **dealt**,
 he has **dealt** [di:lz,
 delt, delt].

Chapter Fifty-Eight (58).

as a matter of fact
= really

the chief of a
department = the
man who is at the
head of the
department

hopeful = full
of hope

pression his wife used, "As a matter of fact, I do know
'presən his waif ju:zd, "əz ə mətər əv fækt, ai du: nou

a man there. Jenkins, the chief of that department,
ə mæn deə. dʒenkinz, ðə tʃi:f əv ðæt di'pɑ:tmənt,

is a personal friend of mine. But I can't very well go
iz ə pə:snl frend əv main. bət ai kɑ:nt veri wel gou

up there and demand that they should make an ex-
əp deə ən di'ma:nd ðæt ðei şəd meik ən ik-

ception to the rules as a personal favour to me, just
'sepʃən tə ðə ru:lz əz ə pə:snl feivə tə mi:, dʒʌst

because we would like a certain young man to stay.
bi'kɔ: wi: wəd laik ə sə:tn jʌŋ mæn tə stei.

But there's nothing to prevent me," he continued a
bət ðəz nəʃiŋ tə pri'vent mi:," hi: kən'tinju:d ə

little more hopefully, "from sending a personal mes-
litl mɔ: həupfʊli, "frəm sendiŋ ə pə:snl mes-

sage to Jenkins, recommending Storm's case to his
idʒ tə dʒenkinz. rekə'mendiŋ stɔ:mz keis tə hiz

kind attention.
kaɪnd ə'tenʃən.

"Now, listen!" he went on, turning to Storm. "You go
"naʊ, lɪsn!" hi: went ən, tə:nɪŋ tə stɔ:m. "ju: gou

in and write a letter to the chief of police, saying that
ɪn ən raɪt ə letə tə ðə tʃi:f əv pə'li:s. seɪɪŋ ðæt

you're doing special and very necessary work here,
juə du:ɪŋ spesəl ən veri nesɪsəri wə:k hiə,

which can't be finished within the three months that
hwi:f kɑ:nt bi: finɪʃt wið'in ðə pri: mʌnθs ðæt

you're allowed to stay, and asking for an extra year's
juər ə'laʊd tə steɪ, ənd əːskiŋ fər ən ɛkstrə jɪəz

stay.

steɪ.

"There's more than sufficient work for you in our firm,

"ðəz mɔː ðən sə'fɪsənt wəːk fə juː ɪn ɑːə fəːm.

so I'll see that you get chances enough to prove whether

sou aɪl siː ðæt juː get tʃaːnsɪz ɪ'nʌf tə pruːv hwedə

you can take on more responsibility. If they grant

juː kən teɪk ɔn mɔː rɪspɒnsə'bɪlɪtɪ. ɪf ðeɪ grɑːnt

you that extra year, and you make good in your work,

juː ðæt ɛkstrə jɪə, ən juː meɪk gud ɪn jɔː wəːk,

make good =
have success

you will get a rise, so that you can marry within the

juː wɪl get ə raɪz, sou ðæt juː kən mæri wɪðɪn ðə

coming year. And then next time you ask for per-

kʌmɪŋ jɪə. ən ðen neks taim juː ɑːsk fə pə-

mission to extend your stay in England, you'll have

'mɪʃən tu ɪks'tend jɔː steɪ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd, juːl hæv

the very good reason to give that you're married to

ðə veri gud riːzn tə gɪv ðæt juə mærid tu

an Englishwoman. So run along now and get that letter

ən ɪŋɡlɪʃwʊmən. sou rʌn ə'lɔŋ naʊ ən get ðæt leɪtə

done, while I write to Jenkins!"

dʌn, hwʌɪl aɪ raɪt tə dʒɛŋkɪnz!"

"Isn't it wonderful, the way father can always find

"ɪznt ɪt wʌndəfʊl, ðə wei fɑːðə kən ɔːlwəz faɪnd

a way out of difficulties?" Marion said to her mother.

ə wei aʊt əv dɪfɪkəltɪz?" mæriən sed tə hɜː mʌðə.

"Yes, dear — there's certainly nothing wrong with his
"jes, diə — ðəz sə:tnli nʌʃɪŋ rɔŋ wið hi:z
 brain," Mrs. Edwards answered proudly.
breɪn," mɪsɪz edwədz a:nsəd praʊdli.

An hour later, when the two letters had been sent off,
ən auə leɪtə, hwen ðə tu: letəz həd bi:n sent ɔ:f,

Marshall arrived. "I thought it best to come out and
mɑ:fəl ə'raɪvd. "aɪ þɔ:t ɪt best tə kʌm aʊt ənd
 explain the matter personally," he said. "What matter?"
ɪks'pleɪn ðə mətə pə:snəli," hi: sed. "hwaɪt mətə?"

Mr. Edwards asked. "Why, about the delays at Ports-
mɪstər edwədz a:skt. "hwaɪ, ə'baut ðə dɪ'leɪz ət pɔ:ts-

mouth, sir," Marshall replied in some surprise. "Oh yes,
məʊθ, sɜː," mɑ:fəl rɪ'plaɪd ɪn sʌm sə'praɪz. "ou jes,

that's right. I'd forgotten all about that. You see," he
ðəts raɪt. aɪd fə'ɡɒtn ɔ:l ə'baut ðæt. ju: siː," hi:

explained, noticing Marshall's expression, "we've just
ɪks'pleɪnd, nəʊtɪsɪŋ mɑ:fəlz ɪks'presən, "wi:v dʒʌst

learned that Marion is going to marry your friend
lə:nd ðæt məriən ɪz ɡəʊɪŋ tə məri ʃɔ: frend

Storm, so we've been far away in making plans for
stɔ:m, sɔu wi:v bi:n fa:r ə'weɪ ɪn meɪkɪŋ plænz fə

the future."
ðə fju:tʃə."

"What's that, old man?" Marshall said to Storm. "Didn't
"hwaɪts ðæt, ould mæn?" mɑ:fəl sed tə stɔ:m. "dɪdnt

you tell me the other day to guard that piece of news
ju: tel mi: ði ʌðə deɪ tə ɡɑ:d ðæt pi:s əv nju:z

like the crown jewels?" "I did," Storm answered.
laik ðə kraun dʒu:əlz?" "ai did," stɔ:m a:nsəd.

"But Marion let the cat out of the bag this afternoon."
"bət mæriən let ðə kæt aut əv ðə bæɡ ðis a:ftə'nu:n."

"Aren't you afraid to send your daughter off with a
"a:nt ju: ə'freid tə send jɔ: dɔ:tər ɔ:f wið ə

foreigner?" Marshall asked Mrs. Edwards. "We hope
fɔ:rinə?" ma:ʃəl a:skt misiz edwədz. "wi: həʊp

they'll be able to stay in England," she answered, "so
ðeɪl bi: eɪbl tə steɪ ɪn ɪŋɡlənd," ʃi: a:nsəd, "səʊ

that we can keep an eye on them and guard her against
ðæt wi: kæn ki:p ən ai ɔn ðəm ən ɡɑ:d hə:r ə'geɪnst

all the strange ideas that he will no doubt try to put
ɔ:l ðə streɪndʒ aɪ'diəz ðæt hi: wɪl nəʊ daʊt traɪ tə put

into her head!"

ɪntə hə: hed!"

"Well," said the manager, "what did you find out about
"wel," sed ðə mænɪdʒə, "hwɒt did ju: faɪnd aut ə'baut

Portsmouth?" "It doesn't look as if anybody is making
pɔ:tsməp?" "ɪt dʌznt luk əz ɪf enɪbɔdi ɪz meɪkɪŋ

any errors down there," Marshall replied. "All goods
eni erəs daʊn ðeə," ma:ʃəl ri'plaid. "ɔ:l ɡʊdz

are sent on very soon after reaching the town." "Well,
a: sent ɔn veri su:n a:ftə ri:tʃɪŋ ðə taʊn." "wel,

did you cable to our connections on the Continent then?
did ju: keɪbl tu əʊə kə'nekʃənz ɔn ðə kɒntɪnənt ðen?

You can't have received any cables yet from over there."
ju: kɑ:nt həv ri'si:vɪd eni keɪblz jət frəm ɒvə ðeə."



“No, I didn’t cable. You see, I found out that the last
“nou, ai didnt keibl. ju: si:, ai faund aut ðæt ðə la:st

two or three times the goods have arrived on time.
tu: ə þri: taimz ðə gudz hæv ə'raɪvd ɔn taim.

So I got some of these papers that deal only with
sou ai gɒt sʌm əv ði:z peɪpəz ðæt di:l ounli wið

ships; you know — the sailing plans of all ships, news
ʃɪps; ju: nou — ðə seɪlɪŋ plʌnz əv ɔ:l ʃɪps, nju:z

about the weather, and so on. And it seems that by
ə'baut ðə weðə, ən sou ɔn. ænd it si:mz ðæt baɪ

a strange chance, four of the ships bound for Portsmouth
ə streɪndʒ tʃɑ:ns, fɔ:r əv ðə ʃɪps baund fə pɔ:tsməp

with our goods on board have had several days’ delay
wið aʊə gudz ɔn bɔ:d hæv həd severəl deɪz dɪ'lei

on account of bad weather and a rough sea. The fellow
ɔn ə'kaʊnt əv bəd weðər ænd ə rʌf si:. ðə feləʊ

down there who had dealt with our things was very
daʊn ðeə hu: həd delt wið aʊə þɪŋz wəz veri

helpful; it was he who suggested that I should try those
helpfʊl; ɪt wəz hi: hu: sə'dʒestɪd ðæt aɪ ʃəd traɪ ðəʊz

papers.” “Good!” the manager said. “I think it was
peɪpəz.” “gʊd!” ðə mænɪdʒə sed. “aɪ θɪŋk ɪt wəz

hunt about (here)
 -- look for
 something

wise of you to hunt about a bit before sending cables
waɪz əv ju: tə haʊnt ə'baut ə bɪt bɪ'fɔ: sendɪŋ keɪblz

all over the Continent.”

ɔ:l ɔʊvə ðə kɒntɪnənt.”

Marshall and Storm stayed with the Edwards family
ma:ʃəl ænd stɔ:m steɪd wið ði edwədz fæmɪli

for dinner, and naturally, the conversation turned to
fə dɪnə, ʌnd nætʃrəli, ðə kɒnvə'seɪʃən tə:nd tə

the subject of ships. "I've visited Portsmouth several
ðə sʌbdʒɪkt əv ʃɪps. "aɪv vɪzɪtɪd pɔ:tsməp sevrəl

times," Marshall said, "and I think it would be hard
taɪmz," mɑ:fəl sed, "ʌnd aɪ θɪŋk ɪt wəd bi: hæ:d

to find another harbour with so many types of ships
tə faɪnd ə'nʌðə hæ:bə wɪð sou meni taɪps əv ʃɪps

in one place. The entire harbour is full of all kinds
ɪn wʌn pleɪs. ði ɪn'taɪə hæ:bə ɪz fʊl əv ɔ:l kaɪndz

of ships." "You know," Mr. Edwards explained to
əv ʃɪps." "ju: nou," mɪstə edwədz ɪks'pleɪnd tə

Storm, "Portsmouth is one of the most important bases
stɔ:m, "pɔ:tsməp ɪz wʌn əv ðə mʌst ɪm'pɔ:tənt beɪsɪz

for British warships. In fact, it has been so ever since
fə brɪtɪʃ wɔ:ʃɪps. ɪn fækt, ɪt hæz bi:n sou evə sɪns

Roman times, for the shape of the South Coast makes
roumən taɪmz, fə ðə ʃeɪp əv ðə saʊθ kəʊst meɪks

a fine natural harbour here. Within this natural harbour,
ə faɪn nætʃrəl hæ:bə hɪə. wɪð'ɪn ðɪs nætʃrəl hæ:bə,

two harbours have been built, one for warships and
tu: hæ:bəz hæv bi:n bɪlt, wʌn fə wɔ:ʃɪps ʌn

one for other ships."
wʌn fə ʌðə ʃɪps."

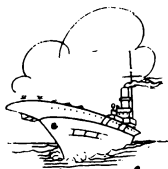
"And outside the harbour," Marshall added, "is the
"ʌnd 'aʊt'saɪd ðə hæ:bə," mɑ:fəl ədɪd, "ɪz ðə

place for all the small boats owned by the people who
pleɪs fə ɔ:l ðə smɔ:l bəʊts ɒnd baɪ ðə pi:pl hu:

entire = whole



battleship ==
warship



aircraft
carrier



aeroplane
or aircraft

one aircraft
two aircraft

accommodate ==
have room for

stay there in the summer. I've been there on a summer
stei ðeər in ðə sʌmə. aɪv bi:n ðeər ɔn ə sʌmə

day, and it really was a wonderful sight: great battle-
dei, and it riəli wəz ə wʌndəfʊl saɪt: greɪt bætl-

ships and small, all painted grey, aircraft carriers with
ʃɪps ən smɔ:l, ɔ:l peɪntɪd greɪ. ɛəkra:ft kəriəz wið

their broad white decks for aeroplanes, or aircraft, to
ðeə brɔ:d hwaɪt deks fər ɛərəpleɪnz, ɔ:r ɛəkra:ft, tə

land on, black steamers, aeroplanes starting from and
lænd ɔn, blæk sti:məz, ɛərəpleɪnz stɑ:tɪŋ frəm ən

landing on the aircraft carriers, and moving in and out
lændɪŋ ɔn ði ɛəkra:ft kəriəz. ən mu:vɪŋ ɪn ənd aʊt

among all these, there were many small boats with
ə'mɒŋ ɔ:l ði:z, ðeə wə: meni smɔ:l bɔʊts wið

their white sails bright in the sun. We saw a great
ðeə hwaɪt seɪlz braɪt ɪn ðə sʌn. wi: sɔ: ə greɪt

white steamer far out at sea, too. Somebody said it
hwaɪt sti:mə fɑ:r aʊt ət si:, tu:. sʌmbədi sed ɪt

was the 'Queen Mary'. It's strange to think that they
wəz ðə 'kwi:n meəri'. ɪts streɪndʒ tə θɪŋk ðæt ðeɪ

can now build ships large enough to accommodate several
kən naʊ bɪld ʃɪps lɑ:dʒ ɪ'nʌf tu ə'kɒmədeɪt severəl

thousand passengers and sailors."

haʊzənd pæsɪndʒəz ən seɪləz."

"That's enough people to fill a small town," Storm
"ðætʃs ɪ'nʌf pi:pl tə fɪl ə smɔ:l taʊn," stɔ:m

said. "But, of course, that's unusual. The boat I came
sed. "bʌt, əv kɔ:s, ðætʃs ʌn'ju:ʒʊəl. ðə bɔʊt aɪ keɪm

over in accommodated 300, one of the sailors
ouvær in ə'kɒmədeɪtɪd ʒri: hʌndrəd, wʌn əv ðə seɪləz

told me. — What a crowd there must be to see all
təʊld mi:. — hʌwt ə kraʊd ðə məst bi: tə si: ɔ:l

those passengers off!" he added, thinking of all the
ðəʊz pæsɪndʒəz ɔ:f!" hi: ədɪd, ʒɪŋkɪŋ əv ɔ:l ðə

people who had been there last year to see their friends
pi:pl hu: həd bi:n ðə lɑ:st jɪə tə si: ðə frendz

off when he left the Continent.

ɔ:f hwen hi: left ðə kɒntɪnənt.

After dinner they passed a pleasant hour in front of
ɑ:ftə dɪnə ðeɪ pɑ:st ə pleznt aʊər ɪn frʌnt əv

the fire, as it had grown a bit cool in the evening.
ðə faɪə, əz ɪt həd grəʊn ə bɪt ku:l ɪn ði i:vnɪŋ.

When they rose to leave, Marion decided to walk with
hwen ðeɪ rəʊz tə li:v, mæriən dɪ'saɪdɪd tə wɔ:k wɪð

them to the bus. "Wait a moment!" she called to them
ðəm tə ðə bʌs. "weɪt ə məʊmənt!" ʃi: kɔ:ld tə ðəm

from the stairs, while they were saying good-bye to
frəm ðə steəz, hwaɪl ðeɪ wə: seɪɪŋ gʊd'baɪ tə

Mr. and Mrs. Edwards. "I just want to get my
mɪstər ənd mɪsɪz edwədz. "aɪ dʒʌst wɒnt tə get maɪ

coat and a cap."

kəʊt ənd ə kæp."

"What! A new hat again?" cried her father, as she
"hʌwt! ə nju: hæʔ ə'geɪn?" kraɪd hɑ: fa:ðə, əz ʃi:

appeared again with a bright green cap. "It's not a
ə'piəd ə'geɪn wɪð ə braɪt grɪ:n kæp. "ɪts nɒt ə

see off = say
 good-bye to



hat, daddy, it's a cap, and I made it myself, so it hasn't
hæt, dædi, its ə kæp, and ai meid it mai'self, sou it hæznt

even cost you a shilling."

i:vən kɒst ju: ə ʃiliŋ."

"Be careful now, my boy," Mr. Edwards said to Storm

"bi: keəfʊl nau, mai bɔi," mistə edwədz sed tə stɔ:m

with a smile. "You see, she's trying to give you the

wɪð ə smail. "ju: si:, ʃi:z traɪɪŋ tə gɪv ju: ði

impression that she's a great little woman for saving

im'presən ðæt ʃi:z ə greɪt lɪtl wʊmən fə seɪvɪŋ

money. But don't trust her! Keep her under your

mʌni. bət daʊnt trʌst hɜː! ki:p hɜːr ʌndə jɔ:

thumb right from the beginning. It's the only way to

θʌm raɪt frəm ðə bɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ. its ði ounli wei tə

make good wives of them." "Is it?" asked Mrs. Edwards.

meɪk gud waɪvz əv ðəm." "ɪz ɪt?" ɑːskt mɪsɪz edwədz.

"Perhaps I should tell Marion how I made a good

"pə'hæps ai ʃəd tel mæriən haʊ ai meɪd ə gud

husband of you?" "It's very kind of you to call me

hʌzbənd əv juː?" "its veri kaɪnd əv ju: tə kɔ:l mi:

that," her husband answered with a laugh. "But per-

ðæt," hɜː hʌzbənd ɑːnsəd wɪð ə la:f. "bət pə-

haps you had better not. It might make him afraid."

'hæps ju: həd betə nɒt. ɪt maɪt meɪk hɪm ə'freɪd."

At last they all said good-night again, and the three

ət laːst ðei ɔ:l sed gud'nait ə'geɪn, and ðə ʒri:

young people left the house.

jʌŋ pi:pl left ðə haʊs.

EXERCISE A.

Mr. Edwards — to know why there was such a great — at Portsmouth. He wanted Marshall to send a — to Portsmouth, and perhaps also — to their connections on the Continent. Storm — up Marshall and gave him the — from the manager, and Marshall answered that he would ask a man at the customs office, who was a — friend of his, to help them to find out where the — was.

Young women nowadays no longer need their parents' — to marry, but Mr. Edwards would gladly have — Marion permission to marry Storm. He told Storm that he had often made the — that it was necessary to use a strong hand with women. Marion had for some time tried to — Storm from talking about marrying her, but at last he got his chance.

When Mrs. Edwards asked her husband if he had not noticed anything, he — his head instead of saying "no". Mr. Edwards knew how to use his — in his work, but he said that his wife was much — than he was. Storm's and Marion's plans for the future had not taken — yet.

It made Mrs. Edwards very — to think that Storm must leave them soon, but her husband told her that he knew the — of the — department that — with foreigners staying in England. He would tell him that Storm's special work could not be finished — three months. Storm had told Marshall to — the news about Marion and him like the crown jewels.

WORDS:

demand
police
delay
chief of police
chief
personal
message
deal
dealt
wise
unwanted
prevent
brain
guard
ring up
observation
permission
error
wire
cable
cable (verb)
entire
see off
sad
hopeful
warship
battleship
land (verb)
rough
grant
helpful
shape
aircraft carrier
aircraft

aeroplane
base
accommodate
bless
cap
shake
shook
shaken
wonderful
within
bag

Portsmouth is one of the most important — for British —. — — are ships with a broad deck for — to — upon. When people go away on trips, their friends usually come to — them —. Marion herself had made the — which she wore that evening.

EXERCISE B.

Have you ever had anything to do with the police? ... Have you ever been up in an aeroplane? ... What is an aircraft carrier? ... Have you ever been out in a bad snow storm? ... Have you ever visited a foreign country? ... At what time of the year did you go there? ... What was the weather like? ... What was the purpose of your visit to that country? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

Shall and **will** are used with the infinitive of a verb to make the future tense. Examples: I **shall come** tomorrow. When **will** your uncle **come**? I **should be** glad to see you this evening. He **would write** me a letter as soon as possible.

Shall and **should** are generally used after 'I' and 'we', and as a rule **will** and **would** are used after 'you', 'he' ('she', 'it', and a noun in the singular), 'you', and 'they' (and a noun in the plural). For instance: **I shall**

write my exercise to-morrow. **Will you** go with me to town to-morrow? **He will** soon learn how to speak this language. If **you would** come to-morrow, **we should** be glad to receive you. **They would** have given him the money gladly.

Questions:

How is the future tense made? ... Which verb is used after 'I' and 'we' in the future tense? ... Which verb is used after 'you', 'he' ('she', 'it', and a noun in the singular), 'they' (and a noun in the plural)? ... Write four sentences in the future tense. ...

NEW FRIENDS

A few weeks after Storm and Mr. Edwards had written
ə fjuː wiːks ɑːftə stɔːm ænd mɪstə edwədz həd rɪtɪn

to the police to get permission for Storm to stay,
tə ðə pəˈliːs tə get pəˈmɪʃən fə stɔːm tə steɪ,

Mr. Jenkins rang up and told Mr. Edwards that he
mɪstə dʒɛŋkɪnz ræŋ ʌp ænd təʊld mɪstə edwədz ðæt hiː

had been able to arrange everything: Storm might stay
həd biːn eɪbl tu əˈreɪndʒ evriθɪŋː stɔːm maɪt steɪ

on for another year.

ɒn fər əˈnʌðə jɪə.

So Marion and Marshall and a small number of other
səu mæriən ænd mɑːʃəl ænd ə smɔːl nʌmbər əv ʌðə

young people, friends of Marion's and Marshall's, and
jʌŋ piːpl, frendz əv mæriənz ænd mɑːʃəlz, 'ænd

now Storm's friends, too, decided that they had better
nəʊ stɔːmz frendz, tuː, dɪ'saɪdɪd ðæt ðeɪ həd bɛtə

'do something about his education', as they expressed
'duː sʌmθɪŋ əˈbaʊt hɪz edʒuːˈkeɪʃən', əz ðeɪ ɪksˈprest

it, and teach him everything he ought to know about
ɪt, ænd tiːtʃ hɪm evriθɪŋ hiː ɔːt tə nəʊ əˈbaʊt

the country and its people in order to become a true
ðə kʌntri ænd ɪts piːpl ɪn ɔːdə tə bɪˈkʌm ə truː

Englishman.

ɪŋɡlɪʃmən.

It all started in fun, of course, but they soon became
it ɔ:l sta:tɪd ɪn fʌn, əv kɔ:s, bət ðeɪ su:n bi'keɪm

really interested in this 'education business'. When-
riəli ɪntrɪstɪd ɪn ðɪs 'edju:'keɪʃən bɪznɪs'. hwen-

ever possible, they went in the evenings to hear English
'evə pɒsəbl, ðeɪ went ɪn ði i:vniŋz tə hiə ɪŋɡlɪʃ

men of science speak about different subjects in which
men əv saɪəns spi:k ə'baut dɪfrənt sʌbdʒɪkts ɪn hwi:tʃ

they were interested — natural history, for instance.
ðeɪ wə:r ɪntrɪstɪd — nætʃrəl hɪstəri, fər ɪnstəns.

Afterwards, they would go either to Marshall's or to
a:ftəwədz, ðeɪ wəd ɡəʊ aɪðə tə mɑ:fəlz ɔ: tə

afterwards =
after this

Marion's home and have long arguments about what
mæriənz hoʊm ənd hæv lɒŋ a:gjumənts ə'baut hwɒt

they had heard. At first, the tea-table would be ready
ðeɪ həd hə:d. ət fə:st, ðə ti:teɪbl wəd bi: redi

for them when they arrived, but soon the visits grew
fɔ: ðəm hwen ðeɪ ə'raɪvd, bət su:n ðə vɪzɪts ɡru:

so frequent that Mrs. Marshall and Mrs. Edwards had
səʊ fri:kwənt ðət mɪsɪz mɑ:fəl ənd mɪsɪz edwədz həd

to let them boil the water, make the tea, and lay the
tə let ðəm bɔɪl ðə wɔ:tə, meɪk ðə ti:, ənd lei ðə

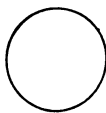
tea-table themselves. They all helped gladly, of course,
ti:teɪbl ðəm'selvz. ðeɪ ɔ:l helpt ɡlædli, əv kɔ:s,

and so on these evenings the house was filled with
ənd səʊ ɒn ði:z i:vniŋz ðə haʊs wəz fɪld wɪð

young voices in hot argument from kitchen to dining-
jʌŋ vɔɪsɪz ɪn hɒt a:gjumənt frəm kɪtʃɪn tə daɪnɪŋ-



curtain

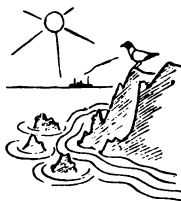


circle



semi-circle

He **dreams**, he
dreamt, he has
dreamt [dri:mz,
dremt, dremt].



rocks

healthy = in good
health

room. On such nights, they would draw the curtains,
rum. ɔn sʌtʃ naɪts, ðeɪ wəd drɔː ðə kəːtnz,

put out the electric light in the middle of the room,
put aʊt ði ɪˈlektɹɪk laɪt ɪn ðə mɪdl əv ðə ruːm,

and sit in a semi-circle in front of the fire, talking
ænd sit ɪn ə semɪsəːkl ɪn frʌnt əv ðə faɪə, tɔːkɪŋ

about different subjects, with only the circle of yellow
əˈbaʊt dɪfrənt sʌbdʒɪkts, wɪð ɔʊnli ðə səːkl əv jeləʊ

light shed by a small lamp over the fire-place. They
laɪt ʃed baɪ ə smɔːl læmp ɒvə ðə faɪəpleɪs. ðeɪ

would sometimes be lost in thought, dreaming wonder-
wəd sʌmtaɪmz biː lɒst ɪn θɔːt, driːmɪŋ wʌndə-

ful dreams about the future.

ful driːmz əˈbaʊt ðə fjuːtʃə.

Mr. Edwards was very pleased with all this. Like
mɪstə edwədz wəz veri pliːzd wɪð ɔːl ðɪs. laɪk

most fathers, he had tried with many wise arguments
mʌst faːðəz, hiː həd traɪd wɪð meni waɪz əˈɡjʊmənts

to show his daughter that knowledge is the rock upon
tə ʃəʊ hɪz dɔːtə ðæt nəlɪdʒ ɪz ðə rɒk əˈpɒn

which young people should build their future. And
hwɪtʃ jʌŋ piːpl ʃəd bɪld ðeə fjuːtʃə. ænd

Marion had, like most healthy girls, said “Yes, father”,
mæɪəriən həd, laɪk mʌst helpi ɡəːlz, sed “jes, faːðə”.

and then afterwards forgotten all about it. She had
ænd ðen ɑːftəwədʒ fəˈɡɒtn ɔːl əˈbaʊt ɪt. ʃiː həd

dreamt again her own rosy dreams, in which she would
dremt əˈɡeɪn hæːr ɔʊn rouzi driːmz, ɪn hwɪtʃ ʃiː wəd

always, through some happy chance, be 'on top of the
ɔ:lwəz, þru: sʌm hæpi tʃa:ns, bi: 'ɔn tɒp əv ðə

world' like an eagle on a rock.

wə:ld' laik ən i:gl ɔn ə rɒk.

She would see herself in the theatre, perhaps, standing

ʃi: wəd si: hə:'self in ðə θiətə, pə'hæps, stændiŋ

in front of the curtain with her arms full of flowers,

in frʌnt əv ðə kə:tn wið hə:r a:mz ful əv flauəz,

smiling across the hundreds of electric lights at her

smailiŋ ə'krɒs ðə handrədz əv i'lektrik laits ət hə:

feet to a house full of shouting and admiring people.

fi:t tu ə haʊs ful əv ʃaʊtiŋ ənd əd'maɪəriŋ pi:pl.

Or she would paint beautiful pictures, and crowds

ɔ: ʃi: wəd peɪnt bjʊ:təfʊl pɪktʃəz, ənd kraʊdz

would come to admire her art.

wəd kʌm tu əd'maɪə hə:r a:t.

"She's learning quite a different art now," her wise

"ʃi:z læ:nɪŋ kwəɪt ə dɪfrənt a:t naʊ," hə: waɪz

mother thought to herself, when she saw the interest

mʌðə θɔ:t tə hə:'self, hwen ʃi: sɔ: ði ɪntrɪst

with which Marion took part in the discussions, "the

wið hwi:tf məəriən tuk pɑ:t in ðə dɪs'kʌʃənz, "ði

art of living in a world full of plain facts, and liking it."

a:t əv lɪvɪŋ in ə wə:ld ful əv pleɪn fæktz, ən laɪkiŋ ɪt."

Mrs. Edwards even had to stop the girl now and

mɪsɪz edwədz i:vən həd tə stɒp ðə gə:l naʊ ənd

then. She had begun to hurry through her meals in

ðen. ʃi: həd bɪ'ɡʌn tə hʌri þru: hə: mi:lz in



eagle

chief = most
important

order to get on with some interesting study or other,
ɔ:də tə get ɒn wið sʌm intristɪŋ stʌdi ɔ:r ʌðə,

as if she thought eating a waste of time.

əz ɪf ʃi: þɔ:t i:tiŋ ə weɪst əv taɪm.

“Be careful, child! You’re healthy enough now, but if

“bi: keəfʊl, tʃaɪld! juə helði i'nʌf naʊ, bət ɪf

you keep up that speed, you’ll make yourself ill.”

ju: ki:p ʌp ðæt spi:d, ju:l meɪk ʃɔ:'self ɪl.”

“Let her work, my dear,” her husband said, “it won’t

“let hæ: wə:k, maɪ diə,” hæ: hʌzbənd sed, “ɪt wʊnt

last very long. As soon as she has to start arranging

lɑ:st veri lɒŋ. əz su:n əz ʃi: hæz tə stɑ:t ə'reɪndʒɪŋ

everything regarding their home, her interests will be

evriþɪŋ ri'ga:diŋ ðeə haʊm, hæ:r intrɪsts wɪl bi:

divided more equally between study and other kinds

di'vaɪdɪd mɔ:r i:kwəli bɪ'twi:n stʌdi ənd ʌðə kaɪndz

of work. The chief thing is that she’s learning to use

əv wə:k. ðə tʃi:f þɪŋ ɪz ðæt ʃi:s læ:nɪŋ tə ju:s

her brain now and not just dreaming away her time.”

hæ: breɪn naʊ ən nɔt dʒʌst dri:mɪŋ ə'wei hæ: taɪm.”

“I do hope you’re right,” Mrs. Edwards said. “I am,

“aɪ du: hoʊp juə raɪt,” mɪsɪz edwədz sed. “aɪ æm,

my dear, you may be sure of that,” her husband

maɪ diə, ju: meɪ bi: ʃʊər əv ðæt,” hæ: hʌzbənd

answered. “Her chief reason for this sudden interest

ɑ:nsəd. “hæ: tʃi:f ri:zn fə ðɪs sʌdn intrɪst

in science is, in plain words, that she doesn’t want her

ɪn saɪəns ɪz, ɪn pleɪn wə:dz, ðæt ʃi: dʌznt wɒnt hæ:

future husband to think her too foolish.”

fju:tsə hʌzbənd tə θɪŋk hə: tu: fu:lɪʃ.”

On a fine day at the beginning of October, a party
ɒn ə faɪn dei ət ðə bi'gɪniɪ əv ɔk'təʊbə, ə pɑ:ti

consisting of the usual small group of friends had gone
kən'sistiɪ əv ðə ju:ʒuəl smɔ:l gru:p əv frendz həd ɡɒn

group = a
number of persons
or objects

into the country for the week-end. They had decided
ɪntə ðə kʌntri fə ðə 'wi:k'end. ðei həd di'saɪdɪd

to stay the night at a village about 20 'miles from
tə steɪ ðə naɪt ət ə vɪlɪdʒ ə'baut twenti maɪlz frəm

village = a very
small town in the
country

London, and from there to go for walks in the woods
lʌndən, ənd frəm ðeə tə ɡəʊ fə wɔ:ks ɪn ðə wʊdz

and the surrounding country.

ənd ðə sə'raʊndɪŋ kʌntri.

As soon as they had had their tea on Saturday,
əz su:n əz ðei həd həd ðeə ti: ɒn sætədi,

they started out for their first walk from the village,
ðei stɑ:tɪd aʊt fə ðeə fə:st wɔ:k frəm ðə vɪlɪdʒ,

although the sun was already low in the western sky.
ɔ:l'dəʊ ðə sʌn wəz ɔ:l'redi laʊ ɪn ðə westən skaɪ.

“Let's sit on the grass a bit and watch the sun setting,”

“lets sit ɒn ðə ɡrɑ:s ə bɪt ən wɔtʃ ðə sʌn setɪŋ,”

Marion suggested, when they reached a small hill.

məriən sə'dʒestɪd, hʌven ðei ri:tʃt ə smɔ:l hɪl.

“Oh, it's wonderful!” she cried. “I wish I could paint

“ou, ɪts wʌndəfʊl!” ʃi: kraɪd. “aɪ wɪʃ aɪ kəd peɪnt

it all — the wood, the small groups of trees in the

ɪt ɔ:l — ðə wʊd, ðə smɔ:l gru:ps əv tri:z ɪn ðə

fields, the village!"

fi:ldz, ðə vɪlɪdʒ!

"There, there, don't be sorry, Marion. I'll buy you a

"ðeə, ðeə, daʊnt bi: sɒri, məˈrɪən. aɪl baɪ ju: ə

nice picture post-card when we get back." "You're

nais pɪktʃə paʊstka:d hwen wi: get bæk." "juə

impossible," Marion laughed. "Well, there's nothing

imˈpɒsəbl," məˈrɪən la:ft. "wel, ðəz nʌʃɪŋ

left of the sun now. Shall we go on?" "Have you

left əv ðə sʌn naʊ. ʃəl wi: ɡoʊ ɔn?" "həv ju:

noticed that there are hardly any birds left now?"

nəʊtɪst ðæt ðeə ha:dli ɛni bɜ:dz left naʊ?"

Storm asked as they rose to go. "At least you don't

stɔ:m ɑ:skt əz ðei raʊz tə ɡoʊ. "ət li:st ju: daʊnt

hear any birds singing." "That's because it's autumn,"

hiə ɛni bɜ:dz sɪŋɪŋ." "ðætʃ bɪˈkɔz ɪts ɔ:təm,"

Marion replied. "There are still many birds that

məˈrɪən riˈplaɪd. "ðeə stɪl meni bɜ:dz ðæt

haven't left the country yet, but they don't sing in the

həvnt left ðə kʌntri jət, bət ðei daʊnt sɪŋ ɪn ði

autumn." "Marshall!" she suddenly cried. "Where

ɔ:təm." "mə:ʃəl!" ʃi: sʌdnli kraɪd. "hwɛər

are you taking us?" "Into this field," he answered

a: ju: teɪkɪŋ ʌs?" "ɪntə ðɪs fi:ld," hi: ɑ:nsəd

and began to open a big gate. "What's the matter?

ænd biˈɡæn tu ɒpən ə bɪɡ ɡeɪt. "hwɒts ðə mətə?"

Are you afraid of the cows?" "They do have such

a: ju: əˈfreɪd əv ðə kaʊz?" "ðei du: həv sʌtʃ



very big horns," she replied. "Yes, couldn't we go
veri big hɔ:nz," *ʃi: ri'plaid.* "jes, kudnt wi: gou

another way?" asked Ellen, Marion's friend. "I don't
ə'nʌðə wei?" *a:skt elin, məriənz frend.* "ai dount

like the look of those horns, either." "But this is
laik ðə luk əv ðouz hɔ:nz, aiðə." "bət ðis iz

the more direct way," he said. "We don't like going
ðə mɔ: di'rekt wei," *hi: sed.* "wi: dount laik gouɪŋ

that way, do we, Ellen?" Marion answered. "I'm
ðæt wei, du: wi:, elin?" *məriən a:nsəd.* "aim

sure those cows are going to start running towards
ʃuə ðouz kaʊz a: gouɪŋ tə stɑ:t rʌniŋ tə'wɔ:dz

us the moment we're inside the gate." "All right —
ʌs ðə moumənt wiər in'said ðə geit." "ɔ:l rait —

I give up, then!" Marshall said.
ai giv ʌp, ðen!" mɑ:ʃəl sed.

Half an hour later they were back in the village. It
ha:f ən auə leitə ðei wə: bæk in ðə vilidʒ. it

was still too pleasant out of doors to go inside, so
wəz stil tu: pleznt aʊt əv dɔ:z tə gou in'said, sou

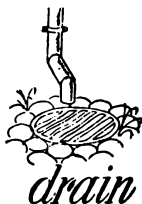
they decided to walk about the village and look at
ðei di'saidid tə wɔ:k ə'baut ðə vilidʒ and luk ət

the houses, some of which were very old.
ðə haʊziz, sʌm əv hʌwɪʃ wə: veri ould.

"It's strange to think," Storm said to the others, pointing
"its streindʒ tə ʃɪŋk," stɔ:m sed tə ði ʌðəz, ɔɪntɪŋ

out an old house with a beautiful old door, "how much
aʊt ən ould haʊs wið ə bju:təfʊl ould dɔ:, "hau mʌtʃ

spent (here) =
used



money and work was spent in the old days to make
mani ən wə:k wəz spent in ði ould deiz tə meik

the houses beautiful. Look at this door, for example.
ðə haʊzɪz bjʊ:təfʊl. luk ət ðis dɔː, fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl.

And yet they did nothing at all to make their houses
ən jət ðei did nəθɪŋ ət ɔ:l tə meik ðə haʊzɪz

healthy to live in. They didn't even have drains to
helpi tə liv in. ðei didnt i:vən həv dreɪnz tə

take the dirty water away from the houses, but just
teɪk ðə dɑ:ti wɔ:tər ə'wei frəm ðə haʊzɪz, bət dʒʌst

threw it out of the windows into the streets or the
pru: ɪt aʊt əv ðə wɪndəʊz ɪntə ðə stri:ts ɔ: ðə

gardens.”

gɑ:dnz.”

“And so, of course,” said Hardy, Ellen's brother, “many
“ən sou, əv kɔ:s,” sed hɑ:di, elɪnz brʌðə, “meni

people died every year of all the diseases that are the
pi:pl daɪd evri jɪə əv ɔ:l ðə dɪ'zi:zɪz ðæt a: ðə

consequences of dirty people living in dirty houses.
kɒnsɪkwənsɪz əv dɑ:ti pi:pl lɪvɪŋ ɪn dɑ:ti haʊzɪz.

In the East, those special diseases are still very common.
ɪn ði i:st, ðəʊz speʃəl dɪ'zi:zɪz a: stɪl veri kɒmən.

But even in many countries in Europe, you're almost
bət i:vən ɪn meni kʌntri:z ɪn jʊərəp, juə ɔ:lməʊst

sure to get typhoid fever if you drink water that
ʃʊə tə get taɪfɔɪd fi:və ɪf ju: drɪŋk wɔ:tə ðæt

hasn't been boiled first.”

hæznt bi:n bɔɪld fə:st.”

"What a lot of trouble!" Marion said. "You would
"hʷɔt ə lɔt əv trʌbl!" mæriən sed. "ju: wəd

think that it would be much less trouble to clean up
piŋk ðæt it wəd bi: mʌtʃ les trʌbl tə kli:n ʌp

those places and have drains from all the houses, or
ðouz pleisiz ən hæv dreinz frəm ɔ:l ðə haʊziz, ɔ:

whatever it is that needs to be done." "You say this
hʷɔt'evər it iz ðæt ni:dz tə bi: dʌn." "ju: sei ðis

almost as if you would like to do it yourself," Storm
ɔ:lmoʊst əz if ju: wəd laɪk tə du: it ʃɔ:'self," stɔ:m

said with a smile at her serious face. "I would," she
sed wið ə smaɪl ət hɜ: siəriəs feɪs. "aɪ wʊd," ʃi:

answered. "Only I should be afraid to go to the
ɑ:nsəd. "əʊnli aɪ ʃəd bi: ə'freɪd tə ɡoʊ tə ði

East and perhaps get one of those diseases myself.
i:st ən pə'hæps get wʌn əv ðouz di'zi:ziz maɪ'self.

My father has a friend who got malaria when he was
maɪ fa:ðə hæz ə frend hu: ɡɒt mə'leəriə hwen hi: wəz

in India, and he still gets very ill at times, when the
in indjə, ən hi: stɪl ɡets veri ɪl ət taɪmz, hwen ðə

fever is 'burning his brains out', as he says. — But
fi:vər iz 'bɜ:nɪŋ hɪz breɪnz aʊt', əz hi: sez. — bʌt

let's talk about something a little more pleasant," she
lets tɔ:k ə'baut sʌmþɪŋ ə lɪtl mɔ: pleznt," ʃi:

continued. "Shall we go in and have our supper
kən'tɪnju:d. "ʃəl wi: ɡoʊ ɪn ən hæv ʌʊə sʌpə

now?"

naʊ?"

"Yes, let's go in," Ellen said. "I'd like to put on another
"jes, lets gou in," elin sed. "aid laik tə put ɔn ə'nʌðə

pair of shoes. I was foolish enough to go walking in
pɛər əv fu:z. ai wəz fu:lɪf i'nʌf tə gou wɔ:kiŋ in

new shoes, and, of course, they're still too tight to be
nju: fu:z, ənd, əv kɔ:s, ðəə stɪl tu: tait tə bi:

comfortable. The consequence is that my feet hurt."
kʌmfətabl. ðə kɒnsɪkwəns ɪz ðət maɪ fi:t hæ:t."

"Isn't that just like girls? Why don't you buy shoes
"ɪznt ðət dʒʌst laik ɡə:lz? hwai daʊnt ju: baɪ fu:z

that are big enough?" her brother asked. "If you
ðət a: bɪɡ i'nʌf?" hæ: brʌðər a:skt. "ɪf ju:

can't spread your toes a bit in new shoes, you may
kɑ:nt sprɛd jɔ: təʊz ə bɪt ɪn nju: fu:z, ju: meɪ

be sure that they're too tight to be comfortable."
bi: fʊə ðət ðəə tu: tait tə bi: kʌmfətabl."

"There he goes again," Ellen laughed. "Really, you
"ðəə hi: ɡəʊz ə'geɪn," elɪn lɑ:ft. "riəli, ju:

should have been a doctor, I think — always talking
ʃəd hæv bi:n ə dɒktə, aɪ θɪŋk — ɔ:lweɪz tɔ:kiŋ

about diseases and what's good for you and what isn't.
ə'baut dɪ'zi:zɪz ən hwɒts ɡʊd fɔ ju: ən hwɒt ɪznt.

You'll be pleased to hear," she said to the other young
ju:l bi: pli:zd tə hiə," ʃi: sed tə ði ʌðə jʌŋ

men, "that he has found out that beer is good for the
mɛn, "ðət hi: hæz faʊnd aʊt ðət biə ɪz ɡʊd fɔ ðə

stomach."
stʌmək."

"That's right," Hardy explained in a serious voice.

"ðætʰs raɪt," ha:di ɪks'pleɪnd ɪn ə sɪəriəs vɔɪs.

"You see, when I was younger I didn't drink beer ..."

"ju: si:, hwen aɪ wəz ʃʌŋgə aɪ dɪdnt dɪŋk biə ..."

"Father wouldn't let him," Ellen interrupted, smiling.

"fa:ðə wʊdnt let hɪm," elɪn ɪntə'rʌptɪd, smaɪlɪŋ.

"He thought it was a waste of money." "I had a lot

"hi: þɔ:t ɪt wəz ə weɪst əv mʌni." "aɪ hæd ə lɒt

of trouble with my digestion, then," he went on.

əv trʌbl wɪð maɪ dɪ'dʒestʃən, ðen," hi: went ɔn.

"No doubt because you were always filling yourself

"nəʊ daʊt bi'kɔ:z ju: wə:r ɔ:lwəz fɪlɪŋ ʃɔ:'self

with sweets," she interrupted again. "... but now

wɪð swi:ts," ʃi: ɪntə'rʌptɪd ə'geɪn. "... bʌt naʊ

that I have begun to drink beer," he continued, paying

ðæt aɪ hæv bɪ'ɡʌn tə dɪŋk biə," hi: kən'tɪnju:d, peɪɪŋ

no attention to her, "there's nothing the matter with

nəʊ ə'tenʃən tə hə:, "ðəz nəʃɪŋ ðə mətə wɪð

me any more." "Perhaps not with your digestion,"

mi: enɪ mɔ:." "pə'hæps nɒt wɪð ʃɔ: dɪ'dʒestʃən,"

Ellen said, "but I believe that I have seen you when

elɪn sed, "bʌt aɪ bi'li:v ðæt aɪ hæv si:n ju: hwen

your beer was giving you a bit of trouble — 'tight'

ʃɔ: biə wəz ɡɪvɪŋ ju: ə bɪt əv trʌbl — 'taɪt'

or 'drunk', I would have called you." "What is

ɔ: 'drʌŋk', aɪ wʊd hæv kɔ:ld ju:." "hwɒt ɪz

my crime," the poor fellow cried at last, "that I

maɪ kraɪm," ðə puə fɛləʊ kraɪd ət la:st, "ðæt aɪ

should be punished by having such a sister?" "Peace,
ʃəd bi: pʌnɪʃt baɪ hævɪŋ sʌtʃ ə sɪstə? "pi:s,

children!" laughed Storm. "Let's all have a glass of
tʃɪldrən! la:ft stɔ:m. "lets ɔ:l hæv ə gla:s əv

beer and see if that won't make her a little gentler
bɪə ən si: ɪf ðæt wəʊnt meɪk hæ:r ə lɪtl dʒentlə

with you."

wɪð ju:."

He called the waitress and ordered their beer. "We
hi: kɔ:ld ðə weɪtrɪs ænd ɔ:dəd ðeə bɪə. "wi:

fix = arrange

haven't fixed anything about our rooms yet. How
hævnt fɪkst enɪθɪŋ ə'baʊt ʌʊə ru:mz jet. hau

much do you charge for rooms here?" he asked her,
mʌtʃ du: ju: tʃɑ:dʒ fə ru:mz hɪə?" hi: ɑ:skt hæ:,

when she brought the beer. "Single rooms nine
hwen ʃi: brɔ:t ðə bɪə. "sɪŋgl ru:mz naɪn

shillings, double rooms fifteen shillings," she replied.
ʃɪlɪŋz, dʌbl ru:mz fɪfti:n ʃɪlɪŋz," ʃi: rɪ'plaɪd.

"We'd better take single rooms," he said.

"wi:d betə teɪk sɪŋgl ru:mz," hi: sed.

They sat for some time talking and watching the other
ðei sət fə sʌm taɪm tɔ:kiŋ ænd wɒtʃɪŋ ði ʌðə

guests in the room; but as they were all rather tired,
ɡests ɪn ðə ru:m; bət əz ðei wə:r ɔ:l rɑ:ðə taɪəd,

they soon went up to bed.

ðei su:n went ʌp tə bed.

Next morning they were up early, so that they might

nekst mɔ:nɪŋ ðei wə:r ʌp ə:li, soʊ ðæt ðei maɪt

have a long day for their walk. "I heard you had
hæv ə lɔŋ dei fə ðeə wɔ:k. "ai hæ:d ju: həd

trouble with your feet last night," the waitress said
trʌbl wið jɔ: fi:t la:st naɪt," ðə weɪtrɪs sed

to Ellen, when she was bringing their breakfast. "Are
tu elɪn, hwen ʃi: wəz brɪŋɪŋ ðeə brekfəst. "a:

they better to-day?" "As a matter of fact, they aren't,"
ðei betə tə'dei?" "əz ə mətər əv fækt, ðei a:nt,"

Ellen replied. "They hurt me even if I touch them
elɪn ri'plaid. "ðei hæ:t mi: i:vən ɪf ai tʌtʃ ðəm

with my fingers."
wið maɪ fɪŋgəz."

"I thought that might be the case, so I've brought a
"ai þɔ:t ðæt maɪt bi: ðə keɪs, sou aɪv brɔ:t ə

small bottle of some oil that I always use. Waitresses
smɔ:l bɒtl əv səm ɔɪl ðæt ai ɔ:lweɪz ju:z. weɪtrɪsɪz

often have trouble with their feet, you know. Just rub
ɔ:fn hæv trʌbl wið ðeə fi:t, ju: nou. dʒʌst rʌb

a little oil into the skin of your feet, and they will
ə lɪtl ɔɪl ɪntə ðə skɪn əv jɔ: fi:t, ən ðei wɪl

feel much better." "Thanks! That's very kind of you,
fi:l mʌtʃ betə." "þæŋks! ðæts veri kaɪnd əv ju:,

I'm sure. It's no fun walking when your feet give
aɪm suə. ɪts nou fʌn wɔ:kɪŋ hwen jɔ: fi:t gɪv

you pain."
ju: peɪn."

In the afternoon, when they were returning from their
ɪn ði ɑ:fʔə'nu:n, hwen ðei wə: rɪ'tə:nɪŋ frəm ðeə

long walk, they met a group of about 20 people,
lɔŋ wɔ:k, ðei met ə gru:p əv ə'baʊt twenti pi:pl,

all carrying bags or baskets full of different plants
ɔ:l kəriɪŋ bægz ɔ: bɑ:skits ful əv difrənt plɑ:nts

that they had picked in the fields or the woods. "I
ðæt ðei həd pi:kɪt ɪn ðə fi:ldz ɔ: ðə wudz. "ai

wonder who they are," Storm said to Marion. "They
wʌndə hu: ðei a:," stɔ:m sed tə məriən. "ðei

all seem to be workers, except that tall man over there;
ɔ:l si:m tə bi: wə:kəz, ik'sept ðæt tɔ:l mæn ouvə ðeə;

but at the same time they look like a class of school-
bət ət ðə seɪm taɪm ðei lʊk laɪk ə kla:s əv sku:l-

children who are out studying natural history with
tʃɪldrən hu: a:r aʊt stʌdiɪŋ nætʃrəl hɪstəri wɪð

their teacher." "Perhaps they're both," Marion replied.
ðeə ti:tʃə. "pə'hæps ðeə bəʊb," məriən ri'plaɪd.

"You see, several of our universities send out travelling
"ju: si:, severəl əv aʊə ju:ni'və:sɪtiz send aʊt trævliŋ

teachers all over the country. If a sufficiently large
ti:tʃəz ɔ:l ouvə ðə kʌntri. ɪf ə sə'fɪsəntli la:dʒ

number of people in a town wish to take up one or
nʌmbər əv pi:pl ɪn ə taʊn wɪʃ tə teɪk ʌp wʌn ɔ:

more subjects of study and are willing to work
mɔ: sʌbdʒɪkts əv stʌdi ənd a: wɪlɪŋ tə wə:k

seriously, one of the universities arrange to send a
sɪəriəsli, wʌn əv ðə ju:ni'və:sɪtiz ə'reɪndʒ tə send ə

teacher to them. They're charged nothing for this, as
ti:tʃə tu ðəm. ðeə tʃɑ:dʒd nʌθɪŋ fə ðɪs, əz

the teacher is paid by the university. Many people,
ðə ti:tʃər iz peɪd baɪ ðə juːnɪˈvɜːsɪti. mæni piːpl,

for whom it would be impossible to study at a university,
fɔː huːm ɪt wəd biː ɪmˈpɒsəbl tə stʌdi ət ə juːnɪˈvɜːsɪti,

have been able to take up some study in this way and
hæv biːn eɪbl tə teɪk ʌp səm stʌdi ɪn ðɪs weɪ ən

have gained really useful knowledge of their subject.”
hæv geɪnd riəli juːsful nɒlɪdʒ əv ðeə sʌbdʒɪkt.”

“What a fine idea!” Storm said. “It gives work to
“hwaɪt ə faɪn aɪˈdɪə!” stɔːm sed. “ɪt gɪvz wɜːk tə

men of science as teachers, and it gives some idea of
mɛn əv saɪəns əz tiːtʃəz, and ɪt gɪvz səm aɪˈdɪə əv

science to people who have to work, but want to get
saɪəns tə piːpl huː hæv tə wɜːk, bʌt wɒnt tə get

more education. Really, I’m rather proud of ‘us’
mɔːr edjuːˈkeɪʃən. riəli, aɪm raːðə praʊd əv ‘ʌs

English.” “Listen to those four men playing cards at
ɪŋɡlɪʃ.” “lɪsn tə ðəʊz fɔː mɛn pleɪɪŋ kɑːdz ət

the next table! I’m afraid you won’t feel so proud
ðə nekst teɪbl! aɪm əˈfreɪd juː wəʊnt fiːl səʊ praʊd

of ‘us’ English when you hear their stories,” Hardy
əv ‘ʌs ɪŋɡlɪʃ hwen juː hɪə ðeə stɔːrɪz,” haːdi

said, when they were having supper that evening. “One
sed, hwen ðeɪ wəː hævɪŋ sʌpə ðæt ɪːvənɪŋ. “wʌn

of them seems to be the village policeman. They have
əv ðəm siːmz tə biː ðə vɪlɪdʒ pəˈliːsmən. ðeɪ hæv

been talking of nothing but fights and blood and crime
biːn tɔːkɪŋ əv nəθɪŋ bʌt faɪts ən blʌd ən kraɪm



card

since they came, things that have taken place in this
sins ðei keim, þɪŋz ðæt hæv teɪkn pleɪs ɪn ðɪs

little village. Their cards, too, are just as dirty as
lɪtl vɪlɪdʒ. ðeə kɑːdz, tuː, aː dʒʌst əz dɑːtɪ əz

their stories. I shouldn't like to touch them Look at
ðeə stɔːrɪz. aɪ ʃʊdn̩t laɪk tə tʌtʃ ðəm. lʊk ət

Marion! She has been listening, too; she's quite pale."
mæriən! ʃiː hæz biːn lɪsnɪŋ, tuː; ʃiːz kwaɪt peɪl."

"How are you feeling? Anything wrong?" Storm asked
"hau aː juː fiːlɪŋ? enɪθɪŋ rɔŋ?" stɔːm aːskt

her. "I do feel a little sick," she replied. "It must
həː. "aɪ duː fiːl ə lɪtl sɪk," ʃiː rɪˈplaɪd. "ɪt mʌst

be because I'm tired, but it was made worse by having
biː biˈkɔːz aɪm taɪəd, bət ɪt wəz meɪd wəːs baɪ hævɪŋ

to listen to that man telling all those stories. If there's
tə lɪsn tə ðæt mæn telɪŋ ɔːl ðəʊz stɔːrɪz. ɪf ðəz

time before our train leaves, I think I'll go and lie
taɪm biˈfɔːr əʊə treɪn liːvz, aɪ ɪŋk aɪl ɡoʊ ən laɪ

down a bit." She left the table rather suddenly and
daʊn ə bɪt." ʃiː left ðə teɪbl rəːðə sʌdnli ənd

ran upstairs. The waitress had seen what had happened,
ræn ʌpˈsteɪz. ðə weɪtrɪs həd siːn hwɒt həd hæpnd,

however, and a moment later, she was standing at the
haʊ'evə, ənd ə moʊmənt leɪtə, ʃiː wəz stændɪŋ ət ðə

fat policeman's table. "You're a fine one, you are!
fæt pəˈliːsmənz teɪbl. "juːr ə faɪn wʌn, juː aː!

See what you've done now. You've made that poor
siː hwɒt juːv dʌn naʊ. juːv meɪd ðæt puə

young lady sick with all your stories. And when the
jʌŋ leidi sik wið ɔ:l jɔ: stɔ:riz. ən hwen ðə

truth is told, you're no more use to us than that dusty
tru:θ iz toʊld, juə nou mɔ: ju:s tu ʌs ðən ðæt dʌsti

dusty = grey with
dust

old eagle up there on the wall. I'm sure you've never
ould i:gl ʌp ðeər ʊn ðə wɔ:l. aim suə ju:v nevə

been within five miles of a real crime!"
bi:n wið'in faiv mailz əv ə riəl kraim!"

Marion couldn't help laughing when they told her about
mæriən kudnt help la:fiŋ hwen ðei toʊld hæ:r ə'baut

it. In fact, she felt better after hearing that the poor
it. in fækt, ʃi: felt betər a:ftə hiəriŋ ðæt ðə puə

policeman had left the place with the waitress pouring
pə'li:smən həd left ðə pleis wið ðə weitris pɔ:riŋ

truths into his burning ears. "I'm still proud of 'us'
tru:ðz intə hiz bə:niŋ iəz. "aim stil praʊd əv 'ʌs'

English," Storm said, when they were sitting in the
ɪŋɡlɪʃ," stɔ:m sed, hwen ðei wə: sitiŋ in ðə

train. "That was a brave little woman; it's a serious
trein. "ðæt wəz ə breiv litl wʊmən; its ə siəriəs

matter to speak like that to the law." "She's quite
mætə tə spi:k laik ðæt tə ðə lɔ:." "ʃi:z kwait

safe, old man," Marshall told him laughing. "She's
seif, ould mæn," mɑ:fəl toʊld him la:fiŋ. "ʃi:z

his wife!"
hiz waif!"

WORDS:

arrange
sick
plain
digestion
tight
dream
dream (verb)
dreamt
healthy
oil
circle
semi-circle
electric
card
post-card
chief
afterwards
argument
waste
curtain
touch
direct
charge (verb)
group
art
science
rock
eagle
horn
village
drain
disease
fever
typhoid

EXERCISE A.

Marion and her friends took Storm to hear English university people speak about different subjects of — and art. —, the young people would go either to Marshall's or Marion's home and have long — about what they had heard, while they had their tea or sat in a — in front of the fire. On these nights, they would draw the — and put out the — light, so that the room was dark except for the light — by the fire-place and a small —. Sometimes they sat — in thought, — about the future. "Knowledge," said Mr. Edwards, "is the — upon which young people should build their —," but Mrs. Edwards thought that it was not — for a young girl to take her studies so seriously that she even began to find eating a — of time. However, she was glad that Marion was discovering that the world was a place full of — facts. On a week-end trip into the country the young people stayed the night at a — about 20 miles from London. Marion was afraid of some cows on account of their big —.

In former times people had no — to take the dirty water away from the houses. Many people died of —, a consequence of living in dirty houses. In the East you may get — fever if you drink water that has not been boiled. Marion's father had a friend who got — when he was in India. New shoes are sometimes too — to be comfortable to walk in.

It is not good for your stomach and — to eat and drink too much. The waitress brought a bottle of — for Ellen's feet. While they were having supper, the young

people listened to the conversation of four men who were playing —. They were talking of nothing but fights and blood and —. Marion got — while listening to their stories.

malaria
crime
set
consequence
boil
skin
fix

EXERCISE B.

In chapter 56, Exercise D, you found a letter from Storm to Wood. Please answer this letter as if you were Wood. In doing so you must use all the words in the following list in some way or other:

marry — daughter — happy — winter — snow — ice
— skate — break — leg — hospital — doctor — move
— house — flat — address.

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

A form of the verb which is used very much in English is the first participle. It is made by adding -ing to the infinitive. For instance, calling (call-ing) going (go-ing), explaining (explain-ing).

In writing, the following rules must be remembered when making the first participle.

If the infinitive ends in an -e following a consonant, this -e is dropped before -ing is added. For instance, come — coming, love — loving, but: see — seeing.

Verbs that end in -ie change the -ie into -y before -ing is added. For instance, die — dying, lie — lying.

When the verb ends in a single consonant, we have to follow the rules that were given regarding the past

tense, that is: The consonant always remains single when following two vowels. For instance, explain-ing. The consonant remains single after an unstressed vowel, but is made double after a stressed vowel. For instance, answer-ing, prefer-ring. To this rule there is, however, the exception that -l is made double even after an unstressed vowel. For instance, travel-ling.

The first participle is used in several ways in English. It may be used as an adjective. Examples: I looked up into his smiling face. The mother kissed her sleeping child. He told me an interesting story.

Here is another use of the first participle: He **speaks** French, he **is speaking** French. Both sentences are in the present tense. What do they mean? 'He speaks French' means that 'he' is able to speak French, and possibly does so now and then; but 'he is speaking French' means that 'he' is speaking French now.

Here are some more examples with the same difference in meaning: He **reads** many books — he **is reading** an interesting book. He **smokes** cigarettes — he **is smoking** a cigarette. These forms of the verbs, 'is speaking', 'is reading', 'is smoking', we call expanded [*iks'pændid*] forms, which means forms that are made longer, and you will see that they are made up of a form of 'to be' and the first participle.

We may also have expanded forms in all the other tenses you have learned, and there is just the same sort of difference in meaning between the short forms and the expanded forms. Examples: I **closed** my book

when he entered the room — I **was** just **closing** my book when the clock struck twelve. My brother **has** already **written** one book — he **has been writing** another one for ten months now. He **had written** half of his first book, before I even knew he had started — he **had been writing** all day on the new book when I saw him.

Sometimes the expanded forms of verbs such as 'go' and 'leave' express the future. Examples: I **am going** to town to-morrow = I **shall go** to town to-morrow. I **am leaving** Paris next month = I **shall leave** Paris next month.

The first participle is used after many verbs, such as come, go, sit, lie, see, hear, etc. Examples: He **came running** towards us. She **went singing** through the house. I **saw** him **turning** round the corner of the street.

In many cases the first participle is used instead of some part of the sentence with the verb in the present tense or the past tense. Examples: So **saying** he closed his book = he **said** so and closed his book. **Having finished** his dinner, he usually smokes a cigar = when he **has finished** his dinner, he usually smokes a cigar.

Questions:

How is the first participle made? ... Write the first participle form of 'to die'. ... Write the first participle form of 'to stop'. ... What are the expanded forms of the verbs in the following sentences: He ate an apple. We play football? ...

A 'HAPPY END'

What is on your mind? = what are you thinking of?

"What's on your mind, mother?" Marion asked her
"hwɔts ɔn jɔ: maind, mʌðə?" mæriən a:skt hæ:

mother. "You have been looking for some time as
mʌðə. "ju: hæv bi:n lukiŋ fə sʌm taim əz

if you wanted to say something." It was just after
if ju: wɔntid tə sei sʌmpɪŋ." it wəz dʒʌst a:ftə

lunch on a quiet Sunday afternoon shortly after New
lʌŋs ɔn ə kwaɪət sʌndi a:ftə'nu:n ʃɔ:tli a:ftə nju:

Year's Day, and the Edwardses and Storm were
jiəz dei, ənd ði edwədʒiz ənd stɔ:m wə:

gathered in front of the fire. "You see," Mrs. Edwards
gəðəd in frʌnt əv ðə faɪə. "ju: si:," misiz edwədʒ

replied, "Mildred rang up this morning and asked if
ri'plaid, "mildrid ræŋ ʌp ðis mɔ:nɪŋ ənd a:skt if

we couldn't take Elizabeth off her hands this afternoon.
wi: kʊdn't teɪk ɪ'lɪzəbəθ ɔ:f hæ: hændz ðis a:ftə'nu:n.

Elizabeth is my sister's twelve-year-old daughter," she
ɪ'lɪzəbəθ ɪz maɪ sistəz twelvjərəʊld dɔ:tə," ʃi:

explained to Storm. "Father wasn't here when she
ɪks'pleɪnd tə stɔ:m. "fa:ðə wɔznt hiə hwen ʃi:

rang up, and I didn't know whether he had any plans
ræŋ ʌp, ənd aɪ dɪdn't nəʊ hwedə hi: həd eni plænz

for this afternoon, so I promised to tell her after lunch."
fə ðis a:ftə'nu:n, səʊ aɪ prəmɪst tə tel hæ:r a:ftə lʌŋs."

"Well, have you made up your mind about it?" Marion
"wel, hæv ju: meid əp jɔ: maɪnd ə'baʊt ɪt?" mæriən

make up one's
 mind = come to a
 decision

asked. "No, I haven't. I really ought to let her come,
ɑ:skt. "nou, ai hævnt. ai riəli ɔ:t tə let hæ: kʌm,

I suppose, since we have nothing else on. But I'm
ai sə'pəʊz, sɪns wi: hæv nəθɪŋ els ɔn. bət aɪm

feeling somewhat tired and was looking forward to
fi:lɪŋ səmhwaɪt taɪəd ən wəz lʊkɪŋ fɔ:wəd tu

somewhat =
 a little

a nice, peaceful Sunday." She pointed to the small
ə naɪs, pi:sfʊl sʌndi." ʃi: pɔɪntɪd tə ðə smɔ:l

peaceful = full of
 peace

table beside her chair. "You see, I had already gathered
teɪbl bɪ'saɪd hæ: tʃeə. "ju: si:, ai həd ɔ:l'reɪdɪ gəðəd

together on the table the papers and books that I
tə'geðər ɔn ðə teɪbl ðə peɪpəz ən buks ðæt aɪ

haven't had time to read till now, — and needles and
hævnt həd taɪm tə ri:d tɪl naʊ, — ən ni:dlz ən

thread and my scissors for a bit of sewing. But with
θred ən maɪ sizəz fər ə bɪt əv səʊɪŋ. bət wɪð



a child of twelve in the house there will be no peace
ə tʃaɪld əv twelv ɪn ðə haʊs ðeə wɪl bi: nʌu pi:s

for doing all that.
fər du:ɪŋ ɔ:l ðæt.



scissors

"When she was younger, I could give her a pair of
"hwen ʃi: wəz jʌŋgə, ai kəd gɪv hæ:r ə peər əv

scissors and let her cut paper dolls. But she's too old
sizəz ən let hæ: kʌt peɪpə dɔlz. bət ʃi:z tu: ould

for that now, and she's no good with a needle and
fər ðæt naʊ, ən ʃi:z nʌu gʊd wɪð ə ni:dl ən

dangerous = full
of danger

beast = wild
animal

thread, so I dare not let her help me. I can't make up
þred, sou ai dæa nɔt let hæ: help mi:. ai ka:nt meik ʌp
 my mind what to say to Mildred. If I say 'No', Mildred
mai maind hwest tə sei tə mildrid. if ai sei 'nou', mildrid
 will have to change her plans; if I say 'Yes', I'll get no
wil hæv tə tʃeindəz hæ: plænz; if ai sei 'jes', ail get nou
 rest to-day." "Marion and I might take her some-
rest tə'dei." "mæriən and ai mait teik hæ: sam-
 where," Storm suggested, "to the Zoo, for instance."
hweə," stɔ:m sə'dʒestid, "tə ðə zu:, fər instəns."
 "That certainly would be nice for us, if you think you
"ðæt sə:tnli wəd bi: nais fər ʌs, if ju: þɪŋk ju:
 can stand it. I'll ring up Mildred, then, and tell her."
kən stænd it. ail riŋ ʌp mildrid, ðen, ən tel hæ:."
 "You would think we were talking about a dangerous
"ju: wəd þɪŋk wi: wə: tɔ:kiŋ ə'baut ə deindəzrəs
 animal and not a girl of twelve, to hear your mother
æniməl ən nɔt ə ɡɜ:l əv twelv, tə hiə jɔ: mʌðə
 speak," he said to Marion. "She's almost as dangerous
spi:k," hi: sed tə mæriən. "ʃi:z ə:lmoust əz deindəzrəs
 to have about as a wild beast," Marion answered. "She
tə hæv ə'baut əz ə waɪld bi:st," mæriən a:nsəd. "ʃi:
 says and does whatever comes into her mind without
sez ən dʌz hwɔt'evə kʌmz intə hæ: maind wið'out
 thinking first, and she doesn't walk like normal human
þɪŋkiŋ fə:st, ən ʃi: dʌznt wɔ:k laɪk nɔ:məl hju:mən
 beings, but moves about by jumping like a monkey.
bi:iŋz. bʌt mu:vz ə'baut baɪ dʒʌmpiŋ laɪk ə mʌŋki.

The last time she was here, she tore a big hole in a
ðə la:st taim fi: wəz hiə, fi: tɔ:r ə big houl in ə

curtain and broke a very fine dish — a gift to my
kə:tn ən brəʊk ə veri faɪn dɪʃ — ə gift tə maɪ

mother from her uncle in India.”

mʌðə frəm hæ:r ʌŋkl in ɪndjə.”

“The Zoo seems to be the right place for her, then,”

“ðə zu: si:mz tə bi: ðə raɪt pleɪs fɔ: hæ:, ðen,”

Storm laughed. “I can almost guess what she’s like.

stɔ:m la:ft. “aɪ kən ɔ:lmoʊst ges hwɒt fi:z laɪk.

My own sister was the same at that age; one of her

maɪ oun sistə wəz ðə seɪm ət ðæt eɪdʒ; wʌn əv hæ:

greatest delights was to sit on a branch above the

greɪtɪst dɪ'laɪts wəz tə sit ɔn ə brɑ:nʃ ə'bʌv ðə

garden gate and throw things at me when I came home

gɑ:dn geɪt ən þrəʊ þɪŋz æt mi: hwɛn aɪ keɪm hoʊm

from work. Once she threw a paper-bag full of flour

frəm wə:k. wʌns fi: þru: ə peɪpəbæg fʊl əv flaʊə

down on me. She didn’t do that again, though.”

daʊn ɔn mi:. fi: dɪdnt du: ðæt ə'geɪn, ðəʊ.”

“I can guess what you did to her. And I can fancy

“aɪ kən ges hwɒt ju: dɪd tu hæ:. ənd aɪ kən fænsɪ

what you must have looked like,” Marion said, and

hwɒt ju: mʌst hæv lʊkt laɪk,” mæriən sed, ənd

smiled at the thought. “The little beast wouldn’t

smɪld ət ðə þɔ:t. “ðə lɪtl bi:st wʊdnt

come down, of course,” Storm went on, “when she

kʌm daʊn, əv kɔ:s,” stɔ:m went ɔn, “hwɛn fi:

He **tears**, he **tore**,
 he has **torn**
 [teəz, tɔ:, tɔ:n].

gift = present

delight = great
 pleasure

fetch = get

saw how angry I was, so I had to go up myself and
sɔ: hau æŋgri ai wɔz, sou ai hæd tə gou ʌp maɪ'self ən

fetch her down. It was a delight to seize her by
fetʃ hæ: daʊn. it wəz ə di'laɪt tə si:z hæ: baɪ

the neck and pull her down, I can tell you. If my
ðə nek ən pul hæ: daʊn, ai kən tel ju:. if maɪ

mother hadn't come out in time to save her, it's quite
mʌðə hædn't kʌm aʊt ɪn taɪm tə seɪv hæ:, ɪts kwaɪt

probable that I should have given her a good beating.
prɒbəbl ðæt ai ʃəd hæv gɪvən hæ:r ə gud bi:tiŋ.

As it was, she was quick to seize the chance of getting
əz ɪt wəz, ʃi: wəz kwɪk tə si:z ðə tʃa:ns əv getɪŋ

away from me."
ə'wei frəm mi:."

"Would you really beat a woman?" Marion interrupted.
"wəd ju: riəli bi:t ə wʊmən?" məriən ɪntə'rʌptɪd.

"Woman!" Storm cried. "Didn't you tell me yourself
"wʊmən!" stɔ:m kraid. "dɪdn't ju: tel mi: ʃɔ:'self

a moment ago that girls at that age can hardly be
ə moʊmənt ə'gou ðæt gɜ:lz ət ðæt eɪdʒ kən hæ:dli bi:

regarded as human beings, but are much more like
rɪ'ga:dɪd əz hju:mən bi:ɪŋz, bət a: mʌtʃ mɔ: laɪk

wild animals?" "All right, all right — it was only
waɪld ænɪməlz?" "ɔ:l rait, ɔ:l rait — ɪt wəz ɔʊnli

in fun."
ɪn fʌn."

"I've always wondered what my mother said to my
"aɪv ɔ:lweɪz wʌndəd hwɛt maɪ mʌðə sed tə maɪ

sister that day to break the proud fighting spirit of
sistə ðæt dei tə breik ðə praud faitiŋ spirit əv

the little savage," Storm said, as they were on their
ðə litl sævidʒ, "stɔ:m sed, əz ðei wə:r ɒn ðeə

way to Marion's aunt. "For next day she brought
wei tə məriənz a:nt. "fə nekst dei fi: brɔ:t

me gifts as a sign that peace had been established
mi: gifts əz ə saɪn ðæt pi:s həd bi:n ɪs'tæblɪʃt

once more and that the spirit of sisterly love was
wʌnz mɔ: ən ðæt ðə spirit əv sistəli lʌv wəz

going to govern all her acts from that time on — a
gəʊɪŋ tə ɡʌvən ɔ:l hə:r ækts frəm ðæt taɪm ɒn — ə

cigar and a green-and-red tie." "She probably made
sɪ'ɡa:r ənd ə 'ɡri:nən'red tai." "fi: prɒbəbli meɪd

her see that even brothers are a sort of human
hə: si: ðæt i:vən brʌðəz a:r ə sɔ:t əv hju:mən

beings," Marion replied. At the house of Marion's
bi:ɪŋz, "məriən ri'plaid. ət ðə haʊs əv məriənz

aunt they found Elizabeth jumping about with joy
a:nt ðei faʊnd ɪ'lɪzəbəθ dʒʌmpɪŋ ə'baut wɪð dʒɔɪ

joy = delight

at the thought of going to the Zoo with Storm and
ət ðə θɔ:t əv gəʊɪŋ tə ðə zu: wɪð stɔ:m ənd

Marion. "It's no secret," Marion's aunt told her, "that
məriən. "ɪts nəʊ si:krit, "məriənz a:nt təʊld hə:, "ðæt

Elizabeth gets no more fun out of her visits to your
ɪ'lɪzəbəθ ɡets nəʊ mɔ: fʌn aʊt əv hə: vɪzɪts tə jɔ:

parents' house than your mother does, so you can
pɛərənts haʊs ðən jɔ: mʌðə dʌz, səʊ ju: kən



servants = men or women working in their master's house

fancy her joy when she heard where she's going. It's
fænsi hæ: dʒɔi hwen ʃi: hæ:d hwæə ʃi:z gouɪŋ. its

not far from tears to smiles at that age. — Please
nɒt fa: frəm tiəz tə smaɪlz æt ðæt eɪdʒ. — pli:z

fetch Elizabeth's woollen cap with the feather," she said
fetʃ i'li:zəbəʃ wulin kæp wɪð ðə feðə," ʃi: sed

to a servant who had just entered the room.
tu ə sə:vənt hu: həd dʒʌst ɛntəd ðə ru:m.

"I want to show you, Marion, the cap she has been
"aɪ wɒnt tə ʃəʊ ju:, mæriən, ðə kæp ʃi: hæz bi:n

sewing at school this winter. I really think she's be-
səʊɪŋ æt sku:l ðɪs wɪntə. aɪ riəli ɪŋk ʃi:z bi-

coming somewhat better at needlework now. I didn't
'kʌmɪŋ sʌmhwɒt betər æt ni:dlwɜ:k naʊ. aɪ dɪdn't

know she was making it — she had kept it a great
naʊ ʃi: wəz meɪkɪŋ ɪt — ʃi: həd keɪpt ɪt ə greɪt

secret."

si:'kri:t."

"Here it is — nice, isn't it?" she asked when the maid
"hiə ɪt ɪz — naɪs, ɪznt ɪt?" ʃi: ɑ:skt hwen ðə meɪd

had brought it. "She has made all of it herself, except
həd brɔ:t ɪt. "ʃi: hæz meɪd ɔ:l əv ɪt hæ:'self, ɪk'sept

the feather, which she pulled from the tail of our
ðə feðə. hwɪtʃ ʃi: puld frəm ðə teɪl əv ʌʊə

neighbour's Christmas turkey — to my husband's great
neɪbəz krɪsməs tə:ki — tə maɪ hʌzbəndz greɪt

delight. He doesn't like our neighbour," she explained,
dɪ'ləɪt. hi: dʌznt laɪk ʌʊə neɪbə," ʃi: ɪks'pleɪnd,

while Elizabeth was putting on the cap. "Well, have
hwail i'lizəbəθ wəz ʔutiŋ ɔn ðə kæp. "wel. hæv

a good time! We shan't expect you back till half past
ə gud taim! wi: ʃa:nt iks'pekt ju: bæk til ha:f ʔa:st

five. I'm certainly glad you're taking her. You see,
faiv. aim sə:tʌli glæd juə teikiŋ hə:. ju: si:,

both our servants have the afternoon off to-day, and
bəʊθ əʊə sə:vənts hæv ði 'a:ftə'nu:n ɔ:f tə'deɪ, ən

we wanted to visit some people where we couldn't
wi: wɔntɪd tə vɪzɪt səm pi:pl hwɛə wi: kʊdnɪ

very well take Elizabeth. Be good, now, Elizabeth!"
veri wel teik i'lizəbəθ. bi: gud. nau. i'lizəbəθ!"

"I will, mamma — good-bye!"

"ai wil, mə'ma: — 'gud'bai!"

At the Zoo, most of the animals were not in the open
ət ðə zu:, mɔ:st əv ði æniməlz wə: nɔt in ði ɔpən

air, but had gone inside, as it was rather cold. They
ɛə, bət həd ɡɔn in'saɪd, əz ɪt wəz rə:ðə kəʊld. ðeɪ

entered one of the buildings, and as they stopped in
entəd wʌn əv ðə bɪldɪŋz, ənd əz ðeɪ stɔpt in

front of a very large lion, Storm threw out his arm
frʌnt əv ə veri la:dʒ laɪən, stɔ:m θru: aʊt hɪz a:m

towards it, bowed low, and said to the two girls, "His
tə'wɔ:dz ɪt, baʊd laʊ, ənd seɪd tə ðə tu: ɡɔ:lz, "hɪz

Majesty the Lion, King of All Animals."

mædʒɪsti ðə laɪən, kɪŋ əv ɔ:l æniməlz."

Elizabeth laughed with delight at this idea, but Marion
i'lizəbəθ lɑ:ft wɪð dɪ'lait ət ðɪs aɪ'diə, bət mə'riən

to be in the open
 air = not to be in
 a building of any
 kind

said, "His Majesty doesn't look as if he's enjoying life
sed. "hiz mædzisti dʌznt luk əz if hi:z in'dʒʊɪŋ laɪf

very much. In fact, he looks so sad to be locked up
veri mʌtʃ. ɪn fækt, hi: luks sou səd tə bi: lɒkt ʌp

in here that I almost fancy I can see tears in his
ɪn hiə ðæt aɪ ɔ:lmoʊst fænsi aɪ kæn si: tiəz ɪn hi:z

eyes." "Why, animals can't cry, can they?" Elizabeth
aɪz." "hwaɪ, ænɪməlz kɑ:nt krai, kæn ðei?" ɪlɪzəbəθ

asked Storm. "No, of course not," he answered seriously.
ɑ:skt stɔ:m. "nou, əv kɔ:s nɒt," hi: ɑ:nsəd siəriəsli.

"His Majesty has a cold, so his eyes and his nose are
"hiz mædzisti hæz ə kəʊld, sou hi:z aɪz ən hi:z nəʊz ɑ:

running, I think." "Oh, you're just making fun of
rʌnɪŋ, aɪ θɪŋk." "ou, juə dʒʌst meɪkɪŋ fʌn əv

me," the child cried.

mi:," ðə tʃaɪld kraid.

"Look at the sharp claws he has," Marion said. "He

"luk ət ðə ʃɑ:p klɔ:z hi: hæz," mæriən sed. "hi:

could tear a man to pieces in no time with those claws."

kəd tiə ə mæn tə pi:sɪz ɪn nou taɪm wið ðəʊz klɔ:z."

"You'll be able to watch him use his claws and his

"ju:l bi: eɪbl tə wɒtʃ hɪm ju:z hi:z klɔ:z ən hi:z

teeth as well," Storm told her and pointed to a man

ti:θ əz wel," stɔ:m təʊld hə: ənd pɔɪntɪd tu ə mæn

who had entered the house, carrying a big basket of

hu: həd ɛntəd ðə haʊs, kæriɪŋ ə bɪg bɑ:skɪt əv

food for the animals.

fʊ:d fə ði ænɪməlz.

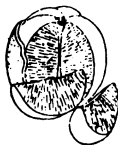


Their lion got a large bone with lots of meat on it
ðə laɪən ɡɒt ə la:dʒ baʊn wɪð lɒts əv mi:t ɔn ɪt
 and at once seized it with his claws and began to
ænd æt wʌns si:zd ɪt wɪð hɪz klɔ:z ænd bɪ'ɡæn tə
 tear the meat from the bone with his teeth. In five
tɪə ðə mi:t frəm ðə baʊn wɪð hɪz ti:θ. ɪn faɪv
 minutes he had finished it — meat, bone, and all.
mɪnɪts hi: həd fɪnɪʃt ɪt — mi:t, baʊn, ænd ɔ:l.
 Then the big beast rolled peacefully over on one side
ðen ðə bɪɡ bi:st rəʊld pi:sfʊli ɒvər ɔn wʌn saɪd
 and lay looking out at the four human beings who
ænd lei lʊkɪŋ aʊt æt ðə fɔ: hju:mən bi:ɪŋz hu:
 were watching him. “Don’t you think he misses the
wə: wɒtʃɪŋ hɪm. “dʌnt ju: θɪŋk hi: mɪsɪz ðə
 company of the other beasts in the forests of Africa
kəmˈpəni əv ði ʌðə bi:sts ɪn ðə fɒrɪsts əv æfrɪkə
 — or wherever it is he comes from?” Marion asked
— ɔ: hwɛər'evər ɪt ɪz hi: kʌmz frəm?” məriən ɑ:skt
 the man. “Not he! He wouldn’t know what to do with
ðə mæn. “nɒt hi:! hi: wʊdnt nəʊ hwɒt tə du: wɪð
 himself if he was sent to Africa. He’s too used to
hɪm'self ɪf hi: wəz sent tu æfrɪkə. hi:z tu: ju:st tə
 getting his meals every day without having to hunt,
ɡetɪŋ hɪz mi:lz evri dei wɪð'aʊt hævɪŋ tə haʊnt,
 and he loves to be with human beings. He’s never so
ən hi: lʌvz tə bi: wɪð hju:mən bi:ɪŋz. hi:z nevə sʊ
 happy as when the Zoo is full of people for him to
hæpi əz hwen ðə zu: ɪz fʊl əv pi:pl fə hɪm tə





nuts



orange

look at. When nobody is here, I have to go in and
luk æt. hwen noubædi iz hiə, ai hæv tə gou in ən
 talk to him sometimes, to keep him happy! No, it isn't
tɔ:k tə him sʌmtaimz, tə ki:p him hæpi! nou, it iznt
 probable that he was ever outside Europe; I think he
prɒbəbl ðæt hi: wəz evər autsaid juərəp; ai piŋk hi:
 was born in Berlin!"
wəz bɔ:n in bə:'lin!"

The next place they entered was the monkey-house.
ðə nekst pleis ðei entəd wəz ðə mʌŋkihaus.

Elizabeth had brought a bag of nuts and oranges for
i'lizəbəθ həd brɔ:t ə bæɡ əv nʌts ænd ɔrindʒiz fɔ:

them, and one by one she rolled or threw the fruit and
ðəm, ænd wʌn bai wʌn si: rould ɔ: θru: ðə fru:t ænd

nuts in to them. "Try and make them come up to
nʌts in tu ðəm. "traɪ ən meɪk ðəm kʌm ʌp tə

the fence and fetch the nuts themselves," Marion said.
ðə fens ən fetʃ ðə nʌts ðəm'selvz," mæriən sed.

"But be careful that they don't bite your fingers; you
"bət bi: keəfʊl ðæt ðei daʊnt baɪt jɔ: fiŋgəz; ju:

had better put the nuts on the floor just outside the
həd betə put ðə nʌts ɒn ðə flɔ: dʒʌst aʊt'saɪd ðə

fence."
fens."

"There's a big one coming up now; let him have an
"ðəz ə big wʌn kʌmɪŋ ʌp naʊ; let him hæv ən

orange!" Storm said, pointing to a large monkey with
ɔrindʒ!" stɔ:m sed, pɔɪntɪŋ tu ə la:dʒ mʌŋki wið

a wise expression on his face. "He looks almost
ə waɪz iks'presən ɒn hɪz feɪs. "hi: luks ɔ:lmaʊst

human." "Yes, he looks just like a teacher we have
hju:mən. "jes, hi: luks dʒʌst laɪk ə ti:tʃə wi: hæv

at school," Elizabeth cried, "Mr. Ambrose Smalljoy.
ət sku:l, i'lizəbəθ kraid, "mɪstə æmbrouz smɔ:lɔ:dʒɔɪ.

Oh, what fun! I know what I'm going to do to-morrow;
ou, hwət fʌn! aɪ nou hwət aɪm ɡoʊɪŋ tə du: tə'mɒrəʊ;

I'm going to make a picture of 'Ambrose' on the wall
aɪm ɡoʊɪŋ tə meɪk ə pɪktʃər əv 'æmbrouz ɒn ðə wɔ:l

at school and write: 'Ambrose — The Almost Human'
ət sku:l ən raɪt: 'æmbrouz — ði ɔ:lmaʊst hju:mən'

under it. Won't he be angry!"
ʌndər ɪt. wəʊnt hi: bi: æŋɡri!"

Storm had to laugh at this, but Marion stopped him
stɔ:m hæd tə la:f ət ðɪs, bət mæriən stɒpt hɪm

with a look. "What an idea!" she said to Elizabeth.
wɪð ə luk. "hwət ən aɪ'diə!" ʃi: sed tu i'lizəbəθ.

"I don't think he'll be angry, but only sad." "You
"aɪ daʊnt θɪŋk hi:l bi: æŋɡri, bət ɒnli sæd." "ju:

don't know Ambrose," that kind-hearted child replied.
daʊnt nou æmbrouz," ðæt kaɪndha:tɪd tʃaɪld rɪ'plaɪd.

"He loves a good fight as well as anybody.
"hi: lʌvz ə ɡʊd faɪt əz wel əz enɪbədɪ.

"What is that monkey over there doing to the other
"hwət ɪz ðæt mʌŋki ɒvəðə ðeə du:ɪŋ tə ði ʌðə

one's head?" she continued, watching a monkey who
wʌnz hed?" ʃi: kən'tɪnju:d, wɒtʃɪŋ ə mʌŋki hu:



insect

had put its head on another one's knees. "It's hunting
həd put its hed ɔn ə'nʌðə wʌnz ni:z. "its hʌntɪŋ

for insects in its hair," Storm replied. "They're learning
fər insekts in its heə," *stɔ:m ri'plaid. "ðeə læ:nɪŋ*

one of the rules of living with others: Help your
wʌn əv ðə ru:lz əv lɪvɪŋ wið ʌðəz: help jɔ:

neighbour! If we all did that always, it would be much
neɪbə! ɪf wi: ɔ:l dɪd ðæt ɔ:lwəz, ɪt wəd bi: mʌtʃ

nicer to live and work. We could learn a thing or two
naisə tə liv ən wə:k. wi: kəd læ:n ə þɪŋ ə tu:

from some of the insects, the bees, for example, who
fɹəm sʌm əv ði insekts, ðə bi:z, fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl, hu:

all work from morning till night for the benefit of all."
ɔ:l wə:k fɹəm mɔ:nɪŋ tɪl naɪt fə ðə benɪfɪt əv ɔ:l."

"I don't think she's heard a word of what you've been
"aɪ daʊnt þɪŋk ʃi:z hæ:d ə wə:d əv hwɒt ju:v bi:n

saying," Marion smiled, when he finished.
seɪɪŋ." məˈrɪən smaɪld, hwən hi: fɪnɪʃt.

For Elizabeth had been busy feeding the monkeys from
fər ɪlɪzəbəθ həd bi:n bɪzi fi:dɪŋ ðə mʌŋkɪz fɹəm

her bag. "They'll eat almost anything, won't they?"
hə: bæɡ. "ðeɪl ɪ:t ɔ:lmʌʊst enɪθɪŋ, wəʊnt ðeɪ?"

she asked, turning away from the fence at last. "Nuts
ʃi: ɑ:skt, tə:nɪŋ ə'wei fɹəm ðə fens ət la:st. "nʌts

and oranges and apples and bread, and what they find
ænd ɔ:ɪndʒɪz ænd æplz ən bred, ən hwɒt ðeɪ faɪnd

in each other's hair, and worms —" "Worms?" Marion
ɪn i:tʃ ʌðəz heə, ən wə:mz —"wə:mz?" məˈrɪən



worm

cried. "Yes, I tried giving them some worms I had
kraid. "jes, ai traid giviŋ ðəm səm wə:mz ai həd

brought along in the bag for the birds, and they seemed
brɔ:t ə'lɔŋ in ðə bæɡ fə ðə bə:dz, ən ðei si:mɪd

to like them, so I let them have them all," the child
tə laɪk ðəm, sou ai let ðəm həv ðəm ɔ:l," ðə tʃaɪld

answered. "Do you mean to tell me," Marion asked,
a:nsəd. "du: ju: mi:n tə tel mi:," mæriən a:skt,

"that I have been carrying a bag full of worms around
"ðət ai həv bi:n kəriiŋ ə bæɡ ful əv wə:mz ə'raʊnd

for more than an hour? Let's get out into the fresh air
fə mɔ: ðən ən aʊə? lets get aʊt intə ðə freʃ əə

— the thought of it makes me sick!"

— ðə þɔ:t əv it meɪks mi: sɪk!"

As soon as they got outside, however, Marion felt
əz su:n əz ðei ɡɒt aʊt'saɪd, haʊ'evə, mæriən felt

somewhat better, and as Elizabeth seemed to have
səmhʊət betə, ənd əz i'lɪzəbəθ si:mɪd tə həv

decided not to give them any more shocks, the rest
dɪ'saɪdɪd nɒt tə ɡɪv ðəm ɛni mɔ: ʃɒks, ðə rest

of the afternoon passed quite peacefully. When they
əv ði a:ftə'nu:n pɑ:st kwait pi:sfʊli. hwen ðei

had taken Elizabeth home, Storm was in a great hurry
həd teɪkn i'lɪzəbəθ hoʊm, stɔ:m wəz in ə greɪt hʌri

to get back to Marion's house. "Why all this hurry?"
tə get bæk tə mæriənʌz haʊs. "hwaɪ ɔ:l ðɪs hʌri?"

Marion asked in some surprise. "We're going some-
mæriən a:skt in səm sə'praɪz. "wiə ɡəʊiŋ sʌm-

where together with your parents, and we have to be
hwæa tə'gedə wið jɔ: pɛərənts, ən wi: hæv tə bi:

there at seven o'clock," he replied, "so there isn't much
ðeər æt sevn ə'klɔk," hi: ri'plaid, "səu ðər iznt mʌtʃ

time left." "Where are we going? Tell me about it."
taim left." "hwæər a: wi: ɡəʊɪŋ? tel mi: ə'baut it."

"No, it's a secret. You'll see when we get there."

"nəʊ, its ə si:krit. ju:l si: hwɛn wi: ɡet ðeə."

After a quick cup of tea, the four of them left the house,
ɑ:ftər ə kwɪk kʌp əv ti:, ðə fɔ:r əv ðəm left ðə haʊs,

Marion wondering what her father was up to. Mr.
mæriən wʌndəriŋ hwɒt hɜ: fa:ðə wəz ʌp tu. mɪstər

Edwards took them to a quiet street of small houses
edwədz tuk ðəm tu ə kwaɪət stri:t əv smɔ:l haʊzɪz

surrounded by gardens. He walked up to one of them
sə'raʊndɪd baɪ ɡɑ:dnz. hi: wɔ:kt ʌp tə wʌn əv ðəm

and rang the bell, while Mrs. Edwards explained, "This
ænd ræŋ ðə bel, hwɪl mɪsɪz edwədz ɪks'pleɪnd, "ðɪs

is the house where your father and I lived when we were
ɪz ðə haʊs hwæə jɔ: fa:ðər ænd aɪ lɪvd hwɛn wi: wə:

first married. We saw in the paper the day before yester-
fə:st mærid. wi: sɔ: ɪn ðə peɪpə ðə dei bi'fɔ: ʤestə-

day that the people who live here are going to move.
ði ðæt ðə pi:pl hu: liv hɪə a: ɡəʊɪŋ tə mu:v.

The house will be empty from March 1st. So we
ðə haʊs wɪl bi: ɛmti frəm mɑ:tʃ ðə fə:st. səʊ wi:

decided to ask about the price, and if it wasn't too
dɪ'saɪdɪd tu ɑ:sk ə'baut ðə praɪs, ænd ɪf ɪt wəznt tu:

dear now, to take you along and show it to you.”
diə nau, tə teik ju: ə'ləŋ ən fou it tu ju:.”

“Too dear?” Marion asked. “Do you mean for us?”
“tu: diə?” mæriən ə:skt. “du: ju: mi:n fər ʌs?”

She turned to Storm: “And you haven’t told me any-
ʃi: tə:nd tə stɔ:m: “ən ju: hævnt toʊld mi: eni-

thing! Does that mean that —?” “It means that we
piŋ! dʌz ðæt mi:n ðæt —?” “it mi:nz ðæt wi:

can afford to marry now as soon as you can make up
kən ə'fɔ:d tə mæri nau əz su:n əz ju: kən meik ʌp

your mind about the date. I got a rise this month,
jɔ: maɪnd ə'baʊt ðə deɪt. aɪ gɒt ə raɪz ðɪs mʌnθ,

and I went out at once and spent it on the ring for
ænd aɪ went aʊt ət wʌns ən spent ɪt ɒn ðə rɪŋ fɔ:

you — just to be on the safe side! — I mean if you
ju: — dʒʌst tə bi: ɒn ðə seɪf saɪd! — aɪ mi:n ɪf ju:

should decide that you wanted to be married to-morrow,
ʃəd dɪ'saɪd ðæt ju: wɒntɪd tə bi: mæɪɪd tə'mɒrəʊ,

there would hardly be any time at the last minute
ðeə wəd hɑ:dli bi: enɪ taɪm ət ðə lɑ:st mɪnɪt

for buying a ring. But now I’m prepared for the worst!”
fə baɪɪŋ ə rɪŋ. bʌt nau aɪm prɪ'peəd fə ðə wɜ:st!”

Marion laughed at this. “May I see the ring now?”
mæriən lɑ:ft ət ðɪs. “meɪ aɪ si: ðə rɪŋ nau?”

she asked. “And try it on?” At this moment, however,
ʃi: ə:skt. “ən traɪ ɪt ɒn?” ət ðɪs moʊmənt, haʊ'evə,

the door was opened by a friendly young man. “My
ðə dɔ: wəz ɒpənd baɪ ə frendli jʌŋ mæn. “maɪ



wife is out," he said, "but I can show you the house."
waif iz aut, hi: sed, "bət ai kən sou ju: ðə haus."

There were two rooms and a kitchen downstairs, and
ðeə wə: tu: ru:mz ənd ə kitʃin 'daʊnstɛəz, ənd

two rooms and a bathroom upstairs. Marion hurried
tu: ru:mz ənd ə ba:θrʊm 'ʌp'steəz. məriən hʌrid

from room to room, crying, "Isn't this nice — isn't that
fɹəm ru:m tə ru:m, kraiɪŋ, "iznt ðis nais — iznt ðæt

lovely!" at every new thing she discovered. "And to
lʌvli!" ət evri nju: ʃɪŋ ʃi: dis'kʌvəd. "ən tə

think that I was born in this house! How strange!"
ʃɪŋk ðæt ai wəz bɔ:n in ðis haus! hau streɪndʒ!"

"Yes, isn't it," her mother answered. "But come into
"jes, iznt it," hə: mʌðər a:nsəd. "bət kʌm intə

the kitchen, dear; I want to see what it looks like now.
ðə kitʃin, diə; ai wɒnt tə si: hwɒt it luks laik nau.

— It looks almost the same," she continued, looking
— it luks ɔ:lmu:st ðə seɪm," ʃi: kən'tɪnju:d, lʊkiŋ

about her. "The only difference is that it's no longer
ə'baut hə:. "ði ounli difrəns iz ðæt its nou lɒŋgə

lit by gas. They have electric light now."
lit baɪ gæs. ðei həv i'lektrɪk laɪt nau."

To the right was the kitchen-range, and just opposite,
tə ðə raɪt wəz ðə kitʃɪn'reɪndʒ, ənd dʒʌst əpəzɪt,

at the other side of the kitchen, stood a small table
ət ði ʌðə saɪd əv ðə kitʃɪn, stʊd ə smɔ:l teɪbl

with four chairs round it and flowers in the centre.
wɪð fɔ: tʃeəz raʊnd ɪt ənd fləʊəz ɪn ðə sentə.

He **lights**, he **lit**, he
 has **lit** [*laɪts, lit, lit*].



"We have our meals here," the young man explained.
"wi: hæv auə mi:lz hiə," ðə jʌŋ mæn iks'pleind.

"It's easier for my wife. There's gas for cooking, of
"its i:ziə fə mai waif. ðəz gæs fə kukiŋ, əv
 course, but in winter we always use the kitchen-range.
kɔ:s, bət in wintə wi: ɔ:lweɪz ju:z ðə kitʃinreindʒ.

It burns coal and keeps the kitchen warm all day.
it bə:nz koul ən ki:ps ðə kitʃin wɔ:m ɔ:l dei.

I light the fire in the morning before my wife gets up,
ai lait ðə faɪər in ðə mɔ:nɪŋ bi'fɔ: mai waif gets ʌp,
 and put the kettle on the fire. So by the time we're
ən put ðə ketl ɔn ðə faɪə. sou bai ðə taim wiə

dressed, the kitchen is already nice and warm, and
drest, ðə kitʃin iz ɔ:l'redi nais ən wɔ:m, ən

the water for our tea is boiling." "That's the right
ðə wɔ:tə fər auə ti: iz builiŋ." "ðætʃ ðə rait

spirit!" Mrs. Edwards said. "I was never able to make
spirit!" misiz edwədʒ sed. "ai wəz nevər eibl tə meik

my husband get up first."
mai hʌzbənd get ʌp fə:st."

Beside the kitchen-range was a large gas-oven. "I had
bi'said ðə kitʃinreindʒ wəz ə la:dʒ gæslʌn. "ai hæd

a gas-oven, too," Mrs. Edwards said. "I was very proud
ə gæslʌn, tu:," misiz edwədʒ sed. "ai wəz veri praud

of it, I remember, for most of my friends had no
əv it, ai ri'membə, fə moust əv mai frendz həd nou

gas-oven and had to use the oven of the kitchen-range.
gæslʌn ən hæd tə ju:z ði ʌvn əv ðə kitʃinreindʒ.





But one Christmas, when I had a big turkey in my
bət wʌn krɪsməs, hwen aɪ həd ə bɪg tɑ:kɪ ɪn maɪ

gas-oven, a sudden wind from the open window blew
gæsʌvən, ə sʌdn wɪnd frəm ði ɒpən wɪndəʊ blu:

out the flame. I discovered it a few moments later
aut ðə fleɪm. aɪ dɪs'kʌvəd ɪt ə fju: moʊmənts leɪtər

and went to light it again, of course. But as soon as
ən went tə laɪt ɪt ə'geɪn, əv kɔ:s. bət əz su:n əz

I lit the match, a big flame jumped out of the gas-oven
aɪ lɪt ðə mætʃ, ə bɪg fleɪm dʒʌmpt aut əv ðə gæsʌvən

at me and burnt some of my hair. For a long time
æt mi: ən bə:nt sʌm əv maɪ heə. fər ə lɔŋ taɪm

after, I was afraid to light the gas-oven, and used
a:ftə, aɪ wəz ə'freɪd tə laɪt ðə gæsʌvən, ən ju:zd

my old oven in the kitchen-range, just like all my
maɪ ould əvən ɪn ðə kɪtʃɪn'reɪndʒ, dʒʌst laɪk ɔ:l maɪ

friends.

frendz.

“But here I’m just talking and talking,” she interrupted

“bət hɪər aɪm dʒʌst tɔ:kɪŋ ən tɔ:kɪŋ,” ʃi: ɪntə'rʌptɪd

herself, “and we haven’t heard yet how the two of you

hə:'self, “ən wi: həvnt hə:d ʒet hau ðə tu: əv ju:

like the house.” “I think it looks fine,” Storm said.

laɪk ðə haʊs.” “aɪ ɪŋk ɪt lʊks faɪn,” stɔ:m sed.

“And I think it’s perfectly lovely,” Marion cried.

“ənd aɪ ɪŋk ɪts pə:fɪktli lʌvli,” məˈrɪən kraɪd.

“Only I can’t understand how we can possibly afford

“əʊnli aɪ kɑ:nt ʌndə'stænd hau wi: kən pɒsəbli ə'fɔ:d

it." "It's a cheap house," the young man told her.
it. "its ə tʃi:p haus," ðə jʌŋ mæn təʊld hæ:.

"Probably because it's rather old. But everything is
"prɒbəbli bɪ'kɔ:z its ra:ðər ould. bət evriθɪŋ ɪz

well kept, so we've never felt that the house was old.
wel kept, sɔʊ wi:v nəvə felt ðæt ðə haus wəz ould.

And we're only moving because we need more room;
ən wiər ounli mu:vɪŋ bɪ'kɔ:z wi: ni:d mɔ: ru:m;

we have two small children, as you saw upstairs."
wi: hæv tu: smɔ:l tʃɪldrən, əz ju: sɔ: ʌp'steəz."

"If you'll promise to light the fire every winter morning
"ɪf ju:l prɒmɪs tə laɪt ðə faɪə evri wɪntə mɔ:nɪŋ

and put the kettle on to boil," Marion said to Storm,
ən put ðə ketl ɔn tə bɔɪl," mæriən sed tə stɔ:m,

as they left the house, "I think it would be lovely to
əz ðeɪ left ðə haus. "aɪ θɪŋk ɪt wəd bi: lʌvli tə

start our married life here. And if we were married
stɑ:t ɔʊə mærid laɪf hɪə. ənd ɪf wi: wə: mærid

in the middle of March, there would be two weeks
ɪn ðə mɪdl əv mɑ:tʃ, ðeə wəd bi: tu: wi:kz

to have the rooms painted and to hang the curtains
tə hæv ðə ru:mz peɪntɪd ən tə hæŋ ðə kɑ:tɪnz

and everything."
ənd evriθɪŋ."

"I promise," Storm answered, taking her arm and
"aɪ prɒmɪs," stɔ:m ɑ:nsəd, teɪkɪŋ hæ:r ɑ:m ənd

showing her what little there was to be seen of the
ʃəʊɪŋ hæ: hwɒt lɪtl ðeə wəz tə bi: si:n əv ðə

do (here) = be
enough

garden. "I'm glad you're satisfied. Remember Leith
ga:dn. "aim glæd juə sətisfaɪd. rɪ'membə li:p

Hill? Of course, it's not so big as the farm, nor so
hil? əv kɔ:s, its nɒt sɒu bɪg əz ðə fa:m, nɔ: sɒu

modern as your parents' house." "But it'll do for us,"
mɒdn əz jɔ: pə'rents haʊs." "bʊt ɪtl du: fər ʌs,"

Marion said. And arm in arm they walked back, full
mæriən sed. ənd a:m in a:m ðeɪ wɔ:kt bæk, ful

of plans for the future which had suddenly drawn
əv plænz fə ðə fju:tʃə hwi:tʃ həd sʌdnli drɔ:n

so near.

sɒu niə.

EXERCISE A.

WORDS:

delight

fetch

feather

worm

insect

seize

kettle

thread

needle

scissors

pair of scissors

mind

somewhat

ring

secret

guess

gift

"Have you made up your — to have Elizabeth this afternoon?" Marion asked her mother. On a quiet Sunday afternoon the Edwardses and Storm were — in front of the fire. A — and — are used to sew with. A pair of — is used to cut paper and cloth with. The lion is a wild —. Elizabeth had — a big hole in one of Mrs. Edwards' — and broken a fine dish, which was a — from her uncle in India.

Storm told Marion that it was his sister's greatest — to sit on a branch and throw things at him. Once she threw a — of flour at him. Storm was of the opinion that girls at that age can hardly be regarded as — —. "Please — Elizabeth's woollen cap with the —," Elizabeth's mother said to a — who entered the room. Wild — have sharp teeth and —.

It is not far from — to smiles with small children. Elizabeth kept it as a great — that she was making a cap at school. At the Zoo, Storm pointed towards the lion saying, "His — the Lion, King of All Animals." "He looks so sad to be — up here," Marion said, "that I almost — I can see — in his eyes." The lion got a large — with lots of meat on it and at once — it with his claws.

In five minutes the big — had eaten it all up, and then he — over on one side to have a rest. Elizabeth had brought a bag of — and — for the monkeys. A bee is an —. Marion had carried — in her bag without knowing it. Storm had got a rise and at once spent it on a — for Marion. In the house where Marion's parents had lived when they were younger, the kitchen was no longer — by gas; there was — light now. There was — for cooking, but in winter the — was used instead, and a — was put on, first thing in the morning.

EXERCISE B.

Answer these questions with full sentences:

Have you any brothers or sisters? ... Are they younger or older than yourself? ... What is the kitchen of your home lit by? ... Do you smoke? ... If you do, what do you prefer to smoke? ... How much do you smoke a day? ... What time of the year do you like best, and why? ...

EXERCISE C. GRAMMAR.

The present and past tenses of **do** are used in sentences with 'not'. In the sentence 'John likes tea' the English

probable
spirit
human
being
sisterly
beside
fancy
joy
beast
dangerous
tear
tore
torn
claw
tear
opposite
roll
nut
orange
servant
oven
kitchen-range
gas-oven
flame
gas
light (verb)
lit
gather
Majesty
bone
peaceful
kind-hearted
friendly

cannot add 'not' to the verb, but must say: John **does not like** tea. Notice that this sentence is built up in the same way as the sentences with 'can', 'may', 'must', 'shall', 'will'. (I **cannot go** there. I **could not go** there.) Examples: I **do not go** there often. I **did not go** there. He **did not see** me. You **do not swim** very well. We **did not get** home till it was too late.

In the same way **do**, **does**, and **did** are used in questions. Example: **Does John like** tea? Again the sentence is built up in the same way as sentences with 'can', 'may', 'must', 'shall', 'will'. (**Can you go** there?) Examples: **Do you go** there very often? **Do you live** in town? **Does he go** to school? **Did the girl visit** her aunt? **Do** is not used in questions (or interrogative sentences, as they are called) and sentences with 'not' in the following cases:

1. If the sentence contains a form of the verb 'to be'. Examples: He is not here. Is he here? (**Do** is only used when 'be' in connection with 'not' contains the idea of commanding. Example: **Don't be** foolish.)
2. If the sentence contains one of the verbs 'shall', 'will', 'can', 'may', 'must', 'ought'. Examples: He will not help me. Will you help me? (Sometimes 'dare' and 'need' are used without **do** in sentences with 'not', and in questions. Examples: They dared not fight. Dare I ask you how much you paid for the book? I need not tell you what happened. Need it be said that I kept my promise?)
3. **Do** is not as a rule used with 'have'. Examples: Have you seen him? I had not seen him. We only

find **do** if 'have' is the main verb of the sentence. Examples: What **did** you **have** for dinner? I **did** not **have** fish for dinner.

4. In interrogative sentences beginning with an interrogative pronoun that expresses the person or thing that is or does something, **do** is not used. Examples: Who said so? What happened?

Do may also be used to call special attention to the action of the verb. Examples: '**Do help** me!' (instead of just 'Help me!') As a rule he would not help his friends, but he **did help** me once.

Questions:

In what kinds of sentences is 'do' used? ... When is 'do' used in sentences with 'have'? ... In what kinds of interrogative sentences do we use 'do'? ...

EXERCISE D.

*siksti'eit, nelsn ·roud,
wimblðæn.*

ðə naɪnti:n̩p əv dʒænjʊəri.

diə wʊd,

*ai wəz veri glæd tə ri'si:v ju: letə ði ʌðə dei; it
həz bi:n ə lɔŋ taim sins ai hæd nju:z frəm houm. ðə
dei a:ftə ju: letər ə'raɪvd, ai hæ:d frəm mai sistə, tu:.
ai məst a:sk ju: tə bi: keəful, mai diə felou; ai si:
frəm bouþ ju: letəz ðət juər in ðə greɪtɪst deɪndʒə!
its klɪə ðət ju: daʊnt nou hʊɔt ɔ:l ðɪs ɡəʊɪŋ aut wɪð ə
prɪti ɡə:l meɪ li:d tu: bi'fɔ: ju: nou hʊɔt həz hæpnd
ju:v a:skt hə: tə mæri ju: — ən ðen, ðeə ju: a:!*

bət tə bi: siəriəs fər ə moumənt, aim glæd ðət ju: si:m tə laik i:tf ʌðə, ɔ:lðou ai mʌst sei ðət ai kɑ:nt kʁwait ʌndə'stænd jet ðət mai litt sistə hæz groun ʌp tə bi: ə pə:sn ðət jʌŋ felouz kən fɔ:l in ʌv wið.

mai oun ə'feəz hæv bi:n di'veləpiŋ ræpidli sins mai la:st letə. wiə gowiŋ tə bi: mærid ɔn ma:tf ðə sevn-ti:nþ. ai iks'pekt mai mʌðər ən sistə tə kʌm ouvə hiə, ənd it wəd bi: ə greit plezə tə mi: if ju: ən braun kəd kʌm, tu:. pə'hæps ju: kəd hæv ʒɔ: hɒlidi:z ɔ:l'redi in ma:tf. ən misiz ma:fəl wil let ju: hæv ə ru:m ət ðeə haus hʁwail juə hiə, sou ðə tri:p wount bi: sou iks'pensiv æz la:st taim.

ai houp ju: kən kʌm — aim ɔ:l'redi lukiŋ fɔ:wəd tə ʒɔ: vizit.

ai wi:f ju: ɔ:l ðə best!

stɔ:m

COPYRIGHT
UNDER INTERNATIONAL COPYRIGHT CONVENTION

•

PRINTED IN SWITZERLAND